Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

Lanfrank's "Science of Cirurgie."

EDITED

FROM THE BODLEIAN ASHMOLE MS. 1396
(ab. 1380 A.D.)

AND THE BRITISH MUSEUM ADDITIONAL MS. 12,056
(ab. 1420 A.D.)

BY

ROBERT v. FLEISCHHACKER, Dr.Phil.

PART I.—TEXT.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
By KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.
1894.

Price ~~*Twenty Shillings.*~~ 24/-

RECEIVED
MAR 15 1985
WEST VIRGINIA UNIV
MEDICAL CENTER LIBRARY

Early English Text Society.

Committee of Management:

Director: DR. FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A.
Treasurer: HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq.
Hon. Sec.: W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67 VICTORIA ROAD, FINSBURY PARK, N.
Hon. Sec. for Americ mbr., Mass., U.S.A.
H. HUCKS GIBBS, Y, M.A.
Hon. E. KOLBING, Ph.D.
S. L. LEE, B.A. K, Esq.
Rev. Prof. J. RAWS V. SKEAT, Litt.D.
Rev. Prof. J. E. B. M.A.
Rev. Dr. RICHARD HT, M.A.

(*With power to add Workers to their number.*)

Bankers: THE UNION BANK OF LONDON, 2, PRINCES STREET, E.C.

WVU – Medical Center Library
[redacted] c.1 WVMJ
Lanfrank's "Science of cirurgie." / Lanfranco
3 0802 000023120 0

DO NOT CIRCULATE

The Early English Text Society was started by Dr. Furnivall in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the *Original Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in printed MSS. and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing completed Texts demands their inclusion in the Extra Series.

During the twenty-eight years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers.

But the Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspere who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. 'Let the dead past bury its dead' is still the cry of Great Britain and her Colonies, and of America, in the matter of language. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it; and many Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying whether more Texts can be got out by the plan of issuing them in advance of the current year, so that those Members who like to pay for them by advance Subscriptions, can do so, while those who prefer to wait for the year for which the volumes are markt, can do so too. To such waiters, the plan will be no injury, but a gain, as every year's Texts will then be ready on the New Year's Day on which the Subscription for them is paid.

The success of this plan will depend on the support it receives from Members, as it is obvious that the Society's printers must be paid half or two-thirds of their bill for a Text within a few months of its production. Appeal is therefore made to all Members who can spare advance Subscriptions, to pay them as soon as they get notice that the Texts for any future year are ready. In 1892, the Texts for 1893 were issued; in 1893, those for 1894; and some for 1895 and 1896 will also be ready in 1893.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1*s.* a year [and £1 1*s.* additional for the Extra Series], due in advance on the 1st of January, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Head Office of the Union Bank of London, Princes Street, London, E.C., or by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N., and crost 'Union Bank of London.' (United-States Subscribers must pay for postage 1*s.* 4*d.* a year extra for the Original Series, and 1*s.* a year for the Extra Series.) The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists.

June 1893. For this year the Original-Series Texts were issued in 1892, and so was one of the Extra-Series Texts; while the other went out early in 1893. The Texts of both Series for 1894 (except *The Prymer*, which is nearly ready) are now issued, with one of the Original Series for 1895 (the other is promist for July). The Extra Series Texts for 1895 are almost sure to be issued in 1893, as well as some Texts for 1896. **Members are askt to send their two- or three-years' subscriptions for both Series at once in advance.**

The Original-Series Texts for 1893 are:—No. 100, Capgrave's *Life of St. Katharine*, the text edited by Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords, side-notes, and a discussion of Chaucer's *gh* and Shakspere's long *i*, by Dr. F. J. Furnivall; and No. 101, the *Cursor Mundi*, Part VII and last, an Essay on the MSS. of the Poem, their Dialects and Relation, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe.

The Extra-Series Texts for 1893 are—No. LXIII. Thomas à Kempis's *De Imitatione Christi*, englisht: the first three books from the MS in Trinity College Dublin, about 1440 A.D., and from Dr. Wm. Atkynson's version, printed by Wynkyn de Worde in 1502; and the fourth book by Margaret, Countess of Richmond and Derby, Mother of Henry VII; the whole edited by Prof. J. K. Ingram, LL.D.; and No. LXIV. Dr. Mary N. Colvin's edition of Caxton's *Godfrey of Boloyne*, or *Last Siege of Jerusalem*, A.D. 1481.

The Original Series Texts for 1894 are—No. 102. Part I of Dr. R. von Fleischhacker's edition of the englisht *Lanfranc's Cirurgie*, about 1400 A.D., a treatise perhaps more valuable for Dictionary purposes than any yet issued by the Society, which takes up to Chaucer's death the whole class of surgical and medical words (besides many others of common speech) which we before had only from the black-letters of Queen Elizabeth's time. (Dr. von Fleischhacker is now in England, and hopes soon to finish Part II). No. 103. The *Prymer* or *Lay Folk's Prayer-book*, edited by Mr. Henry Littlehales, and his friend Mr. A. R. Clark.

The Extra Series Texts for 1894 are No. LXV, the 3rd and last Part of *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, edited by Prof. Kölbing, Ph.D., and No. LXVI, Lydgate's and Burgh's *Secrees of Philisoffres*, edited by Robert Steele, B.A.

For 1895, the first Text of the Original Series is No. 104, Part I of Mr. Gollancz's re-edition of *The Exeter Book*, from the unique MS. The second, No. 105, will be Prof. Napier's edition of a 12th-century Homily on the *Legend of the Cross*, with an Introduction on the different Legends about it, together with an incomplete Chester *Hymn to the Virgin* of the 13th century, and a short Paper on the soft and hard *g*'s of the *Ormulum* MS., with a facsimile.

During 1892, two unexpected sources of help to the Society sprang up. First, Mr. Henry Littlehales of Bexley Heath, who had printed a MS of the English *Prymer*, ab. 1400 A.D., kindly offerd to copy, and pay for the setting, not only of the Cambridge University MS of the *Prymer*, ab. 1425 A.D., but also of a series of extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, illustrating the religious condition and social life of the diocese. The *Prymer* or Lay Folk's Prayer-book is all in type, and will form a valuable portion of the Society's Pre-Reformation vernacular Liturgical Series, undertaken on the recommendation of the late Canon Simmons. The Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers are nearly half copied, and will go to press soon. Mr. Littlehales has also put himself generally at the Society's service, and has copied half of the Salisbury Cathedral MS of that very quaint treatise, *Jacob's Well*, about the middle of the 15th century. Mr. Littlehales has likewise copied, and will edit for the Society the very interesting set of Accounts of Prior Moore of Worcester, 1518-35, besides *The Pore Caitiff*, &c, &c.

The second promise of help comes, most gratifyingly, from the University of Chicago. Two Professors in the English Department there, Mr. MacClintock and Mr. Oscar Triggs—with the assent of their Principal, Dr. Harper—agreed to edit and print at the Chicago University Press, two Early English Texts to be issued jointly by the University and the E. E. T. Society, the Society paying for its electrotypes. Prof. MacClintock chose the theological collection of John Lacy of Newcastle, A.D. 1434 (see p. 10 below), and Prof. Triggs chose Lydgate's *Assembly of the Gods*. They hope that, notwithstanding their great World's Fair, these Texts will be issued in 1893.

Such relief as the E. E. T. Soc. gets from the above-named helpers will be devoted to its Reprinting Fund. The out-of-print Texts for 1866 are greatly wanted by members and collectors to complete their sets of the Society's publications.

An urgent appeal is hereby made to Members to increase the list of Subscribers to the E. E. Text Society. It is nothing less than a crying scandal that the Hellenic Society should have nearly 900 members, while the Early English Text Society has only a few over 300!

The Original-Series Texts for 1896 and 1897 will be chosen from books already at press: Richard Misyn's—he was Prior of Lincoln—englishings in 1434 and 1435 of Richard Rolle of Hampole's *Fire of Love* and *Mending of Life*, edited by Robert Harvey, M.A., Headmaster of the Cork Grammar School; Part II of the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall; Mr. Gollancz's re-edited *Exeter-Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—Part II; Miss Pemberton's edition of the

fragments of Queen Elizabeth's englishings (in the Record Office) from Boethius, Plutarch, &c. ; Dr. Furnivall's edition of the *Lichfield Gilds* is also all printed, and waits only for the Introduction, which Prof. E. C. K. Gonner has kindly undertaken to write for the book. Prof. Mead has sent to press the completion of the prose *Merlin*, for which the Society has been looking in vain from its Treasurer since 1870. Miss Mary Bateson has at press George Ashby's *Active Policy of a Prince*, &c., from the unique MS, A.D. 1463. Prof. Ingram's edition of the english *Expugnacio Hibernica* of Giraldus Cambrensis, with interesting dialectic features, is also at press. Mr. Utley is home from Roumania, and promises to finish *Lyndesay's* Works this year. Dr. G. Herzfeld's re-edition of the Anglo-Saxon *Martyrology* is all in type. Part II of Dr. Holthausen's *Vices and Virtues* needs only its Glossary.

Mr. Steele has in type two prose englishings of the *Secreta Secretorum* from MSS. at Lambeth, the second of which is very rich in new words. A version by James Yonge in 1428, made for the Earl of Ormonde, will be copied from its Rawlinson MS. at Oxford, and collated with the later Lambeth MS. All three versions differ widely in contents and words.

The Texts for the Extra Series in 1895 and 1896 will be chosen from the prose Romance of *Melusine*, edited from the unique MS. by Mr. A. K. Donald (text all printed) ; *The Three Kings' Sons*, edited from its unique MS. by Dr. Leon Kellner (at press) ; *The Towneley Plays*, re-edited from the unique MS. by Mr. George England and A. W. Pollard, M.A.; Part II of *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England (at press) ; the Parallel-Text of the only two MSS. of the *Owl and Nightingale*, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes (at press) ; Hoccleve's englishing of *De Regimine Principum*, 1411-12, edited by Dr. Furnivall ; Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, three prose versions—two English, one French—edited by G. N. Currie, M.A. Some of these Texts will be ready in 1893. **Members are therefore askt to send Advance Subscriptions in 1893, for 1894, 1895 and 1896,** in order that the 1894-6 books may be issued to them as soon as the editions are finisht. The Society's experience has shown that Editors must be taken when they are in the humour for work. All real Students and furtherers of the Society's purpose will be ready to push-on the issue of Texts. Those Members who care only a guinea a year (or can afford only that sum) for the history of our language and our nation's thought, will not be hurt by those who care more, getting their books in advance ; on the contrary, they will be benefited, as each successive year's work will then be ready for issue on New Year's Day. Members are askt to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finisht all the Texts that the Society ought to print.

Mr. G. N. Currie is preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Mr. Henry Hucks Gibbs's MS., Mr. Gibbs having generously promist to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS.

Guillaume de Deguilleville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pelerinaige de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.[1] Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it, and this is the only one that has been printed. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330 1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25 ; Univ. Coll. and Corpus Christi, Oxford[2] ; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740. A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited by Mr. Sidney J. Herrtage for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condensd and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library:[3] "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649 ; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited by Mr. Currie for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Herrtage's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,[4] Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguilleville's first verse *Pelerinaige* into a prose *Pelerinage de la vie humaine*.[5] By the kindness of Mr. Hy. Hucks Gibbs, as above mentiond, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

[1] He was born about 1295. See Abbé Goujet's *Bibliotheque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M.
[2] These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.
[3] Another MS. is in the Pepys Library. [4] According to Mr. Hy. Hucks Gibbs's MS.
[5] These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.

The Second Version of Deguilleville's *Pelerinaige de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was englisht in verse by Lydgate in 1426. Of Lydgate's poem, the larger part is in the Cotton MS. Vitellius C. xiii (leaves 2-308). This MS. leaves out Chaucer's englishing of Deguilleville's *A B C* or *Prayer to the Virgin*, of which the successive stanzas start with A, B, C, and run all thro' the alphabet; and it has 2 gaps, of which most of the second can be fild up from the end of the other imperfect MS. Cotton, Tiberius A vii. The rest of the stopgaps must be got from the original French in Harleian 4399,[1] and Additional 22,937[2] and 25,594[3] in the British Museum. Lydgate's version will be edited in due course for the Society.

Besides his first *Pelerinaige de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separee du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Sowle* (perhaps in part by Lydgate), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,[4] at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpns), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of addicions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englisher's interesting Epilog in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Sowle* will be edited for the Society after that of the *Man* is finisht, and will have Gallopes's French opposite it, from Mr. Gibbs's MS., as his gift to the Society. Of the Pilgrimage of Jesus, no englishing is known.

As to the MS. Anglo-Saxon Psalters, Dr. Hy. Sweet has edited the oldest MS., the Vespasian, in his *Oldest English Texts* for the Society, and Mr. Harsley has edited the latest, c. 1150, Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter. Dr. Logeman then raised the question of how the other MSS. should be treated; and he was authorised to prepare a Parallel-Text edition of the first ten Psalms from all the MSS., to test whether the best way of printing them would be in one group, or in two—in each case giving parts of all the MSS. on one page—under their respective Roman and Gallican Latin originals. If collation proves that all the MSS. cannot go together on successive pages, there will be two Parallel-Texts, one of the A.Sax. MSS. following the Roman version, and the other, of those glossing the Gallican; but every effort will be made to get the whole into one Parallel-Text. This Text will be an extravagance; but as the Society has not yet committed one in Anglo-Saxon, it will indulge in one now; and every student will rejoice at having the whole Psalter material before him in the most convenient form. Dr. Logeman and Mr. Harsley will be joint editors of the Parallel-Text. The Early English Psalters are all independent versions, and will follow separately in due course.

Through the good offices of the Examiners, some of the books for the Early-English Examinations of the University of London will be chosen from the Society's publications, the Committee having undertaken to supply such books to students at a large reduction in price. The profits from these sales will be applied to the Society's Reprints. Five of its 1866 Texts, and one of its 1867, still need reproducing. Donations for this purpose will be welcome. They should be paid to the Hon. Sec., Mr. W. A. Dalziel, 67 Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Society cannot leave out any of them, even though some are dull. The Sinners would doubtless be much more interesting. But in many Saints' Lives will be found valuable incidental details of our forefathers' social state, and all are worthful for the history of our language. The Lives may be lookt on as the religious romances or story-books of their period.

The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Land set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englishing of *Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker will edit it. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfric's prose,[5] Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfric's Metrical

[1] 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.
[2] 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.
[3] 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd Pilgrimage, *de l'Ame*: both incomplete.
[4] Ab. 1430, 166 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny &c.—and damnd souls, fires, angels &c.
[5] Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfric Society, are still in stock.
Of the Vercelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.

Homilies. Prof. Kölbing has also undertaken for the Society's Extra Series a Parallel-Text of all the six MSS. of the *Ancren Riwle*, one of the most important foundation-documents of Early English. Mr. Harvey, too, means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

In case more Texts are ready at any time than can be paid for by the current year's income, they will be dated the next year, and issued in advance to such Members as will pay advance subscriptions. The 1886-7 delay in getting out Texts must not occur again, if it can possibly be avoided. The Director has in hand for future volunteer Editors copies of 2 or 3 MSS.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent under General Zupitza, Colonels Kölbing and Horstmann, volunteers Hausknecht, Einenkel, Haenisch, Kalnza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, &c. &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Dr. Erdmann; Holland, Dr. H. Logeman; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser;—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; while America is represented by Prof. Child, Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Prof. Mead, Prof. Perrin, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has cald forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

Half the Publications for 1866 (13, 14, 15, 22) are out of print, but will be gradually reprinted. Subscribers who desire the issue for 1866 should send their guineas at once to the Hon. Secretary, in order that other Texts for 1866 may be sent to press.

The Publications for 1864-1894 (*one guinea each year, save those for* 1866 *now half out of print, two guineas*) *are :—*

1. **Early English Alliterative Poems**, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 16*s.* 1864
2. **Arthur**, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 4*s.* ,,
3. **Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis**, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4*s.* ,,
4. **Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight**, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10*s.* ,,
5. **Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue**, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4*s.* 1865
6. **Lancelot of the Laik**, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 8*s.* ,,
7. **Genesis & Exodus**, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8*s.* ,,
8. **Morte Arthure**, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. 7*s.* ,,
9. **Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer**, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 10*s.* ,,
10. **Merlin**, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 2*s.* 6*d.* ,,
11. **Lyndesay's Monarche**, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3*s.* ,,
12. **Wright's Chaste Wife**, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1*s.* ,,
13. **Seinte Marherete**, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne; to be re-edited by Prof. Herford, M.A., Ph.D. 1866
14. **Kyng Horn, Floris and Blancheflour**, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, B.D. ,,
15. **Political, Religious, and Love Poems**, ed. F. J. Furnivall. ,,
16. **The Book of Quinte Essence**, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1*s.* [*In print.*] ,,
17. **Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman**, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 1*s.* [*In print.*] ,,
18. **Hali Meidenhad**, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne. [*In print.*] ,,
19. **Lyndesay's Monarche**, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* [*In print.*] ,,
20. **Hampole's English Prose Treatises**, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 1*s.* [*In print.*] ,,
21. **Merlin**, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4*s.* [*In print.*] ,,
22. **Partenay or Lusignen**, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. ,,
23. **Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyt**, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10*s.* 6*d.* [*In print.*] ,,
24. **Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils**, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. [*At Press.* 1867
25. **The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Clene Maydenhod**, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1*s.* ,,
26. **Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse**, from R. Thornton's MS. (ab. 1440), ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2*s.* ,,
27. **Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary**, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12*s.* ,,
28. **William's Vision of Piers the Plowman**, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6*s.* ,,
29. **Old English Homilies** (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7*s.* ,,
30. **Piercе the Ploughmans Crede**, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2*s.* ,,

31. **Myrc's Duties of a Parish Priest**, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4*s*. 1868
32. **Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Norture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruynge, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c.**, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12*s*. ,,
33. **The Knight de la Tour Landry**, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. 8*s*. ,,
34. **Old English Homilies** (before 1300 A.D.). Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8*s*. ,,
35. **Lyndesay's Works**, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2*s*. ,,
36. **Merlin**, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie. 12*s*. 1869
37. **Sir David Lyndesay's Works**, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaits. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4*s*. ,,
38. **William's Vision of Piers the Plowman**, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10*s*. 6*d*. ,,
39. **Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy.** Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I. 10*s*. 6*d*. ,,
40. **English Gilds**, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21*s*. 1870
41. **William Lauder's Minor Poems.** Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3*s*. ,,
42. **Bernardus De Cura Rei Famuliaris**, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2*s*. ,,
43. **Ratis Raving**, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3*s*. ,,
44. **The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathie, or The Holy Grail**: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph: ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5*s*. 1871
45. **King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care**, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10*s*. ,,
46. **Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems**, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10*s*. ,,
47. **Sir David Lyndesay's Works**, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3*s*. ,,
48. **The Times' Whistle**, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6*s*. ,,
49. **An Old English Miscellany**, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10*s*. 1872
50. **King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care**, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10*s*. ,,
51. **The Life of St Juliana**, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock. 2*s*. ,,
52. **Palladius on Husbondrie**, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10*s*. ,,
53. **Old-English Homilies**, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8*s*. 1873
54. **The Vision of Piers Plowman**, Text C: **Richard the Redeles** (by William, the author of the *Vision*) and **The Crowned King**; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18*s*. ,,
55. **Generydes**, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3*s*. ,,
56. **The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy**, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10*s*. 6*d*. 1874
57. **The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"**; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10*s*. 6*d*. ,,
58. **The Blickling Homilies**, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8*s*. ,,
59. **The "Cursor Mundi,"** in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15*s*. 1875
60. **Meditacyuns on the Soper of our Lorde** (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2*s*. 6*d*. ,,
61. **The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceldoune**, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10*s*. 6*d*. ,,
62. **The "Cursor Mundi,"** in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15*s*. 1876
63. **The Blickling Homilies**, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7*s*. ,,
64. **Francis Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams**, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7*s*. ,,
65. **Be Domes Dæge** (Bede's *De Die Judicii*), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2*s*. ,,
66. **The "Cursor Mundi,"** in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10*s*. 1877
67. **Notes on Piers Plowman**, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21*s*. ,,
68. **The "Cursor Mundi,"** in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25*s*. 1878
69. **Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II.**, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5*s*. ,,
70. **Generydes**, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4*s*. ,,
71. **The Lay Folks Mass-Book**, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25*s*. 1879
72. **Palladius on Husbondrie**, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15*s*. ,,
73. **The Blickling Homilies**, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10*s*. 1880
74. **English Works of Wyclif**, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20*s*. ,,
75. **Catholicon Anglicum**, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20*s*. 1881
76. **Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints**, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10*s*. ,,
77. **Beowulf**, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25*s*. 1882
78. **The Fifty Earliest English Wills**, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7*s*. ,,
79. **King Alfred's Orosius**, from Lord Tollemache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13*s*. 1883
Extra Volume. **Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary**, 8th cent., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15*s*. ,,
80. **The Early-English Life of St. Katherine** and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Einenkel. 12*s*. 1884
81. **Piers Plowman**: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18*s*. ,,
82. **Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints**, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12*s*. 1885
83. **The Oldest English Texts**, Charters, &c., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20*s*. ,,
84. **Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife.'** No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1*s*. 1886
85. **The Three Kings of Cologne.** 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17*s*. ,,
86. **Prose Lives of Women Saints**, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12*s*. ,,
87. **Early English Verse Lives of Saints** (earliest version). Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20*s*. 1887
88. **Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburghe** (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10*s*. ,,

89. **Vices and Virtues**, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part I. 8*s*. 1888
90. **Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet**, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12*s*. ,,
91. **Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books**, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10*s*. ,,
92. **Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter**, from the Trin. Cambr. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12*s*. 1889
93. **Defensor's Liber Scintillarum**, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12*s*. ,,
94. **Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints**, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 12*s*. 1890
95. **The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History**, re-edited by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I. 18*s*. ,,
(With Reprints of No. 16, **The Book of Quinte Essence**, and No. 26, **Religious Pieces**, from R. Thornton's MS.)
96. **The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History**, re-edited by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. II. 15*s*. 1891
97. **The Earliest English Prose Psalter**, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15*s*. ,,
98. **Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.**, Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20*s*. 1892
99. **Cursor Mundi**. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10*s*. ,,
100. **Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine**, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20*s*. 1893
101. **Cursor Mundi**. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10*s*. ,,
102. **Lanfranc's Cirurgie**, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20*s*. 1894
103. **The Prymer or Lay-Folk's Prayer-Book**, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. 10*s*. ,,
104. **The Exeter Book** (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20*s*. 1895
105. **The Legend of the Cross**, from a 12th century MS., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. ,,
106. 1896
107. ,,

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1867-1893 (*one guinea each year*) *are*:—

I. **William of Palerne**; or, **William and the Werwolf**. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13*s*. 1867
II. **Early English Pronunciation** with especial Reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10*s*. ,,
III. **Caxton's Book of Curtesye**, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5*s*. 1868
IV. **Havelok the Dane**. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10*s*. ,,
V. **Chaucer's Boethius**. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris 12*s*. ,,
VI. **Chevelere Assigne**. Re-edited from the unique MS. by H. H. Gibbs, Esq., M.A 3*s*. ,,
VII. **Early English Pronunciation**, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10*s*. 1869
VIII. **Queene Elizabethes Achademy**, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 15*s*. ,,
IX. **Awdeley's Fraternitye of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat**, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 7*s*. 6*d*. ,,
X. **Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3**. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18*s*. 1870
XI. **Barbour's Bruce**, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12*s*. ,,
XII. **England in Henry VIII.'s Time**: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12*s*. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8*s*.) 1871
XIII. **A Supplicacyon of the Beggers**, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with **A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde**; **A Supplication of the Poore Commons**; and **The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep**, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6*s*. ,,
XIV. **Early English Pronunciation**, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10*s*. ,,
XV. **Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth**, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12*s*. 1872
XVI. **Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe**. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6*s*. ,,
XVII. **The Complaynt of Scotlande**, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10*s*. ,,
XVIII. **The Complaynt of Scotlande**, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8*s*. 1873
XIX. **Oure Ladyes Myroure**, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24*s*. ,,
XX. **Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail** (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8*s*. 1874
XXI. **Barbour's Bruce**, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4*s*. ,,
XXII. **Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderyck Mors** (ab. 1542): and **The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London**, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9*s*. ,,
XXIII. **Early English Pronunciation**, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10*s*. ,,
XXIV. **Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail**, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10*s*. 1875
XXV. **Guy of Warwick**, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20*s*. ,,
XXVI. **Guy of Warwick**, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14*s*. 1876
XXVII. **Bp. Fisher's English Works** (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16*s*. ,,
XXVIII. **Lonelich's Holy Grail**, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10*s*. 1877
XXIX. **Barbour's Bruce**. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21*s*. ,,
XXX. **Lonelich's Holy Grail**, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15*s*. 1878
XXXI. **The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus**, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6*s*. ,,
XXXII. **Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time."** Pt. I. **Starkey's Life and Letters**, ed. S. J. Herrtage. 8*s*. ,,
XXXIII. **Gesta Romanorum** (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15*s*. 1879
XXXIV. **The Charlemagne Romances**:—1. **Sir Ferumbras**, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Herrtage. 15*s*. ,,

XXXV. **Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c.,** ed. S. J. Herrtage. 12*s.* 1880
XXXVI. **Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete,** Pt. I., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 16*s.* ,,
XXXVII. **Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete,** Pt. II., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 15*s.* 1881
XXXVIII. **Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone,** ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15*s.* ,,
XXXIX. **Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyear, Roland, Otuel, &c.,** ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15*s.* 1882
XL. **Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux,** by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15*s.* ,,
XLI. **Charlemagne Romances:—8. Huon of Burdeux,** by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II. 15*s.* 1883
XLII. **Guy of Warwick:** 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 15*s.* ,,
XLIII. **Charlemagne Romances:—9. Huon of Burdeux,** by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III. 15*s.* 1884
XLIV. **Charlemagne Romances:—10. The Four Sons of Aymon,** ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15*s.* ,,
XLV. **Charlemagne Romances:—11. The Four Sons of Aymon,** ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20*s.* 1885
XLVI. **Sir Bevis of Hamton,** from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part I. 10*s.* ,,
XLVII. **The Wars of Alexander,** ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20*s.* 1886
XLVIII. **Sir Bevis of Hamton,** ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part II. 10*s.* ,,
XLIX. **Guy of Warwick,** 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15*s.* 1887
L. **Charlemagne Romances:—12. Huon of Burdeux,** by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5*s.* ,,
LI. **Torrent of Portyngale,** from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10*s.* ,,
LII. **Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578** (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10*s.* 1888
LIII. **Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548,** ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15*s.* ,,
LIV. **Caxton's Englishing of Alain Chartier's Curial,** ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5*s.* ,,
LV. **Barbour's Bruce,** ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5*s.* 1889
LVI. **Early English Pronunciation,** by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25*s.* ,,
LVII. **Caxton's Eneydos,** A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13*s.* 1890
LVIII. **Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine,** c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17*s.* ,,
LIX. **Guy of Warwick,** 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15*s.* 1891
LX. **Lydgate's Temple of Glass,** re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15*s.* ,,
LXI. **Hoccleve's Minor Poems,** I., from the Phillipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15*s.* 1892
LXII. **The Chester Plays,** re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I. 15*s.* ,,
LXIII. **Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi,** englisht ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15*s.* 1893
LXIV. **Caxton's Godfrey of Boloyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem,** 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15*s.* ,,
LXV. **Sir Bevis of Hamton,** ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part III. 15*s.* 1894
LXVI. **Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres,** ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15*s.* ,,
LXVII. 1895
LXVIII. ,,

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Cover of the Early English Text Society's last books, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

Thomas Robinson's Life and Death of Mary Magdalene, from the 2 MSS., ab. 1620 A.D. (*Text in type.*)
The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.
Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by I. Gollanez, M.A.
Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.
Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part IV, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.
All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.
The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Logeman and F. Harsley, B.A.
Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., ed. Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
Byrhtferth's Handboc, edited by Prof. G. Hempl.
The Secret of Secrets, 3 prose versions from MSS., 2 at Lambeth, and one by Jas. Younge, 1420, ed. R. Steele, B.A.
The Rule of St. Benet: 5 Texts, Anglo-Saxon, Early English, Caxton, &c., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.
The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.
The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. Mr. T. Austin.
Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.
Lonelich's Merlin (verse), from the unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson and Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D.
Merlin (prose), Part IV., containing Preface, Index, and Glossary. Edited by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.
Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.
Early English Confessionals, edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.
Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, edited by Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.

Lanfranc's Cirurgic, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.
William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby. (*Editor Wanted.*)
A Chronicle of England to 1327 A.D., Northern verse (42,000 lines), ab. 1400 A.D., ed. M. L. Perrin, B.A.
More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House. (*Editor Wanted.*)
Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops' Registers, &c., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.
Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A., and J. Meadows Cowper.
Early Norwich Wills, edited by Walter Rye, and F. J. Furnivall.
The Cartularies of Oseney Abbey and Godstow Nunnery, englisht ab. 1450, ed. Rev. A. Clark, M.A.
The Macro Moralities, edited from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., by Alfred W. Pollard, M.A.
A Troy-Book, edited from the unique Land MS. 595, by Dr. E. Wülfing.
Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph. D.
Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.
Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
Scire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Miss Rosa Elverson, LL.A., and Miss Florence Gilbert.
Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson.
De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by G. N. Currie, M.A.
Stories for Sermons, edited from the Addit. MS. 25,719 by Dr. Wieck of Coblentz.
A 15th Century Treatise on Arithmetic, edited by Robert Steele, B.A.
Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
Jacob's Well, from a Salisbury Cathedral MS., ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
The Diary of Prior Moore of Worcester, A.D. 1518-35, from the unique MS., ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
The pore Caitiff, from its MSS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.
Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276 &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.
Promptorium Parvulorum, c. 1440, from the Winchester MS., ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A.

EXTRA SERIES.

Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part II. [*At Press.*
Bp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II., with his **Life and Letters**, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [*At Press.*
William Staunton's St. Patrick's Purgatory, &c., ed. J. T. Herbert, M.A.
A Parallel-text of the 6 MSS. of the Ancren Riwle, ed. Prof. Dr. E. Kölbing.
Trevisa's Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. H. and M. Bullen. Pt. II.
The Romance of Boctus and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
The Romance of Clariodus, re-edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.
Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.
Maundeville's Voiage and Travaile, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c., by Miss M. Bateson.
Arthour and Merlin, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
Guy of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
The Sege of Jerusalem, Text A, edited from the MSS. by Dr. F. Kopka.
Liber Fundacionis Ecclesie Sancti Bartholomei Londoniarum: englisht ab. 1425, ed. Norman Moore, M.D.
Awdelay's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Donee 302, by Dr. E. Wülfing.
William of Shoreham's Works, re-edited by Professor Konrath, Ph.D.
The Wyse Chylde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwich School, Harl. 2099 &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.
Caxton's Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophirs, 1477, with Lord Tollemache's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler, Esq.
Caxton's Book of the Ordre of Chyualry, collated with Loutfut's Scotch copy, ed. F. S. Ellis, Esq.
Lydgate's Court of Sapience, edited by Dr. Borsdorf.
Lydgate's Lyfe of oure Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.
Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. J. Schick.
Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.
Jn. Hart's Orthographie, MS. 1551; black and fonetic letters, 1569, ed. Dr. Otto Jespersen.
Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.
The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.
The Romance of Sir Degare, re-edited by Dr. Breul.
Mulcaster's Positions 1581, and **Elementarie** 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Klaehr, Dresden.
Caxton's Recuyell of the Histories of Troye, edited by H. Halliday Sparling.

The Society is anxious to hear of more early Dialect MSS. Misyn's englishings, in the Lincoln dialect, 1434-5, of two of Hampole's Tracts, are in type. John Lacy's copy, in the Newcastle-on-Tyne dialect, 1434, of some theological tracts in MS. 94 of St. John's College, Oxford, is to be edited by Prof. McClintock. Prof. Napier will reprint his copy of a bit of a Hymn in the Chester dialect late in the 13th century. More Hampoles in the Yorkshire dialect will follow. The Lincoln and Norfolk Wills, already copied by or for Dr. Furnivall, unluckily show but little traces of dialect.

More members (to bring money) and Editors (to bring brains) are wanted by the Society.

Lanfrank's "Science of Cirurgie."

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

1894.

KD30
.L36
1874

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

OLD BOOKS

CORRECTIONS.

Page 18, line 17, *for* vndir oon of þese iij entencioun*s* *read* vndir þese iij entencioun*s* (note : both MSS. insert *oon of*)

,, 19, ,, 18, *for* vp on *read* vpon

,, 25, ,, 1, *for* white oute *read* white (note : MS. inserts *oute*)

,, 25, ,, 12, put a semicolon after *lungis*

,, 27, ,, 13, cancel *to þe maris*

,, 29, ,, 7, cancel the comma between *brayn* and *& þe nueha*, and put a comma after *þe nueha* and after *þe lymes*

,, 30, note 3, *for* fila *read* villi

,, 31, line 7, *for* vunnus *read* vulnus

,, 34, ,, 8, put a full stop after *senewe*, and transfer note 2 to the preceding *þat*

,, 38, ,, 10, *for* humourer *read* humoures

,, 39, ,, 14 and 33, cancel the semicolon after *lyme*

,, 43, ,, 10, put a comma after *drie*

,, 46, ,, 17, cancel the inverted commas

,, 49, ,, 6, put a comma after *myȝt*

,, 52, ,, 16, *for* eills *read* ellis

,, 55, ,, 18, cancel the inverted commas

,, 77, ,, 1, put an asterisk and ellipsis after *condicioun*

,, 77, ,, 19, put an asterisk after *askyth*

,, 83, ,, 1, cancel note 1

,, 89, ,, 6, p. 90, l. 16, p. 99, l. 6, *for* compouuned *read* compou*n*ned

,, 108, ,, 19, cancel the comma after *elepid*

,, 110, sidenote line 1, *for* Tassillus *read* Passillus

CONTENTS.

Ashmole MS. 1396.

[1] **The firste tretis of surgerie** halt wiþinne him general ruelis & [1 leaf 1]
4 canones, & haþ .iij. techingis / þe firste techinge of þe firste tretis,
haþ þre chapitlis. ¶ **Caþ. j.** of þe first tretis of þe firste techynge page 7
is of definiciones & of parties þat ben sugettis to surgerie / **Caþ. ij.** page 8
is of þe qualite, foorme & maners of a surgien / ¶ **Caþ. iij.** is of page 18
8 intencioun of a surgien / **The secunde** techynge of þe first tretis page 20
is on summe & oon chapitle of anotomie, & þat is to seie: þe
knouleche of þe foorme, & þe complexciouns, & þe helpingis of
alle þe senews, veines, grustlis, brawnis, guttis, bladdre, lyuere,
12 milte, & alle opere synguler lymes, & of þe engendringe of þe child
in þe modir wombe / **The first**[2] **techinge of þe first tretis haþ** page 31
.xv. chapitlis /

¶ Caþ. j. of þe þridde techinge of þe **.j.**[3] tretis [4]is of a comoun [4 leaf 1, bk.]
16 word of woundis, & olde woundis / p. 31

[2] *first*, mistake for *þridde*, as below. [3] Chafed: not room for *first*.

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

[5]Assit Principio *Sancta* Maria meo [5 fol. 31 *a*]

þe ffirste tretys of surgerie halt witħ inne hym generaħ Rulys
20 & Canons, & hath þre techynges. þe ffurste techynge of þe furste
tretys haþ þre Chapyttles. Caþ. j. of þe furste techynge of the firste
tretys of dyffiniciones & of partyes þat beþ suggettys to surgerye.
Caþ ij. is of qualite, fforme & Maners of a Surgien.
24 ¶ Caþ. iij. ys of Intencioun of a Surgien. þe secunde techynge
of þe ffyrste tretys ys O summe & on Chapiteħ of a notamye, þat is
to sugge þe knowlechynge of þe forme, & þe complexion, & þe
helpynges of alle þe synwes, veyne, grustlys, brawnys, guttys,
28 bleddre, lyuere, Mylte, & alle opere senglere lymes, & of þe engend-
rynge of þe child in þe modire wombe. The þridde techynge of þe
firste tretys hatħ xv. Chapyteħs. Cap. j. on of þe þridde techynge,
of þe þridde tretys, ys a comyn worde of woundes & olde woundes.

Ashmole 1396.

¶ Cap̄. ij. of heelynge of[1] a wou*n*de I-m*aa*d i*n* fleisch / p. 33
¶ Cap̄. iij of heelynge of a wou*n*de m*aa*d i*n* senewe / p. 39
¶ Cap̄. iiij. of[1] a wounde in þe boon / p. 47
¶ Cap̄. v. of a wou*n*de maad wiþ smytynge / p. 50 4
¶ Cap̄. vj. of a wounde bollid and out[1] of[1] kynde, to hoot[1] or to coold / p. 54
¶ Cap̄. vij. of a wounde of[1] a wode hound or of a uenymous beest / p. 59 8
¶ Cap̄. viij. of a wounde þat is out of ioynte and to-broken / p. 62
¶ Cap̄. ix. of to miche flux of blood of a wou*n*de / p. 64
¶ Cap̄. x. of[1] dietynge of me*n* þat ben wou*n*did / p. 72
¶ Capitulu*m* xi^m of[1] olde woundis / p. 77 12
¶ Capitulum xij^m of[1] a festre[1] / p. 89
¶ Cap̄. xiij. of a canker I-woundid / p. 92
¶ Cap̄. xiiij. of causis þat[1] letten helynge of[1] woundis and of[1] olde wou*n*dis / p. 97 16
¶ Cap̄. xv. of crampe þ*a*t comeþ i*n* a wounde / p. 99

The secunde tretis is of particuler wou*n*dis of alle lymes of office from þe heed to the foot[1], techinge þe anotomie of[1] alle lymes from þe heed to þe foot[1], þat happiþ to be wou*n*did; & þou haddist 20
[2 leaf 2] tofore þe anatomie [2]of veynes & senewis, & o*þe*r smale lymes.

[1] After *festre* in a later hand is written *festula*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap̄. ij. off helynge of a wou*n*de y-makyde in flesch̄.
¶ Cap. iij. off helynge of a wonde y-makyde in þe synwe.
¶. Cap. iiij. of a wou*n*de in þe bon. 24
¶. Cap. v. of a wou*n*de y-makyd w*it*h smytinge.
¶. Cap vj. of a wou*n*de to bolled & out of kynde, to hote o*þe*r to colde
¶. Cap̄. vij. of a wou*n*de of a wod hou*n*d, o*þe*r a venymouse 28 beste.
¶. Cap̄. viij. of a wou*n*de þat is out of Ioynte & to-broken.
¶. Cap̄ ix. of to myche fflux of blod of wou*n*de.
¶. Cap̄. x. of dyotynge of me*n* þ*a*t beþ y-wou*n*dyde. 32
¶. Cap̄. xj. of olde wou*n*des
¶. Cap̄. xij. off a ffestre
¶. Cap̄. xiij. of a cancre y-wou*n*dyd
¶. Cap. xiiij off causes þ*a*t lettyde helynge of wou*n*des & olde 36 wou*n*des
¶. Cap. xv. of crampe þat comyth̄ to wou*n*de

¶. **þe secu*n*de tretis** is of p*a*rticulers wou*n*des of alle lymes of
[3 fol. 31 b] office fro*m* þe hed to þe [3]ffot, & techynge þe Anotamye of alle lymes 40
fro*m* þe hed to þe fote, þ*a*t happyde to be wou*n*dyde; & þ*o*u haddist

Ashmole 1396.

And so whanne þis tretis is ful eendid, þou hast anotamie of alle lymes of[t] þi bodi, & þis tretis vndir oon su*m*me conteyneþ x. chapitlis.

¶ Caп. j. of[t] þe secunde tretis is of wou*n*dis of þe heed and is anotamie / p. 106

¶ Caп. ij. is of woundis of þe face, and of[t] anotamie of þe same face / p. 141

¶ Caп. iij. is of anotamie of þe necke, and of woundis of[t] þe same / p. 145

¶ Caп. iiij. of[t] woundis of[t] schuldris, armes and hondis, & anotamie of þe same / p. 155

¶ Caп v.[1] of[t] wou*n*dis of[t] þe brest, & lymes þ*a*t be*n* wiþi*n*ne þe brest, & anotamie of þe same. p. 161

¶ Caп. vj. of[t] wou*n*dis of þe rigboon & of whirlebones of[t] þe rigge, & of anotamie of þe same / p. 166

¶ Caп vij. of woundis of þe wesou*n*de þ*a*t goþ to þe stomak, & of[t] þe stomak, and of þe guttis, and þe wombe anotamie / p. 167

¶ Caп. viij. of[t] wou*n*dis of þe lyu*e*re & splene. p. 171

¶ Caп. ix. of woundis of þe ȝerde, þat is, in þi pintil, and anotamie / p. 173

[1] v. above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

to forn þe Anotamye of veynes & synwes, & oþ*e*re smale lymes, & so wha*n*ne þis tretys is fully endyde þ*o*u hast anotamye of alle lymes of thy body. And þis tretys under su*m*me *con*teynde x. Chapyttles.

¶. Caп. j. of þe secu*n*de tretys is of wou*n*dys of þe hed, and hys Anotamye.

¶. Caп. ij. is of wou*n*des of þe face, & anotamye of þe same vysage.

¶. Caп. iij. of Anotamie of þe nekke, and of þe wou*n*des of þe same.

¶ Caп. iiij. of wou*n*dys of schuldre. Armys & hondys, & Anotamie of þe same.

¶ Caп. v. of wou*n*des of þe brest, and lymes þ*a*t betн̄ wiþ ynne the brest, & Anotamye of þe same.

¶. Caп. vj. of wou*n*des of þe ruggebone & of whirele bonys of þe rugge, & Anotamye of þe same.

¶. Caп. vij. of wou*n*des off the wesand þ*a*t gotн̄ to the stomak, & of þe stomak, & þe guttes, & þe wombe, & Anotamie of the same.

¶. Caп. viij. of wou*n*des of þe lyffe*r*e & the splene.

¶. Caп ix. of wou*n*des of þe ȝerde, þ*a*t ys thy*n* pyntel, & Anotamie.

Ashmole 1396. ¶ Cap̄. x. of wou*n*dis of þe hau*n*che, þies & feet, and anotamie of[1] þe same / p. 176

sign. ij. *The Ashmole MS. breaks off here.*

Add. MS. 12,056. ¶. Cap. x. of wou*n*des of the hanche, thyes, ffet, a*n*d Anotamye. 4

¶ þe þridde tretis is of cures of oþere seknesse, þ*a*t beþ noȝt wou*n*des þ*a*t mowen falle to dyu*e*rs lymes fro*m* þe hed to þe fote, þ*a*t comyn to be helyde off a surgien, & haþ þre techynges:
þe furste techynge of þe þridde tretys hath viij Chapyttles: 8
¶ Cap. j of the furste techynge of þe þridde tretys ys off Ornamentys of heer. p. 178
¶ Cap. ij ys of ffallynge off heer & of scabbe. p. 180
¶ Cap. iij of whelkys in þe vysage, & scalys and crustlys p. 188 12
[1 fol. 32 *a*] ¶ Cap. iiij of Morfu, ffrakles, [1]Goute, rosed of þe vysage, & Cicatrices of wou*n*des p. 189
¶ Cap. v of ȝycchynge & scabbe p. 191
¶ Cap. vi of drye scabbe & wete scabbe p. 193 16
¶ Cap. vii of lepre, & of knowlechynge of leprys Man p. 196
¶ Cap. viii of fastnynge a lene lyme, & to lenen a fat lyme p. 199
¶ þe secu*n*de techynge of þe þridde tretys is of apostemes, & hath xvij Chapittles 20
¶ Cap. j of þe secu*n*de techynge of þe þridde techynge, of generac*i*ones of humour & here lyknesse p. 201
¶ Cap. ij of vniuersel word of enpostemes p. 204
¶ Cap. iij of enposteme of the hed & watire congregated in 24 children hedys. p. 214
¶ Cap. iiij of emposteme undire þe rote of þe ere. p. 216
¶ Cap. v of aposteme of þe nekke & þe þrote. p. 217
¶ Cap. vj of Aposteme undire þe Arme hole. p. 222 28
¶ Cap. vii of Aposteme þ*a*t comeþ in the arme fro*m* þe schuldre to þe Elbowe. p. 223
¶ Cap. viij off Aposteme þ*a*t comyth on þe sydes. p. 224
¶ [Cap.] ix of Aposteme þ*a*t comeþ aboute þe Mouth of þe 32 stomak. p. 226
¶ Cap. x of apostem that comyth in þe grynde p. 226
¶ Cap. xj of ap*o*steme þ*a*t comyth in þe hanche & þe thyes. p. 227
¶ Cap. xij of Ap*o*steme off þe pyntel & þe ballokes p. 228 36
¶ Cap. xiii of scrofules & glandeles, þ*a*t buþ Curnellys þat comyth in þe fflesch p. 229
¶ Cap. xiiij of Cancre þ*a*t is nouȝt to-broke, & is cure p. 231
¶ Cap. xv of bocche þ*a*t hongyth as swynes babbe undire here 40 nekkys p. 232
¶ Cap. xvj of Akþe of Ioyntes p. 233

¶ The þridde techynge of þe þridde tretys haþ xviij Chapittles Add. MS. 12.056.
¶ Cap. I of seknesse of eyȝen, & Anotamye of þe same p. 240
¶ Cap. ij of seknesse of þe eren p. 254
4 ¶ Cap. iij of seknesse of þe nose p. 258
¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe mouth̄ p. 260
¶ Cap. v of seknesse of a wo*m*mans tetys . to grete, to fatte, [1] oþ*er*e to lene. p. 265 [[1] fol. 32 *b*]
8 ¶ Cap. vi of ciphac þ*a*t is to-broke, oþ*er*e that is to lose p. 268
¶ Cap. vij of brokyn ballok p. 269
¶ Cap. viij of stone in þe bleddre p. 273
¶ Cap. ix of hermofrodite, þ*a*t is to seye, þ*a*t hath̄ þe schappe of
12 Man & wo*m*man, & oþere of wo*m*men þat haþ scyne w*ith*ynne here schape / þ*a*t sche ne may nouȝt co*n*seywe þe seed of man
¶ Cap. x of wat*er* of me*n* þ*a*t beþ in þe dropsye p. 281
¶ Cap. xj of fycus, þat is, a waxynge up on þe hed of þe ȝerde
16 cancre fleynge, bocche in þe pyntel & olde wou*n*de. p. 287
¶ Cap. xij of emeroydes, festre & rogadyes, þat beþ slyttes in þe Erse p. 289
¶ [Cap.] xiij of cancrefis & malo mortuo, þ*a*t buþ olde sores &
20 olde scabbys on þe schyne. p. 293
¶ Cap. xiiij of veynes þ*a*t buþ to grete in þe legges, & of þe leggys þ*a*t buþ to grete out off flesch̄ p. 295
¶ Cap. xv of wryncles, & chynes of handes, & kybis on þe ffete,
24 & wertys, & oþ*er* schyn lyke flessch̄ p. 296
¶ Cap. xvj of helpynges þ*a*t buþ in blod letynge p. 298
¶ Cap. xvij of helpys þat buþ in bre*n*nynge w*ith* yren oþ*ere* w*ith* gold p. 305
28 ¶ Cap. xviij of helpe þ*a*t is w*ith* bre*n*nynge of fyr*e*, hote watyr & oyle p. 312

¶ þe iiij tretys is of wrenchyngis of lymes, & haþ tweye techynges, oþ*er*e tweye su*m*mes.

32 ¶ þe firste techynge of þe furþe tretys haþ vij Chapyttles
¶ Chap̄ j of broken bonys an vniu*er*sel word [*missing*]
¶ Cap. ij of bonys þ*a*t buþ broken of þe face p. 313
¶ Cap. iij of bonys þ*a*t buþ broken of þe breste p. 316
36 ¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þ*a*t buþ brokyn of þe rybbes, & þe rugge bon. p. 317
¶ Cap. v of Armys þ*a*t buþ broken p. 318
¶ Cap. vi of bonys þat buþ bende w*ith*outen brekynge p. 321
40 ¶ þe [2] Secu*n*de techynge off þe ffurþe Tretys haþ v Chapytells [[2] fol. 33 *a*]
¶ þe firste chapyttle of þe secu*n*de techynge a comyn word off wrenchynges out of Ioynte [*missing*]
¶ Cap. ij of dislocac*io*u*n* of þe cheke bon. p. 314
44 ¶ Cap. iij of dislocaciou*n* of þe rugge bon. p. 322
¶ Cap. iiij of dislocaciou*n* of þe schuldre & about þe schuldr*e* p. 323
¶ Cap. v of dislocaciou*n* of þe þyȝe bon & w*ith*ynne p. 326

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ The ffyþe tretys is Antidotarie, & hath w*ith*ynne hy*m* vij chapitells

¶ Cap. j of castynge abache, & þe manere how þou schalt caste abacch p. 328 4

¶ Cap. ij of resolueres & manere of vndoynge & makynge nessche p. 333

¶ Cap. iij of Maturatiuis, þat buþ Ripers p. 336

¶ Cap. iiij of Mundificatiuis, þat beþ clanseres p. 339 8

¶ Cap. v of glutinatiuis & *con*solidatiuis, þat buþ closeres & *con*souderes, & þe difference of he*m* p. 342

¶ Cap. vj of he*m* þat make*n* nessche hardnesse p. 353

¶ Cap. vij of Cauterisinge, that is to sugge bre*nn*ynge, & opnynge þe extremites p. 349 12

Ashmole MS. 1396.

SCIENCE OF CIRURGIE.

[1 lf. 2, bk.]

[1]Now þese chapitles of þis book ben y-ordeyned, I wole fulfille my purpos pursuynge ech chapitle bi ordre, & confermynge my wordis aftir þe auctorite of myn auctouris and wiþ exp*er*iment þat
4 I haue longe tyme vsed wiþ þe help of god. // // //

Capm. jm

Al þing þat we wolde knowe, bi oon of .iij. maners þat we moun knowe, eiþir bi his name, or by his worchinge, or bi his verri beynge schewynge p*ro*pirte of hi*m*-silf / In þis
8 þre maner we mou*n* knowe surgerie bi expownynge of his name; for siurge comeþ of siros, þat is a word of gru, & in englisch siros is an hand, & gyros gru, þat is worchinge in englisch / For þe ende & þe p*ro*fite of syurgie is * [of hand-wyrchynge. Of þe Name of
12 a thynge Galyen seyth̄: he þ*a*t wyl knowe] soþfastnes of a þing, bisie hi*m* nou3t to knowe þe name of a þing, but þe worchinge & þe effete of þe same þi*n*g / Therfore he þat wole knowe wh*a*t siurgie is, he moot vndirstonde, þat it is a medicinal science, which techiþ us
16 to worche wiþ handis i*n* ma*n*nes bodi, wiþ kuttynge or openynge þe

Surgery is from Greek *cheir* a hand, and *ergon* work.

It is a medicinal science:

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

NOW the Chapitelles of þis bok buþ y-ordeynde, y wyl fulfylle
20 my purpos, p*ur*suynge ev*er*y chapyteH by ordere, & *con*fermynge my wordys aft*er* þe Autorite of my*n* Autores, & wiþ exp*er*yment þ*a*t y haue longe tyme y-vsyde w*ith* help of god.

AL thynge þat we wolde knowe, by on of þre man*er*es we mowe
24 knowe, oþ*er*e by hys name ore by hys worchynge, oþ*er*e by hys v*er*rey beynge schewynge p*ro*pirte of hym selff. In þis þre man*ere* we mowe knowe surge*r*ie by expownynge of hys name; ffor syrugie cometh of syros, þ*a*t ys a word of grew3, & in englysschē syros ys
28 an hand, & gyros grew3, þ*a*t ys worchynge an Englysschē; for þe ende & þe p*ro*phyte of surgerye ys* of hand wyrchynge. Of þe Name of a thynge Galyen seyth̄: he þ*a*t wyl knowe* soþfastnesse of a thynge, besye hy*m* no3t to knowe þe name [2]of a thynge, bute þe
32 worchynge & þe Effecte of þe same thynge; where fore he þ*a*t wyl knowe surge*r*ie ys, he mote vndirstonde, þ*a*t yt is a medycineal sciense, whyche techiþ vs to worche w*ith* handes in Ma*n*nes body, in

[2 fol. 33 b]

cutting, healing, and removing excrescences.

parties þat ben hole & in helynge þo þat' ben broken, or kutt, as þei were toforn, [1] or ellis as nyȝ as a man may, & also in doynge awey þat is to myche skyn: as wertis or wennys, or þe fleisch to hiȝe //

[1 leaf 3]

¶ þe secunde chapitle of þe firste tretis is of þe qualitees, maners, and kunnynge of a surgian //

¶ Capm ijm

A surgeon must be a temperate and well made man. An ugly man can't have good manners.

NEdeful it' is þat a surgian be of' a complexcioun weel proporcioun'd, and þat' his complexcioun be temperat / Races seiþ, who-so is nouȝt' semelich, is ympossible to haue good maners *[& Auicenne: euyle maners] but' folowen þe lijknes of an yuele complexioun/ A surgian muste haue handis weel schape, longe smale fyngris, and his body not quakynge, & al must ben of sutil witt', for al þing' þat' longiþ to siurgie may not' wiþ lettris ben writen. He muste studie in alle þe parties of philofie & in logik, þat he mowe vndirstonde scripturis; in gramer, þat' he speke congruliche; in[2] arte, þat techiþ him to proue his proporcioun's wiþ good resoun; in retorik þat' techiþ him to speke semelich. Be he no glotoun, ne noon enuyous, ne a negard; be he trewe, vnbeliche,[3] & plesyng'liche bere he him-silf to hise pacientis; speke he noon ribawdrie in þe sike mannis [4] hous /

He must know Philosophy, Logic, Grammar, and Rhetoric.

He must not be a glutton or a niggard, but pleasant with his patients,

[* lf. 3, bk.]

[2] Lat.: quod docet dialectica

[3] *humbilly* in margin, in smaller hand.

Add. MS. 12,056.

kuttynge ore opnynge þo partyes þat ben hol, & in helynge þo that ben tobroken oþere kutte, as þey were to fore, oþere ellys as nyȝ as a Man may, and al so in doynge aweye þat ys to myche above þe schyn: as wertys, oþere wennys, oþer flesch to hyȝh.

¶ The secunde ChapiteH of þe ffurste Tretys is of þe qualites, maners and cunnynge of a surgien.

Nedfful ys þat a surgien be of a Complexioun wel proporcyonede, & þat is complexioun be temperat. **Rasys** seiþ, whose face ys nouȝt semlye, ys inpossible to hauen gode maners; *& **Auicenne**: euyle maners* beþ folwynge þe lyknesse of an yuele complexioun. A surgien moste han handys wel schape, longe smale ffyngres, and hys body nought quakynge, & alle hys lymes able to fulfyllen gode werkynges of hys soule. He most ben of sotyl wytt, ffor alle þynge þat longyth to surgerye may nought wiþ lettres ben wryten. He moste stodyen in alle þe partyes of natureH ffylosophye & in logyk, þat he mowe vndirstonde scriptures; in gramere, þat he speke congrulyche; in art, þat techyth hym to preven ys proposiciones with gode resoun; in retoryk, þat techith hym to speke semlyche; be he non glotoun, non spowsbrekere, ne Envyous, ne no nygarde; be he trewe, vmbelyche [5] & plesynglyche bere he hym-self to hys pacientis; speke he non Rybaudye in þe seke mannys house, ne in þe seke

[5 fol. 34. a]

ȝeue he no counseil, but[t] if[f] he be axid; ne speke he wiþ no wo*m*man in folie in þe sik mannes hous; ne chide not wiþ þe sike ma*n* ne wiþ noon of[f] hise meyne, but curteisli speke to þe sijk man, and in almaner sijknes bihote hi*m* heele, þouȝ þou be of[f] hi*m* dispeirid; but neuer þe lattere seie to hise freendis þe caas as it stant / Loue he noon harde curis, & entermete he nouȝt of[f] þo þat ben in dispeir. Pore men helpe he bi his myȝt, and of[f] þe riche men axe he good reward / Preise he nouȝt[t] him-silf wiþ his owne mouþ, ne blame he nouȝt scharpliche o*þe*re lechis; loue he alle lechis & clerkis, & bi his myȝt[1] make he no leche his enemye. So cloþe he hi*m* wiþ ve*r*tues, þat[t] of[f] hi*m* mai arise good fame & name; & þis techiþ etik. So lerne he fisik, þ*a*t he mowe wiþ good rulis his surgerie defende & þat[t] techiþ fisik / Neþeles it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe alle þe parties and ech sengle partie of[f] a medicyn. For if[f] a surgian ne knewe nouȝt þe science of elementis, whiche þat ben firstmoost force of natural þingis & of dyuers lymes, he mai n*o*t [2]knowe science of[f] conioun*cion*s, þat[t] is to seie, medlyngis & complexiou*n*s þat[t] ben nessessarie to his craft[t] / A surgian muste knowe þat[t] alle bodies þat[t] ben medlid vndir þe sercle of[f] þe moone, ben engendrid of[f] foure

and must in desperate cases even promise recovery, but tell the truth to the patient's friends.

He should make the rich pay for the poor.

He shall not praise himself or blame other physicians.

He must know Physics, Medicine,

[2 leaf 3*]

and the science of mixtures.

[1] *myȝt* in margin.

Ma*n*nes house gif no*n* cou*n*seyle bote he be y-askyde, ne speke he w*ith* non wo*m*man in no[3] folye in þe seke Ma*n*nes howse, ne chyde nought w*ith* þe seke Man ne w*ith* none of hys meyne; but curteslye speke to þe syke ma*n*, & in alle man*e*re syknesse behote hy*m* hele, þowȝ þou be of hy*m* dyspeyred; but neu*e*re þe latter*e* seye to hys frendys, þe cas as yt stant. Loue he no*n* harde curys, & entyremete he nought of þo þ*a*t beþ in dyspeyre. Pore me*n* helpe he be hys myght, & of ryche me*n* aske he gode rewarde. Preyse he nought hy*m*selff w*ith* hys owne mouth̄, ne blame he nought scharplye o*þe*re lechys; loue he alle lechys & Clerkys, & by hys myght make he no*n* leche hys enmye. So cloþe he hy*m* w*ith* vertues, þ*a*t of hy*m* mowe a-rysen gode fame & name, & þis techyth̄ Etyk. So lerne he ffysik, þ*a*t he mowe w*ith* gode rulys hys Surgerye deffende, & þ*a*t techith̄ ffysik. Naþeles yt ys necessarye a surgien to knowe alle þe p*ar*tyes in eche sengle p*ar*tye of a medycine, ffor ȝif a surgien knowe noȝt þe sciens of Elementis, whiche þ*a*t buþ furst Meverys of naturel þynges & of dyu*er*se lymes, he may noȝt knowe sciense of *con*-iunctiou*n*es, þ*a*t ys to seye, medlynges & *com*plexiou*n*s þ*a*t beþ necessarye to hys crafte. A surgien most knowe þ*a*t alle bodyes þ*a*t be*n* medlyde, þ*a*t ben vndir*e* þe cercle of þe Mone, be*n* engen-

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3] *no* above the line.

There are four elements: fire, water, earth, and air.

By mixture of their qualities new forms arise capable of being endowed with life.

symple bodies, her lijknes ech in o*þe*re medlynge; þat is to seie: fier & watir, erþe & eir: þese[1] elementis for þe vttirmeste eende, & þe vttermeste contrariouste of here qualitees were fer drawen from bodilich lijf; but whanne her qualitees, þat is to seie, maner of beynge, comen into medlynge, so þat þe leeste partie of þat oon entre into þe leeste partie of þat o*þe*r *par*tie, medlynge brekiþ her contrariouste; & þerof comen a newe foorme, & a newe complexciou*n* of þe medlynge of her substau*n*ce / Also þe medlynge of qualitees & þe quantitees is fer drawen from þe contrariouste of þe same elementis, & so complexiou*n* is nyȝ brouȝt to a mele; & so þat þat is medlid is more able to resceiue þe noble foorme of lijf, þe which nobilite aboue alle bodies I-medlid is fou*n*den i*n* ma*n*nes spirit. But for þat þe qualitees *þat* wiþ þo bodies of elementis [2]comen into medlynge, & it is vnpossible to departe þo qualitees from bodies þat be*n* foure: hoot, coold, moist & drie, & complexiou*n*s be*n* bi hem, it is nessessarie to fynde in bodies *þat* be*n* medlid foure complexiou*n*s / Complexiou*n* is no þing ellis but a maner qualite medlid i*n* worchinge & suffrynge of contrarious qualitees þat ben founden in elementis, so *þat* þe leeste partie of ech element entre into þe leeste *par*tie of þe o*þe*re. & for þat ilke

The noblest of all these is the human spirit.

sign. iiij. [2 lf. 3*, bk.]

There are 4 qualities and complexions,

[1] *ben* above line.

Add. MS. 12 056.

[3 fol. 34 b]

dryd of foure symple bodyes, here lyknesse eche in o*þe*re medly*n*g; *þat* ys to sugge, fyr & eyre, erþe & water. þese elementys, ffor þe outemast ende & outemast *contrar*yousite of here qualites, were*n* fer drawen fro*m* bodily lyffe; but wha*n*ne here [3]qualytes, *þat* is to sugge man*e*re of beyinge, comyn in to medlynge, so *þat* þe leste partye of *þat* on entre in to þe leste partye of þat o*þe*re partye, medlynge brekytħ here *con*trariosite, & *þe*re of co*m*me a newe forme & a newe *com*plexiou*n* of þe medlynge of here *su*bstau*n*ce. Al so þe medlynge of þe qualitees & þe quantites ys fer drawyn fro*m* þe *con*traryousite of þe same elementes, & so *com*plexiou*n* is nyȝħ brought to a mene, & so *þat* þat ys medlyde ys more able to resseyue*n* þe noble forme of lyff, þe whiche noblete aboffe alle bodyes y-medlyde ys y-fou*n*den in Ma*n*nys spiryt. But for þat þe qualites, *þat* w*ith* þo bodyes of Elementes comytħ in to Medlynge—& yt ys vnpossible to departe þo qualites fro*m* bodyes—ben foure: hot, colde, moyst, & drye, & *com*plexiou*n*s ben by ham, yt ys necessarie to fynden in bodyes *þat* ben medlyde, foure *com*plexiou*n*s; Complexiou*n* ys noþynge ellys but a man*e*re qualite medlyde in worchynge, & suffrynge of *contrar*iose qualites *þat* buþ fou*n*den in Elementis, so *þat* þe leste partye of eche elemente entre in to þe leste partye of þe o*þe*re partye. And for *þat* þilke foure co*m*plexiou*n*s: hot, colde,

.iiij. complexiou*n*s, hoot, moist, coold & drie, sumtyme ben y-com-
ponED, þat' is to seie, medlid, þer come*n* i*n* hem .viij. as: hoot' &
drie, hoot' & moist, & coold & drie, and coold & moist' / Foure of
4 þese ben symple, and foure componED; & for þilke .viij. su*m*tyme
ben wiþ mater, & sumtyme wiþoute mater / þer ben .xvj.; & for þilke
xvj. aftir sum consideraciou*n* mou*n* be naturel to su*m*man, & su*m*man
v*n*naturel / þer mou*n* be .xxxij. Neu*er*eþelatter among' alle þe com-
8 plexiou*n*s þ*a*t ma*n* mai fy*n*de, þat is componED of' dyu*er*s qualitees, þ*er*e
ne is noon so temp*er*at, as is ma*n*nes complexiou*n*; & hauynge reward
to ma*n*nes complexioun, alle o*þer*e þingis *[ys] I-clepid, hoot', coold,
moist, [1] ei*þer* drie. / Wha*n*ne [2] þ*a*t a mete or a medicyn haþ suffrid
12 kyndely heete þat' is i*n* man, þ*a*t heetiþ hi*m* nouȝt, ne drieþ hi*m*
nouȝt, ne moistiþ hym nouȝt, so þ*a*t ma*n*nes complexiou*n* may not
conseyue whe*þer* it' coldiþ hi*m*, heetiþ or drieþ or moistiþ hi*m*: it' is
clepid temp*er*at' / & þilke þi*n*g þ*a*t we seie is hoot' in þe firste
16 degree, þat' is I-heet' of kyndely heete þat' is in oure bodies, & heetiþ
oure bodies wiþouten greuau*n*cis / & þilke we seien to be hoot in þe
secu*n*de degree, which þat' is het' of our*e* kyndely heete, so heetiþ
oure bodi þat' he ne myȝte heete us no more wiþoute greuau*n*ce /

hot, moist, cold, and dry.
By mixing them we get 8;
and as these may be either with or without matter, 16;
and as they are either natural or unnatural in some men, 32.
Compared with men's complexion,
[1 leaf 4]
other things are hot, cold, moist, or dry.
A medicine which does not affect a man's complexion is called temperate.
A hot meat or medicine may be hot,
in 1 gradu,
in 2 gradu,

[2] A mistranslation from the Latin: Illam namque rem . . . dicimus esse temperatam, quæ cum *passa fuerit* a calore naturali, qui est in nobis, non calefit, etc.

---

20 moiste & drye, su*m*tyme ben y-componyd, þ*a*t ys to sugge medlyde, Add. MS. 12,056.
þ*er*e come*n* of he*m* VIII, as hote & drye, hote & moist, colde &
drye, colde & moiste; ffoure of þese ben symple, & foure ben com-
ponyd. And for þilke VIII su*m*tyme ben w*ith* mater, su*m*tyme
24 w*i*thoute mater, þ*er*e ben XVI; & for þilke XVI, aft*er* su*m* con-
sideraciou*n* mowe ben nat*ur*eH to su*m* Man, [3]& to su*m* man vn [3 fol. 35 *a*]
natureH, þ*er*e mowe ben XXXII. Nev*er*e þe lattere amonge alle
þe *com*plexiou*n*s þ*a*t man may fynde*n*, þ*a*t is *com*ponyd of dyu*er*se
28 qualites, þ*er*e nys no*n* so temp*er*at as ys ma*n*nes *com*plexiou*n*;
havynge rewarde to ma*n*nes *com*plexiou*n*, alle o*þer*e þynge ys*
clepyde colde, hote, moyst*e*, o*þer*e drye. Wha*n*ne þat a mete, o*þer*e
a medycine, hath y-suffryde kendlye hete þ*a*t ys in Man, & hetyth
32 hy*m* no*ȝ*t & colyth hy*m* nau*ȝ*t, ne dryeþ hy*m* no*ȝ*t, ne moysted hy*m*
no*ȝ*t, so þ*a*t ma*n*nes co*m*plexiou*n* may no*ȝ*t co*n*seyve*n* whe*þer* yt
colde hy*m*, ore hete, dry*ȝ*e, o*þer*e moyste, yt is clepyde te*m*per*a*t; &
þilke thynge we sigge is **hot in þe firste degre**, þ*a*t ys y-hatte of
36 kendlye hete, þ*a*t ys in our*e* bodyes & hetyth oure bodyes w*ith*out*e*n
grevau*n*ce, & þilke we sigge*n* be **hote in þe secunde degre**, whiche
þ*a*t ys y-hette of oure kendlye hete, so hetyth our*e* body, þ*a*t he ne
my*ȝ*te hete vs namore w*ith*out*e*n greuau*n*ce; **hot in þe þridde degre:**

in 3 gradu, in 4 gradu.

þilke we seie to be hoot in þe þridde degree, which þat is het of [1]kyndely heete bryngiþ to oure bodi sensible greuaunce. & þilke is in þe fourþe degree, þat is hot of [2]vnkyndely heete, distroieþ þe bodi openliche / & in þis same maner ȝe moun knowe degrees þat ben colde / I mai preue in þis maner, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe complexiouns of bodies, lymes, & of medicyns. Take .ij. men þat ben of oon age, & lete hem ben I-woundid wiþ a swerd or a knyf[3] þwert ouer þe arm in oon hour & in oon place; oon of þe men is of an [4]hoot complexioun & a moist, þat oþer of a cold complexioun & a drie. þe comoun seiynge of lewid men is þat þei schulden boþe ben helid on o maner; but resonable surgerie I-preued techiþ us, þat þei ne schulde not boþe be helid aftir oon maner / For he þat haþ an hoot complexioun, & a moist, may liȝtly haue an hoot enpostym—þat is an hoot swellynge—& þat may be cause of an hoot feuere. What schalt þou þanne do? þou must loke, wheþer he haþ bled myche blood at his wounde, and þanne it is weel; ellis lete him blood of þe contrarious arme, or ellis*—of þe oon same side, if strenkþe & age acorde; or ventose[5] him on þe two buttokkis, if þat he be feble. & if he may not schite[6] oones a day, helpe him

.Nota.

[4 lf. 4, bk.]

People of different complexions must be treated differently. 1. For a patient of a hot and moist complexion, use blood-letting, cupping and purging.

[1] *vn* above line. [2] *vn* in different hand. [3] *ouer* above line.
[5] Lat. ventosare. Kersey, *Dict.* Ventose, a Cupping Glass.
[6] Lat. ascellare. Add. MS. translates accurately: *go to sege.* See below.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þilke we sigge to be hot in þe þridde degre, whiche þat ys y-hatte of kendlye hete, bryngeþ to oure bodye sencyble greuaunce; **hot in þe fourþ degre**: and þilke in þe fourþ gre þat is y-hat of kendly hete, dystroyeþ þe body opynlyche; & in þis same manere ȝe may knowe degrees þat ben colde, & y may preve in þis manere þat yt is necessarye a surgyne to knowe complexiouns of bodyes, lymes, & of medycynes. ¶ Take two men þat ben off one age, & lete hem ben y-woundyde with a swerd oþere a knyffe twarte offere þe arme, in one oure & in [7]one place. One of þo men ys of an hote complexioun & a moyste, þe oþere of a colde & a drye; þe comyne siggynge of lewyde men ys, þat þey scholde boþe by helyde aftere o manere. But resonable surgye wel y-proved, techith vs þat þey ne schulle noȝt boþe ben y-helyde aftere on manere; for he þat haþ an hot complexioun & a moyst, may lyȝtliche haue an hote enposteme, þat ys an hote swellynge, & þat may be cause of an[8] hote ffevyre. What schaltou þanne do? þou moste loke wheþer he haue y-bled myche blod at hys wounde, & þenne it ys wel, ellys lete hym blod of þe contraryose arme, oþere ellys* on þe fot on þe same syde; ȝif strengþe & age acorde, oþere ventuse hym on þe tweye buttokkys; gif þat he be feble, ȝif he may noȝt go to sege onys a day, helpe hym þereto

[7 fol. 35 b]

[8] *an* above the line.

þerto, or *with* clisterie, or wiþ suppositorie. & brynge þou þe p*ar*ties of þe wou*n*de togidere þoru3 sowynge, or wiþ plumaciols—þat ben smale pelewis—or wiþ byndynge, if[1] þat[1] sewynge be nou3t nesses-
4 sarie, & þa*n*ne worche aboute þe wou*n*de, as it is told aftir i*n* þe book. But aboute þe wou*n*de leie a medicyn defensif[1], of bole ar-
monyac[1], oile of rosis, & a litil vynegre; so *þat* [2]þe medicyn touche þe brynkis of þe wou*n*de, þat[1] humouris moun not[1] haue her cours
8 to renne to þe wounde; & we forbede*n* hi*m* wiyn, mylk & eiren & fisch þat engendriþ myche blood / But he schal ete for his mete growel maad of[1] otemele, eiþir of barli mele wiþ almau*n*dis; & gene*r*aliche he schal vse a streit[1] dietynge, til *þat* he be sikir *þat* he
12 schal haue noon hote enpostym. & if *þat* we ku*n*ne fende hi*m* fro a feuere & apostym, þe science of his complexiou*n* techiþ us, *þat* he may of his sijknes soone be hool / þe o*þe*re of[1] þe cold complexiou*n* schal not be leten blood ne ventusid, for blood schulde be kept[1] *in*
16 hi*m*, as for tresour / Forbede hem neiþir wiyn ne fleisch, for þe stomak *þat*[1] is so feble ne my3te nou3t engendre nessessarie mater of blood *þat* longiþ to þe wou*n*de / Ne we drede nou3t *in* hi*m* þe feuere, for his complexiou*n* is nou3t able to resceyue þe feu*e*re / We mou*n*

Close his wound with compresses or with bandages,

and apply an vngu*entum* defens*ivum*.

[2 leaf 5]

He must keep a strict diet.

dieta.

2. Keep the blood in a patient of cold complexion; give him wine and meat.

Compare: *a Sege of a Privay*; gumfus. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 328. Compare the French: aller à la selle.

[1] *Bole Armoniack.* See N. E. Dict.

---

20 o*þe*re w*it* clysterye, o*þe*re w*ith* suppositorye; & brynge þou þe p*ar*tyes of þe wou*n*de to-gedire, o*þe*re w*ith* sowynge, o*þe*re wiþ plu-
maciolus—*þat* beþ smale pelewys—o*þe*re w*ith* byndynge, 3if *þat* sowy*n*ge be no3t necessarie. And þe*n*ne worche aboute þe wou*n*de,
24 as it ys tolde after*e* in þe bok*e*; but aboue þe wou*n*de leye a Medycine defensiue, of bol Armonyac, oyle of rosys, & a litel vynegre, so *þat* þe medycine touche þe sydes of þe wou*n*des, *þat* humours mowe no3t haue*n* here cours to re*n*ne to þe wou*n*de. And
28 we forbyde hy*m* wyn, Milke, & eyren, & fysch̄, *þat* engendrith̄ myche blod; but he schal ete for his Mete grueH̄ y-made of ote Mele, o*þe*re barly mele w*ith* Almau*n*des, & gene*r*aliche he schal vse*n* a streyt [3]doynge, tyl þou be sykere *þat* he schal haue no*n* enposteme.
32 And 3if *þat* we cu*n*ne dyffende*n* hy*m* fro*m* a ffevyre & apo*s*teme, þe science of hys *com*plexiou*n* techyth̄ vs *þat* he may of hys seknesse sone be hol. ¶ þe o*þe*re of þe colde *com*plexiou*n* ne schal no3t be leten blod ne ventusyde, ffor blod scholde be kepte in he*m* as for
36 tresoure; forbyde hy*m* neiþ*e*re wyn ne flesch̄; for þe stomak *þat* ys so feble, ne my3te nou3t engendre necessarie mater of blod *þat* longyth̄ to *þe* wou*n*de; ne we dredyth̄ no3t in hy*m* þe ffevyre, for his *com*plexiou*n* ys no3t able to resceyuen þe ffevyre. We mowe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 36 *a*]

fynde a medicyn maad i*n* oon mane*r* þat worchiþ dyuers effectis, & he be I-leid to dyu*er*s co*m*plexiou*n*s / Grene vitriol, & he be do to a man of[1] a drie complexiou*n* engendrith fleisch[1]; & if þou leie [2]hi*m* on moist[1] complecciou*n*, he greueþ nouȝt oonliche, but[1] corrodith it[1]; and neþeles vitriol haþ but[1] oon maner worchinge, þouȝ þ*a*t he worche dyuersliche i*n* dyuers complexiou*n*s / Riȝt as þe worchinge of[1] þe su*n*ne is dyuers, nouȝt for þe su*n*ne, but for þe worchinge of dyuers bodies into whom he worchiþ / Vitriol drieþ wondirfulliche myche: i*n* drie bodies he defendiþ[3] þe smale lymes myȝt[4] to aȝenstonde his miȝt, wh*er*fore he may nouȝt but drie þe sup*er*fluytees þ*a*t he fyndiþ i*n* þe wou*n*de; & wha*n*ne þo ben y-dried, kynde engendriþ fleisch. I*n* moiste bodies, for þ*a*t þe smale lymes ben feble & mou*n* no*t* wiþstonde þe strenkþe of[1] þe vitriol, þe fleisch meltiþ vndir it, & so bi vitriol þe fleisch rotiþ. & þ*a*t is seid of[1] dyuers complexiou*n*s, is y-seid of dyuers lymes / Galiou*n* seiþ: If þat tweye woundis ben euene I-quytturid, & þe oon be a drie lyme, & þe oþ*er* a moist lyme, þ*a*t þ*a*t is þe drie lyme nediþ þe moister medicy*n* / And if[1] þat .ij. lymes leeue[5] ben I-wou*n*did þ*a*t ben lich

vitriol has a different effect on different complexions.

[2 lf. 5, bk.]

Galien

Limbs of different complexions must be treated differently.

[1] *fleisch* in margin. [3] *defendiþ*, mistake for *fyndiþ*; see below.
[4] *myȝt* for *myȝty*; see below. [5] *leeue* for *leche?*

Add. MS. 12,056.

fynde*n* a Medycine made in o manere þ*a*t wirchith̄ dyu*er*se effect*is*, & he be y-leyde to dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*n*s. Grene vytreole, & he be done to a Man of dryȝe *com*plexiou*n*, engendrith̄ flessch̄; & ȝif þou legge*n* hy*m* on a moyste *com*plexiou*n*, he greuyth̄ noȝt onlyche, but corodu*þ* yt. And naþeles vitreole haþ but one mane*r*e wyrchinge, þouȝ he wirche dyu*er*slyche in dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*n*s, ryȝte as þe wirchynge of þe so*n*ne ys dyu*er*se—noȝt for þe so*n*ne, but for þe wyrchynge of dyu*er*se bodyes in whom he wyrchyth̄. Vitreole dryeþ wonde*r*lyche muche, & in dryȝe bodyes he fyndeþ þe smale lymes myghty to ageyne stonde*n* hys strengþe. Wh*er*efore he may nought but drye þe sup*er*ffluites þ*a*t he fynte in þe[6] wou*n*de; & whe*n*ne þo ben y-dreyede, kynde engendryth̄ fflesch̄. In moyste bodyes, ffor þ*a*t þe smale lymes beþ feble, & mowe noȝt w*ith*stande þe strengthe off þe vytreole, þe flesch̄ meltyth̄ vndire yt, & so be þ*e* vitreole þe flesch̄ rotyth̄; & þ*a*t þ*a*t ys seyde of dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*n*s, ys y-seyde of dyv*er*se lymes. **Galyen**: ȝif þ*a*t tweye wou*n*des [7]ben evyne i quyt*er*, & þe on be in a dryȝe lyme, & þe oþ*er*e in a moyste lyme, þ*a*t þ*a*t is in þe dryore lyme nediþ þe dryore medycine. And ȝif þ*a*t two lymes ben y-wou*n*ded þat ben lyche in

[7 fol. 36 *b*]

[6] *wound*, cancelled because blotted after *in* þ*e* and re-written.

in complexiou*n*, & þe oon haþ myche quytture & þe toþ*er* litil, he
þ*at* haþ þe myche quytture, nediþ to han þe drier medicyn /
[1 lf. 6]
Galien*us*
4 Iohan*n*es damascen*us* seiþ, Medicyns & enplastris schulden ben
acordynge to þe lymes þ*at* þei be*n* leid on / Galien*us* : a kyndly
þi*n*g[1] schal be kept wiþ a þi*n*g[1] þ*at* is kyndly þerto / And þ*at* is a3en
kynde schal be doon awei with þi*n*g[1] þ*at* is contrarie þerto / If þ*at*
a surgian knew not complexiou*n*s of lymes & of bodies, he schal
8 nou3t co*n*ne to schewynge hise medicyns aftir þ*at*[1] kynde askiþ. A
surgian must knowe gen*er*aciou*n* of[1] humouris, if he wolde knowe
þe science & þe helynge of apostymes, as it schal be declarid i*n* þe
tretis of apostymes. He muste knowe þe dyuersitees & þe p*ro*fitis
12 & þe officis of[1] lymes, þ*at* he mowe knowe, what lymes han a greet
worchinge i*n* ma*n*nes body, & whiche ben of greet[1] felynge, & whiche
mou*n* bere a strong[1] medicyn / & þe v*er*tues of[1] lymes þ*ou* must
knowe, þ*at* he se, wha*n*ne þe worchinge of[1] ony vartu failiþ in ony
16 lyme, þ*at* he mowe helpe þe vertu & þe same lyme failynge. & if
he haue þe science of[1] knowynge of v*er*tues, þe science of spiritis
schal nou3t be hid fro hi*m*. Alle þese þingis bifore seid ben but[1]
natureles, & þei [2]ben but[1] techinge of medicyns speculatijf /
[2 lf. 6, bk.]
nota
A Surgeon must know the generation of the Humours, and the different offices of the Limbs.
He must also know the things which are not
20 Also he muste haue knoulechinge of[1] þi*n*gis þ*at* be*n* not naturels,
þ*at* he ku*n*ne chese good eir to hi*m* þ*at* is wou*n*did or ellis haþ

Add. MS. 12,056.

co*m*plexiou*n*, & þ*at* on haþ myche quyt*er* and þe oþ*er*e lyte, he þ*at*
haþ myche quyt*er* nedyth to haven þe dryere medycine. **Ioh*an*nes**
24 **damacen*us*** : Medycines & enplastr*es* scholde be*n* acordynge to þe
lymes þ*at* þey ben y-leyde on. **Galien*us*** : a kendlye thynge schal
be kepte w*it*h þynge þ*at* ys kendlye þ*er*e to ; and þ*at* þ*at* is a3eyne
kynde schal be done away w*it*h þynge þ*at* is co*n*trarye þ*er*e to. 3if
28 þ*at* a surgien knowith no3t co*m*plexiou*n*s of lymes & of bodyes, he
schal no3t ku*n*ne to chau*n*gen hys medycines aftere þ*at* kynde
askeþ. A surgien moste knowe gen*er*aciou*n* of humours, 3if he
wolde knowe*n* þe sciense & þe helynge of Apostemys, as yt schal ben
32 declared in þe tretys of ap*o*stemes ; he moste knowyn þe dyu*er*site,
& þe p*ro*fytes, & þe offices of lymes, þ*at* he mowe knowen what
lymes han grete wyrchynge in ma*n*nys body, & whiche ben of grete
felynge, & whiche mowe bere a stronge Medycine ; & þe vertues of
36 lymes he moste knowe, þ*at* he se wha*n*ne þ*at* þe worchynge of enye
vertue fayleþ in enye lyme, þ*at* he mowe helpe þe vertue in þe same
lyme faylinge. And 3if he haue þe science of knowynge of v*er*tues,
þe sciense of spirit*us* ne schuh no3t ben y-hud fro*m* hy*m*. Alle þese
40 þynges before seyde beþ nat*ur*eles, & þey beþ techynge of medycine
speculatyff. Also he moste han knowynge of thynges þ*at* beþ no3t
nat*ur*eles, þ*at* he ku*n*ne chesen gode eyr*e* to hy*m* þ*at* is y-wou*n*dyde,

natural, as the effect of the air on a wound.

a boch[1] / Wou*n*dis mou*n* not be[2] dried in a moist eir & a vapouris, but þei þat ben wou*n*did muste*n* ben chau*n*gid fro þ*a*t moist eir to a swete cleer eyr & a drie / In wy*n*tir he muste kepe hi*m* fro cold;

nota

for no þing[4] greueþ so myche boones & senewis as cold[3] þat ben I-wou*n*did / & i*n* somer he muste haue temp*e*rable eir. It is nessessarie þ*a*t he ku*n*ne dietyn his pacient, as I schal telle i*n* þe same chapitle of dieti*n*ge / also he muste ordeyne meuynge & reste,[4] as it nediþ to þe same sijk ma*n* / for if þ*a*t he be wou*n*did i*n* þe heed eiþ*er* haue ony p*u*ncture of ony senewe, it is nessessarie þat he reste & dwelle i*n* stillenes & haue an esy bed & a soft; lest he suffre ony traueile of his lymes / But if[4] þ*a*t olde wou*n*dis wiþout akynge were*n* in his armes, it were good to hi*m*, þat is sijk, to walke on his feet, & lete his arme be bou*n*de to his necke; & if þ*a*t þe wou*n*de be in hise schynes & i*n* hise feet, it were good þat[4] he lay & traueilide wiþ hise hondis / Also a [5]surgian, in al þ*a*t he my3te, he muste temp*e*re a sijk ma*n*nes slepi*n*ge; for to myche slepinge engen*d*eriþ superfluyte & febliþ his v*er*tewes, & coldiþ & lesiþ al his bodi / To myche waki*n*ge dissolueþ & confoormeþ[6] hise spiritis &

He must know how to prescribe moving or rest.

[5 lf. 7]

Nota

He must regulate the patient's sleep,

[1] *boch*, Latin apostema; M. E. botch. See N. E. Dict.
[2] *heelid* cancelled.
[3] *as cold* misplaced; see below. [4] *to* cancelled after *reste*.
[6] *confoormeþ*, erroneously for *consumeþ*, as below. Lat. Orig.: dissolvunt et consumunt.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[7 fol. 37 *a*]

oþ*er*e ellys haþ a bocche. Wou*n*des mowe no3t ben y-dry3ed in a [7]moyste eyr*e* & a vaporose, but þey þat ben y-wou*n*dyde most bene y-chau*n*gyde fro*m* þ*a*t moyste eyre to a swote cler eyr*e* & a dry3e. In wyntere he moste kepe hy*m* fro*m* colde, ffor noþinge grevyth so myche bonys & synwes þ*a*t buþ y-wou*n*dyde as colde. And in somere he moste han a temp*e*rable eyr*e*; hit ys necessarye þ*a*t he ku*n*ne dyoten hys pacient, as y schal telle*n* in þe same ChapyteH of dyotynge. Also he moste ordeyne moffynge & reste, as yt nedeþ to þe same syke man; ffor 3if þ*a*t he be wou*n*dyde in þe hed, oþ*er*e haue eny puncture off enye synwe, it ys necessarye þat he reste: dwelle he in styllenesse, & haue an euene bed & a softe, leste he suffre*n* enye trauaylle of hys lemys; but 3if þ*a*t olde wou*n*des, wiþoute*n* akynge, were*n* in hys Armes, hit were gode to hy*m* þat ys seke to walke*n* on hys fete, & bere hys arme y-bou*n*de*n* to hys nekke; & 3if þ*a*t þe wou*n*de be in hys schynys & in hys ffete, hit were gode þ*a*t he ley3e & trauellyde w*i*th hys handes. Also a surgien, in alle þ*a*t he myghte, he moste ate*m*pre a syke Ma*n*nes slepynge, ffor to myche slepynge engendreþ super*f*fluyte, & feblyth his v*er*tues, & coldyth & losyth alle hys bodye; to myche wakynge dyssolfiþ & *con*sumeþ hys spirites, & makyth scharpe hys humores,

makiþ scharpe hise humouris; it bryngiþ vnkindly drowþe to woundis, & is cause of[t] akynge / Also he muste kunne evacuener him þat is ful of yuel humouris & fulfille him þat[t] is waastid, þat he brynge sike men to good temperaunce; ellis a wounde mai not be heelid / Entempre he þe herte of[t] him þat is sijk, for to greet[t] wraþþe. makiþ þe spiritis renne to myche to þe wounde & þat is caus of[t] swellynge; to greet[t] drede, ouþir vttereste[1] of[t] heelþe of[t] his wounde, holdiþ þe spiritis wiþinne his bodi, þat mater mai not come to heele his wounde / þese .vj. þingis ben clepid vnnaturel,[2] which techiþ a man speculatijf of[t] leche craft.

free the patient from evil humours

and take care that the heart is temperate.

He muste knowe þe sijknes: as olde wounde, festre, cankre & alle opere soris, þat he traueile not[t] in veyn & brynge þe sike man to his deeþ / For ech dyuers soor nediþ dyuers helpingis. He muste knowe þe cause of þe wounde / ffor a wounde, þat is [3]maad wiþ a swerd eiþer a knyf, must operwise be heelid, þan he þat is maad wiþ stoon eiþer fallinge / And a wounde þat is biten wiþ an hound schal operwise be heelid, þan he þat is biten with a wood hound; as þou schalt fynde soone told in þe book herafter / & he muste knowe þe accidentis þat ben aboute a wounde / for þe wounde schal neuere heele, til þe accidentis be remeued awey / accidentis is

He must know the different kinds of wounds,

Nota

[3 lf. 7, bk.]

and the accidentes which befall a wound.

[1] *uttereste*, only known as an adj.: extremus, erroneously for *untryste*. See below.

[2] Lat. quæ sunt secundum membrum theoricæ medicinæ.

& hit bryngeþ vnkyndly drowþe to woundes, & ys cause of akynge; also he moste kunne evacuen hym þat ys ful of euele humores, & fulfylle hym þat ys wastyde, þat he brynge seke men to gode temperaunce; ellys a wounde may noȝt ben helyd; entempre he þe hert of hym þat ys seke, ffor to gret wratthe makyþ þe spirites renne to myche to þe wounde, & þat ys cause of swellynge; [4]to grete drede, opere vntryst of helpe of hys wounde holdiþ spyrites withynne hys body, þat mater may nouȝt come to hele þe wounde. þese sixe thynges ben y-clepyde vnnatureH, whiche techith a Man speculatyff of leche craft. He mot knowen þe seknesse, as olde wounde, festre, cancre, & alle opere sores, þat he traveylle noȝt in deveyne, & brynge þe seke man to hys deþ: ffor eche dyverse sore nedith dyverse helpynges. He mote knowe þe cause of þe wounde; ffor a wounde þat is mad with a swerd opere a knyff[t] mote opere weys ben helyde þen he þat is y-makyde with ston, opere with fallynge, & a wounde þat is byten with an hounde schal opere weys ben helyde þen he þat ys y-byten with a wod hound, as þou schalt fynde tolde in þe boke hereaftere. And he mot knowe þe Accidentes þat buþ aboute a wounde, ffor the wounde schal nevere hele tyl þe Accidentes ben remevyde awey. Accidentis ys a þynge þat falliþ to þe wounde out

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 37 *b*]

a þing[1] þat falliþ to a wounde out[1] of[1] kynde as hoot, cold, drie, eiþer
He must know how to prescribe appropriate diet. to myche moistnes, crampe & oþere þinges aȝens kynde / A surgian
muste ordeyne dietynge in dyuers maner, as it is told in þe chapitle
of[1] dietynge; & whanne it is nedeful, he muste ȝeue dyuers drinkis / 4
.Galien. Galien: Laxatiues & vometis ben nedeful to hem, þat[1] han olde
rotid woundis & stynkynge / For whanne þe bodi is purgid fro
wickide humouris, þe wickidnes of þe mater renneþ fro þe wounde
& so þe wounde is sunner helid / He þat biholdiþ alle þe parties of 8
a medicyn, he may weel se þat[1] it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe
phisik, & oþer dyuers science, as I haue told tofore in þe book.

¶ Þe .iij c°. of þe firste techinge is of intencioun of a surgian / 12

[1 lf. 8] ¶ Capm 3m ¶ .1. .2. .3.

1 Al þe entencioun of a surgian, how diuers þat it be, it is on*
[of] þre maners / þe first is vndoynge of[1] þat[1], þat is hool / þe
secunde to hele þat, þat is broke / þe .iij. is remeuynge of þat, þat
is to myche; so þat it be don with hand craft / ffor al entencioun of 16
a surgian is vndir oon of[1] þese .iij. entencioun*s*, or ellis vnder oon of[1]
A surgeon 1. either undoes what is whole, hem. A surgian vndoiþ þat þat is hool, whanne he letiþ blood,
eiþer garsiþ,[2] eiþer brenneþ, eiþer settiþ on watirlechis, for þis is a

[2] garsiþ] Lat. scarificat; Fr. gerçer; med. Lat. gersa, garsa. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 150.

Add. MS. 12,056. of kynde, as hete, colde, drowþe oþere to gret moistnesse, crampe, & 20
oþere þynges aȝeyne kynde. A surgien mot ordeyne dyetynge in
dyverse manere, as it is tolde in þe ChapiteH of dyetynge. Whenne
þat it is nedful, he mote ȝyve dyverse drynkes. **Galien**: laxativis
& vomytes buþ necessarie to hem þat han olde, rotyde, stynkynde 24
wounde*s*; ffor whanne þat þe body is purgyde from evyle humours,
þe wykkednesse of þe matere renneþ from þe wounde, & so þe
wounde is sonnere y-helyde. He þat byholdeþ alle þe partyes of a
[3 fol. 38 *a*] medycine, he may wel se [3]that it is necessarie a surgyne to knowen 28
ffysyk and oþere dyverse science, as hit is tolde tofore in þis boke.

¶ The þridde Chapitele of þe furste techynge is of Intencioun off a Surgyne.

Alle þe entencioun of surgerye, how dyverse þat it be, yt is on 32
*of þre maneres: þe ffurste ys undoynge þat þat is hol; secunde ys
helpynge of þat þat is tobroke; þe þridde ys remevynge of þat þat
is to myche, so þat it be do with hande crafte; ffor alle þe enten-
cioun of a surgien ys vndire one of þis þre entensioun*s*, oþere ellys 36
vndire one of hem. A surgyne vndoþ þat þat ys hol, whanne he
letyth blod ore garsyth oþere brenneþ, oþere setteþ on waterlechys,

surgiens craft; þou3 we for oure *pr*ide haue lefte it to barbou*r*is & to wy*m*men / for Galion & Rasis diden it w*ith* her hondis, as her bookis telle*n*. And we vndoon þ*at*, þ*at* is hool, wha*n*ne þ*at* we kutten þe veynes, þat ben in þe templis & þe forheed & maken cauterizaciou*n*s for þe sijknes of þe y3en / And wha*n*ne þ*at* we maken cauteries in þe heed & in dyuers placis of þe bodi, as I schal telle i*n* þe chapitle of cauterisynge / þe secu*n*de entenciou*n* is to hele þ*at*, þ*at* is broke*n* as wou*n*dis, olde wou*n*dis, festris, cankris & in bringyng to her placis ioyntis þ*at* be*n* oute & i*n* helynge boones þ*at* ben to broke*n* / þe .iij. intenciou*n* is to remeue þ*at*, þ*at* is to myche, as [1]scrofulus of þe heed & þe necke & o*pe*re pa*r*ties of þe bodie / cataractis[2]—is a watir þat comeþ bitwene þe white of þe i3en & þe appil; sebel—þat ben veynes þat ben i*n* þe whi3t of þe i3e*n* & beþ ful of blood / vngula—is a þi*n*g, þ*at* bigy*n*neþ bi þe nose & goiþ ouer þe i3e til he keue*re* al þe i3e—& knottis, þ*at* be*n* in þe i3e & o*per* siknes of þe i3e; & i*n* doynge awey polippis, þat is fleisch þat growiþ wiþi*n*ne þe nose; wertis & we*n*nys; ficus, þ*at* is super-fluyte þat growen vp on þe skyn of þe pintils hede wiþoute, emerawdis[3] & a skyn þat enclosiþ a wo*m*ma*n*s p*ri*uy membre, þe

Nota. G. R.

as when he bleeds, scarifies or cauterizes;

or 2. he heals wounds, &c.,

or 3. he removes excrescences, sign. 2j [1 lf. 8, bk.]

as cataracts,

polypuses, and wens.

[2] cataract, sebel and ungula. See Notes.
[3] The Latin text has: superfluitatem hermaphroditis.

---

ffor þis ys a surgyns craft, þaw3 we for our*e* pride have y-lefte yt to laborers & to wo*m*men, for Galien & Rasys dyden it wiþ here handes as her*e* bokys tellyþ. And we vndoþ þ*at* þat is hol, whe*n*ne þ*at* we kutteþ þe veynes þ*at* ben in þe templys & þ*e* forhed, & makyth̃ cauterisaciones fro*m* þe seknesse of þe ey3en, & whe*n*ne þ*at* we maken Cauteries in þe hed & in dyv*er*se places of þe body as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of Cauterysynge. þe secu*n*de entenciou*n* ys to hele þ*at* þat is tobroke as: wou*n*des, olde wou*n*des, ffestr*e*s, Cancres, and in bringynge to here place Ioyntes þ*at* bene oute, & in helynge bonys þ*at* ben tobroke*n*. þe þridde entenciou*n* is to remevyn þ*at* þat ys to myche as scurffyls of þe hed & þe nekke, & o*pe*re pa*r*tyes of þe body, & Cataractis þ*at* ys a wat*er* þ*at* comyth̃ bytwene þe whyte of þe ey3e & þe Appul. Sebel þ*at* beþ veynes þ*at* buþ in þe whyte of þe ey3e, & beþ ful of blod. Vngula, [4]þat ys a thynge þ*at* bygy*n*neþ by þe nese & goth̃ ov*er*e þe ey3e, tyl he keffere alle þe ey3e & knottes þat ben in þe ey3e, & o*pe*re seknesse of þe ey3e, & in doynge awey polippes þ*at* is flesch̃ þat growiþ w*ith* y*m*ne þe nese, wertys & we*n*nys, ffic*us* þ*at* is a sup*er*ffluyte þ*at* growiþ vp on þe skyn off þe pyntellys hed w*ith*out*e*n, emerau*d*es & a schyn

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 38 *b*]

sixte fingre of þe hond & manye superfluytees þat beþ nouȝt semelich to a mannys body

¶ þe firste chapitle of þe secunde tretis is an vniuersal word of smale lymes & her helpingis, & of generaciou*n* of embriou*n*, þat is þe child, in þe modir wombe // / /[1] 4

de anotho-[m]ia. A Surgeon must know Anatomy.

GAlien*us* seiþ, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe anotamie; ne leeue we nouȝt þat ech brood ligament is a skyn, & ech 8 rou*n*d ligament to be a senewe, so bi his opinyou*n* he myȝte falle into erro*ur* / þerfore I þe*n*ke to ordeyne a chapitle of þe kynde & of the [2]foorme & helpinge of alle smale lymes / Auicen seiþ / knoulechinge of a þi*n*g, þat haþ cause, mai nouȝt be knowen, but 12 bi his cause. þe*r*fore we moten knowe þe cause, *membrior*um *consimilium*, þat is to seie, smale lymes. & I wole telle þe genera-cio*n* of embriou*n*: þat is to seie, how a child is I-gete in þe modir wombe / Galion & auicen tellen, þat of boþe þe sp*er*mes of ma*n* & 16 of wo*m*man, worchinge & suffrynge togideris, so þat ech of he*m* worche i*n* oþir & suffre in oþir, embriou*n* is bigete / But the worchi*n*ge of ma*n*nes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wo*m*mans kynde

Auicen. [2 lf. 9]

†The Embryo .G? is engendered of the seed of man and woman.†

[1] See *Vicary*. ed. Furnivall, p. 78.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat enclosyth a wo*m*mans p*ri*ve me*m*bre, þe sixte fynger of þe hand, 20 and manye super*f*luytes þat beth nought semlye to ma*n*nys body.

¶ The ffurste Chapiteh of þe secu*n*de tretys ys an univ*er*sel word off smale lymes, & her*e* helpynges of gen*er*aciou*n* of enbrion þat is child in þe mod*er* 24 wombe.

GAlien seith þat it ys necessarie a Surgien to knowe Anotomye, ne leffe henoȝt þat iche brode ligament þat ys a schyn, & iche rou*n*de ligament to be*n* a synwe, & so be hys opyniou*n* he myȝte 28 falle*n* in erroure. þe*r*efore i þynke to ordeyne a Chapiteh of þe kynde & of þe fforme & þe helpynge of alle smale lymes. Avycene seith, knowlechynge of a þynge þat haþ cause may noȝt be knowe but by hys cause, þe*r*efore we mote knowe þe cause me*m*bror*u*m 32 consimiliu*m*: þat ys to sigge smale lym*es*. Y wyl telle þe gen*er*aciou*n* of embrion, þat ys to sigge, how a childe ys bygete in þe modi*r*e wombe. Galien and Avycene tellen þat of boþe þe spermes of Man & wo*m*man—wirchynge & sofferynge togedir*es*, so þat iche of he*m* 36 wirche in oþ*er*e & suffre*n* in oþ*er*e—embrion ys bygete. But þe worchynge of Ma*n*nes kynde is more myȝtyere, & wo*m*mans [3]kynde

[3 fol. 39 *a*]

more febler / For riȝt as þe rou*n*deles[1] of[1] chese haþ bi hi*m*-silf wei of worchinge & þe mylk bi wey of suffrynge, so to þe generaciou*n* of embrio*n* ma*n*nes sp*e*rme haþ hi*m*[2] bi wei of[1] worchi*n*ge & wo*m*mans
4 sp*e*rme bi wey of suffrynge / & riȝt[1] as þe ru*n*delis[1] & þe mylk maken a chese, so boþe þe sp*e*rmes of man & wo*m*man maken generaciou*n* of embriou*n*. Þouȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a child ben I-geten of[1] boþe two sp*e*rmes, neþeles, to cloþe he*m* w*i*th fleisch
8 & wiþ fatnes, comeþ to he*m* menstr*u*e [3]blood / þe maris[4] of[1] wo*m*man haþ an able complexciou*n* to conseiuen; & of hir kynde he castiþ þe spermes to þe deppest place of hir; & of hir nature he closiþ hir mouþ, þ*a*t þ*e*r myȝte not entre the poynt of a nedle / & þa*n*ne þe
12 foormal vertu which almyȝty god haþ ȝeue to þe maris ordeyneþ & diuidid eu*e*ry p*a*rtie of[1] þese sp*e*rmes in her kynde, til þ*a*t þe child be born / Vndirstonde þ*a*t þe fleisch & þe fatnes is m*a*d of menstrue blood, þe boones & gristlis, ligamentis & senewis, cordis, arteries,
16 veynes, pa*n*niclis—þ*a*t be*n* smale cloþis—& þe skyn beþ engendrid of boþe þe sp*e*rmes, as auicen & oþ*e*r*e* auctouris tellen / If þ*a*t ony of þe lymes þ*a*t ben engendrid of þe spermes ben doon awey *[he] mou*n* neu*e*r*e* v*e*riliche be restorid, for þe mater of hem is þe sp*e*rme of þe

†And as rennet curdles milk and the two make cheese, so does the seed of man and woman make the Embryo.† [3 sign. ²ij lf. 9, bk.]

The flesh and the fat are formed from the menstrual blood.

The Matrix closes itself after having conceived.

The whole body is developed in the Matrix (except the flesh and fat) from the seed of the man and woman.

Auic*en*

[1] *rou*n*deles*, *ru*n*delis*. Add. MS. *rendelys*, coagulum. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 429, *renlys, or rendlys*. Comp. O. Du. rinsel, runsel.

[2] *mannes sperme haþ him*, Lat. ita sperma viri se habet. [4] *maris*, matrix.

---

20 ys more ffeblere. Ffor ryȝt as þe rendelys of chese haþ hy*m* by weye of worchynge, & þe Mylk be weye off suffrynge, so to þe generaciou*n* of embrion, Ma*n*nes sperme[6] hath̄ hy*m* be weye of worchynge, & wo*m*mans sperme[6] be weye of suffrynge, & ryȝt as þe
24 rendles & þe mylk makyth̄ a[5] chese, so boþe þe spermes[6] of ma*n* & wo*m*man makyþ þe gen*e*raciou*n* of embrion. Þowȝ þ*a*t alle þe smale lymes of a childe be y-get*e*n of boþe two spermes,[6] naþeles to cloþe he*m* w*i*th fflesch̄ & w*i*th fatnesse comeþ to he*m* menstrewe blod. þe
28 marys of a wo*m*man haþ an able c*o*mplexiou*n* to conseyve*n*, & of here kynde sche castyth̄ þe spermes to þe deppeste place off here, and of here nature sche closyth̄ hir*e* mouth̄ þ*a*t þ*e*r*e* myȝte nouȝt entre þe poynt of an nedle. And þe*n*ne þe formal v*i*rtue whiche
32 þ*a*t almyghty god haþ ȝeue*n* to the marys, ordeyneþ & deff[e]ndeþ ev*e*ry party of þese spermes in here kynde, tyl þ*a*t þe childe be*n* ybore. Und*e*rstande þ*a*t þe flesch̄ & þe fatnesse ys y-mad of menstrewe blod, the bonys & þe grustlys, ligamentes, synwes, cordes,
36 Arteries, veynes, pannycles, þ*a*t buþ smale cloþes & þe schyn buþ engendr*e*d of boþe þe spermes, as Avicene & oþ*e*r*e* Autores tellyn. ȝif þ*a*t enye of þe lymes þ*a*t buþ engendr*e*de off[1] the spermes be don away, *he may nev*e*r*e v*e*rrelyche be*n* restorid*e*, ffor þe mater*e* of

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] Above line. [6] MS. *spernes*.

fadir & of þe modir; but þe fleisch the which mater is blood, þat is aldai engendrid in us, may weel & verriliche be restorid / þese smale lymes han dyuers foormes, complexciouns & helpingis aftir þe dyuersitees of þe proporciouns of þe mater, which þat þei ben maad 4 of[1] / for þou3 þat alle þe lymes ben maad of oon mater I-medlid,
[1 lf. 10] neþeles in ech of þe smale ly[1]mes þer is a dyuers proporcioun of mater, for þe which mater þei taken dyuers foormes & dyuers helpingis. Almy3ti god 3eueþ to ech þing[1] of his foorme after þat 8 his mater is* proporciound disserueþ /

*consimile membris.*** 1st Member The Bone. Its functions: to move limbs, protect them, support the body, and fill the hollows of joints.

þe boon is þe first of[1] þe consimile membris—þat is oon of[1] þe smale lymes; þe which ben[2] cold & drie & he haþ dyuers foormes in mannes bodi: for he helpiþ dyuerslich / þe cause whi þer ben 12 manye dyuers boones in mannes bodi is, for sumtyme it[1] is nede to meeue oon lyme without anoþir & þat were impossible, if[1] þat al þe bodi were but oon boon / Anoþer cause whi þer ben manye boones: for summe defenden þe principal lymes from harm, as þe 16 brayn scolle from[3] þe brayn of þe heed / summe ben foundementis, as þe boones of[1] þe rigge & of þe schenes & of[1] þe armes / summe ben as additamentis þat ben in þe side of þe rigge boon, & summe to fulfille the holownes of summe ioyntis, as þe handis & þe feet; 20

[2] *ben* for *is*, see below. [3] *from*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056. hym ys þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modere. But þe flesch whose matere ys blod þat is al day engendred in vs may wel & verreliche be restoryde. þese smale lymes han dyverse formes, complexioun, & helpynges after the dyversite of þe proportiouns of þe mater 24
[1 fol. 39 b] whiche þat þey ben [4]mad of; ffor þow3 þat alle the lymes be mad of on matere y-medlyde, naþeles in eche of þe smale lymes þere is a dyverse proposiciou[n][5] of matere, for the whiche matere þey taken dyverse forme & dyverse helpe. Almyghty god gevyth to effrye 28 þynge of[1] hys forme after þat hys matere *proporcioned deservyt.

þe bon is furst of consimile membris þat is on off smale lymes, þe whiche ys colde & drye, & he haþ dyverse formes in mannes bodye, for he helpiþ dyversliche; þe cause why þere ben 32 many dyverse bonys in mannys body is,[6] ffor sum tyme it ys nede to meffyn o lyme without an opere, & þat were inpossible, 3if in alle þe body were but on hol bon. An opere cause is why þere ys many bonys; for sum diffenden þe principal lymes from harme, as þe 36 brayn scolle þe brayn of[1] þe hed; somme ben ffundamentys, as þe bonys of þe rugge, & of þe schynes, & of þe Armes. Some ben as armure, as additamentys, þat ben in þe syde of þe rugge bon, & somme fulfylle þe holwenesse of somme Iunttes, as þe handys & þe 40

[5] read "proporciou*n*." [6] *is* above line.

& su*m*me *þer* be*n* *þat* þe rou*n*dnes of þe boon myȝte entre i*n*to þe holownes of *þat* o*þer* boon / & non les schulde not lacke his meuynge as þe schuldre boones & þe hipe boones. *Þou* maist fynde sign. ²iij
how manye boones *þer* be*n* *in* þe .ij. tretis, [1]where schal be told [[1] lf. 10, bk.]
pleynlier þe anotamie of consimile membris of al þe bodi from þe heed to þe foot.

A gristil is cold & drie, & is neischere þan a boon, & hardere þan 2nd Member, The Gristle; the six uses of Gristle.
þe fleisch, and i*n* þe fleisch he haþ sixe helpi*n*gis / þe firste, *þat* *þat* schulde be a meene bitwene þe vttir ende of þe hard boon & þe .1.
neische fleisch / þe .ij. *þat* þe harde schulde not hirte þe neische, .2.
nameli i*n* þe tyme of compre*s*siou*n*, & in þe tyme of smyti*n*ge / þe
.iij. *þat* þe eende of þe boones whiche *þat* be*n* in þe ioyntis schulden .3.
haue a softere confutaci*o*u*n*[2] in her ioyntis / þe fourþe, *þat* he schulde .4.
fulfille þe office of þe boon to susteyne a brawne, meuynge a membre
þat haþ noon boon, as þe ou*er* lid of þe iȝe / þe fifþe: for it is .5.
nessessarie a gristil to ben i*n* place, *þat* is nouȝt ful hard as þe þrote
bolle; for þe eende of þe þrote bolle is gristeli / þe .vj.: for it is .6.
nessessarie su*m*me lymes to han a sustentaciou*n*, and applicaci*o*u*n*,[3]
þat is foldynge, to be streyned & drawen abrod as þe noseþrillis &
þe gristile of þe eere.

[2] *confutaciou*n, erroneously for *confricaciou*n. See below.
[3] *applicaciou*n. Read *a plicaciou*n.

---

fete, & so*m*me *þer*e ben *þat* þe rou*n*dnesse of on bon myȝte entre in Add. MS.
to þe holwenesse of þe o*þer*e bon & naþeles scholde noȝt lakken hys 12,056.
meffynge, as þe schulde*r* bonys, & the hepe bonys. *Þou* maiste fynde
hou many bonys *þer*e ben in þe secu*n*de tretys where schal be tolde
plenerliche—þe Anotamye of *con*simile me*m*brys of alle [4]þe body, [[4] fol. 40 *a*]
fro*m* þe hed to þe fot. A grustyH ys cold & drye, & is nesschere
þe*n*ne a bon, & hardere þa*n*ne þe flesch, & in þe flesch̄ hath̄ vi
helpynges. ¶ Helpynge þe grustel. The ffurste *þat* *þer*e scholde be
a Mene, bytwene þe vtte*r* ende of þe hard bon, & þe nessch̄ flesch̄.
¶ þe secunde, *þat* þe harde scholde noȝt hurt þe nessche, namlyche,
in þe tyme of *com*prission, & in þe tyme of smytynge. ¶ The
þridde, *þat* þe ende of þe bonys, whiche *þat* ben in þe Iunttes
scholde han a softe*r*e *con*fricatiou*n* in here Iunttes. ¶ þe iiij, *þat*
he scholde fulfille þe office of þe bon, to susteyne a brawne meff-
ynge, a me*m*bre *þat* haþ no*n* bon, as þe ov*er*e lyd of þe eyȝe. ¶ þe
v. for his necessarie a grustyH to be[5] in a place *þat* ys noȝt ful
hard, as þe þrote bolle; ffor þe ende of þe þrote bolle ys grustlye.
¶ þe vi. for it is necessarie some lymes to han a sustentaciou*n* &
a plicaciou*n*, þat is a foldynge, to be streynde & drawe*n* abrod, as þe
nese þrylles & þe grustle of þe ere.

[5] *noȝt* above line.

3rd Member, ligamentis. [1 lf. 11]

Lygament is cold & drie, and goþ out of þe boones & haþ þe foorme of a senewe. & he may be bowid, but he feliþ nouȝt; & he [1]haþ fourc helpingis / þe firste is, þat he knyttiþ oon boon wiþ

The four uses of Ligament. .1. It binds the bones together,

anoþer / it is nessessarie, þat oon boon be knytt wiþ anoþer, þat many boonys myȝten make oon bodi as oon boon, & neuereþelatter ech membre myȝte meue bi him-silf, & þerfore þe ligament is as bowable & incensible / for if þat it' hadde be censible, þei myȝten nouȝt' han I-susteyned þe traucile & þe meuynge of' þe ioyntis / & if' þat he hadde be inflexible as a boon, of' whom he comeþ of, oon

.2. it joins with Sinews to make *Cordes*, i.e. Tendons and Muscles,

lyme myȝte not han meued wiþouten anoþer / þe secunde help is, þat he is ioyned wiþ senewis to make cordis & brawnes / þe þridde

.3. it is a resting-place for Sinews,

help is þat he schulde be a restynge place to summe senewis / þe fourþe þat bi him þe membris, þat ben wiþinne þe bodies, schulden ben y-teied, þe whiche þat neden hangynge.

.4. it sustains the parts within the body.

4th Member, Sinews (Nerves). They start from the brain or Spinal Cord.

A corde[2] is cold & drie, & he comeþ from þe brayne, eiþer from þe mucha[3]; þat is þe marie of þe rigge boones // From þe brayn

sign. [2]iij [4 lf. 11, bk.]

comen .vij. peire cordes. & þei ben clepid sensible senewis / ffrom þe nucha þer comen xxx peire cordis & oon bi him silf & þei ben mouable / And alle þe cordis þat comen of þe [4]brayn & nucha, haþ

[2] There is a constant confusion in all the mediæval medical books between nerves and sinews. See further Notes.

[3] *mucha*, an error for *nucha;* med. Lat. *nucha.* Dufr.: postera pars colli. Fr. nuque. Littré gives references from the 14th cent. for the signification, marrow. See Notes.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Ligamente is colde & drye, & goþ out of þe bonys, & haþ þe forme of a ȝenewe, & he may be bowyde, but he feliþ noȝt, & he haþ iiij helpynges. þe fyrste ys þat he knytte on bon with an oþere. It is necessarie þat o bon be knytte with an oþere, þat manye bonys myȝte make on body as on bon, & nevere þe later eche membre myȝte meffyn by hym-selfe, & þere fore þe ligamente was bowable & insensible; for ȝif þat yt had y-be sensible, þey myȝte nouȝt have susteynde the travaylle & þe meffynge of þe Iunttys; and ȝif þat he hadde be inflexible as a bon, of whom þat he comyþ

[5 fol. 40 *b*]

of, [5]on lyme myȝte noȝt han meffyde without an oþere. þe secunde help ys, þat he ys joynede with ȝenewys to make cordys & brawne. þe þridde helpynge ys, þat he scholde ben a restynge place to summe senewys. þe fourþe, þat be hym þe membris þat ben withynne þe body scholde ben tyede, whiche þat nedyþ hongynge.

A corde ys colde & drye, & he comyth̄ from þe brayn oþere fro þe nuca, þat ys þe marye of' þe rugge bonys. ¶ From þe brayn comeþ vij peire cordys, & þey buþ y-clepyde sensible ȝenewys, from þe nuca þere comyth̄ xxx peire cordys, and on by hym selffen & þey buþ mevable; & alle þe cordys þat comyth̄ of þe brayn, & þe nuca

bope felynge & meuynge. & þe cordis ben white oute, bowable, strong[1] & tow3. & of[1] her kynde þei bryngen meuynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat it[1] is long[1] & dyuydiþ[1] alle þe parties of[1] þe senewis
4 *[in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of 3enewes & here place] as þei ligge; in þe whiche placis þou must be war whanne þou schalt kutte eiþer brenne / whanne þat we schulen ordeyne anotamie of official membris & of her woundis / Official membris
8 is to seie: a fyngir, a ioynt[1], an hand, eiþer a foot *[ore] oþere lymes of[1] office /

Nerves of Feeling spring from the Brain: those of Motion from the Spinal Cord.

Official membris.

Arteries ben hoote nou3t of her owne kynde, but for þe hoot blood & lijf[1] þat goiþ in hem from þe herte. Of[1] her kynde þei ben
12 colde & drie & þei han two cloþis, outcept oon þat goiþ to þe lungis þe ynnere corde is stronger & grettere, þat he mowe wiþholde a meuable mater & an hoot. & her bigynnynge is in þe lift[1] side of[1] þe herte. & þere bigynnen two arteries; oon goiþ to þe lunge & haþ
16 but[1] oon coote and sprat[1] in þe same lunge, & þere endiþ & bringiþ blood to þe lunge, bi whom he is norischid, & spirit of[1] lijf, and þat he my3te brynge from þe lunge eir to þe herte for to entempre þe fumosite of hete of[1] þe herte. & þis arterie[2] is [3]y-clepid venales. & it [[3] lf. 12]

5th Member, *Arteries* spring from the heart, and have two coats,

[1] & dyuydiþ] a mistake for *to dyvyde*. Latin: De divisione vero membrorum multum longa est doctrina.

[2] *Arteria venalis*, Pulmonary vein. It was taken to be an artery, as it carries arterial blood. See *Vicary's Anatomie*, ed. Furnivall, p. 58, note 1.

---

20 habbeþ bope felynge & meffynge. & þe cordys ben whyte, bowable, stronge, & tow3; & of here kynde þey brynge meffynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat hit is longe to devydeþ alle þe partyes of 3enewes; *in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of
24 3enewes & here place,* as þey ligge; in þe whiche place þou moste be ware, whenne þou schalt kutte opere brenne, whenne þat we schulle ordeyne Anotamye of official membris & of here woundes. Official membre ys to sigge: a ffynger, a Ioynt, an hand, opere a
28 fote *ore opire lymes of ofyce.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Arteries beþ hote, no3t for here owne kynde, but for þe hote blod & lyf þat goþ in ham from þe herte. Of here kynde þey ben colde & drye, & þey han tweye cloþes, outsepte on þat goth to þe
32 longes. þe innore cote [4]is grettere & strengere, þat he mowe withholde a Mevable matere & an hote. & here bygynnynge is of þe lyfte syde of þe herte. & þere bygynneþ tweye Arteries, on goþ to þe longe & haþ bot on cote & sprat in þe same longe, & þere endyth
36 & bryngeþ blod to þe longe, by whom he ys y-norysschyde, & spirit of lyf, & þat he my3te brynge from þe longe eire[5] to þe herte, for to entempren þe fumose hete of þe same herte. & þis Arterie ys clepyde

[[4] fol. 41 *a*]

[5] MS. *eiþere*.

save *Arteria venalis*, and that has but one.

is a maner veyne, for as mychc as he ne haþ but[1] oon coote, and *per*fore he is þe more obedient to be drawe abrood þoru3 out[1] alle þe lu*n*gis; & also þat þe blood þat norischiþ þe lu*n*gis my3te li3tly swete out[1] of[1] þis arterie / þe to*per* arterie þat comeþ out of þe lift- 4
side of[1] þe herte haþ two cootis, bi cause þ*at* oon my3t not a3enstonde þe strenkþe of[1] þe spiritis; & also þat, þ*at* is wiþi*n*ne þe arterie, is

The uses of Arteries: .1. to bring cold air to the heart; .2. to cast out the fumosity; .3. to carry life to the whole body.

ful derworþe & nediþ greet kepi*n*ge / þer ben þre helpingis of[1] þe arteries: oon is þ*at* cold eir my3te bi he*m* be drawe & I-brou3t to 8
þe herte wha*n*ne þe arterie is drawe abrod. Þe secu*n*de is, þ*at* þe fumosite my3te be cast out wha*n*ne he is constreyned / þe þridde is, þ*at* þe spirit of[1] lijf my3te be brou3t bi he*m* to al þe bodi / þese arteries ben deuydid many weies; whos dyuysiou*n*s ma*n* mai nou3t[1] 12
conseyue bi his witt, ne þei ben nou3t dredful to[1] surgiens craft[1], but wha*n*ne þou schalt drede þe arteries I schal telle þee i*n* her placis /

6th Member, vaynes. [2 lf. 12, bk.]

Veins spring from the liver.

Veynes bi cause of[1] her bodies ben deemed cold & drie; for þe 16
blood þ*at* is w*ith*y*n*ne he*m* þei ben deemed hoot[1]; & alle þe veynes han her bi[2]gy*n*nynge at þe lyuere, in þe which lyuere .ij. veynes han pryncipal bigy*n*nynge / oon veyne bigy*n*neþ of[1] þe holow3 side of[1] þe lyuere. & is clepid porta[3]—þat is a 3ate / & her office is to drawe *[Chilum] 20

[1] *a* erased. [3] *Vena Porta.* See *Vicary*, p. 22, note 1.

Add. MS. 12,056.

venalis, & yt is a mane*re* veyne, ffor as mychc as he may haue but o cote, & *per*efore he is þe more obedient to be drawen abrod porwe out alle þe longes & also þat þe blod þ*at* norysschith þe
longe my3te li3tlokere swete out of þis arterie. Þe o*per*e Artery, þ*at* 24
comyth out of þe lefte syde of þe herte, haþ two cotys, because þ*at* on my3t no3t ageyne stonde þe strengþe of þe spirites, and also þ*at* þat is wiþy*n*ne þe Arterye is ful derwarde & nediþ gret kepynge. Þere ben þre helpynges of þe Arteries: on is þ*at* colde eyre by hem 28
my3te be drawe & y-brou3t to þe herte, whe*n*ne þe arterye is drawe abrod; þe secu*n*de ys p*at* þe fumosite my3t be caste out, whe*n*ne sche is *con*streynyde; þe þridde ys þ*at* þe spirite of lyf my3te be bro3t by hem to alle þe body. Þese Arteries beþ devydyde many 32
weyes, whose divisiones Man may no3t *con*seyve by hys wyt, ne þey ne beþ no3t dredful to surgiens crafte; but whe*n*ne þ*o*u schalt drede þe arterye i schal telle*n* þe in here places.

Veynes by cause of here bodyes beþ y-demyde colde & drye; but 36
for þe blod þ*at* is w*ith*y*n*ne hem þey beþ y-demyde hote, & alle þe veynes han here [4]bygy*n*nynge of þe lyffere, in þe whiche lyffere two veynes han pryncipal begy*n*nynge. On veyne bygy*n*neþ of þe holwe syde of þe lyvere, & ys y-clepyde **Porta**, þ*at* ys a 3atte, & here ofyce 40
is to drawe **chilu*m*** fro*m* þe stomake & þe guttes by mene of þe

[4 fol. 41 *b*]

fro þe stomak & þe guttis bi mene of þe veynes miseraiees[1]; & þilke chilum spredip porup al þe lyuere bi mene of veynes capillares / Chilum[2] is þe licour of þe mete, wha*n*ne it' goip out of' þe stomak & 4 þe guttes / Veynis miserak[1] be*n* smale veynes þat comen out of' þe veyne þat is clepid porta & eleuep on þe stomak & þe guttis / Venes capillares, þat ben veynes as it were heers of' a ma*n*nes heed / — The Mesaraic veins bring. Chilum to the Portal Vein.

After hem comep pa*n*nielis—þat is to seie smal cloop, þat is maad 8 of' sutil predis of' senewis, veynes & arteries / wh*er*fore þei ben colde & drie & censible / & þei ha*n* þre helpingis / þe firste is: þat þei mou*n* bynde manye þingis i*n* oon foorme, as þe paniele of þe heed byndip seuene boones / þe seeu*n*de Iuuament is: þat þei hangen & 12 bynden su*m*me membris wip op*er*e as þe reynes to þe rigge & þe maris to þe maris[3] to þe rigge / þe pridde helpi*n*ge is: þat þe mem- [4]bris þat ben incensible bi her kynde, bi þe pa*n*niclis þat wriep he*m* velen bi accident: as þe lu*n*gis, þe lyuere, & þe splene, & þe reynes. 16 þes lymes bi her kynde han no felynge, but what' þei felen it' is bi accidens of' þe pa*n*niele þat wriep he*m*. — 7th Member, panikelles, the fleshy membrane. The uses of the Pannicle. .1. .2. .3. [4 lf. 13]

Þe[5] fleisch is not' hoot', b*u*t it is moist' & hap þre maner lijknes: oon is a symple fleisch, & his helpinge is to fulfille þe voide placis — 8th Member Flesh. 3 Man*er* of fleisch.**

[1] *Veynis miserak.* See *Vicary*, p. 66, note 7.
[2] *Chilum.* See *Vicary*, p. 68, note 2.
[3] MS. þe maris to þe maris to þe rigge. The second *maris* is cancelled.
[5] Latin: Caro vero calida est et humida.

---

20 **veynes miscraykus**; þilke chylu*m* spredep porwe al þe lyffere by mene of **veynes Capillares**. **Chilu*m*** ys þe licour*e* of mete & of þe drynke, whe*n*ne yt gop out of þe stomak*e* & þe guttes. Veynes miserayke bep smale veynes, þat comyth out of þe veyne þat is 24 y-clepyde **porta**, & clevyth on þe stomak*e* & þe gottys. Veynes capillarys þat bep veynes, as yt were herys of a Ma*n*nes hed. — Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ After he*m* comyth pa*n*nyceles, þat ys to sigge, a smal eloth, þat ys mad of sotyh predys of synwis veynes & arteries, where 28 fore þey ben colde & dryȝe & sensible, & þey han þre helpynges. Þe firste is þat they mowe bynden manye þynges in on forme, as þe pa*n*niele of þe hed bynde vii bonys; þe seeu*n*de Iuvament is þat þey hongen & bynden so*m*me me*m*brys w*i*th op*er*e, as þe reyns to þe 32 rugge & þe marys to þe ruggc bon; þe prydde helpynge ys þat some membrys þat bep insensible by here kynde, by þe pa*n*nyeles þat wreyep he*m* ffelip by aceydent, as þe longes, þe lyffere, & þe splene, & þe reynes; þese lymes by here kynde hap no*n* felynge, but what 36 þat þey felyn it ys by Aceident of þe pa*n*nycle þat wreyep he*m*.

Þe flesch is noȝt hot, but yt is moist, & hap þre man*er*e lyknesse; on ys symple flesch, & hys helpynge ys to fulfylle þe voyde placys

.1. Simple flesh fills up hollows.
.2. Glandulous flesh turns blood into milk, and makes sperm into spittle.
.3. Brawny or muscular flesh.
[4 lf. 13, bk.]
9th Member, Skin. It is temperate.

of' smale lymes to brynge hem to a good schap, & þat ech hard lyme schulde nouȝt hirte oþer wiþ confucaciou*n*[1] togidere / Anoþer maner fleisch þer is þat is glandelose, þat' is as it' were accornis,[2] & his Iuuament is þat' he turne[3] humedites, þat' is to seie moistnes to her 4 heete; as þe glandelose fleisch of wo*m*mans brestis þe which þat' tu*r*neþ þe blood þat' is drawen from þe maris into mylk; & þe glandelose fleisch of þe ballockis, þat turneþ þe blood into sp*er*me / & þe glandelose fleisch of' þe chekis þat engendriþ spotil / þe þridde 8 maner fleisch is a fleisch þat is i*n* brawnys, þat is clepid a brawn fleisch, for he is medlid wiþ sutil þredis of cordis, as I schal telle aft*er* þe whiche helpi*n*gis schal be told i*n* þe [4]anotamie of' þe brawn.

At' þe laste is þe skyn þat is temp*er*at in al her qualitees; & it' 12 is maad of' smale þredis of' veynes, senewis, & art*er*ies, þat makiþ hi*m* censible, & ȝeueþ hi*m* liȝf & worchi*n*ge, þat ben gou*er*nouris of' al þe bodi. & þe sky*n* is maad temp*er*at, for he schulde knowe hoot, coold, moist, & drie, soft', hard, scharp, & smoþe / & if' þat þe skyn 16 were as sencible as a senewe, þa*n*ne a man myȝte not dwelle i*n* erþe ne i*n* hoot eir; ne þe skyn of' þe fyngris endis þe whiche þat is more temp*er*at þan ony oþir skyn of' þe bodi ne schulde nouȝt be a

[1] *confucaciou*n. Addit. *confricaciou*n. See page 23, note 2.
[2] *accornis*, glandes.
[3] Latin: eius juvamentum est, ut convertat humiditates ad eius colorem. The English translator read: calorem.

Add. MS. 12,056.
[5 fol. 42 *a*]

of smale lymes, to bryngen hem to a gode schappe, & þat iche harde 20 lyme [5]ne scholde nouȝt hurten oþere with confricaciou*n* togedire. An oþ*er*e manere flesch̄ ys þat is glandelose, þat ys as hyt were achcharnes, & hys Iuvamente is þat he turnyth̄ vmydites to here hete: as þe glandelose flesch̄ of wo*m*mans brestys, whyche þat 24 turnyth̄ þe blod þat ys drawe fro*m* þe marys into þe mylk, þe glandelose flesch of þe ballokes, þat turnyth̄ þe blod into sperme, & þe glandelose flesch off' the chekys þat engendreþ spotel. Þe þridde man*er*e of flesch̄ ys a flesch̄ þat is in brawnys, þat ys y-clepede a 28 brawny flesch̄, ffor he ys medlyde wiþ sotyl þredys of cordys, as y schal tellyn aftere, whose helpynge schal be tolde in þe Anotamye of þe brawne.

At þe laste is þe schyn, þat is te*mper*at in al here qualite, & is 32 y-mad of smale þredys of veynes, synwes, & Arteries, þat makeþ hy*m* sensible, and geveþ hy*m* lyf and norisschynge, þat he be gov*er*noure of alle þe body. & þe skyn ys y-mad temp*er*at, for he scholde knowe hot, colde, moyste & drye, softe & hard, scharpe & smeþe; & ȝif þe 36 skyn were as sensible as a ȝenewe, a ma*n* myȝte noȝt dwellen in colde eyr*e*, ne in hote eyr*e*; ne þe skyn of þe fyngres endys, whiche þat ys more temp*er*at þe*n*ne eny oþ*er*e skyn of þe body, ne scholde

good demere in knowynge hoot, cold, hard, scharp, soft, eiþ*er* neische.

Brawnes þou3 þ*a*t þei be m*aa*d of' mat*er* medlid, neþeles þei be*n* rekened among' me*m*bris consimiles, for þei comen to þe maki*ng*' of' membris officials / Brawn is m*aa*d of' fleisch, senewe, & ligamentis, & þei ben instrument voluntarie meuynge. Þe senewe þat comeþ fro þe brayn, & þe nucha & goiþ forþ to meue þe lymes is medlid wiþ a ligament / & wha*n*ne þe senewe & þe ligament' be*n* medlid togidere, it' is clepid a corda / & þe corde is m*aa*d for þre skilis. Þe firste[1] for a symple sinewe is to cen[2]sible; þe senewe bi hi*m*-silf my3t not suffre gret' traueile & meuy*n*ge, but' þe felowschipe of þe ligament þ*a*t is incensible lettiþ þe felynge of' þe senewe, & bringiþ hi*m* to a profitable te*m*per*a*un*c*e / þe senewe haþ .ij. oþ*er*e defautis: neischenesse and li3tnesse. But þo .ij. defautis þe medlynge of' þe ligament' fulfilliþ[3]; for þe neischenes is temp*er*id & strenkþid, & þe litilnes is maad more. Þe neischnes comeþ of' þe brayn for it is myche, & þe litilnes comeþ of þe nucha, for it is litil. Þ*a*t þ*a*t is m*aa*d of þis nerf & þis ligament is clepid a corde; þe which þat meueþ þe lymes to þe wille of' þe soule, wha*n*ne þat' it is schortid

9th Member, Muscles are instruments of moving. Cords are made from Sinews and Ligaments,

[2 lf. 14]

the Sinew alone being too sensible,

too soft,

and too small. cordis.

[1] *þe firste* in margin.

[3] *fulfilliþ*, supplet. See *Cath. Angl.*, p. 145, *to Fulfylle*, supplere vicem Alterius.

---

no3t be*n* a gode demere in knowynge hot, cold, hard oþ*er*e scharpe, softe oþ*er*e nessche.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Brawnys þow3 þey ben mad of mate*re*·y-medlyde, nev*er*e þe latere þey beþ y-reknyde amonge me*m*brys *con*similes, for þey come*n* to þe makynge off' Membrys-officiales. Brawne ys y-mad of fflesch, [4]3enewe, & ligamente, & þey ben Instrument off volu*n*tarie mevynge. Þe 3enewe þat comyth fro*m* þe brayn & þe nuca, & goþ forþ to meve the lymes, ys y-medlyde w*ith* a ligamente, & whe*n*ne þe 3enewe & þe ligamente beþ medlyde togedyre, yt ys clepyde a corde, *&* the corde ys y-made for þre skylles: þe ffurste for a symple senewe ys to sensible, & þe 3enewe by hy*m*-self' ne my3te no3t suffre*n* to grete t*ra*vaylle & mevynge, but þe felawschipe of þe ligamente, þ*a*t ys insensible, lutliþ þe felynge of þe synwe, and bryngeþ hym to a p*ro*fitable temp*er*au*n*ce. Þe 3enewe hadde tweyne oþere defautes: nesschenesse & litylnesse, but þo tweyne defautes, þe medlynge of þe ligament ffulfilleþ; for the neschenesse ys entempred & y-strengthyde, and þe lytelnesse ys y-made more. The nesschenesse comyth of þe brayn, ffor it ys nessche; and þe lytelnesse comeþ of þe Nuca, for it ys lytel. Þ*a*t þat is mad of þis nerff' & þis ligamente ys clepyde a corde, whiche þ*a*t meviþ þe lymes to wyl of þe soule,

[4 fol. 42 b]

Muscles are made from cords and flesh.

.1. ou*per* drawe*n* after *pat* þe lyme bouwiþ. To þis[1] corde, þer is asocied a symple *[fflesch̄] for to make a brawn for þre *pro*fitis / þe firste

.2. *pro*fiȝt' *pat* is in drawynge & wiþdrawynge of' þe corde, þe fleisch schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myȝt reste / þe secu*n*de, 4 *pat* þe fleisch *pat* is neische & moist schulde kepe þe corde, þat' he

.3. drie nouȝt in her meuynge / þe þridde, *pat* þe makynge of lymes were þe more schaploker./ þe brawn is m*aa*d bowynge as a bowe

[2 lf. 14, bk.] *pat* is bent; & for þe kynde wolde kepe þis complexiou*n*, he cloþide 8

When the Cords enter the Muscles, they are divided into many threads.

[2]þe brawn wiþ a pa*n*nicle / þe corde wha*n*ne he entriþ into þe brawn is departid into many smale þredis, & þei ben clepid villes[3]—*pat* is to seie wrappingis. & þese villes be*n* of' .iij. mane*r*: in lenkþe bi þe which ve*r*tu, *pat*' drawiþ haþ myȝt, in brede, bi þe which ve*r*tu 12 *pat* castide out haþ myȝt / in þwert ouer bi þe which ve*r*tu *[*pat*] w*ith* halt haþ myȝt / & at' þe eendis of þe brawn þilke þredis ben gaderid togidere to make a corde, aftir *pat* it is nessessarie / many cordis eiþ*er* brawnes to ben engendrid. *&* official membris be*n* m*aa*d of' 16 þese consimile membris, þe whiche *pat* be*n* instrumente*s* to resonable soule. And in þe ij. tretis I wole telle þe anotamie of' lymes of office.

[1] Lat.: Huic autem chordæ—associatur caro simplex. Comp. Add. MS.
[3] *villes.* Lat. fila.

Add. MS. 12,056.

whe*n*ne *pat* it is schortid o*pe*re y-drawe, afte*r*e *pat* þe lyme bowyth 20 to þis corde. ffor þe*re* ys Asosyed a symple *fflesch̄ forto maken a brawne for þre *pro*ffytes: þe furste profyt, *pat* boþe in drawynge & wiþdrawynge of þe corde, the flesch̄ scholde be as a pylwe, vp on whom he myȝte reste; þe secu*n*de cause, *pat* þe flesch̄ *pat* is nessche 24

[4 fol. 43 *a*] & moyst schulde kepe*n* þe corde, pat [4]sche dreyȝede noȝt in here mevynge; þe þridde, pat þe makynge of lymes were þe more schaplokore. þe brawne is made bowynge, as a bowe *pat* ys y-bent; & for *pat* kynde wolde kepe þys *com*positiou*n*, he clothyde þe brawne 28 wyþ a pa*n*nycle. þe corde whe*n*ne he entrith̄ in to *pat* brawne, ys departyde in to many smale þredys, & þey ben clepyde vylles, *pat* ys to sugge, wrabbynges. *&* þese villes bene of þre maners, in lengþe—by whom vertue *pat* drawe*þ* haþ myȝt, in brede—by whom 32 vertu *pat* castyth̄ out haþ myȝt, in twart ofere—by whom vertu *þat wiþhalt haþ myȝt; & at þe ende of þe brawne þilke þredys beþ gadride to gedre to maken a corde, afte*r* *pat* it is necessarie, many cordys o*pe*re brawnys to ben engendride. *&* official membrys ben 36 y-mad of þese *con*simile m*em*brys, whiche *pat* beþ instrument to resonable sowle. And in þe secu*n*de tretys y wyl telle*n* þe anotamye of lymes of ofice.

The firste chapitle //

¶ Capm. jm

¶ þe .iij. techinge is of' difference of wou*n*dis & of general de vulneribus
curis / We schulen undrestonde þ*a*t wounde, & old wounde, festre
4 & ca*n*kre woundid, & boon out' of' ioynte, & a boon to-broken, &
apostyme, alle þese ben clepid vndoynge of' þ*a*t þ*a*t is hool. & alle
þese sijknessis, & many oon oþir as weel, mou*n* falle to *con*simile
membris as to official me*m*bris / vunnu*s* is a newe wou*n*de / vlc*us* is
8 an old rotid wou*n*de. [1]I schal tellen in her placis þe difference of' [1 leaf 15]
festre & cankre & apostyme; plage comou*n*ly is taken for an oold
wounde, & ofte tymes we fynde þ*a*t an old wou*n*de is clepid vulnu*s*,
as ypocras seiþ / vulnera anua necesse e*st* in eis os taliefieri[2] & cica- ypocras
12 trices concauas fieri: þ*a*t is to seie, it is nedful[3] þat þe boon in an
oold wounde to be rotid & þe cicatrices to be holowȝ / Cicatrice is þe
place of' þe schynboon[4] þe wou*n*de, wha*n*ne þ*a*t it is hool / Su*m*me
wou*n*dis be*n* symple, & su*m*me co*m*pou*n*d / in two maner he is Wounds are either
16 clepid a symple wounde / oon maner, for he haþ not' lost' of' fleisch / woundis sempell
anoþ*er* man*er* for he haþ noon oþir sijknesse wiþ hi*m*, ne is nouȝt
distemperid / A wounde compou*n*d is clepid contrarie to hi*m* þ*a*t is or compound,
symple / but boþe symple & co*m*pou*n*dis sumtyme is in þe fleisch or

[2] Read *tabefieri.* [3] *it is nedful* in margin.
[4] *schynboon*, read *schyn above.* See below.

---

20 The ffurste Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of difference of wou*n*des & olde wou*n*des & off generall cures. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ We schulle vndirstonde þ*a*t wou*n*de, olde wou*n*de, ffest*re*, cancre
24 y-wondyde, a bon out of loynt, a bon tobroken, Aposteme, alle þese
ben y-clepyde vndoynge of þ*a*t þat ys hol, & alle þese seknesse &
manye oþ*er*e as wel mowe falle*n* to *con*simile me*m*brys. as to oficial
me*m*bris. Vulnus is a newe wou*n*de. Vlcus ys an olde rotyde
28 wou*n*de. I schall [5]telle*n* in here place þe dyfference of festre & [5 fol. 43 b]
cancre & apostemys. Plage comynliche ys y-take*n* of an olde wonde;
and ofte tyme we fynden, þ*a*t an olde wou*n*de ys y-clepyde Vulnu*s*,
as Ipocres seiþ: *Vulnera Annua necesse est in eis os tabefieri &*
32 *cicatrices* con*cavas fieri.* ¶ That is to sugge, it ys ned, þ*a*t þe bon
in an olde wou*n*de to be rotyd, & þe Cicatrices to be holwe. Cica-
trice ys þe place of þe skyn above the wou*n*de, whe*n*ne þat yt is
hol. Some wou*n*de buþ symple & some ben *com*ponyde. In tweye
36 man*er*e he ys clepyde a symple wou*n*de. On man*er*e, for he haþ
noȝt leste of flesch; an oþ*er*e man*er*, for he haþ no*n* oþ*er*e seknesse
wi*th* hy*m*, ne is noȝt distempride. A wou*n*de co*m*poned ys y-clepyde
contrarye to hy*m* þ*a*t is symple. But boþe symple & also com-

and have different causes, both internal

in þe senewe, or in þe boon, or in þe veynes, or in þe arterie / also þese woundis han dyuers cause. Summe comen fro wiþinne of þe malice, eiþer of to greet multitude of humouris. *[forto gret multitude of humores] oþirwhile tobrekiþ þe membre & wiþholdiþ & woundiþ him / Cold matere streyneþ, drie mater kuttiþ, moisture wiþoute mater makiþ no wounde, but selden with [1]mater, but he drawe þe lyme to brode. & also þe cause wiþoute[2] mai be dyuers oþirwhile wiþ a swerd eiþir wiþ a þing þat kuttiþ along, oþerwhile wiþ a knyf or wiþ a spere or an arowe þat prickiþ, & summe ben maad wiþ a staf or wiþ a stoon eiþir wiþ fallynge, & summe ben maad wiþ bitynge of an hound ouþir a wood hound; & alle þese ben diuers aftir þe dyuersite of her causis; & also þe maner of helynge is dyuers / Al þe intencioun of helynge of woundis is for to sowden or to helen & to restoren þat, þat is departid, þe which þat mai not oueral be doon / for if þat membris of office ben kutt of, þei moun neuere be restorid, ne noon of þe consimile membris mai be restorid, if he be doon awey: as boonis, pelliculis, gristlis, ligamentis & skyn / For þe cause of her generacioun is þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir, as I tolde tofore / but in place of þing þat is I-lore, kynde restoriþ þat, þat is moost conuenient to þe place; but fleisch mai be restorid bi cause

[1] lf. 15, bk.]

and external.

The object of healing is to close a wound, and to restore what has been lost.

Nota

Bones, ligaments, and similar parts cannot be restored;

[2] *The cause wiþoute*, causa exterior.

Add. MS. 12,056.

ponyd some tyme is in þe flesch̄ oþere in þe synwe oþer in bon, oþere in veyne, oþere in arterie. Also þese wondes han dyverse causes. Some comen from wiþynne of þe malice, oþere of to gret multytude of humores; *forto gret multitude of humores oþere while tobrekyth̄ þe membre, þat wiþholdiþ & woundiþ hym cold matere streyneþ, drye matere kutteþ, moistnesse withouten matere makeþ no wounde, but selden with matere, but he drawiþ þe lyme to brode. And also þe cause wiþout may be dyverse, oþerwhyle with a swerd, ore with a þynge þat kutteþ alonge, oþerwhile with a knyff, oþere a spere, oþere an arwe þat [3]prykeþ, & somme ben made wiþ a stafe, oþere with a ston, oþere with fallynge, & somme ben mad with bytinge of an hound, oþere of a wod hounde; & alle þese ben dyverse, after þe dyverste of here cause; & also þe manere of helynge ys dyverse. Alle þe entensioun of helynge of woundes, ys forto sowdyn & to helyn, & to restoren þat þat is departyde, whiche þat may noȝt overe al be don. Ffor ȝif þat membres of offyee ben kutte of, þey mowe nevere ben restoryd; ne non of þe consimile membres may be restoryde, & he be don awey: as bonys, pellieules, grustles, ligamentis & selyn. Ffor þe cause of here generacioun is þe sperme of þe ffadire & þe modere, as y tolde tofore; but in place of thynge þat is lore, kynde restoryth̄ þat þat is most convenient to þat place; but the flesch̄ may be restoryd, by cause þat þe blod ys engendred

[3] fol. 44 *a*]

þat' þe blood is engendrid al day in us, & þe blood is þe mater of' þe fleisch / & summe seien þat veynes, arteries, & senewis myȝt not' be restorid as þei weren tofore; but þei moun [1] be restorid as boonys ben / But Galion and Auicen & I þat' am expert' here seiynge,[2] we[3] seie þat' þei moun be restorid wiþ veri consolidacioun, whanne þat' her kuttynge is litil, & whanne þat' þe senewis þat' ben newe kutt' & [4] soude aȝen; but' þei moun not' be consoudid, whanne þat' her kuttynge is myche & greet'; & resoun grauntiþ it' / Senewis bi kynde ben neische & viscouse; & þerfore þei moun[5] ben consoudid, & þe veynes & þe arteries moun be consoudid bi resoun of' þe blood þat' is in hem. I þenke to ordeyne ech chapitle bi him-silf' after þe dyuersite of' lymes & of' placis, þe whiche þat' þei ben maad ynne / & I wole bigynne at' a symple wounde maad in fleisch /

flesh, veins, and arteries can be.

[1 leaf 16]

G. A.

vaynes & arteres may be consouded but not senewis.

þe secunde chapitle of þe þridde techinge /

ij°. c°.

Now we wolen trete of' a wounde maad in fleisch. We wolen bigynne at' a symple wounde maad wiþ knyf' or wiþ swerd, or spere or arowe, or wiþ ony oþir þing' semblablele to hem.

Of wounde maad in fleisch.

[2] *I þat am expert here seiynge.* Lat.: ego qui sum expertus eorum dicta.

[3] *we*, added above line. [4] *&*, mistake for *ben*.

[5] *not*, erroneously added above line.

---

al day in vs, & þe blod ys þe matere of flesch̄; & somme suggen þat veynes, synwes, & arteries myȝte nouȝt be restoryde as þey were tofore; but þey mowe be restoryd as bonys buþ. But Galien & Avycene, & I þat am expert here suggynge, suggen þat þey mowe be restoryde with verrey consolidacioun, whanne þat here kuttynge ys lyteH, & whenne þat þe synwys þat buþ newe kutte beþ so wyde aȝeyne; but þey mowe noȝt be consouded, whanne þat here kuttynge ys gret & myche; & resoun grauntytH̄ yt. Synwys by kynde buþ nessche and viscose; & þerefore þey mowe ben consouded. Þe veynes & þe arteries mowe be consouded by resoun of þe blod þat ys in hem. I þynke to ordeynen eche Chapitell [6] be hym selven, aftere þe dyversite of lymes & of placys, whyche þat þey buþ y-made yn; & y wyl begynne at a symple wounde y-mad in flesch̄.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 44 b]

¶ þe secunde Chapitell off þe thridde techynge off the ffurst tretis is of cure of a wounde y-mad in fflesch.

Now we willen treten of a wounde y-makyd in fflesch̄. We wylle begynne at a symple wounde, y-mad wiþ knyff' oþere wiþ swerd ore spere, oþere with arwe, oþere with enye oþere thynge

Simple wounds, if painless, will close if only bandaged,

Bynde togideris þilke wou*n*de w*ith* a boond þat[1] closiþ þe wou*n*de togideris, & kepe þilke wou*n*de from swellynge wiþ þe whiȝt[1] of[1] an ey leid aboue þe wou*n*de, & lete þe wou*n*de be *in* reste; & þ*er* nediþ noon o þ*er* cure, namely, [1] wha*n*ne þe wou*n*de is wiþoute akynge; but, & þ*er* be in þe wounde greet akynge, þa*n*ne it is a tokene, þ*a*t þ*er* is a senewe prickid vndir þe wou*n*de, eiþ*er* a pa*n*nicle þ*a*t is bitwene þe fleisch and þe boon; & þa*n*ne þ*er* is anoþ*er* cure, as I schal telle *in* þe chapitle of pu*n*cture of[1] a senewe þ*a*t I haue heelid a man þ*a*t[2] was *[sefenty ȝere olde þat was] smyte wiþ a spere poruȝ þe fleisch of þe buttoke, bi þe lenkþe of a fote, *[& more] but þilke wou*n*de touchide no senewe, & þ*a*t I wiste sikirliche, for he hadde noon akynge / I heeld þe wounde open aldai wiþ a litil smal tent & a schort, þ*a*t I myȝte wite, if[1] þ*a*t he schulde aken on þe morowe, & I comau*n*dide hi*m* to reste / & on þe morowe I foond noon inflacio*un* ne akynge; & þa*n*ne I took awey þe tent & lete þe wou*n*de closen, & so comau*n*dide I hi*m* to reste þe secu*n*de dai / I*n* þe þridde day he was hool. & if a wounde were m*aa*d wiþ a swerd or wiþ ony þi*ng*[1] þ*a*t bitiþ *in* lenkþe, anoo*n* þou must loke if[1] þe wou*n*de be so litil þ*a*t he nede no sowynge, & þa*n*ne brynge þe p*ar*ties of þe wou*n*de togideris, þ*a*t it may be weel ioyned, & leie aboue þe wou*n*de a pou*n*dir m*aa*d oon p*ar*tie

Naracio.

Ego curauy homo. as has been shown in the case of an old man.

Treat slight wounds with puluis *con*solid*ativus*

[1 lf. 16, bk.]

[2] *þat*, scribal insertion.

Add. MS. 12,056.

semblable to he*m*. Bynde togedyre þilke wou*n*de w*ith* a band þ*a*t close þe wou*n*de to gedire, & kepe þe wou*n*de fro*m* swellynge, w*ith* þe whyte of an eyȝe y-leyde aboue þe wou*n*de, & lete þ*a*t wou*n*de ben in reste, & þ*er*e nedyth none o þ*er*e cure, namlye, wha*n*ne þe wou*n*de ys w*ith*out*e*n akynge; but and þ*er*e be in wou*n*de gret akynge, þa*n*ne þ*er*e is a tokne þ*a*t þere ys a synwe p*r*ikyde vndir*e* þe wou*n*de, o þ*er*e a pa*n*nicle þ*a*t ys betwene þe flesch & þe bon, & þanne þ*er*e ys al an o þ*er*e cure, as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of the pu*n*cture of a synwe. And y haue helyd a ma*n* þ*a*t was *sefenty ȝere olde, þ*a*t was y-smyte*n* w*i*þ a spere porwe þe flesch of þe buttoke by þe lengþe of a fote *& mor*e*, but þilke wonde touchyde no*n* synwe; & þ*a*t y wiste sykerliche, for he had no*n* akynge; y helde the wou*n*de opyn al a day, w*ith* a lyte smal tente & a schert þ*a*t y myȝte wyte, ȝif þ*a*t he scholde ake on þe morwe & I comau*n*dyde hy*m* to reste, and on þe morwe y fonde no*n* inflacion ne akynge, & þe*n*ne y caste aweye þe tente & lete þe wou*n*de closen, & so y comau*n*dide hy*m* to reste, & wiþy*n*ne þe þridde day he was al hol. And ȝif þ*a*t a wou*n*de were mad wiþ a swerd, o þ*er*e w*i*þ eny þynge þ*a*t [3]kutteþ in lengþe, a ma*n* most loke ȝif þe wou*n*de be so litel þ*a*t he nede no*n* sowynge, & þe*n*ne brynge þe parties of þe wou*n*de togedyre, þ*a*t it may wel ben y-joynede, & leye above þe wou*n*de a poudere y-mad of on partye of ffranke-En-

[3 fol. 45 *a*]

of frankencense, & of two p*ar*ties[1] of' sandragou*n*,[2] & of' þre p*ar*ties [[1] leaf 17]
of' quyk lym, & lete nou3t þe poudre entre bitwenc i*n* þe wou*n*de
but' aboue, for þer schal no þing' entre i*n* þe wou*n*de, & kepe þe Way of dressing a wound with compresses.
4 p*ar*ties of þe wou*n*de þat ben brou3t togidere wiþ a plumaciol[3] .iij.
corne*r*ed m*aa*d of herdis or of towe in þis man*er*: ◁ oon bi þe
sidis of þe wou*n*de, so þ*at* boþe þilke plumaciols holde þe wounde þus
iclosed[4]: ◁ ⊢ ▷ & ioyned togidere as it' was ioyned arst, or
8 it were kutt / & bynde þe wou*n*de togidere aboue þe plumaciols wiþ
a rolle þ*at* goiþ ou*er*þwert aftir þis lettre .X. & take a ly*n*nen cloo*þ*
& wete hi*m* in two parties of þe white of an cy, in oon p*ar*tie of'
oile of' rosis, þei ben togidcre medlid, undir þe plumaciols, leid aboue
12 þe wou*n*de þ*at* is brou3t togidere, for to kepe þe[5] poudre; & do
nou3t' awey þi medicyn til .iiij. daies ben goon, but' if þ*at* þe Nota
wou*n*de ake or be to-swollen. & þ*a*nne bynde þe wou*n*de as it was
biforn wiþ þe white of' an ey; oile, poudre, & plumaciols. But' if'
16 þe wou*n*de were so myche, þ*at* byndynge wolde nou3t suffice, or were Large wounds and those which run athwart the limb are to be stitched
kutt ouerþwert' ou*er* þe lyme, so þ*at* þe p*ar*ties of þe lyme my3t nou3t'
wel be[6] brou3t togideris, þ*a*nne sowe þe wou*n*de ou þis maner / Ioyne
þe lippis of' þe wounde, & be war þat noon oile *[ne dust] ne no [[6] lf. 17, bk.]
20 þi*n*g' ellis, þ*at* lettiþ consolidaciou*n*, falle bitwene þe lippis of' þe

[2] *Sandragoun.* Sanguis draconis: the gum of the Dragon-tree. Kersey. 1706. See Notes. [3] *Plumaceoli:* Bolsters used by Surgeons. Kersey. 1706.
[4] *iclosed*, inserted in margin. [5] MS. *wounde*, cancelled.

---

sence, & of two p*ar*tyes of sancdragou*n* & of þre parties of quyk*e*- Add. MS. 12,056.
lyme, & lete no3t þe poud*re* entre w*i*þynne þe wou*n*de but above,
for þ*er*e schal noþynge entr*e* with*y*nne þe wou*n*de, & kepe þe parties
24 of þe wou*n*de þ*at* buþ brou3t togedi*re* w*ith* a plumacyole þre corneled
y-made of hurdes o*þer*e tow3 in þis manere ▷ on be þe sydes of
þe wou*n*de, so þ*at* boþe þilke plumacioles holde þe wou*n*de þus
y-closyde ◁ | ▷ & joynde togedire, as yt was joyned ere þe*n*ne
28 yt was ykutte; & bynde þe wou*n*de togedir*e* abou*e*n þe plumacioles,
w*ith* a rolle þat goth̄ twartoffere aft*er* þis lettere XX, & take a ly*n*nen
cloth & wete hy*m* in two p*ar*ties of whyte of an ey3e, & in on
p*ar*tie of oyle of roses i-bete togedir*e*, vndir*e* þe plumacioles abofe þe
32 wou*n*de, þ*at* ys y-brow3t togedyre, forto kepe þe poudre, & do no3t
awey þe medycine tyl foure dayes ben ago, but 3if þ*at* þe wou*n*de
ake, o*þer*e ellys be to-swollyn; & þe*n*ne bynde þe wonde as yt was
toforne, w*ith* þe whyte of þe ey3e, oyle, poudre, & plumacioles. But
36 3if þe wou*n*de were so myche, þ*at* þe byndynge wolde no3t suffice,
o*þer*e were kutte twart offere þe lyme, so þ*at* þe p*ar*tyes of þe lyme
my3t no3t wel be brow3t togedire, þ*a*nne sowe þe wou*n*de on þis
man*er*e: joyne þe lippes of þe wou*n*de togedir*e*, & war*e* þ*at* no*n* oyle
40 *ne dust, ne noþynge ellys þ*at* lattyd c*o*nsolidaciou*n*, falle bytwene

with an acus *trian*gulu*m*.

Way of stitching a wound.

wou*n*de, & haue a nedle þre cornerid, whos iȝe schal be holid o*n* boþe sidis, so þ*a*t þe þred þ*a*t is i*n* þe nedle may lie i*n* þe holowȝ place, & þilke þred schal be twyned, & wiþoute knotte, & I-wexid, & þe lippis of þe wou*n*de schal be sowid togideris; & þe þred schal 4 be knytt wiþ two knottis i*n* þe firste place, & in þe secu*n*de place wiþ oon knotte; & so make as manye poyntis, as it[t] is nessessarie, & ech poynt schal be from oþir bi þe brede of[f] a litil fyngir, & streyne þe wou*n*de w*ith* knottynge & þe sewynge of[f] þe lippis of þe 8

Number of the stitches and their distance from each other.

wou*n*de togidere þ*a*t he ake su*m*what, but[t] nouȝt to myche. & if þ*a*t þer nede mo poyntis to be þ*e*re þan two, euermore þ*e*r schal be odde poyntis. as .iij. v. or .vij. & þe oon poynt schal be first from þe oon eende of þe wou*n*de, bi þe space of a litil fyngir, & þe toþir poynt 12 schal be at þe oþir ende of[f] þe wou*n*de, & þe þridde poynt[t] schal be i*n* þe myddil of þe wou*n*de / & if it[t] be nede to haue mo poyntis,

[1 leaf 18]

þ*a*nne schalt[t] þou [1]bigy*n*ne at[t] þe myddil poynt[t], & make as manye poyntis on boþe sidis as it[t] is nede, til þ*o*u come to boþe eendis / For 16 bi þis maner of[f] sowynge neiþir p*a*rtie schal be crokid, & so þe place mai faire be restorid, & eu*e*rmore take kepe þ*a*t[t] *[ȝif] þe wounde be

The stitches must be deep enough

not[t] depe, þi sowynge schal be nouȝt[t] deep / & if[f] þi wou*n*de be deep, þi sowynge schal be deep, þ*a*t alle þe p*a*rties of[f] þe wou*n*de mou*n* 20

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 45 *b*]

þe lippes of þe wou*n*de, & haue an nedle [2]þre kornerde, whose eyȝe scholde be holyde on boþe sydes, so þ*a*t þe [3]þrede þat is in þe nedle may ligge in þe holwe place, & þilke schal be twynede, & w*ith*oute knotte & ywaxide, & þe lippes of þe wou*n*de schulle be*n* sowyde 24 togedyre, & þe þrede schal be knette w*ith* two knottes in þe firste place; in þe secu*n*de place w*ith* on knotte, & so make as manye pu*n*ctis as yt is necessarie, & eche pu*n*cte schal be fro*m* o þ*e*re by þe brede of a lytel ffyng*e*re, & streyne þ*e* wou*n*de wiþ knettynge, & þe 28 sowynge of þe lippes of þe wou*n*de togedire þ*a*t he ake su*m*what, but noȝt to myche, & ȝif þ*a*t þ*e*re nede mo pu*n*ct*is* to be þ*e*re þen two, efir*e* more þ*e*re schal be odde pu*n*ctys, as þre, fyfe, o þ*e*re scuene; & þe on pu*n*cte schal be fyrst fro*m* þe on ende of þe wonde by þe 32 [4]brede of a litel fyngir*e*, & þe o þ*e*re pu*n*cte schal be at þe o þ*e*re ende of þe wou*n*de, & þe þridde pu*n*cte schal be in þe myddul of þe wou*n*de; & ȝif it be nede to haue mo pu*n*ct*is*, þou schalt begy*n*nen at þe myddel pu*n*cte, & make as manye pu*n*ct*es* on boþe þe sydes, as 36 yt ys nede, tyl þou come to boþe endys; ffor by þis man*e*re of sowynge neiþ*e*re partye schal be crokyde, & so þ*e* place may fair*e*re ben restoryde. And eu*e*remore take hede, *ȝif þe wou*n*de be noȝt depe, þy sowynge schal be nouȝt depe. And ȝif þy wou*n*de be depe 40 þy sowynge schal be depe, þat alle þe p*a*rties of þe wou*n*de mowe

[3] *þridde* cancelled before *þrede*. [4] *sp.* cancelled before *brede*.

be ioyned / For if þe wou*n*de were deep, & þi sowynge not[1] deep, nede þ*er* muste be i*n* þe depþe of[1] þe wou*n*de a greet[1] holownes, to þe which holownes blood & quyttere schulde be cast[1]; & þilke quyttere & blood schulde lette þe helynge of[1] þe wou*n*de. & þe poudre þ*at*[1] is seid in þe same chapitle, schal be leid aboue on þe same wounde; & þou schalt[1] kepe þe sewynge & þe p*ar*ties of[1] þe wou*n*de þ*at*[1] I brou3te togidere wiþ plumaciols þre cornerid, & wiþ alle þe o*per*e þi*n*gis þ*at*[1] ben i*n* þis chapitle tofore seid / And if[1] þ*at* a wou*n*de haþ be to longe i*n* þe eir open, which þ*at* is þe cause of[1] quytt*er*e þ*at*[1] lettiþ consolidaciou*n*, þa*n*ne we musten cle*n*se þe wou*n*de wiþ þis mu*n*dificatif[1] þ*at*[1] is maad of[1] flour of[1] wheete & hony & wat*er* & mel roset[1], [1] I-colat, þ*at* is to seie, clensid from þe rosis, and of barly mele / Of[1] þese mu*n*dificatyues þ*o*u schalt[1] haue a ful techi*n*ge i*n* þe laste tretis /

to leave no hollows in the wound.

To wounds exposed to the air apply a cleansing ointment.

a mundificatif.

[1 lf. 18, bk.]

But if þe wou*n*de be compou*n*d, a leche muste haue as manye intenciou*n*s as þer ben accidentis to þe wou*n*de / I sette an ensau*m*ple. I suppose þat a wou*n*de be compou*n*d wiþ holownes & lesy*n*ge of[1] fleisch & of[1] skyn, & þ*er*e be myche quytt*er*, & also þ*at* þer be apostyme, & þer be a greet akynge; al þis is clepid a wou*n*de compou*n*d / þa*n*ne schule*n* we nou3t onliche take hede to consolidaciou*n* of[1] þ*at*[1] wou*n*de: þ*at* is to seie, helynge; but first[1] we schulen aswage

Nota

If pus and pain come on,

---

be joyned togedire. Ffor 3if þe wou*n*de were depe, & þy sowynge were no3t depe, nedys þ*er*e moste be*n* in þe depþe of þe wou*n*de a gret holwenesse, to þe whiche holwenesse blod & quyt*er* scholde be cast; & þilke quyt*er* & blod scholde lette þe [2] helynge of þe wou*n*de. And þe poudr*e* þ*at* ys seyde in þe same chapytell schal be leyde aboue þe same sowynge, & þ*o*u schalt kepe*n* þe sowynge & þe parties of þ*e* wou*n*de, þ*at* buþ brou3t togedyre, w*ith* plumacioles þre cornelyd & w*ith* alle o*per*e þynges þ*at* beþ in þis chapytel forseyde. And 3if þ*at* a wou*n*de haue be to longe in þe eyr*e* opyne, whiche þ*at* ys cause of quyt*er* þ*at* latteþ co*n*solidaciou*n*, þe*n*ne we moste clense þe wou*n*de wit*h*[3] þis mu*n*dificatyff, þ*at* is mad of floure, of whete & hony & watyr*e* o*per*e mel rosate, & colat þ*at* ys y-clansed fro*m* þe roses, & of barly mele. Of þese mu*n*dyficatyfes þ*o*u schalt han a ful techynge in þe laste tretys. But 3if þe wou*n*de be y-co*m*poned, a leche moste han as manye intensiones as þ*er*e ben accidentys to þe wonde. Y sette ensau*m*ple: y suppose þ*at* a wou*n*de be co*m*poned *with* holwenesse & lesynge of fflesch & of skyn, & þ*er*e be myche quyt*er* & al so þ*er*e be a posteme & þ*er*e be grete akynge, al this ys clepyde a wou*n*de co*m*ponyde. þa*n*ne we schulle no3t only take hede to co*n*solidaciou*n* of þilke wou*n*de, þ*at* is to sigge helynge, but firste we

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 46 *a*]

[3] MS. þ*at*.

deal with the symptoms separately,

akþe & apostymes, as it[1] schal be teld *in* þe chapitle of an enpostyme & of[1] akynge / Aftirward we schule*n* clense þe quytture, & aftir þat regene*re* fleisch, & at þe laste brynge ou*er* cicat*rice*. In alle þe worch-

and *first* relieve pain.

ingis of medicyns, where þ*at* akþe is, first we schulen aswage akþe, 4

nota.

for aboue al oþir þing[1] strong[1] akynge ou*er*comeþ myȝt of *ver*tu & strenkþe / & also resou*n* telliþ; membris[1] þat han akþe, þilke akþe is cause of drawynge from þe o*þer*e placis to þe membre þat akiþ þe

Auice*n*

worste [2]þi*ng*[1] of[1] þe humouris / Auicen seiþ: humo*ur*is ben drawen 8

[2 leaf 19]

to lymes þ*at* aken for .ij. causis: o cause, for kynde *[& Spiritus and humourer re*nn*yth þedyre; þe secu*n*de cause, for akþe feblyth þe lyme, & humours] & spiritis re*nn*en to þe feble lyme / þe swellynge

G. & A.

schal eer be heelid þ*an* þe wou*n*de / Galion & Auicen tellen: þ*at* al 12

A purulent wound must be cleansed, before closing it or putting on a "regeneratif."

þing[1] þ*at*[1] consowdiþ þe wou*n*de greueþ þe wou*n*de, if[1] þ*at* þ*er* be apostyme wiþ þe wou*n*de / & þe quytture schal be clensid or þou leie ony regeneratijf to holowȝ wou*n*dis. Auicen telliþ þe cause, whi

þ*at* yuel fleisch growiþ *in* a wou*n*de / If þ*at* a leche wolde bisie hi*m* 16

wiþ a medicyn regeneratijf to regendre fleisch *in* a wou*n*de, & er þan þe quytture were clensid / & wha*n*ne þ*at* þe wounde is clensid, þa*n*ne we schulen fulfille þilke holownes wiþ fleisch or þ*at* þe wou*n*de be

[1] Lat., Membra quoque dolorem habentia, dolor ipse est causa attrahendi aliunde humorum pessimitatem.

Add. MS. 12,056.

schul aswage*n* akþe & aposteme, as yt schal be tolde in þe chapitle 20

of aposteme & of akynge; aftirwarde we schullen clause þe quyt*er*, & after*e* þ*at* regene*re* ffleschh, & at þ*e* laste brynge ou*er*e a Cicatrice. In alle þe werkynges of medicine, where þ*at* akþe ys, ffirste we schulle aswage*n* akynge; ffor abouen alle o*per*e þynge stronge 24

akynge, ou*er*e comeþ myȝte of vertu & strengþe, & also resou*n* tellyth; membrys þ*at* han akþe, þilke akþe ys cause of drawynge fro*m* o*per*e places to þ*e* me*m*bre þ*at* akeþ [3] þe worste þynge of þe

[4 fol. 46 *b*]

humoures. Avicene seyth humours beþ drawe*n* to [4]lymes þ*at* aken 28

for two causes: On cause, for kynde *& Spiritus and humoures re*nn*yth hedyre; þe secu*n*de cause, for akþe feblyth þe lyme, & humours *& spirit*is* re*nn*e to þe feble ly*m*me. þe swellynge schal ere ben y-helyde þe*n* þe wou*n*de. Galien & Avycene telle*n* þ*at* alle 32

þynge þ*at* *con*soudeþ *þe* wou*n*de, grefyþ þe wou*n*de, ȝif þ*at* þ*er*e be aposteme w*ith* þe wou*n*de, & þe quyt*er* schal ben y-clansyde, ere þe*n*ne þou legge enye generatyff to holwe wou*n*dys. Avicen*n*e tellyth a cause, why þ*at* yvele flesch growith in a wou*n*de, ȝif þ*at* a leche 36

wolde besy hy*m* w*ith* a medycin regene*r*atyff[1] to engendre flesch in a wou*n*de, ere þanne þe quytire were clansede. And whe*n*ne þ*at* þe wou*n*de ys clensyde, þe*n*ne we schulle fulfyllen þilke holwnesse w*ith*

[3] MS. *akþe*.

heelid, lest *per*auenture[1] *þat*[t] *þer* dwelle an holownesse vndir þe wou*n*de, wha*n*ne *þat* he is helid, i*n* who*m* *þat* quytture schulde be engendrid, þerwith[2] ech dai schulde augmente þilke holownesse, &
4 so we moten be constreyned to opene anoþir tyme *þat*, *þat* was heelid tofore / þou maist[t] fynde i*n* þe chapitle of wou*n*dis of senewis, how þou schalt aswage akþe, & i*n* þe ,vj. chapitle of[f] þis techi*n*ge [[3] lf. 19, bk.] þou schalt[t] fynde þe cure [3]of[f] a wounde þat[t] haþ a swellynge, & is in þe co. of olde wou*n*dis in þe ante-dotarie.
8 out of kynde distemp*er*id; & þou schalt[t] haue i*n* þe chapitle of[f] olde woundis, how þou schalt[t] clense quytture & regendre fleisch /

The þridde techinge of[f] þe firste tretis is of[f] heelynge of a wounde maad i*n* senewe /

¶ 3o. co De vulnere incarne.

12 Almy3ti god hath 3eue to senewe greet[t] felyng[g], & if *þat* he be hirt[t], he suffriþ greet[t] akynge / Galion seiþ: a senewe *þat* is more felynge þa*n* anoþ*er* *[lyme]; it[t] is nessessaric *þat* he haue gretter akþe / Vndirstonde *þat* a wounde *þat* is m*aa*d i*n* a senewe, mai not be
16 wiþoute akynge. Ne[4] wou*n*dis *þat* ben maad i*n* senewis, ouþ*er* *þat* ben i*n* lenkþe or i*n* brede / þe woundis *þat* ben m*aa*d *in* lenkþe of þe[2] senewe, ben lesse p*er*ilous þan[5] þo *þat* be*n* m*aa*d i*n* brede of[f] þe

Galion

A wound cutting the nerve lengthwise, a fissura, is less dangerous than one crossing it, a sissura.

[1] *perauenture.* See N. E. Dict., adventure, 1. b.
[2] *þerwiþ*, scribal error for *þe which.*
[4] *no*, scribal error for *þe.* [5] *þan* erroneously inserted.

---

flesch, ere *þa*nne *þat* wou*n*de be*n* y-helyde; leste *þat* þere dwelle*n* an Add. MS. 12,056.
20 holwnesse vndir*e* þe wou*n*de when*n*e *þat* he ys helyde, in whom *þat* quyt*er* scholde be engendryde, *þe* whiche eche day scholde augmente þilke holwnesse, & so we moste be*n* *con*streynede to opyne an o*þer*e tyme *þat*, *þat* was helyde tofore. *Þ*ou mayste fynde*n* aftere in þe
24 chapyteH of wou*n*dys of synwes how þou schalt aswagen akþe, and in the sixte ChapiteH of þis techynge þou schalt fynde þe cure of a wounde, *þat* hath a swellynge, and ys out of kynde dystempryde, and þou schalt have in þe chapitle of olde wou*n*dys; how thou schalt
28 clense, quytyre, and regendre flessch //

[6]Cap. iii. of the þridde techynge of the ffurst tretis is of helynge of a wounde y-makyde in synwe.

[[6] fol. 47 *a*]

Almi3tie god hath 3ife to synwe gret felynge, & 3if *þat* he be
32 hurt he suffrede grete akynge. Galien: a synwe that is mo*r*e felynge þen anoþ*er*e *lyme; yt is nessessarie *þat* he have gretter akynge. Vndirstonde *þat* a wou*n*de *þat* is y-makyde in a synwe, may nou3t ben wiþouten akynge. The wou*n*des *þat* beþ y-makyde
36 in synwe, o*þer* þey ben in lengthe o*þ*ere þey beþ in brede. *Þ*o wou*n*des *þat* beþ y-mad in lengthe of þe synwe beþ lasse p*er*ylous,

If the nerve is cut through, the limb becomes insensible;

if the nerve is pricked by a punctura, then there is danger of cramp.

Spasmos. [1 leaf 20]

senewe ben moost perilous / Oþerwhile a senewe is kutt' al atwo / & þanne þilke lyme, to whom þat senewe serueþ, lesiþ his meuynge & þe felynge, þat þilke senewe brouȝte to him from þe brain. & þilke senewe oþirwhile is not' kutt' al atwo, but he is I-preickid, & þanne it' is perilous lest þe crampe come for to greet' akþe / For akþe entriþ into þe part of' þe senewe þat is kutt' or prickid; & bi þe [1]partie of' þe senewe þat is hool, akþe is brouȝt to þe brayn. & so þe crampe mai come to þe wounde bi oon of þre weies: þat is to greet' akþe, cold, or rotynge. Of' þese þre or of' oon bi him-silf' mai come a drawinge togidere of' a senewe þat is cause of a crampe / & þat þat is seid of a wounde of a symple senewe may fallen ofte-tymes in a wounde of' a corde & a brawn, & nameliche of a corde þat is in bigynnynge of' a brawn. Þo woundis þat ben in þese þre consimile membris, þat is *[to] seie senewe, corde, & brawn han o. drede in cours of' þe crampe, & also o. drede of' felynge, lesynge & meuynge / &[2] þerfore be-war in þe cure of' a wounde maad in senewe, wheþer þat' it' be a prickynge or þat it be kutt ouerþwert', or ellis be kutt' oonly bi his lenkþe. If' oonly he be prickid þe wounde of' þe skyn is hool, & þanne it is clepid a blynde puncture; eiþer þe wounde is open, & it' is clepid an open puncture / In a blind puncture it' is

Loss of feeling and cramp happen when a sinew or muscle is cut or pricked.

Senewe, corde & Brawne.

When the nerve is pricked, but the skin whole,

[2] *&*, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

& þo þat beþ in brede of þe synwe beþ more perilous. Oþere whyle a synwe ys y-kut al atwo, & þenne þilke lyme to whom þilke synwe serfede, lesiþ þe menynge & þe felynge þat þilke synwe brouȝt to hym from þe brayn. Oþere while þulke synwe is nouȝt y-kut a two, but he is y prikyde, and þenne it is perel lest þe crampe come for to gret akþe. For akþe entrith in to þe part of þe synwe þat is y-kut oþer priked, & by þe party of þe synwe þat is hol akþe is brouȝt to þe brayn, & so crampe may comen to þe wounde by on of þre weyes, þat is to gret akþe colde oþer rotynge. Of þese þre oþere ellys of on by hym self, may come a drawynge togedre of a synwe þat is a cause of a crampe; & þat þat is seyde of wounde of a symple synwe, oft-tymes may fallyn in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & namlyche of a corde þat is in þe bygynninge of a brawn. þe woundes þat ben in þese þre consimel membris, þat is *to sigge, synwe, corde, & brawn, habben on drede in course of þe crampe, & also on drede of lesynge, felynge, & menynge, & þerfor be war in þe cure of a wounde i-makyde in synwe, wheþer þat þere be a prikynge, oþere þat þe synwe be y-kut twartofere, oþer ellys be y-kut only by his lengthe. ȝif only he be y-prikyde þe wonde of þe skyn is hol, & þenne it is clepyde a blynde puncture, oþer þe wounde is opene & it is clepide an opene prikynge. In a blynde

nessessarie to opene þe skyn, & aftirward heelde into þe hoole as hoot as he mai suffre, hoot[t] oile of rosis swete smelly*n*ge, þ*a*t is m*aa*d of[t] oile de oliue þ*a*t is nou3t ripe, til al þe wou*n*de be ful. & aboue þe wou*n*de leie whi3t[t] tere[1]bentine[2] I-drawe abrood bitwene two clowtis, & anoynte alle þe membris aboute þe wou*n*de wiþ hoot oile of rosis maad þicke w*ith* bool armoniak. & aftir þ*a*t leie a ly*n*nen cloo þ I-het[t] aboue, & aftir þ*a*t a good quantite of[t] tow I-tosid, & bynde þe lyme softliche wiþoute streyny*n*ge; & if þe akþe wiþ þis medicyn wole not ceessen, remeue & chau*n*ge þis medicyn ofte tymes i*n* þe dai & i*n* þe ny3t[t] / & if[t] þe p*ri*ckynge be i*n* þe foot, anoynte þe grynde[3] wiþ hoot[t] comou*n* oile; & vndir þe arme holis & i*n* þe necke pitt[t], if[t] þ*a*t þe p*ri*ckynge be i*n* þe hand, for þis enoynture rarefieþ & euencþ þe placis bi whom akþe goiþ to þe brain, & it[t] lettiþ drawy*n*ge togidere of[t] þe senewe / & þou3 þ*a*t þ*o*u seest[t] nou3t[t] þe akþe ceesse i*n* su*m*me*n* as hastiliche as þou woldist, neue*r*-þe-latt*e*re chau*n*ge not[t] þi medicy*n*, for þer may be no bettere medicy*n*. But if[t] þat akþe dure ouer longe, it is not yuel to putte a litil opiu*m* to þe oile of þe rosis & þe bole armoniak, þ*a*t þou leidist[t] aboute þe wou*n*de. þe sike ma*n* muste reste & bi no wey he

open the skin and apply hot oil. R

and dress the wound. [1 lf. 20, bk.] N

If the pain endures renew the dressing frequently, N

and add opium to the ointment. N R

[2] *terebentine*, from Pistacia Terebinthus, L. The *Alah* of the Old Testament, and the τέρμινος of Theophrast.: now almost obsolete.

[3] *þe grynde*, inguina. *W. Wr.*, p. 589. 39, 15th cent.: inguen, the grynde.

Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 47 b]

p*ri*kyne hit is necessarie to opyn þe skyn, & afte*r*warde held in to þe hole, as [4]hot as he may suffren, oyle of roses swote smyllynge, þ*a*t is y-made of oyle de olyffe, þat is nou3t rype tyl þe wou*n*de be al ful. & aboue þe wou*n*de leye whyte terbentyne y-drawe abrod betwene tweye cloutes, & anoynt al þe membris about þe wou*n*de wiþ hote oyle of rosys, y-made þikke wiþ bol Armonyak, & afte*r* þ*a*t leye a ly*n*ne clothe y-hat aboue, & afte*r* þat a gode qu*an*tyte of tow3 y-tosyd, & bynde þe lyme[5] softlyche wiþout streyninge; & 3if þe akþe wiþ þis medycine wolde nou3t cesc, remeffe & chau*n*ge þis same medycine oft tymes in þe day & in þe ny3t, & 3if þe p*ri*kynge be in þe fot, anoynte þe grynde wiþ hote comyn oyle, & vndire þe Arme holys & in þe nekputte, 3if þ*a*t þe p*ri*kynge be in þe hande. For þys vncture ratefieþ & efenyþ þo placys by whom akþe gothe to þe brayn, & it lattiþ drawynge togedre of þe synwe, & þow3 þ*a*t þou sest nou3t akþe, sese in some men, as hastly as þou woldyst, nev*e*re þe lat*e*r chau*n*ge nou3t þy medycine, for þ*e*re may be no bettere medycine. But 3if þ*a*t akþe dure ou*e*re longe yt is nou3t efel to putte a lutyl opin to þe oyle of rosys and þe bol armoniak, þ*a*t þou leydest aboute þe wou*n*de. þe seke ma*n* most reste, & by

[5] MS. ly*n*ne.

schulde nouȝt be wroþ; his bed muste be m*aa*d soft, euene, &
[1 lf. 21] smoþe, & þat he [1]myȝte haue reste / Wha*n*ne þat[1] þe akþe aswagiþ
& þe wou*n*de ȝeueþ su*m* quytture, þa*n*ne þe sike man is saaf[1] from al
Ypocras. maner pe*r*el, but[1] if he do ony newe errour / Of[1] þis wou*n*de Ypocras 4
It is a bad sign if no pus is discharged. N spekiþ: *in vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non apparante*—þat
is to seie: i*n* yuel wou*n*dis and strong[1] wou*n*dis, if[1] no quytture
appere it[1] is yuel / Strong[1] woundis ben clepid wou*n*dis þat sore
aken / Yuel wou*n*dis ben þo, to whom scharpe humouris re*n*nen 8
& ben nouȝt obedient[1] to kyndeli heete, to be turned i*n*to quit-
Ypocras. tu*r*e / And þe*r*fore Ypocras seide: þat wha*n*ne akynge & quytture
appereþ it[1] is a tokene of[1] heele / þe þridde signe a man muste
Laymen frequently apply a wrong ointment, which causes cramp, or put the injured limb in hot water, Gal*ion*. knowe i*n* þis place, þat lewide men, seyinge akynge & swellynge 12
i*n* a lyme þat is wou*n*did, leie þe*r*to a potage i*n* maner m*aa*d of
erbis & swynes greece & wat*er* & wheete flour, corruptyn þe
lyme, & þilke corrupciou*n* is cause of[1] þe crampe / For Galion seiþ:
þat a senewe is m*aa*d of[1] moist[1] mater & a cold, & þerfore he 16
rotiþ of[1] heete and moistnes / Also su*m*me*n*, for to aswage akþe as[2]
no*ta*. a senewe þat is p*r*ickid, puttiþ þe lyme i*n* hoot watir *[oþer ellys
[4 lf. 21, bk.] Gal*ion*. caste it on þe lyme] þe which mat*er*[3] is þe moost greuau*n*ce [4]to
þe senewe / Galion seiþ / Hoot watir, þouȝ it[1] aswage akþe to þe 20

[2] *as*, error for *of*; see below. [3] *mater*, error for watir.

Add. MS. 12,056. no weye he scholde nouȝt be wroþ, hys bed most be made softe
euene & smeþe þat he myȝte haue rest. Wha*n*ne þat þe akþe
aswagyth & þe wou*n*de gyueth su*m* qyte*r*, þa*n* þe syke man ys saf
fro*m* al mane*r*e pe*r*yle, but ȝif he do enye newe error. Of þis 24
wou*n*de ypocras spekiþ: In vulneribus malis & fortib*us* sanie no*n*
aparente malu*m*, þat is to seye: in evyle wou*n*dys & stronge
wou*n*des, ȝif no quyte*r* aperc, hit is yuele. Stronge wou*n*des ben
y-clepyde wou*n*dys þat sore aken. Iuel wou*n*des beþ þo, to whom 28
scharpe humo*r*es re*n*nytħ & beþ nouȝt obedyent to kyndlie hete to
ben tu*r*nyde into quyte*r* & þe*r*efore ypocras seyde, þat wha*n*ne þat
akynge sesytħ & quyte*r* aperitħ, yt is a tokne of hele. þe þridde
[5 fol. 48 *a*] signe a ma*n* moste [5]knowe in þis place, þat lewyde me*n* scyne 32
akynge & swellynge in a lyme y-wou*n*dyde, leggen þe*r*eto a mane*r*
potage y-mad of erbys & swynes grese, wate*r*, & floure of whete,
corupyn þe lyme, & þilke corupciou*n* is cause of þe crampe; for
Galyen seiþ þat a synwe is mad of a moiste matere & a cold, & he 36
rotytħ of hete & moistnesse. Also su*m* me*n* forto aswage þe akþe
of a synwe þat is y-p*r*ikyde, putteþ þe lyme in to hote wate*r*,* oþe*r*
ellys caste it on þe lyme hot wate*r*,[6] þe whiche wate*r* is most grefes
to þe synwe. Galyen: hote wate*r* þowȝ it aswage akþe, to the 40

[6] hot water, insertion.

prickynge of a senewe is most greuaunce / Cold also greueþ sore þe senewe as wel in somer as in wyntir / And Ypocras seiþ in þe .v. part of his auforismus: cold is bitynge & greuous to senewis & woundis, & also in þe chapitle next folowynge, but it be in a crampe wiþoute wounde / Galion seiþ in þe eende of his coment: coold is moost greuous to a senewy lyme þat is woundid & is sore swollen; namely, & he haue þe crampe. It schewiþ[1] þanne þat an hoot medicyne & a drie is moost acordynge to senewis þat ben woundid; but nouȝt to hoot a medicyn, lest peraunte þat he make þe lyme to swelle; & if it be drie nouȝt wiþ stipticte, an auntre if þat he closiþ þe poris of þe skyn / Galion seiþ: þat it is yuele to close þe poris of a lyme þat is pricked. þe medicyn þanne muste be hoot & drie with subtiliate as terebentine to moiste bodies; & to drie bodies he muste be medlid wiþ a litil enforbium, azafetida[2] is best medicyn if þou make of him enplastre, serapinum,[3] & þe fecis[4] of a litil wex, & þe filþe of þe vessels of been, alle þei ben gode to a senewe þat is prickid, þouȝ þat þou putt [5]ech of hem bi him-silf or ellis compound / & þow schalt fynde a ful techinge of þese medicyns in þe antidotarie of þis book / þou schalt nouȝt close a

Ypocras.

and the heat is as dangerous as great cold.

Galion.

Galion[1]

N.

The pores of a wounded limb must be kept open.

R

[5 lf. 22]

[1] *schewiþ* for *sewiþ*; see below.

[2] *Asa fœtida*, a sort of gum pressed out of a certain plant, which grows in Persia.

[3] *Serapinum* = Sagapenum . . . A gum resin obtained from the Ferula Persica. See *Notes*. [4] *fecis*, Lat. fæces, dregs.

---

prikynge of a synwe ys most greuest; colde also gefyth̄ sore þe synwes as wel in somere as in wyntere. Ypocras in þe ferthe partye of his Amphorismes: colde is bytinge and grefes to woundys; and also in þe chapitell nexte folwynge, bot it be in a crampe wiþ out wounde. Galyen seiþ in þe ende of his comente: colde is most grefest, to a synwe lyme þat is y-woundyde & ys toswolle, namly, & he haue þe crampe. Hit sewiþ þenne þat an hote medycine & a drye is most accordynge to synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; bot nouȝt to hot a medycine, leste þat he make þe lyme toswellyn; & drye nouȝt wiþ stipticite, lest he close þe pores of þe schyn. Galyen seiþ: it is yuel to close þe pores of a lyme þat is y-prikyde. þe medicyne þenne most ben hote & drye, wiþ subtilite as terbentyne to moiste bodyes; & to drye bodyes, he most be medlyde wiþ a lytel euffor-bium. Asa fetida is best medycine, ȝif þou make of hym emplaster, serapinum, & þe feces of wax, & þe fylthes of vesselis of been, alle þey ben gode to a synwe, þat is prikyde, wheþer þou put iche be hymself oþer opyn hem; & þou schalt fynden a ful techynge of þese medycines in þe Antitodarie of þis boke. þou schalt nouȝt closen

Add. MS. 12,056.

The nerve must be cleansed and healed before the wound is closed.

woun*de* where *þat* þe p*ri*ckynge of[t] a senewe is, til *þat* þe senewe be p*er*fi3tly clensid & heelid, & til *þat* *þou* be sikir *þat* þe place schal not swelle / Galion telliþ of a man þat was prickid w*ith* a poyntel *in* þe pawme of[t] þe hand, to whom came oon of[t] tisilies[1] 4

.Galion.

relates, how a physician, by not so doing, caused the death of his patient.

clerkis þe which took hede to heele alle woundis generaliche; & he leide to þilke prickynge a consowdynge oynement[t] *þat* was more acordynge to a woun*de* m*aad* *in* fleisch; & he leide *þer*to a plastre maturatijf[t], wherfore al þe hand rotide & he fel into a crampe, & 8 so he diede, or *þat* þe .vij. daies were*n* passid / & if[t] *þat*[t] ilke leche hadde maad þat wounde broddere, & þa*n*ne *þat* he hadde helt[t] *in*to þe wounde hoot oile of[t] rosis, & þa*n*ne *þat* he hadde do[2] comen out quytture wiþ hoote medicyns sotil & driynge, & nou3t wiþ moist[t] 12 medicyns, *þat* man schulde not[t] haue be deed /

If *þat*[t] a senewe hadde ben I-kutt ouerþwert ou*er* al atwo þa*n*ne, *þou3* *þat*[t] Tedericus[3] & su*mm*e o*þer*e seien þe contrarie, it[t] is good þat þow [4]sowe togidere þe eendis of[t] þe senewis *þat*[t] be*n* kutt wiþ þe 16 sowinge of þe skyn. & aboue þilke maner of[t] sowinge, þe firste dai leie oile of[t] rosis, *in* þe which oile, maddockis[5]—þat ben wormes

Tederik.

[4 lf. 22, bk.]

The ends of the nerve ought to be sewn at the same time as the skin, and a medicine applied,

[1] Lat., unus de secta Thessali. Thessalus lived in Rome at the time of Nero, and enjoys the reputation of being the first great quack.

[2] Lat., Si . . saniem . . subtiliter desiccantibus expectasset. Add. MS. translates literally, abyde. The use of *do* (= faire) is further illustrated by Mätzner. See *don* .6.

[3] Theodoricus, an Italian (?) monk of the 13th century, was the author of a *Surgery*.

[5] *maddock*, O.E. mašek, Dan. maddik. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, under maggot and mawkish.

Add. MS. 12,056.

a woun*de*, where *þat* þe p*ri*kynge of a synwe is, ere þa*n* þe synwe be p*er*fitlye clansyde & helyd, & ere þou be sykere *þat* þe place 20 schal nou3t swelle. Galyen tellyth of a ma*n* wiþ a poyntel in þe

[6 fol. 48 *b*.]

pawme of þe hand, to whom come one of [6]Tesilies clerkys, þe whiche toke hede to helyn alle wou*n*dis gen*er*alyche, & he leyde to þilke p*ri*kynge a *co*nsoudynge oygnemen*t* *þat* was more acordynge 24 to a wou*n*de y-makede in fflesch, & he leyde *þer*eto a maturatyf[t] plastre, where fore al þe hand rotyd, & he fel into a crampe, & so he dyede ere þe vii dayes were passyde; & 3if *þat* þilke leche hadde y-made þilke wou*n*de braddere, & þe*n*ne & hadde y-helde in þe 28 wou*n*de hote oyle of rosys, and þe*n*ne hadde abyde quyt*er* wiþ hote medycines sotyl & dreying, & no3t wiþ moiste medycines, þilke man ne scholde nou3t haue ben ded. 3if þat a synwe hadde ben kut twart ou*er* al atwo þe*n*ne, þaw3 *þat* tederic*us* & su*mm*e o*þer*e sigge 32 þe contrarye, hit is good *þat* þou sewe togedre þe hedys of þe synwys þat beþ y-kutte, w*i*þ þe sowynge of þe skyn & abou*en* þilke man*er* of sewynge, þe first day leye oyle of roses, in þe whiche oyle

of[1] þe erþe—han be boilid, & caste aboute þe wou*n*de þe poudre þ*a*t kepiþ þe sowynge .o. day or two aftirward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumaciols .iij. cornerid, & wiþ byndy*n*ge, & kepe þe lyme from swellynge, for bi sich a maner sowynge of[1] a senewe þou maist[1] consowde þe senewe aȝen; for þe lyme schulde han be lost[1] *in* p*ar*tie or in al, þe meuynge þat was brouȝt vnto hi*m* fro þe braun, for bi þat senewe þe lyme mai rekeuere his felynge, & so þe restori*n*ge of[1] þe braun may be fastere & schapliker. Þou schalt nouȝt[1] drede of[1] þe akynge þatt[1] schulde be m*aa*d of[1] prickynge[1] of[1] þe senewe, for þe akþe schal be doon awei wiþ oo leiynge to eiþ*er* tweyne of[1] þilke oile / Ne sich maner akþe may nouȝt[1] make þe crampe, for þe senewe is al kutt[1] atwo ne no man *[make an] obieccio*u*n* wiþ Galion wordis, þ*a*t we schulden be war *in* ioynynge p*ar*ties of[1] a wou*n*de togid*er*e *[þat non here ne oyle ne scholde noȝt entre wiþynne þe lippes of a wounde, þat betþ y-brought togedre] To þilke abiec-*cio*u*n* we answeren: þ*a*t þe stipticite [2]of[1] þe rosis & þe oile þ*a*t was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosite of[1] þe wormes of[1] þe erþe remeuen þe akþe of[1] þe senewis & al þe harm þat[1] schulde come of[1] þe ilke sowynge.

Galion.

Nothing should enter into the wound.

[2 lf. 23]

If[1] þ*a*t a senewe were wou*n*did *in* lenkþe, he mai wel & liȝtliche

then the limb may regain its motor powers.

[1] *prickynge of þe senewe.* The Latin, *acus punctura*, is correctly translated in Add. MS. See below.

Maddokkys, þ*a*t beþ wormys of þe erthe, haue ben boyllede; and caste aboute þe wou*n*de þe poudre þ*a*t kepyth̄ þe sowynge a day o þ*er* two aft*er*ward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumacioles þre kernellyde & wiþ[3] byndynge, & kepe þe lyme fro*m* swellynge, ffor by swyche a man*er*e sowynge of þe synwe þ*o*u maiste consoude þe synwe ageyn, for þe lym scholde haue lost in p*ar*ty o þ*er* in al the meuynge, þ*a*t was y-browȝt to hy*m* fro*m* þe brayn, for by þilke synwe þ*a*t lyme may rekeu*er*en hys felynge, & so þe restorynge of þe brayn may be more schaplokere & fastere. Ne þ*o*u ne schalt noȝt drede of þe akynge þ*a*t scholde be made of þe prekynge of þe nelde, for þe akþe schal be don awey by one leggynge to o þ*er*e tweyne of þilke oyle; ne swyche man*er*e akþe may noȝt make þe crampe, for þe synwe ys al kutte atwo. Ne no man *make an obiectio*u*n* wiþ galyens wordys, þ*a*t we scholde be war*e* in ioyninge þe p*ar*tyes of a wou*n*de togedre, *þ*a*t non here ne oyle ne scholde noȝt entr*e* wiþynne þe lippes [4]of a wou*n*de, þ*a*t beþ y-brouȝt togedre.* To þilke obiectio*u*n we answeren, þ*a*t þe stipticite of þe roses & þe oyle þ*a*t was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosyte of þe wormys of þe erthe remywen þe akþe of þe synwes, & al þe harme þ*a*t scholde com*e*n of þilke sewynge. ȝif þat a synwe were wou*n*dede in lengþe he may be wel & lyȝtlyche y-soudyde togedire, wiþ

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 49 *a*]

[3] *wiþ* above line.

The wounded limb must be kept from swelling.

be sowdid togiderc wiþ ioynynge of lippis, & wiþ þe sowynge & wiþ
þe kepinge of þe lyme þat he swelle nouȝt / Vndirstonde herc in
þis place: þat þer is no þing more worschipful to a leche ne more

Nota.

profitable to a sijk man þan to kepe a lyme woundid fro swellynge, 4
& neþeles it is hard to kepe senewis þat ben woundid from swell-
ynge / Neþcles a leche here schal take heed aftir þe techinge þat
schal be ȝeue him in þe chapitle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne

If there is swelling, and if the wound is purulent, apply a mundificative, and keep the wound tented.

þat þer is wiþ him a swellynge. If þat a wounde were chaungid 8
of þe eyr and made quytture, þat þe sowynge were to-broke and þe
puncture were vndir,[1] þanne make a medicyne mundificatif & leie
him abrood on a lynnen clooþ & leie it aboue þe wounde, & putte a
litil smal tent in þe eende of þe wounde þat is moost lynynge,[2] & 12
þilke tent schal touche no senewe ne make noon akþe vndir[3] þat,

[4 lf. 23, bk.]

þat ilke wounde be [4]weel dried. A mundificatijf medieyn of

a mundificatif medicyne

senewis woundid is maad in þis maner: Take mel roset colat ℥ .iij.
smal flour of barly & medle hem togidere & boile hem slili þat þei 16
brenne nouȝt, & remeue hem fro þe ficr & bete hem "longe" togi-
dere wiþ a spature;[5] & þanne putte þerto ℥ j. of whit terebentyne;
& if þou mowe finde noon whiȝt terebentyne, þanne waische oþere

[1] *undir*, mistake for *undo*. See below. [2] *lynynge*, for *declynynge*.
[3] *undir þat*, donec. [5] *spatur*, spatula.

Add. MS. 12,056.

ioynynge of þe lippys & wiþ sowynge & wiþ kepynge of þe lym, þat 20
he scholde[6] noȝt. Understande here in þis place, þat þere is no
þynge more worschipful to a leche ne more profytable to a seke
man, þenne to kepe a lyme y-woundyde from swellynge, & naþeles
it is hard to kepe synwys þat beþ woundyde from swellynge. 24
Naþeles a leche here schal take hede aftere þe techynge þat sehal
be geuen to hym in hys chapyteH of þe cure of a wounde, whanne
þat þere ys wiþ hym a swellynge. ȝif a wounde were chaungyd of
þe eyre and mad quyter, þat þe sowynge were tobroke, & þe 28
punctis weren vndo, þenne make a medycine mundyficatyff, &
leye hym abrod on a lynne cloth, & leye it aboue þe wounde, &
put a lytel smal tent in þe one ende of þe wounde þat is most
declynynge; & þilke tent schal touche non synwe, ne make non 32
akþe, vndire þat þat þilke wounde be wel dryede. A mundifi-
catyff medycine of synwes y-woundyde ys y-made in þis manere:
R. mel rosat colat ℥ iii smal floure of barly ℥, & medle hem togedre
& boyle hem slyȝly þat þey brenne noȝt, & remywe hem from þe 36
fyre & bete hem togedre longe wiþ a spator, & þenne put þere to ℥.
of whyte terbentyne, & ȝif þou maiste fynde no whyte terbentyne

[6] *scholde*, error for *swelle*, or it belongs to: *scalle*, *scalde*, *scalled*, *scab*. See W. Wright, and *Cathol. Angl.*

terebentyne w*ith* cold watir til it be whiȝt, & whane þat be þis medicyn þis wounde is almoost drie, þanne putte *in* þe same medicyn a litil poudre of fra*n*kencense mastik & sau*n*dragou*n*, medle
4 he*m* togide*re* & leie aboue þe wounde til it be hool / & wha*n*ne þat it is hool manye daies aftir, leie flex *in* good strong wiyn het hoot til it be pe*r*fiȝtli al hool, & if þat þe*r* leue ony hardnes *in* meuynge, afte*r* þat it is hool, þa*n*ne þou schalt vse þe techinge þat schal be
8 ȝouen to þee *in* þe laste tretis þat schal be antidotarie *in* þe chapitle of medicyns mollificatyues ; þe*re* þou schalt fynde þe mane*r* how þou schalt helpe best lymes þat be*n* heelid and mou*n* not riȝt weel meuen /

Any remaining stiffness of the limb may be removed by a mollificative medicine.

þe firste[1] techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of
12 a wou*n*de m*aa*d *in* boon /

Cm. 4m. Off wounde*s* made yn the bonis

Wha*n*ne þat wou*n*dis be*n* so depe þat [2]oonly fleisch is not wou*n*did but þe boon þat is vndir þe fleisch & þe senewe / þa*n*ne a man muste biholde, wher þat þe boon be kutt al atwo, as ofte-tyme
16 it may happe *in* þe boon of þe thie & schene boonys & þe boonys of þe armes. And þa*n*ne þilke wounde is ful pe*r*ilous ; & nameli if þe boonys of þe thie ouþir þe boon of þe arme from þe schuldre to þe elbowe be kutt al atwo, so þat þe marie go out. But ofte-tymes

[2 lf. 24]

It is dangerous if the thigh bone or the bone of the upper arm has been cut in two.

[1] *firste*, mistake for *furþe*.

---

20 wassche it wyth̄ colde watyre, tyl it be whyt ; & whe*n*ne þat by þis medycine þe wou*n*de is almost drye, þe*n*ne put in þe same medycine a lite smal poudre of franke ensence, mastike, & sank dragou*n*, & medle he*m* to gedre, & leye aboue þe wou*n*de tyl it be al hol ; &
24 wha*n*ne þat it is hol manye dayes aftere, leye flax in gode stronge hot wyn, tyl yt be al hol pe*r*fitlyche. & ȝif þat þe*re* leue enye hardnesse [3]in mevynge, afte*re* þat it is hol, þe*n*ne þou schalt vse the techynge þat schal be geue*n* to þe in þe laste tretys, þat schal
28 be antitodarye in þe chapitle of medycine, molyficatyffes ; þe*re* þou schalt fynde þe mane*re* how þou schalt helpyn beste lymes, þat beþ y-helyde & mowe noȝt ryȝt wel meffen.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 49 b]

The furþe techynge of þe firste tretys is of helynge of
32 a wou*n*de y-makyde in bon.

Whe*n*ne þat wou*n*des beþ so depe þat only þe flesch̄ is nouȝt y-wou*n*dyde, but þe bon þat is vndire þe flesch̄ & þe synwe, þe*n*ne a ma*n* most byholde whe*re* þat þe bon be kut al atwo, as ofte tymes
36 yt may happen in þe bon of þe thyȝ & þe schynebonys, & þe bonys of þe Arme, & þe*n*ne þylke wou*n*de is ful pe*r*ylouse ; and namlye, ȝif þe bon of þe thyȝ ore þe bon of þe arme, fro*m* þe schuldre to þe elbowe, be y-kutte al atwo, so þat þe marye gon out. But ofte tymes

oon boon of' þe schene or o. boon of' þe armes is kutt' al atwo ouertwert' ouer & neþeles afterward may be restorid; ouþer a boon is not kutt' al atwo but' sum of' his substaunce is don awey, & þilke substaunce, ouþer he is doon awey or ellis he hangiþ togidere / A general rule is in cure of' woundis in whom boonys ben wounded: þat neuere bi a leche fleisch schal ben I-sowdid aboue þe boon, but' first' pleynerliche bi repeire[1]; for þe boon may neuere be[2] wiþ verri consolidacion be consowdid, for his mater was þe sperme of' þe fadir & of' þe modir; but' in summe children, for þe age[3] is toward ofte tyme þat þei were sperme / but þer schal be maad a maner of' restorynge in place of' þe boon þat was broken eiþer lost, þat men clepen [4]poris sarcoides or ellis caro poroydes, & a[5] maner þing' þat is restorid is hardere þan þe fleisch & neischere þan þe boon / & if' þat' ilk mater þat' is restorid be nyȝ as hard as is þe boon, it' is clepid porus sarcoides / & if' þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat neische, it is clepid caro poroydes / & if' þat a neische fleisch were & a moist nouȝt' regenered vpon boonys þat ben sett togidere, a man schulde not' haue his purpos to heele & consowde þe wounde. Loke þanne wheþer þe boon be kutt' atwo altogidere ouerþwert' ouer, þat

The wound ought not to be closed before the bone has been repaired.

Nota

In the place of the missing bone, there grows either a hard substance

[4 lf. 24, bk.]

poris sarcoides.

or a soft one: caro poroides.

[1] *repeire*, erroneously for *repeired*.
[2] *be* has to be cancelled.
[3] *for þe age is toward ofte tyme*, for, *for þe nyȝte of tyme*. See below.
[5] *a*, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

on bon of þe schyne, oþere in bon of þe Arme, ys ykutt al atwo twartofere, & naþeles afterward may be restoryde; oþer a bon ys nouȝt ykut al atwo, but sum of his substaunce ys done aweye, and þilke substaunce oþere he ys don al aweye, oþere he hongyth̃ to gedre. A general rule ys in cure of woundes in whom bonys ben woundyde, þat neuere by a leche flesch̃ shal be y-sowdyd aboue þe bon, but first þe bon pleuerlyche be repeyrede; ffor þe bon may neuere with verrey consolidacyoun ben consouded, for his matere was þe sperne of þe fadire & þe modire, but in somme children for þe nyȝte of tyme þat þey were sperme (*sic*); but þere schal be mad a manere restorynge in plas of þe bon þat was broken oþere lost. þat men clepen porrus sarcoydes oþere ellys caro poroydes, & þat manere thynge þat is restoryd is hardere þe flesch̃ & nesschere þen þe bon; & ȝif þat þilke mater þat is restoryde by neye[6] as hard as yt were a bon, yt is clept porus sarcoydes; & ȝif þat þilke mater be nouȝt harde, but sum[7]what nessche, yt is clepyde caro poroydes; ȝif þat a nesch̃ fflesch & a moist were nouȝt regenered vpon bonys þat ben set togedre, a man scholde nouȝt han his purpos to helyn & to consoude þe wounde. Loke þenne wheþere þe bon be kutte a-

[7 fol. 50 *a*]

[6] MS. neþe.

þou bryngist togidere & bindist þe parties of þe wounde, as it schal be told in þe .viij. chapitle folowynge, where þou schalt haue how a wounde schal be heelid þat is out of ioynte I-kutt atwo &
4 to-broken / & if a wounde[1] be not kutt atwo al togidere ouerþwert ouer, loke if ony pece of þe boon dwelle sadliche with þe oþere partie of þe hool boon / & þanne if þou myȝt brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore wiþ þristynge doun þilke pece wiþ
8 sum instrument acordynge perto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hool boon wiþ þe poudre þat I shal telle aftirward; for so the [2]schap of [2 lf. 25] þe lyme mai dwelle[3] faire & strengere / & if þat ilke pece haue no fastnes to þe hool boon, do þat pece awey & regenere in þe place of
12 þe boon þat þat[4] was lost a repeirement / For þouȝ þat ypocras & Galion tellen þat it is nessessarie after quantite of þe boon þat is lost, an holowȝ cicatrise to be alwey, neþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese poris may be mendid, not a litil, but riȝt
16 myche / þis is þe poudre: take frank-encense, mastik, mirre, dragagantum, gumme arabik, ana. ℥ ij. flour of fenegrek, .℥. s' caste þis poudre vpon þe defaute of þe boon þat is lost, til þat þou holde a pleynere repeirement *[& a restauracioun. Þenne & noȝt ere
20 brynge ouere fflesch ouere þe repeyrment wiþ] regeneratiuis, mun-

A portion of the bone can either be refastened, or it must be removed.

ypocras & Galion.

poudur incarnatyff[5]

[1] *wounde*, erroneously for *boon*.
[2] The second *þat* has to be cancelled.
[3] *hool*, cancelled after *dwelle*.
[5] *incarnatyff* in a later hand.

---

two al togedre twartofere, þat þou brynge togedre, & bynde the partyes of þe wounde as yt schal be tolde in þe eyȝte chapyteH folwynge, where þou schalt han hou a wonde schal ben helyde þat
24 is out of joynt, y-kutte atwo & tobroke. & ȝif þat a bon be noȝt kutte atwo al togedre twartofere, loke ȝif enye pece of þe bon dwelle sadlyche to þe on partye of þe hole bon, & þenne ȝif þou myȝte brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore with
28 þrustynge don þilke pece with sum Instrumentis acordynge þereto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hole bon with þe poudre, þat y schal tellyn afterwarde; for so þe schap of the lyme may dwelle fairere & strengere. & ȝif þat þilke pece haue no fastnesse to þe hole bon,
32 do þat pece awey, & þenne regenere in þe place of þe bon þat was lost a repairment. Ffor þowȝ þat ypocras & Galyen tellyn þat it ys necessarie aftere þe quantite of a bon þat is lost, an holwe cicatrice to be alwey, naþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese
36 pores may be mendyde noȝt a lytel, but ryȝt myche. Þis is þe poudre: Take ffrank ensence, Mastyke, Mirre, dragagantum gu. arabyke ana. ℥. ij., flour of ffenngreke, ℥, ß, cast þis poudre a gode quantite vpon þe defaute of the bon þat was lost, tyl þat þou haue
40 a plenere repeyrment *& a restauracioun. Þenne & noȝt ere brynge ouere fflesch ouere þe repeyrment with *generatyffes, mun-

Add. MS. 12,056.

dificatiuis & consolidatiuis aftir þe techinge þat þou haddist biforn / Undirstonde þat al þing þat is seid of boonys in þis chapitle is of alle þe boonis of þe bodi saf þe heed / I schal make a chapitle by hym-silf //

¶ Capm vm Wondis made with conteschoun I. h.

THe fifþe chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis of woundis þat ben maad wiþ smytynge of staf or stoon, or fallynge or smytynge of an hors, or wiþ ony oþir þing semblable.

[1 lf. 25, bk.] must be attended to in a different manner to incised wounds. All the soft parts are bruised with or without the skin being divided.

To hem happen greet difference [1]fro woundis þat ben maad wiþ kuttynge, as wiþ swerd, knyf, eiþir arowe prickynge; & in opere maner þei schulen ben I-heelid / For þouȝ þat verry consolidacioun be þe firste & principal entencioun of heelynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordiþ nouȝt, for in smytynge, þe fleisch & þe veynes, & senewis, & arteries ben brusid, for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe boon aȝenstondiþ, & on þe ouer part [2]of þe þing þat is smyten knyttiþ nouȝt / Wherfore it is nessessarie, if þer schulde be a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat ben bitwene þe boon & þe þing

[2] The passage is corrupt; the correct version is given by Add. MS.: *þe þynge þat smyteþ & kutteþ noȝt.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

dificatyfes, & consolidatyfes, aftere þe techynge that þou haddyst toforn. Undirstonde þat alle þynge þat ys seyde of bonys in þis chapitle, ys of alle þe bonys of þe body saff þe hed; & of þe bonys off the hed y schal make a chapytle by hym-selff.

[3 fol. 50 b]

Þe ffye Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe furst tretis is of woundis [3]that beth y-mad with smytinge.

The woundys þat beþ mad wiþ brosynge, as wiþ smytynge of a staf, opere ston, oþer fallynge, opere wiþ smytynge of an hors, oþer wiþ enye thynge semblable to hem, habbith̄ gret differens from woundis þat beþ y-made wiþ kuttynge: as wiþ swerde, knyf, ore arwe prikynge, & in opere manere þey schulle ben helyde. For þowȝ þat verreye consolidacioun be þe first & þe principal Intencioun of helynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordyth̄ noȝt, ffor in smytinge, þe flesch̄ & þe veynes, synwes & arteries ben y-brusyde; for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe bon aȝeyne stonde, & on þe vtter part þe þynge þat smyteth̄ & kutteþ noȝt, wherefore it is necessarie, ȝif þat þere scholde ben a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat beþ bytwene þe bon & þe þynge þat smyteth̄, scholde be brusyde; &

þat smytiþ, schulde be brusid, & oþerwhile þe fleisch & þe oþere consimile membris ben brusid wiþoute wounde / Wherfore þe curis of boþe I wole ordeyne in þis chapitle. If þat a leche wolde enforse him to ioyne togidere wiþ consolidatiuis þe wounde þat is maad wiþ smytynge, nedis quytture & corrupcioun bi þilke consolidatif muste be vnder þe wounde; þe which quytture schulde corrupte þilke lyme & brynge him to putrifaccioun, but if þat kynde were so myȝty, þat he myȝte eftsoone opene þilke wounde, þat was consowdid bi a sori leche[1]; or wiþ[2] a good leche come & knowe þilke dispo[3]sicioun & knowe helpe, wiþ propre eir[4] to rectifien þe corrupcioun of þilke lyme / What schalt þou þanne do? Þou muste loke wheþer þat þe bodi be ful of wickide humouris, eiþer be clene; if þat he be ful late him blood, if alle particuler þingis acorden, as vertu, age, conplexioun & consuetude; & þese þingis moten alwey[5] taken in mynde, þouȝ alwey þei be not I-nempned & namely vertu; & he be not strong & alle oþere þingis acorden, þou schalt not lete blood, but þou maist ventosen, if þat it be nessessarie, or ellis [lose] *þe wombe if þat he be costif[6]; & if þat he be feble, & þe brosure were in þe ouer parti of þe bodi, voide þe fecis of his wombe bi clisterie. &

Such wounds, when joined too soon, will slough.

[3 lf. 26]

If the patient is plethoric use blood-letting;

if he is feeble, cupping and purging.

Nota

Clisterie

[1] *bi a sori leche*, a malo medico. See Halliwell, *Dict.*, sorry Laten.
[2] *wiþ*, mistake for *þat*.
[4] *eir*. read *cur*. [5] *be* wanted after *alwey*.
[6] *costif*, costive, subject to be bound in body.—Kersey.

---

oþerwhyle þe flesch & þe oþere consimele membris beþ brusyde witout wounde, wherefore þe cures of boþe y wyl ordeyne in this chapytle. ȝif þat a leche wolde enforce hym to Iune to gedire with consolidatyfes þe wounde þat is mad wiþ smytinge, nedys[7] quyter & corupcioun by þilke consolidatyff, most be vndire þe wounde; þe whiche quyter scholde corumpe þylke lyme & brynge hym to putrefactioun, but ȝif þe kynde were so myȝtye, þat he myȝte eftesonys opyne þylke wounde, þat was consouded by a sorye leche, oþere þat a gode leche come & knewe þilke dispocisioun, & couþe helpe wiþ propre cure to rettefien þe corupcioun off þilke lyme. What schaltou þanne do? Þou most loke wheþere that þe body be ful of yueH humores, oþer be clene; ȝif þat he be ful, lete hym blod, ȝif alle partikelere þynges acorden: as vertu, Age, complexioun & consuetude; & þese þynges þou most alweye taken in þy mynde, þowȝ alweye þey ben nouȝt y-nempnyde, & namlye vertue; & he be nouȝt stronge & alle oþere þynges acorden, þou schalt nouȝt leten blod, bot þou [8]maiste ventosen, ȝif þat it be necessarie, oþer ellys lose *þe wombe ȝif þat he be costyff; & ȝif þat he be feble, & the brosure were in þe ouere party of þe body, voyde þe feces of hys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[8 fol. 11 a]

[7] MS. nedyth.

if[t] þou wolt[t] lete blood, þou schalt[t] lete blood on þe contrarie p*ar*tie of þe veyne, bryngyng[t] norischi*n*ge to þe lyme þat[t] was hirt[t]; & þilke veyne þou schalt[t] knowe, if[t] þ*at* þ*o*u knowist pleynerliche anotamie, þat I haue tauȝt[t] þee i*n* þis same book / & wha*n*ne þat þe bodi is 4 clensid, if[t] þat[t] þe brosour be wiþoute þe wou*n*de, anoynte þe me*m*bre þ*at* is brosid, which bigy*n*neþ to haue an enpostym, w*ith* hoot oile of rosis, & caste aboue a poudre m*aa*d of þe seed of[t] mirtilles, & bynde it[t] softly; [1]for ofte-tymes it nediþ noon o*per* eir[2] / For þis 8 medicyn fastneþ þe place, & defendiþ hi*m* fro putrefacciou*n*. & þou*ȝ* þ*at*[t] þis medicyn mowe not[t] lette*n* al þe mater fro*m* rotynge, neþeles it[t] defendiþ myche of[t] þe same mater fro rotynge / & if[t] al þe mater mai not[t] be defendid fro*m* putrifacc*ciou*n, but[t] su*m* p*ar*tie þ*er*of[t] 12 putrifieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quytture, & clense al þe place. & his cure schal be seid in þe chapitle of[t] apostymes[3] & of exito*urs* / But[t] if[t][4] þ*at*[t] a brusour were wiþ a wou*n*de, anoynte aboute þe wou*n*de or eills þe place þ*at* is brusid wiþ þe forseid oile of[t] rosis, & 16 caste aboue þe forseid poudre of[t] mirtilles, for it[t] fastneþ þe place, ne it[t] lettiþ nou*ȝ*t[t] þe corrupc*ciou*n to spreden ei*per* to be drawe*n* abrood; & it[t] castiþ to þe wounde þe corrupt mater þ*at* is i*n* þe

concussio membri n*er*uosi cura l. h. oile Ros*es*

[1 lf. 26, bk.]

An antiseptic powder.

Treatment of a contusion, if the wound is open.

[2] *eir*, read *cur*.

[3] Latin, *de apostematibus exituris*, apostems which discharge pus.

[4] *if*, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

wombe by clisterye. & ȝif þou wilt lete blod, þou shalt lete blod 20 on þe c*on*trarye party of þe veyne, bry*n*gyng*e* norysschyng*e* to þe lyme þ*at* was hurt; & þilke veyne þou schalt y-knowe, ȝif þ*at* þou knowist plenerlyche Anotamye, þ*at* y haue tauȝte þe in þis same bok*e*. & whe*n*ne þ*at* þe body ys y-clansyde, ȝif þ*at* þe brosure be 24 wiþout þe wou*n*de, anoy*n*t þe me*m*bre þ*at* is y-brusyde, whiche þ*at* begy*n*neþ to han a postu*m*, wiþ hote oyle of roses, & cast aboue a poudre y-mad of þe sed of mirtylles & bynde it softlye, for ofte tymes it nedyth̄ no*n* o*per* cure. For þis medycy*n*e fastnyth̄ þe 28 place, & defendyth hy*m* fro*m* putrefaciou*n*, & þow*ȝ* þis medycine mowe no*ȝ*t letten alle þe mater fro*m* rotynge, naþeles yt deffendyth myche of þe same mater*e* fro rotynge; & ȝif þ*at* al þe mater*e* may nou*ȝ*t be defendyde fro putrefactiou*n*, but su*m* partye þ*er*eof 32 putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quyt*er*, & clanse al þe place. & his cure schal be seyde in þe tretys of apostomes & of exitures. But ȝif þ*at* þe brosure were wiþ a wou*n*de, anoynte about þe wonde o*per*e ellys þe place þ*at* is y-brusyde, wiþ þe forseyd oyle of roses, 36 & caste aboue þe forseyde poudre of mirtillyes, for þis medycine fastnyth̄ þe place, ne yt ne letteþ no*ȝ*t corupciou*n* to spredyn, o*per*e to be drawe abrod, & it castith̄ to þe wou*n*de þe corupt mater, þ*at*

place *þat* is brusid / Wiþ*in*ne þe wounde leie þe ȝelke of an ey, wiþ oile of[1] rosis, with stupis, or ellis wiþ lint[1].[1] Leid[2] aboue þe wou*n*de a potage m*aa*d of[1] .iiij p*ar*ties of[1] watir & oon p*ar*tie of[1] oile de olyue, & flour of wheete *þat* sufficiþ to þe medicyn, & leie þis medicyn to þe wou*n*de, til *þat* þe akþe be aswagid, & til *þat*[1] þe quytture be engendrid; aftirward clense [3]þe wou*n*de, aftir þe clensynge regene*r*er, & at[1] þe laste cicatrice. & *þ*ou schalt[1] haue a ful techinge i*n* þe antidotarie of[1] mundificatiuis & cicatriȝatiuis / But[1] if[1] þe membre *þat*[1] w*as* brusid be ful of[1] senewis, as þe hand ou*þer* þe foot[1], þou schalt[1] not[1] chaunge þi cure if[1] *þat*[1] þer be no wounde; but[1] þouȝ *þer* be a brusour i*n* senewy me*m*bre I-wou*n*did, leie not[1] *þere* þe potage tofore seid, but[1] oonly hoot oile of[1] rosis, & aboue þe oile poudre of[1] mirtillis, & aboue þe wou*n*de leie terebentine I-waischen & drawen abrood bitwene two ly*n*nen cloþis. & make a plastre of[1] pich & hony & bene flour, & leie aboute þe lyme *þat*[1] is ful of[1] senewis, as þe hand, þe foot[1], & speciali wha*n*ne þe flux of humouris ceessen not[1] / & þouȝ *þat*[1] þi cure be drawe along[1], ne go not[1] awei fro*m* þis cure / & wha*n*ne *þat*[1] al þe akþe is ceessid and þe swellynge is aswagid, for to clense þe wou*n*de, vse þe medicyn of[1] mel roset[1] colath w*ith* barly mele, seid i*n* þe wou*n*de of[1] senewis /

N

R

[3 lf. 27]

Treatment of a contusion, if the injured limb is full of nerves, *e. g.* hand or foot.

olium Rosarum

N plaster

R

[1] *lint.* *Prompt. Parv.*, schauynge of ly*n*nen clothe.
[2] *leid*, mistake for *leie*.

---

is in þe place *þat* is brusyde. Wiþy*n*ne þe wou*n*de leye þe ȝolk*e* of an eye w*ith* oyle of roses, w*ith* stupes o*þ*ere ellys wiþ lynte; & leye aboue þe wou*n*de a potage y-made off[1] foure p*ar*tyes of water & o p*ar*tye of oyle d'Olyv*e* & flour*e* off[1] Whete *þat* suffyseþ to þe medycine, & leye þis medycine to þe wou*n*de, tyl *þat* þe akþe be aswagyde & tyl *þat* þe quyt*er* be engendryde; aft*er*warde clanse þe wou*n*de, aft*er*e þe clensynge regenere, & at þe laste cicatryce, & þou schalt haue a ful techy*n*ge in þe Antiodarie of mu*n*dificatyfes, maturatyfes, & ȝicatrisatifes. [4]But ȝif *þat* þe membre *þat* was y-brusyde ys ful of synwes, as þe honde o*þ*er þe fot, þou schalt noȝt chau*n*ge *þ*y cure ȝif *þat* *þere* be no wou*n*de; but þawȝ *þat* *þere* be a brusure in a synwy me*m*bre y-wou*n*dyde, ne leye noȝt *þere* þe potage forseyd, but only hote oyle of roses, & aboue þe oyle poudre of mirtilles, & aboue þe wou*n*de leye terbentyne iwassche & drawe abrod betwene tweye cloþes ly*n*nen. & make enplast*re* of pych, hony & bene flour, & leye aboute a lym ful of synwes: as þe fot o*þ*ere þe hand, & specialyche whe*n*ne *þat* þe flux of humours seseþ. & þawȝ *þat* þi cure be drawe along, ne go noȝt awey fro þis cure; & whe*n*ne *þat* al þe akþe ys y-sesyd, & alle þe swellynge ys aswagyde, forto clanse þe wou*n*de, vse þe medycine of mel rosat colat w*ith*

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 51 *b*]

Galion þis cure is apreued bi galion, & I haue preued þis medicyn ofte tymes /

¶ Þe sixte chapitle of þe þridde techinge is of woundis þat han enpostymes & be distempered // 4

Off woundes Impostemede.

[1 If. 27, bk.]

¶ Capm vjm If the wound is tumorous or distempered, the tumour and the "dyscrasia" must be removed first.

1 A Wounde þat haþ enpostym or an yuel discrasiam—þat is to seie out of kynde distemperid, eiþer to cold eiþer to hoot—he mai not be heelid, ne he schal not ben heelid, but first he[2] be 8 aswagid in þe yuel discurciour be amendid / & as I haue seid in anoþer place, it is profitable to þe sijk man, & worschipe to þe leche, if þat he mowe defende þe lymes þat ben woundid from enpostyme & from an yuel discrasie. For þanne a leche schal kepe þe canoun 12

Galion. o[3] galion, þat is oon of þe .iiij. canouns; oon is to kepe lymes in her owne kyndely complexcioun. For woundis moun not ellis be heelid, but if þei be brouȝt first into her owne kynde / & a wounde mai be kept from apostyme & an yuel discrasie if þat þe leche be 16 kunnynge & do his deuer, & þe sike man be obedient to þe leche / Þe leche muste loke if þat þer go blood y-nowȝ out at þe wounde;

If necessary & if þat þe wounde haue not bled blood y-nowȝ, þe pacient muste

[2] The correct version is given by Add. MS.
[3] *o*, mistake for *of*.

Add. MS. 12,056. barly mele, y-sayd in the wounde of synwes. Þis cure ys aprefyde 20 by galyen, & y haue preffyde þis medycine ofte tymes.

¶ The sixte Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of Woundes þat han enpostemes, & beþ dystempryde.

A wounde þat hath aposteme oþer an yuel discrasie—þat is to 24 sigge, out of kynde distempride, oþere to hote oþere to cold, he may noȝt ben helyd, ne schal nouȝt ben heled, but first þe posteme be aswagyde, & þe yuele discrasie be amendide. & as y haue seyde, in an oþere place, yt is profitable to þe syke man, & worschipful to þe 28 leche, ȝif þat he mowe dyffende þe lymes þat beþ woundyde fro eny postemys, & fro an euyH discrasie. For þenne a leche schal kepe þe canon of galyen, þat is on of foure canones; on is to kepyn lymes in here owne kendlye complexioun. For woundys mowe 32 noȝt ellys ben y-helyd, but ȝif þey ben brouȝt first to here owne kynde, & þe wounde may be kepte from aposteme & an yueH discrasie, ȝif þat þe leche be kunnynge & do hys deffere, & þe syke [4 fol. 52 *a*] man be obedyent to þe leche. Þe leche mot loke [4]ȝif þat þere haue 36 go blod ynowȝ out of þe wounde; & ȝif þat the wounde haue noȝt bled blod ynowȝ, þe pacyent most ben lete blod, oþere ellys ben

be lete blood or ellis ventusid, takynge reward to alle particuler
þingis tofore seid / & ordeyne hi*m* a couenable diety*n*ge, as schal be
told i*n* þe chapitle of dietynge; & leie a defensif aboute þe wounde,
4 ℥ j. of' bole armoniak diste*mper*id wiþ oile of [1]rosis, & a litil vinegre:
as þicke as hony te*mpe*re it' / & if' *þat'* þe tyme of' þe ȝeer were
hoot', putte to þis medicyn þe ius of' su*m* cold erbe: as morel,[2]
penywort',[3] virge pastoris. Late not' þe lyme hange; but' if' it' be
8 the arm, hange it' aboute þe necke / & if' it' be þe foot' ei*þer* þe
schene, lete hi*m* ligge / & if' *þat'* þe lyme ake, aswage þe akþe wiþ
an oynemen*t'* of' hoot oile of' rosis / For as Galion seiþ: *þer* is no
þing' more noious to a wou*n*de *þan* is akþe & declinaciou*n* of' a
12 lyme, for þese .ij. maken soone an hoot' swellynge, þe which is to þe
feuere as a welle, & to þe bodi as an ouene / þe wou*n*did ma*n*
muste absteyne hi*m* afte*r* þe chapitle of' dietynge techiþ, & boþe þe
sike man & þe leche, & alle *þat'* ben aboute þe sike, moten absteyne
16 he*m* fro fleischly knowynge of' a wo*m*man, [ne a wo*m*man] *i*n tyme
of' menstrue,[4] ne loke not' on þe sike man / & oonys i*n* þe dai þe sike
ma*n* schal go to p*ri*uy;[5] & if' he mai not schite "oonys" kyndeli in

use blood-letting or cupping, prescribe a proper diet and a deffensi*uum*. [1 lf. 28]

Put the injured limb in a proper position.

G*alion*.

The patient and the physician must live chastely.

Regulate the patient's stool.

[2] *morel*, Lat. Solathrum. See Notes.
[3] *penywort*, Lat. umbilicus Veneris.
[4] See Notes.
[5] *privy*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 414, Pryvy or gonge (or Kocay), Latrina, cloaca, ypodromium; p. 202, Goo to pryvy, or to shytyn, Acello. *Pryvy* still used in Yorkshire.

Add. MS. 12,056.

ventusyde, takynge rewarde to alle p*a*rtikelere *þ*ynges tofore seyde,
20 & ordeyne hy*m* a couenable dyotynge, as schal be tolde in þe
ChapiteH of dyotynge; & leye a defens aboute þe wou*n*de: ℥ j of
bol Armonyak*e*, diste*mper*id wiþ oyle of rosys & a lytel vynegre, to
þe þiknesse of hony; & ȝif *þat* þe tyme of þe ȝere were hot, put to
24 þis medycine þe jus of su*m* colde erbe: as morel, nyȝtschode, peny-
wort, virge pastoris, o*þer*e su*m* o*þer* colde erbe; & bynde noȝt þe
lyme to harde, ne lete noȝt þe lyme hongyn; but ȝif it be þe arme,
honge hi*m* aboute þe nekke; & ȝif it be þe fot o*þer* þe schyne, lete
28 hy*m* ligge; & ȝif *þat* þe lyme akþe, aswage þe akþe wiþ anoyntynge
of hote oyle of roses. Ffor as Galyen seyth̄: *þer*e is noþynge more
grefes, *þan* ys akynge & declynaciou*n* of a lyme, for þese two makiþ
sone an hote swellynge, the whiche is to þe ffeuy*re* as a welle, & to
32 þe body as an Ovyn. Þe wou*n*dyde ma*n* most absteyne*n* hy*m*,
aftere *þat* þe chapiteH of dyetynge techith̄; & boþe þe syke ma*n* &
þe leche, & alle *þat* ben aboute þe syke, mote absteyne*n* he*m* fro*m*
fleschlye knowlachynge of a wo*m*man, ne a wo*m*man *in tyme of
36 menstrewe, ne loke noȝt on þe syke ma*n*; & onys in þe day þe syke
ma*n* schal schyte, & ȝif he may noȝt schyte kendly onys in þe day,

a clisterie

If a tumour develops,

[1 lf. 28, bk.]

þe dai after þe quantite of mete þat he takiþ, make him a clisterie ouþer a suppositorie oonys ech day. & if þou myȝt not wiþ alle þese þingis defende þe lyme from apostyme, it is an yuel signe, for þe lyme is [1]feble, & þe humouris arn wickide; þanne bigynnen[2] to materen þe swellynge wiþ potage maad of flour, oile & watir, or ellis wiþ þis maturatif / Take malowe leues & leues of violet, & þe rote of holihocke; seþe hem weel in water, & staumpe hem, & take a pound of water, þat þei ben soden ynne, & comoun oile; ℥ .iij.; of wheete flour ℥ .iij.; of flour of lynseed ℥ j.; of flour of fenegrek dj.[3] ℥.; of erbis I-staumpid half a pound. & boile alle þese togidere in a panne ouer þe fier, & stire it weel wiþ a spature; & þis maturatif leie on a lynnen cloop, & leie it on þe postyme til þat it be maturid / & whanne þat þe postyme is maturid, make þe quytture, if þou maist, be cast to þe wounde; & if it mai not be cast to þe wounde, opene þe place þat is moost lowist þere, as þe quytture mai best goon out; & þanne hele þe wounde, as I schal telle in þe þridde chapitle of apostymes / Take hede alwey to þis techinge; & if þe postyme were for þe prickynge of a senewe, ne leie not þerto þis potage maturatijf, but wiþ þe oynement of oile of rosis, & of oþere þingis, as it is seid in þe woundis of senewis /

R

and remove the pus.

If the tumour is caused by the pricking of a nerve use an ointment.

[2] *bigynnen*, mistake for *bigynne*. [3] di*midium*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

after þe quantyte of mete þat he haþ takyn, make hym a clistry, oþer a suppositorye onys iche day. & ȝif þou maiste noȝt with alle þese þynges defendyn þe lyme from aposteme, yt is an yuele signe, for þe lyme ys feble, & þe humores ben wykkede; þen begynne to maturen þe swellynge, with potage y-made off flour, oyle & water, oþer ellys with þis maturatyff: R malwe leuys, leffys of vyolett, & þe rote of holy hokke; seþe hem [4]wel in water, & þanne stampe hem, & take a pounde off þe water þat þey be sodyn yn, & of comyn oyle ℥ iij, of whete flour ℥ iij, of flour of lynsed .℥. j, of flore vynegreke ℥ ß, of erbys i-stamped lb.[5] ß; & boylle alle þese togedire, in a pan ouere þe fyre, & stire yt wel wiþ a spator; & þis maturatyff leye on a lynne clothe, & leye on þe posteme, tyl þat yt be maturyd; & whanne þat þe posteme is matured, make þe quyter, ȝif þou maist, ben y-cast to þe wounde; & ȝif it may noȝt ben y-cast to þe wounde, opyne þe place þat ys most lowest þere, as þe quyter may best gone out; & þan helyn þe wounde, as y schal tellyn, in þe þridde chapyteH of Apostemys. Take hede alweye to þis techynge, þat ȝif a posteme were for þe prikynge of a synwe, ne leye noȝt þereto þis potage maturatyff, but wyt þe vncture of oyle of roses & of oþer þynge, as yt is seyde in þe woundys of synwys. Þou schalt

maturatyff

[4 fol. 52 *b*]

[5] MS. lj

þou schalt knowe þe yuel disc*ra*sie of a wou*n*de, [1]if þat þou seest þe skyn þat is aboue þe wounde to reed & to hoot *in* felyn*g*e, þa*n*ne þe wou*n*de is disc*ra*sie in hete; namely, if þat þer come out of þe wou*n*de[2] a sotil quytture, reed; þilke disc*ra*sie þou schalt helpe wiþ coldynge þe lyme aboute þe wou*n*de w*ith* oile of rosis & vng*uentu*m albu*m*, Ras*is* of ceruse, which þou schalt fynde i*n* þe antidotarie, & w*ith* þe ius of þe o*þe*re eerbis colde. [1 lf. 29] 1. A hot dyscrasia, Nota

& þou schalt knowe a cold discrasie bi þe whiȝtnes ei*þer* þe wa*n*nesse of þe place / & wha*n*ne þe place is cold i*n* towchinge, & wha*n*ne þat þe quytture is þicke; þe which discrasie þou schalt remeue bi þe enoy*n*ture of hote oiles, as oile of coste,[3] oile of laurine, oile of enforbiu*m*, & so o*þe*re hoote oilis / 2. a cold dyscrasia, disc*ra*sies l. h.

A moist disc*ra*cie þou schalt knowe bi þe neischenes of þe place, & bi abou*n*dau*n*ce of whiȝt liq*ui*de rotenes, þe which þou schalt helpe wiþ desiccatiuis: as wiþ waischinge of wiyn & hony togidere, i*n* þe whiche be*n* sode*n* balaustie,[4] gallis & þe ryndis of some garnadis, or alle or su*m*me bi he*m*-silf / 3. a moist dyscrasia, R

þe drie disc*ra*sie þou schalt knowe bi þe smalnes of þe lyme, & þe smalnes of þe lippis of þe wou*n*de, & litil quytture, if þat þe quytture be þi*n*ne; þe which disc*ra*sie þou schalt [5]helpe: w*ith* 4. a dry dyscrasia. [5 lf. 29, bk.]

[2] MS. erroneously inserts *quytture* after *wounde*.

[3] *oile of coste*, Lat. cum oleo de castoreo.

[4] *balaustie*. Balaustium, the floure of the wylde Pomgranate. Halle. *Table*, p. 16.—1565. Turner, *Herbal*, II., fol. 49 b., calls it Balaustrum.

---

y-knowe þe euyH dyscrasie of a wou*n*de, ȝif þat þou sest the schyn þat is aboute þe wou*n*de to reed, & to hot in felyn*g*e, þe*n*ne þe wou*n*de is discrasyede in hete, namly ȝif þat þere come out of þe wou*n*de a sotyH qyt*er* & a red; & þilke discrasye þou schalt helpe*n* w*ith* coldynge þe lyme aboute þe wou*n*de, w*ith* oyle of roses, & w*ith* vnguentu*m* albu*m*—rasis of ceruse—whyche þou schalt fynde in þe Antodarie, & wiþ ius of o*þe*re colde erbys. & þou schalt knowe a colde discrasye by þe whitnesse o*þer* þe wannesse of þe place, & wha*n*ne þe place ys colde in touchynge, & wha*n*ne þat þe quyt*er* is thykke; the whiche discrasye þou schalt remeffen, by þe vncture of hote oyles, as oyle of cost, oyle lauryne, oyle of enforbiu*m*, & so o*þer* hote oyles. A moiste discrasie þou schalt knowe by þe nesschenesse of þe place, & by þe Abundau*n*ce of whit lyquyde rotnesse, þe whiche þou schalt helpyn w*ith* defficatyffes: as w*ith* wasschynge of wyn & honye togedres, in [6]þe whiche buþ y-sode balaustye, gallys, & þe ryndes off poume garnettys, o*þer* alle o*þer* some by hem-selffen. þe drye dyscrasye þou schalt knowe by þe smalnesse of þe lyme, & þe smalnesse of þe lippes of þe wou*n*des & litel quyt*er*, ȝif þat the quyt*er* be þe*n*ne; þe whiche discrasye þou Add. MS. 12,056. [6 fol. 53 *a*]

castynge on of hoot water til þat þe lyme wexe reed, & wiþ an oynement þou muste[1] grece, as hennes, goos, & dokis, þe marie boon of a calf, & wiþ plenteuousnes of good mete þat norischiþ: as þe broþis of fleisch, & temperate wiyn, & rere eyren, & smale fischis, 4 & wiþ reste, & softnes of al þe bodi, & of þe lyme þat is hirt; &

As soon as the dyscrasia is removed, alwey to þis techinge take hede þat as soone as a membre is brouȝt to his kyndeli disposiciou*n*, anoon aȝenstondiþ[2] wiþ contrarious

try to heal the wound itself. medicyns, & turne aȝen to þe principal cure of þe wounde. But 8 þenke nouȝt to heele þe wounde as longe as it is enpostemed, or ellis haue an yuel discrasie; but first remeue þilke discrasie, or þat þou heele þe wounde / For whanne two þingis þat schulden ben heelid ben togidere, & þe oon of hem mowe not be helid wiþoute 12 helynge of þat oþere, first we schulen heelen him, þat mai nouȝt be heelid wiþoute þat oþer helyng, as þe apostyme eiþer þe dis-

Auicen crasie / þus Auicenne techiþ in þe laste chapitle of þe firste book. Neuer-þe-lattere forȝete nouȝt þe principal cure, þat whanne þe 16 accidentis ben asesid turne aȝen to þe principal cure //

[1] *þou muste*, mistake for *of moiste*.
[2] *aȝenstondiþ*, mistake for *aȝenstonde*.

Add. MS. 12,056. schalt helpen wiþ castynge on of hote water, tyl þat þe lyme wexe rede, & with an oyntynge of moiste grecys, as hennys, gosys & dokys, & þe marye bon of a Calff, & with plentefoste of gode mete, 20 þat norysschyth, as þe brothys of flesch, & temperat wyn, & rere eyren, & smale fyssches, & oþere gode þynges, & with reste and with softnesse of alle þe body & of þe lyme þat is y-hurte; & alwey to þis techynge take hede, þat as sone as a membre ys y-broȝt to his kendlye dysposiciou*n*, anon aȝeyne stonde with contraryouse medy- 24 cine, & turne aȝeyne to þe pryncipal cure of þe wounde. But þynke noȝt to helyn þe wounde, as longe as þe wounde ys apostomyde, oþere ellys haþ an yuele discrasye, but first remywe þilke discrasye ere þan þou hele þe wounde. For whenne þat tweye þynges þat 28 scholde ben y-helyde, buþ togedres, & þe on of hem mowe noȝt ben y-helyde withouten helynge of þe oþer, ffirst we schulle helyn hym, þat may noȝt be helyde withouten helynge of þe oþere, as þe posteme oþer þe dyscrasye; & þus Avycene techith in þe last 32 chapiteH of þe first bokys. Ne nevere þe latere ne forȝete noȝt þy pryncipal cure, þat whanne the accidentes ben asesyde, turne aȝeyne to þe principe cure.

¶ Þe .vij. chapitle of þe .iij. techi*n*ge is a wou*n*de m*aad* w*ith* a wood hou*n*d, eiþ*er* of ony oþ*er* venemous beest /

[1 lf. 30] [2] ¶ Cap^m^ vij^m^ Bite of a dog.

4 [1] BVt' wha*n*ne an hou*n*d haþ bite*n* a ma*n*, loke first if' þ*a*t þe hou*n*d be wood; & if' þ*a*t þe hou*n*d be not' wood, heele þe wou*n*de as þou doist' oþ*er*e comou*n* wou*n*dis; & if' þ*a*t' þe hou*n*d were wood, þou schalt' knowe it' bi certeyn cause & disposicio*u*ns / 8 For a wood hou*n*d fleeþ mete & wate*r*; & he re*n*neþ hidirward & þidirward as a dru*n*ken ma*n*, wiþ open mouþ & his tail bitwene hise leggis; his tu*n*ge hangiþ out', but' he wolde biten alle me*n*; ne he knowiþ not' þo men þ*a*t' ben in houshold. He berkiþ not' / & if' 12 þ*a*t' he oþirwhile berke, his vois is ful hors, & oþ*er*e hou*n*dis fleen fro hi*m* & berken vpon hi*m*. Also þou schalt' knowe bi disposicio*u*n of þe same wou*n*de. For if' þ*a*t' þou wetist' a cru*m*me of' breed i*n* þe blood of' þe wou*n*de, & ȝeuest' it' to anoþ*er* hou*n*d to ete, he 16 wole not' ete it'; & if' þ*a*t' he ete it', he wole die / Or ellis take an ote, & stau*m*pe it', & leie it' on þe wou*n*de al nyȝt', & on þe morowe ȝeue it' to a*n* hen; & þe hen wole not' ete it' / & if' þe hen ete it', þe hen schal die /

Ascertain whether the dog was rabid.

Food saturated with blood of the wound kills other animals.

[2] Heading to leaf 30, in a later hand, *Off woundes betten with doges.*

---

20 ¶ The vij Chapitell*e* of þe þridde techynge is off a wou*n*de y-made of a wod hou*n*de, oþ*er*e of eny oþ*er*e venymouse bestys.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Whe*n*ne þ*a*t an hou*n*de hath̄ byten a ma*n*, ffirste loke ȝif þat þe 24 hou*n*de be wod; & ȝif þ*a*t þe hou*n*de be noȝt wood, hele þe wou*n*de as þ*ou* dost oþ*er*e comyn wou*n*dys; & ȝif þ*a*t þe hou*n*de were wood, þ*ou* schalt y-knowe yt by certeyne causes, & by dispo[3]sicio*u*ns. Ffor a wod hou*n*de fleyth̄ mete, & ffleyth̄ watere, & oþ*er*whyle he dyeth̄ 28 whe*n*ne þ*a*t he seþ water; & he re*n*nyth̄ hydirwarde & þedirwarde, as a dronken man, wiþ opyn mouþ & hys taylle bytwene his leggys, hys tunge hongyth̄ out, he wolde byte alle me*n*, ne he ne knowyth̄ nouȝt þo me*n* þ*a*t ben his housholde, he berkyth̄ noȝt; & ȝif þ*a*t 32 he oþ*er*ewhyle berke, hys voys ys ful hors, & oþ*er*e hou*n*dys flen fro*m* hy*m* & berkyn vpon hy*m*. Also þou schalt y-knowe by dysposicio*u*n of þe same wou*n*de, for ȝif þ*a*t þou wetyst a cru*m*me bred in þe blod of þe wou*n*de & geuyste yt to an oþ*er* hou*n*de to 36 etyn, he wyl noȝt etyn yt, & ȝif þe hou*n*de etyþ yt he wyH deyen; oþ*er*e ellys take a note & stampe yt, & leye on þe wou*n*de al nyȝt, & on þe morwe ȝif yt to an he*n*ne, sche wyl noȝt etyn hyt; & ȝif sche etyth̄ yt sche wyl deye*n*. & anone as þ*ou* wost þe hou*n*de ys

[3 fol. 53 *b*.]

If the dog was rabid, withdraw the blood from the wound by cupping, cauterization, [1 lf. 30, bk.] and attrahent remedies.

And anoon as þou woost' þat þe houmd was wood, sette a greet ventuse aboue vpon þe wounde, & drawe out' þe myche blood out' of' þe wounde, & aftirward drawe abrood þe wounde; & aboue al oþere þing', brennynge of' hoot' yren to þe ground [1]of' þe wounde is 4 moost' profitable. & leie aboue þe wounde actractiuis, to drawe out' þe venym / Summe of þese actractiuis ben symple, & summe compound / Symple beþ: þe lyuere of þe same wood hound þat' boot' þe man, garlik stampid, salt' fisch, aischis of' wiyn lies, appoponak 8 þat' is wondirful, þe leeues of' a gourde,[2] & þe rote of' fenegrek, þe gile[3] of' fisch, & amptyn I-stampid / þese medicyns ben compound: vreyne of' a ȝong' man wiþ nitre; ouþer mintis stampid[4] wiþ salt, & distemperid wiþ vynegre, & maad an enplaster. Anoþer medicyn 12 compound: take floris eris & salt', of' ech .x. parties, & þe fatte of' a calf', & of' a wolf' þat' sufficiþ, & make a plastre / Anoþer: take schepis talow & buttere, & make a plaster / þis wounde schal be holden open at þe leeste fourty daies, & þis schal be do aboute þe 16 place. In anoþer maner regimen / Vndirstonde þat' þe man þat' is biten, schal not' be lete blood in þe bigynnynge, lest' þe venym be drawe abrood bi oþere lymes; ne þou schalt' ȝeue him no laxatif', lest' it' drawe þe venym to þe entrailis wiþinne; but' þou schalt' sette 20

Compound remedies.

Haue it [?]

Simple remedies.

Another treatment:

[2] *gourde*, cucumer. See *Prompt. Parv.*, 203, *Goord*, Cucumer, cucurbita, colloquintida.

[3] *gile*, ne. gill. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, p. 268. The Latin has, *gluten*, glue.

[4] *stampid*, in margin.

Add. MS. 12,056.

wod, sette a gret ventuse aboue þe wounde & drawe out myche blod out of þe wounde, & afterwarde drawe abrod þe wounde; & abouen alle oþere thynge brennynge of hote eyren to þe depþe of þe wounde ys most profiytable, & aftere leye aboue þe wounde attractyfes, to 24 drawe out þe venym. Some of þese attractifes beþ symple, & some beþ componyd. Symple ben: þe lyffere of þe same wod hounde þat bote þe man, garlyke y-stampyde, salt fysseh, asschys of vyne, Opopanac ys wondirful, þe leuys of a Gourde, & þe rote of ffyne- 28 greke, þe gele of fyssches, & amptes y-stampyde. þese medycynes ben componyde: vryne of a ȝonge man, with nytre oþer myntes, i-stampyde with salt & distempred with vynegre, & y-mad in emplastre. An oþere medicyne componyd: ℞ floris eris & salt ana 32 ten parties, & þe fat of a calff' twelf' partyes, & make a plastre. An oþere: take schepys talwȝ & buttre, & make emplastre. þis wounde schal ben y-holde opyne at þe leste fourty dayes; al þis [5 fol. 54 a] schal be do about þe place. [5]In an oþere manere regimen vndir- 36 stande, þat þe man þat is y-bete ne schal nouȝt be lete blod in the bygynnynge, lest þe venym be drawe abrod by oþere lymes. Ne þou ne schalt ȝif hym non laxatyff', lest yt drawe þe venym to þe entraylles withynne; but þou schalt setten on þe place a stronge 40

vpon þe place a strong' ventuse, as it' is seid tofore, [1] þat' it' mowe drawe miche of þe blood. And wha*n*ne þat' .iij. daies be*n* passid, it' is no*t*' yuele to lete blood & to pu*r*ge wi*th* a litil pu*r*gaciou*n*, þat' pu*r*giþ þe malencolie, as wi*th* decocciou*n* epithimu*m*,[2] wiþ gotis whey; & norischiþ hi*m* wi*th* dieting', þat' fattiþ & makiþ hi*m* glad & bliþe; & waische his heed wi*th* decocciou*n* of' wate*r*, þat' þe feet' & þe heed of a weþe*r* were soden y*n*ne. Ne late hi*m* not' þirsten ne hu*n*gren, suffren, ne traueile*n*; & so if' þat' god wole, þou maist' hi*m* kepe from pe*r*ile / & ech dai to a monþis eende he schal take oþe*r*e symple medicyns or compou*n*ned / *— — Take þe ayschis of' crabbis I-brent i*n* an ouene .iiij. pa*r*ties, of' frankencense vij. pa*r*ties, & make he*m* into a poudre / þe pacient' schal take ech dai of' þis poudre .ij .ℨ. / Anoþe*r* medicyn: take þe poude*r* of' crabbis brent' vj. pa*r*ties, gencian .iij pa*r*ties, te*r*re sigillate oon pa*r*tie, make poudre / If' þat' þou were no*t*' at' þe bigy*n*ny*n*ge, & it' bigy*n*ne to haue yuel accidentis: as yuel þou3tis, soruful metynge i*n* his sleep, & þat he be wroþ & grucche, & woot' not' whi; & if' me*n* aske hi*m* ony þi*n*g', & 3eueþ no good answere þe*r*to, & fley lith,[3] & he haþ alle oþe*r*e signes of' malencolie, [4]þa*n*ne 3eue to hi*m* a

use first cupping, [1 If. 31]

then blood-letting and a purgative.

Keep the patient in good spirits.

During a month he must take every day a simple or a compound medicine.

If the patient seems melancholy,

[4 If. 31, bk.]

[2] *Epithemum.* See Notes.

[3] *fley lith*, altered to *fleyntlith* with different ink. Read: *fleyth li3t.*

---

ventuse, as yt is seyde tofore, þat he mowe drawe myche of þe blode. & whe*n*ne þat þre dayes ben passyde, yt is nou3t yuele to leten blod, & to purge wi*th* a ly3t purgaciou*n*, þat purgith þe maly*n*colye, as wi*th* decocciou*n* of Epytemu*m*, wi*th* gotys whey3; & norissche hy*m* wi*th* dyetynge, þat fattytħ hy*m* & make glad & bliþe; & wassche hys hed wi*th* decocciou*n* of wate*r*, þat þe fet & þe hed of a weþire ben y-sodyn yn. Ne lete hy*m* nou3t þrustyn, ne suffren hungyre ne traueħ, & so 3if þat god wyl, þou maiste kepen hym fro*m* pe*r*yle. & euery day to a moneþ ende, he schal taken oþe*r*e symple medycynes, oþe*r* componed. *Symple buþ: Asa ffetida. Asa dulsis, połm,[5] te*r*ra sigillata, Wermot, Kockuħ,[6] mirre & gencyane. Medycynes componed gode: *℞ þe assches of crabbys y-brent in an Offyn .iiij pa*r*tyes, of ffrankensens vij pa*r*tyes, make a poudre; þe pacient schal take iche day of þis poudre ʒ .ij wiþ wyn. An oþe*r*: ℞ þe poudre of crabbys y-brende vj pa*r*tyes, of gencyane iij. pa*r*ties, te*r*re sigillate one pa*r*tie, make poudre. 3if þat þou were no3t at þe bygy*n*ny*n*ge, & he bygy*n*netħ to haue yuele Accidentes, as yuele þou3tes, schrewyde metynge in his slepe, & þat he be wrotħ & grucche & wot no3t why, & 3if me*n* aske hy*m* enye þynge he 3euytħ no gode answere þe*r*e to, & ffleyþ ly3t, & he hatħ alle oþe*r*e signes of malencolye, þa*n*ne 3if to hy*m* a medycine y-made

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] *polium*, Paley. [6] *Kockull*, Nigella. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 86.

give him troches composed of cantharides and spices, ℞ N

medicyn m*aa*d of' cantarides / Take old grete cantarides, & do awei þe heed & þe wyngis, .ij dragmis; lentis[1] I-clensid, .℥ j.; safro*n*, spikenard, clowis, canel, .an*a* .℥ s'.; bete he*m* weel, & make of' he*m* smale ballis, þ*a*t' ech bal weiȝe a dragme. & ȝeue o. bal at þre tymes, at' ech tyme þe weiȝte of' þre cornys of' wheete, til þ*a*t' he pisse blood; þ*a*nne he schal be saaf' / For whanne þ*o*u art' sikir, heele þe wou*n*dis aft*er* þ*a*t' fourti daies ben passid, i*n* þe same man*er*. If' þ*a*t' þe wou*n*de were m*aa*d of' biti*n*ge of' an eddre or of' ony o*þer* venemous beest', þe leche schal take heede to drawe abrod þe wou*n*de, & sette aboue a uentuse, & drawe out' miche blood; & it is miche worþ to enuyrou*n*ne þe place aboute þ*a*t' is biten wiþ brome I-stampid / For if' þ*a*t' þe p*r*ickynge be i*n* þe foot' or i*n* þe hand, if' þ*o*u enuyrou*n*ne þe arme w*it*h brome, it' lettiþ þe venym to go vpward; & ȝeue hi*m* þe medicyns writ*en* aboue, & also lete þe wou*n*de be open, til þe venym be excludid /

Treat bites from venomous beasts similarly.

¶ Capm viijm

THe .viij chapitle of þe þridde techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis of a wou*n*de m*aa*d in a ioynt, & is dislocate /

Wha*n*ne þ*a*t' a wou*n*de is i*n* a lyme, & þe boon of þe same lyme
[2 lf. 32][3] is to-b*r*oke [2]atwo & dislocate—þ*a*t is to seie out' of' ioynte, þ*a*nne

[1] *doesnet* above *lentis;* meaning ?

[3] Heading to leaf 32 in a later hand: *Off woundes in Jintes.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

of cantarydes. Take *olde* grete kantarydes & do aweye þe hed & þe wynges ȝ. ij., lentys I-clansed ȝ. j., saferen, spikenard, clowys, caneH an*a* ȝ. ß.—in o*þer*e bokys—ipone hem wel & make of he*m* smale ballys þ*a*t weyȝen j. penye wyȝt; & ȝif a baH at þre tymes, at iche tyme þe wyȝt of vij cornys of whete, tyl þ*a*t he pysse blod, for þen*n*e he schal be saff'. Ffor when*n*e þ*o*u art sykere, hele þe
[4 fol. 54 *b*] [4]wou*n*de aft*er* þ*a*t fouty dayes ben passyde, in þe same man*er*. ȝif þ*a*t a wou*n*de were mad of þe bytinge of an eddre, o*þer*e of eny o*þer*e venymouse beste, þe leche schal take hede to drawe abrode þe wou*n*de & setten abou*en* a ventuse & drawe out myche blod, & yt is myche worþ to enviro*un* þe place about*en* þ*a*t is y-betyn wiþ brome y-stampyde. Ffor ȝif þ*a*t þe p*r*ikynge be in þe fot o*þer*e in þe hande, ȝif þ*o*u enviro*un* þe arme o*þer*e þe legge w*it*h brome, yt latteþ þe venym to gone vpwarde; & ȝif hy*m* þe medycines y-wryten aboue, & also tryacle, & lete þe wou*n*de be opyne, tyl al þe venym be escludyde.

The viij. Chapytell*e* of þe þridde techynge of the ffirste tretys is of a wou*n*de y-made in a joynt & is dislocat.

defensiffe

Whe*n*ne þ*a*t' a wou*n*de is in a lyme & þe bon of þe same lyme ys tobroken atwo & is dislocat—þ*a*t is to sigge, out of joynt,

it is good *þat* *þou* putte *in* *þe* wou*n*de wh*an*ne *þe* blood is stau*n*chid, & also aboue *þe* wou*n*de *þe* ȝolke of an ey wiþ oile of rosis, & anoi*n*te al *þe* lyme aboute *þe* wou*n*de w*ith* two p*ar*ties of oile of rosis, & half oon p*ar*tie of vynegre maad þicke wiþ bole armoniak, til *þe* quytture be engendrid, & *þat* *þou* be sikir *þat* no postyme schal come. Ne take noon hede to brynge togidere *þe* p*ar*ties of *þe* boon *þat* is to-broke*n* or dislocate, til viij. daies ben goon *in* *þe* wyntir, & v. *in* *þe* som*er*; for *þan*ne it schal make quytture, and be sikir fro*m* swellynge; & *þan*ne brynge togidere *þe* brynkis ei*þer* *þe* disiu*n*cture aft*er* *þe* techynge *þat* schal be seid *in* *þe* chapitle of algebra. & if *þat* *þe* p*ri*ckynge ei*þer* *þe* dislocaciou*n* nediþ splentis, make *þat* *þe* splentis & byndynge faile aboue *þe* wou*n*de. *Þat* *þou* may do if *þat* *þou* kutte *þe* spl*en*tis & *þe* bi*n*dynge aboue *þe* wou*n*de w*ith* a knyf or a rasour, & *in* drawynge abrood *þe* hoole of *þe* wou*n*de[1] aboue *þe* wou*n*de wiþ a nedle, so *þat* *þou* maist bi *þat* hole ech day chau*n*ge *þi* medicyn of *þe* wou*n*de wiþoute choudynge[2] of *þe* boond *þat* *þou* madist first aboute *þe* boo[3]nys *þat* were*n* broke*n* ou*þer* dislocate; *þe* which boo*n*d *þou* schalt nouȝt remeuen til tyme schal be teld *in* his place, but *þou* schalt bynde aboue *þilke*

If the wound is accompanied by fracture or dislocation of a bone,

℞

dress the wound,

and do not join the bone before some time elapsed.

Cut a hole in the splints or bandages,

through which the wound can be dressed. [3 lf. 32, bk.]

[1] *wounde*, error for *bonde*. [2] *choudynge*, error for *chongynge*.

---

*þan*ne it is gode *þat* *þou* putte in *þe* wou*n*de, wh*an*ne *þe* blod is y-stau*n*chyde, & also aboue *þe* wou*n*de, *þe* ȝolke of an eyȝe, w*ith* oyle of roses, & anoynt alle *þe* lyme aboute *þe* wou*n*de, wiþ two p*ar*tyes of oyle of rosys, & w*i*þ half on p*ar*ty of vynegre, y-made *þikke* w*ith* bol Armonyak*e*, tyl *þat* *þe* quyt*ure* be engendered,[4] & *þou* be sykere *þat* none Aposteme schall come. Ne take none hede to brynge togedere *þe* p*ar*ties of *þe* bon *þat* is tobroken o*þer*e dislocat, tyl viij daies ben go in *þe* wyntir*e*, & fyff in the somere; for *þe*nne yt schal make quytere, & be sykere fro*m* swellynge; & *þe*nne brynge togedire *þe* brekynge o*þer*e *þe* dysy*n*cture after *þe* techynge *þat* schal be seyde in *þe* Chapytell of **Algebra**. & ȝif *þat* *þe* brekynge o*þer*e *þe* dyslocaciou*n* nedyþ splyntes, make *þat* *þe* splyntes & *þe* byndynge faylen aboue *þe* wou*n*de; & *þat* *þou* maiste do, ȝif *þat* *þou* kyttest *þe* splyntes & *þe* byndinge aboue *þe* wou*n*de w*ith* a knyf o*þer*e a rasoure, & in drawynge abrod *þe* hole of *þe* bonde aboue *þe* wou*n*de [5]wiþ a nedle, so *þat* *þou* maiste by *þilke* hole eu*er*y day chau*n*gen *þe* medycine of *þe* wou*n*de w*ith*outen chau*n*gynge of *þe* bonde, *þat* *þou* madest firste aboute *þe* bonys *þat* were broke o*þer*e dislocat. *Þe* whiche bonde *þou* schalt nouȝt remeffen, tyl *þe* tyme *þat* schal be tolde in hys place; bote you schalt bynde aboue *þilke*

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 55 *a*]

[4] MS. engenderes.

boon a newe boond, which þou schalt' remeuc as ofte as þou chaun*g*ist þi wou*n*de. & wha*n*ne þat' þou art sikir fro þe enpostemynge, & wha*n*ne þat' þou hast' sett' togidere þe boonys þat' were sett' togidere & dissolate, þa*n*ne leie vpon þe wou*n*de bi þe hole 4
R þat' þou madist' i*n* þe boond, a mu*n*dificatif' of' mel roset' colat', & of' barli mele til þe wou*n*de be cle*n*sid; & leie on þat' a[1] mu*n*dificatif', þredis of' oolde whiȝt' ly*n*nen cloop, til þat' þe wou*n*de be ful clensid; aftirward regendre fleisch, & aftirward consowde w*ith* 8 regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis, whiche þat' schulen be seid i*n* þe ende of þe book /

¶ Capm ixm

THe nynþe chapitle of þe .iij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of fluxblood of a wou*n*de / 12

Hæmorrhage arises from an injury, corrosion, or weakness of the veins and arteries—

þer be*n* ij. maner of' causis þat' makiþ blood to blede out' of' a ma*n*nys body; þe oon cause is clepid—cause co*n*iuncte; & þe toþ*er*—cause antecedent' / þe enchesou*n* of' cause co*n*iuncte is compou*n*ned of' þe mouþis of þe veynes and arteries, or ellis wha*n*ne 16 þat þe veynes be*n* kut' atwo, or ellis corrosion of' þe bodies of' þe
[2 lf. 33]3 [2] same veynes & arteries, or ellis to greet' febilnes or to greet' losenes / And þ*er* be*n* manie enchesou*n*s of' cause antecedentis: as to

[1] *a*, erroneously inserted.
[3] Heading to leaf 33, *Off fflux off blode in woundes.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

bonde a newe bonde, þe whyche þou schalt remeffe, as oft*en* as þou 20 chaun*g*iste thy wou*n*de. & wha*n*ne þ*ou* art sykere fro*m* empostomynge & þou haue sette togedire þe bonys þ*at* were sette togedire & dislocat, þe*n*ne leye vpon þe wonde by þe hole þ*at* þou madyst in þe band a mu*n*difycatyff' of mel rosat colat, & of barlye mele, tyl 24 þe wonde be clansyde; & leye on þilke mu*n*dyficatyff' þredys of olde clene whyte ly*n*ne cloþ, tyl þ*at* þe wou*n*de be ful clansyde; afterward regenere fflesch, & aft*er*ward *con*soude w*i*þ regeneratyfes & *con*solidatyfes, whiche þ*at* schullen ben seyde in þe ende of 28 þe boke.

The ix Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of fflux blod off a wounde.

þere beþ two man*er*e causes þ*at* makyth blod to bleden out of' 32 ma*n*nes body; þ*at* on cause is clepyde cause *con*juncte, & þ*at* oþ*er* cause antecedent. þe encheson of cause *con*jun*c*te ys openynge of þe mouþes of þe veynes & þe Arteries, oþ*er* ellys wha*n*ne þ*at* the veynes beþ kut atwo, oþer ellys corosion of þe bodyes of þe same 36 veynes & arteries, oþ*er* ellys to gret feblencsse, oþ*er*e to gret losnesse. & þere beþ manye enchesou*n*s & causes antecedente: as to myche

myche frelenes[1] of blood, or ellis to myche acute of blood, & also manye o*per*e causis þer be*n* þat be*n* clepid cause of[2] primitif: as smytynge þat wou*n*dith, to greet lepinge, criyng; wraþe, chidynge, & so manye o*per*e; & ech of þese causis tofore seid haþ his maner heelynge by hi*m*-silf in fisik medicinal. But it is not þe entencioun of þis book to treten[3] of blood þat bledip of wou*n*de, þat is maad w*ith* wou*n*de, þe which may be restreyned w*ith* craft of ciurgie. I*n* flux of blood þat comeþ of a wou*n*de, þe leche muste loke þe disposicioun, þe abitude, age, v*er*tu, & complexioun of hi*m* þat is wou*n*did; if þat þese acorden, & he be myȝty i*n* vertu, he schal blede myche blood at þe wou*n*de, þouȝ þat þe leche be clepid at þe bigy*n*ny*n*ge, but if it be so þat he be[4] feble ouer greetliche. & if þat nede constreyne þe leche to stau*n*che blood, he muste loke if þat þe blood go out at þe veynes capillares, þat be*n* smale veynes as heeris of a ma*n*nys heed / & þa*n*ne oonly þe whiȝt[5] of an ey leid aboue w*ith* towȝe of flex suffisiþ / wha*n*ne þat þe pa*r*ties of þe wou*n*de ben brouȝt togidere; & if þou caste aboue poudre of lym aforeseid i*n* þe chapitle of sowynge of wou*n*des, it schal be þe bettere; for þat poudre wiþstreyneþ þe blood & consoudiþ perpa*r*ties

from fullness of blood—causæ antecedentes; from an accident—causæ primitiva.

If the patient is strong, let him bleed freely; if he is weak use a mild styptic when the blood is lost from the capillaries; [5 lf. 33, bk.]

[1] *frelenes*, mistake for *fulnesse*. [2] *of*, erroneous insertion. See below.
[3] *but*, omitted. Latin: Non est huius libri intentio tractare nisi de fluxu sanguinis. . . [4] *be*, added in margin in same hand.

Add. MS. 12,056.

fulnesse of blod, o*per* ellys to myche Acuyte of blod & also manye o*per*e causes; and þ*er*e beþ o*per*e causes þat beþ clepyd causes prymytiff; as smytinge þat wondiþ, to gret lepynge, cryinge, wraþþe, chydinge, & so many[6] o*per* & iche of þese causes tofore seyde haþ hys man*er*e helynge by hy*m*-selfen in fesyk*e* medecynal. Bot it ys noȝt þe entencyou*n* of þis bok*e*, to tretyn but of blod, þat bledip of wou*n*de, þat is y-mad wiþ wou*n*de, the [7]whiche may be restreynde by crafte of surgerye. In flux of blod, that comyth of a wou*n*de, þe leche most loke þe disposicioun, þe Abytude, Age, v*er*tu & *com*plexioun of hy*m* þat is y-wou*n*dyde; & ȝif þat þese acorden, & he be myȝtye in vertue, he schal blede myche blod at hys wou*n*de, þowȝ þat þe leche be clepyde at þe bygy*n*ninge, bot ȝif it so be þat he feble ou*er*e gretlyche. & ȝif nede *con*streyne þe leche to stau*n*che þe blode, he most loke ȝif þat þe blod go out of þe Veynes capyllares, þat beþ smale veynes as herys of ma*n*nys hed; & þa*n*ne only þe whyte of an eyȝe, y-leyde aboue wiþ towȝ of flex suffiseþ, whe*n*ne þat þe pa*r*ties of þe wou*n*de beþ brouȝt togedire; & ȝif þ*ou* cast aboue þe poudr*e* of lyme, tofore seyde in the chapyteH of sowynge of wou*n*des, yt schal be þe betyre; for þe poudr*e* wiþstreyneþ þe blod & *con*soudeþ þe pa*r*tyes of þe wou*n*de, togedir*e*.

[7 fol. 55 *b*]

[6] MS. may.

when it is lost from a larger vein use a stronger styptic;

when it is lost from an artery press the artery until a clot is formed,

and apply a styptic

℞

[2 lf. 34]

Renew the remedy carefully.

of' þe wou*n*de togidere. & if þe blood come fro grete veynes he mai nou3t' so su*m*tyme be constreyned, but' it' nediþ a stronger medicyn & also a more cautele / & if' þat' þe blood go out' of' arterie, þou schalt' knowe it' bi construcc*i*on & dilatac*i*on of' þe same arterie—þat' is to seie, þat' þe blood go out wiþ lepi*n*ge & o*þer*while wiþ wiþdrawinge[1]; & þa*n*ne sette þi fyngir vpon þe mouþ of' þe grete veyne or ellis on þe arterie, & holde þi fyngir þe*r*on bi a greet' hour; for þa*n*ne by grace sum greet' drope of' blood may be co*n*gelid togidere & þe*r*e-bi ve*r*tu may be myche co*m*fortid; aftirward leie plenteuousliche of' þis medicyn vpon þe veyne eiþ*er* þe arterie þat' is kutt' atwo / Take frankencense, whi3t' gu*m*mis, & fatt' .ij. ʒ., aloes .ʒ. j., make poudre & dist*em*pe*re* w*ith* þe white of' an ey as þicke as hony / aft*er* take heeris of' an hare smal kutt', [2]medle alle þese togidere, & þ*er* is no medicyn so good as þis medicyn is i*n* streyny*n*ge of' blood & consowdy*n*ge of' þe veyne / But' wha*n*ne þat' þou comest' to chau*n*ge þat' medicyn of' þe wou*n*de, do nou3t' þe medicyn awey wiþ strenkþe, but' leie aboue of' þe same medicyn[3] moist', to neische þe firste medicyn, þat' it' my3te falle awey bi hi*m*-silf' / Neþeles it' is possible þat' a medicyn caustik, þat' is to seie, a medicyn þat' bre*n*neþ, su*m*ner staunchiþ

[1] Lat.: quod sanguis exit eum saltu secundum constrictionem et dilatationem ipsius arteriæ.

[3] MS. *medicyn*, repeated.

Add. MS. 12,056.

& 3if þe blod come fro*m* gret Veynes, he may no3t so su*m*tyme be *con*streynde, but it nediþ a streng*er*e medycyne & also a more cautele; & 3if þat þe blod go out of an arterye, þ*ou* schalt y-knowe yt be *con*structiou*n* & dilatacciou*n*, of þe same arterye—þat is to sigge, þat þe blod goþ out w*ith* lepynge, & o*þer* whyle w*ith* wiþdrawynge, & þe*n*ne sette þy fyngere vpon þe mouþ of þe gret veyne, o*þer*e ellys þe Artarye, & holde þy fyngere þ*er*e on by a grete oure; for þe*n*ne by hap su*m* grete drope of blod may be *con*gelyde togedre, & þ*er*eby vertu may be myche y-comfortyde. Afterewarde leye plentyfullyche of þis medicyne vpon þe [4]Veyne o*þer*e þe arterye þat is kut atwo. ℞ ffrancencens, why3t go*m*mous & fat ʒ. ii., Aloes ʒ. i., make poudre & distempre w*ith* þe why3t of an ey3e as þykke as hony; aft*er* take herys of an hare smale & kutte, medle al þis þynge togedire, & þ*er*e ys no medycine so gode as þis medycine is, in streyninge of blod & *con*soudynge þe Veyne. Bot wha*n*ne þat þou comyst to chau*n*ge þe medycine of þy wonde, do no3t awey þe medycine wiþ strengþe, but [5]leye aboue of þe same medycine moist, to nessche þe firste medycine, þat yt my3te fallyne awey by yt-selff'. Naþeles yt is possible, þat a medycine caustyke, þat ys to sigge a medycine

[5 fol. 56 *a*]

[4] *wounde*, cancelled before *veyne*.

blood þan þis medicyn of frank encense; & þou schalt haue greet The styptic is a surer remedy than a caustic.
plente of medicyne caustik *in* þe antidotarie, but we be*n* nouȝt
sikir þat þe blood of þe veyne eiþ*er* arterie anoþir tyme wole goon
4 out, wha*n*ne þat þe schorf of þilke caustik Medicine[1] is remeued
awey / but þis medicy*n* of encense w*ith* þe heeris of an hare not
oonliche stau*n*chiþ þe blood, but also sowdiþ[2] þe veyne & þe
arterie, as I haue p*r*eued it ofte tymes / And for to ȝeue autorite I Nota bene
8 sette a sau*m*ple þat come su*m*tyme to my*n* hondis: A child of þre 1st Example. A child having cut its throat with a knife,
ȝeer old hadde a litil knyf *in* his hond, & he fel on þat knyf *in* þe
former p*ar*tie of þe þrote p*er*sched þe veyne organise; þer cowde no
man it stau*n*che, & þa*n*ne I was clepid, & I cam to þe child in
12 [3] greet haste, & he hadde almost lost his siȝt; for hise iȝe*n* *in* his [3 lf. 34, bk.] the loss of blood caused collapse.
heed were*n* t*ur*ned vp so dou*n*;[4] & þe blood come out at þe wou*n*de
whiȝt as whey, v*n*neþe he hadde no pouste[5] / & þa*n*ne I leide my
fyngir on þe heed of þe veyne, & I heeld it faste þat þ*er* myȝte no The vein was pressed,
16 þi*n*g go out; & so I heeld þe veyne a greet hour, & þa*n*ne v*er*tu of
his bodi þat was almost lost quykenede aȝen, & þe pouse bigan to
appere febiliche as it were a smal þred / þa*n*ne I sente to þe spiceris

[1] *medicine*, added in margin. [2] MS. *sowdynge*.
[4] *up so doun*. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, s. v. "doun." Latin: oculos habebat in capite revolutos.
[5] *unneþe he hadde no pouste*. This passage is corrupt; for the correct version see below.

þat bre*n*nyth, se*n*nore stau*n*chyth blod, þe*n*ne þis medicine of encense; Add. MS. 12,056.
20 & þou schalt haue gret plente of medycine caustyke in þe anti*to*-
darye, but we beþ nouȝt sykere þat þe blod of þe Veyne, oþ*er*e þe
arterye an oþ*er* tyme wyl gon out, wha*n*ne þat þe serche of þylke
caustyke medycine ys remywed awey. But þy medycine of ensence,
24 w*ith* þe herys of an hare, noȝt only stau*n*chiþ þe blod, but also *con*-
soudeþ þe Veyne, & þe Arterye, as y haue p*r*euyde yt ofte tymes.
And forto ȝif Autorite, I sette an sau*m*ple, þat come su*m* tyme to
my*n* handys: A childe of þre ȝere olde, hadde a lyte knyf in hys
28 hande, & he fel on þat knyf, & þe poynt of þe knyf, in þe fore
p*ar*tye of þe þrote, p*er*syde þe Veyne organys; ne þ*er*e ne couþe no
man yt stau*n*che, & þa*n*ne y was y-clepyde & y come to þe child in
gret haste, & he hadde almoste loste hys syght; for hys eyȝen in
32 hys hed were t*ur*nyde vp so dou*n*, & þe blode come out of þe
wou*n*de, whyte as wheyȝe, ne he ne hadde no pous, & þe*n*ne y
leyde my fyngere on þe hed of þe veyne, & y helde faste þat
noþynge myȝte go out, & so y helde þe veyne by a grete houre, &
36 þe v*er*tue of hys body þat was almost lost quyknede aȝeyne, & þe
pous bygan to apere ffeblyche as yt were a smal þreed. þa*n*ne y

schoppe þat' was a greet' weye fro me / ne I remeuede not' awey my
fyngir fro þe plaee, til þat' þe messanger cam aȝen, and þe ehild
bigan þanne to opene hise iȝen; & þanne I ordeynede þis medicyn
a styptic applied, the to be maad, & plenteuousliehe I leide it aboue þe wounde, & I 4
boond þe wounde wiþ plumaeiols & with stupis[1] I-leid in whit' of'
wound bandaged an ey, & with a boond I boonde it' streitly, and comaundide hem to
ȝeue him erummys of' breed leid in water; & on þe morowe I eome
aȝen, & þanne I foond þe child eomfortid / & neuere þe latere I 8
nolde nouȝt' vndo þe medieyn / þe fader preiede me wiþ greet' in-
[2 lf. 35] staunce to vndo þe medicyn, [2] but I wolde not'; & so I lete it' lie
and left undisturbed for four days. stille, til iiij. daies weren passid withouten remeuynge / & neþeles
I visitide him ech day; & þe .iiij. day I vndide þe wounde, & þe 12
medicyn was drie aboue þe wounde, so þat' I myȝte not' han re-
meued it' wiþoute greet' violence. & þanne I leide aboue þe whiȝt'
of' an ey wiþ a litil oile of rosis, & so I lefte it lie oon day til on þe
morowe I turnede aȝen; & þanne I remeuede awey þe medicyn 16
The child recovered on the fifth day. wiþouten violence, & I foond þanne þe wounde & þe veyne al hool.
& of' þis heelyng' his fadir & alle hise neiȝeboris hadden greet'
If necessary wondir / And if' þat' wiþ þis medieyn þou maist' not' sowde þe
arterie ne þe veyne, ne þow maist' not constreyne þe blood for sum 20

[1] "*Stupes* (in Surgery), Pledgets of Tow, Cotton, etc., dipt in scalding hot Liquors and apply'd to the diseased Part."—Phillips.

Add. MS. 12,056. sente to þe spysers schoppe, þat was a grete weye from me, ne y ne
remywede noȝt awey my fyngere from þe place tyl þat þe messagere
come aȝeyne, & þe childe þenne bygan to opene hys eyȝen; and
þanne y ordeynde þilke medyeine to be mad, & plentyffuliche y 24
leyde it abouen þe wounde, and y bonde þe wounde with plumaceoles
& with stupes y-leyde in whyȝt of an eyȝe, & with a bande y bonde
yt streytlye, & y comaundede hem to gyuen hym crommys of brede,
y-leyde in water; and on þe morwene y come aȝeyne, & þenne y 28
fonde þe childe y-cunffortede & neuere þe latere y wolde nouȝt vndo
[3 fol. 56 b] þe medyeine; þe ffadire [3]preyde me wiþ grete instaunce to se þe
wounde, but y wolde nouȝt; & so y lete yt be, tyl foure dayes were
passyd, withouten remeffynge & naþeles y vysitede hym every day; 32
in þe fourþe day y vndyde þe bande, & þe medycine was drye aboue
þe wounde, so þat y myȝte noȝt haue remywede hyt withouten grete
Vyolenee. & þenne y leyde aboue þe whyte of an eyȝe, with a lytel
oyle of roses, & so y lafte yt by on day. On þe morwen y turnyde 36
aȝeyne, & þenne y remeffyde awey þe medyeine withouten Vyolenee,
& þenne y fonde þe wounde & þe Veyne al hol. And of þis helynge
þe fadire & alle his neyȝhboures hadden gret wondire. And ȝif þat
with þis medieyne þou maiste noȝt soude þe Arterye, ne þe Veyne, ne 40
þou ne maiste noȝt constreyne þe blod for sum oþere Impedement,

oþer inpediment: þanne þou must ouþer bynde þe veyne, or drawe hir out of hir place, & bynde þe heed of þe veyne or arterie, ouþer þou must brenne hir wiþ hoot iren, & make on hir heed a greet
4 cruste & a depe. ¶ Anoþer ensaumple: þer was a child of .xv. ȝeer oold þat smoot him-silf with a smal knyf, & þilke knyf perside o. senewe of þe arm & prickide a ueyne þat lay vnder þilke senewe. & for þe prickynge of þat senewe [1]he hadde greet
8 akynge, & blood drewe doun to þe wounde & nouȝt aȝenstood [2] for alle þe staunchis of medicyns þat me myȝte do þerto, it wolde not staunche, þe blood ran out at þe wounde. & colde medicyns ben greuous to senewis þat is prickid, for þei stoppen þat lyme, & þat
12 is contrarious aȝens senewis; & þanne I demede nessessarie to drawe out al þe veyne out of her place & to bynde hir & to helpe þilke senewis wiþ oile of rosis / But þe modir of þat child sente for a lewde leche which þat repreuede foule my doom, & he bihiȝte to
16 heele safly þe child. He dwellide on þe cure, & I wente my wey / þe which leche took hede to him .x. daies, þat neiþir þe akynge ceesside ne þe blood was not staunchid, & so þe sijk man was nyȝ deed / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I wolde not come to þe pacient /
20 þanne a fisician þat was frend to þe freendis of þe pacient blamede þe modir & hir freendis þat þei hadden left counseil for þilke idiotis

use a ligature or torsion or cauterization of the bleeding artery or vein.

Nota

2nd Example

Case of a child which had pricked a nerve and a vein in its arm.

[1 lf. 35, bk.]

Lanfranc suggested tying the vein and applying oil of roses to the nerve.

A lay physician attempted another treatment,

but for ten days the child suffered acute agony and bleeding;

[2] *aȝenstood*, for *aȝenstondyng*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þan þou moste oþere bynde þe Veyne, oþere drawyne here out of here place, & wynde þe hed of þe Veyne oþer Arterye, oþer þou most
24 brenne here wiþ hote yren, & maken on here hed a grete croste & a depe. An oþere exaumple: þere was a childe of xv ȝere olde, þat smot hym-self with a smal knyff, & þilke knyff persyde on Veyn of þe Arme, & prikyde a Veyne þat lay vndire þilke synwe. & for þe
28 prikynge of þilke synwe he hadde grete akynge, & blod ran to þe wounde & noȝt aȝeynestondynge medycines þe blod ran out at þe wounde. Kolde medycines weren profitable to bledynge of wounde, and colde medycines beþ greffes to prikynge of synwes; for þey
32 stoppyn þat lyme & þat ys contraryus aȝeyns þe synwys; and þenne y demyde necessarye to drawe out alle þe Veyne out of here place & to bynde here & to helpen þilke synwe with oyle of roses. But þe modire of þilke childe sende for a lewyde leche, whyche þat
36 reprevyde fouliche my doom, & he behyȝte to helyn safflyche þe childe. He dwellyde on þe cure, & y went my weye. þe whyche leche toke hede to hym be ten dayes, þat neiþere þe akynge sesyde ne þe blod was noȝt y-staunchyde, & so þe syke man was [3]nyȝh ded. [3 fol. 57 *a*]
40 And at þe laste y was clepyde & y wolde noȝt come to þe pacient. But þenne a ffysisyen þat was frende to þe man of þe pacyent, blamyde þe modire & here frendys, þat þey hadde lefte my consaylle

biheeste; & þilke fisician *pur*poside, aft*er* þat' he hadde herd my cou*n*seil, þat' þ*er* was noon oþ*er* wey þat' my3te saue þe sike ma*n* from deeþ, & he axide of' þe sirurgia*n* whe*er* he coude do as I
[1 lf. 36] hadde seid bifore. & [1] he seide, þat' he coude so doon, & so he 4
finally a surgeon tied the vein and saved the child. dide / He kutte þe skyn aboue þe veyne & twynede þe veyne i*n* hise handis, & boond þe eende of' þe veyne w*ith* a þred; & aft*er* he helde on þe senewe hoot' oile of' rosis, & so bi þis cou*n*seil he was restorid a3en to heelþe / But who so wolde aske how þat' he 8
my3te so manye daies be kept' fro*m* þe crampe for þat' he suffride so
Nota The bleeding of the wound prevented cramp. greet' akþe / I answere & seie: þat' þe cause was, for þat' he bledde at' þe wounde ech day, so þat' þe senewe [2] mi3t' not' be to myche replete eiþ*er* ful of' blood / Alle þese þi*n*gis I haue told, þat' he þat' 12
When stypticks fail, use cauterization; redi þ he*m* mai þe visiloker i*n* semblable causis worchen. & if' bi þis medicyn he my3te nou3t' sikirliche be restorid or restreyned þat' falliþ ri3t' seelde whane [3] / þa*n*ne we mote*n* bre*n*ne þe heed of' þe veyne eiþ*er* of' senewe [4] wiþ hoot' iren, & þilke hoot' iren my3te 16
make an hard cruste. & be war þat' þ*ou* touche not' þe lippis of' þe wou*n*de ne þe senewe, ne noon oþ*er* þi*n*g' but' oonly þe veyne wiþ
Nota hoot' iren. & if' al þis craft' wole not' helpen, we musten drawe

[2] *senewe*, error for *wounde*. Add MS. has the same mistake.

[3] *ri3t seelde whane*. *Polychron*, i. 133, wel silde whanne. Stratm., seldhwonne.

[4] *senewe*, error for *arterie*. The same mistake in Add. MS.

Add. MS. 12,056. for þe byhestys of þylke ydyote; & þilke ffysisyens p*ro*posyde, 20
after þat he had herde my cou*n*seylle, þat þere was no*n* oþ*er*e wey þat my3te saue þe syke ma*n* fro*m* þe deþ, & þe*n*ne he askyde a surgyne, whe*er*e he couþe don as y hadde seyde byfore; & he seyde þ*a*t he couþe so don, & so he dyde. He kutte þe skyn aboue 24
þe Veyne, & twynede þe veyne in his handys, & bonde þe ende of þe Veyne wiþ a þrede, & after*w*arde he hylde on þe synwe hote oyle of rosys, & so by þis cou*n*seyle he was restoryde a3eyne to hele. But ho so þ*a*t wolde aske how þ*a*t he my3te so manye dayes be 28
kepyde fro*m* þe crampe, for þat he suffryde so grete akþe, I answere & sigge: þ*a*t þe cause was, for he bledde at þe wou*n*de eche day, so þ*a*t þe synwe ne my3te no3t be to myche replet oþ*er*e fulfyllede of blode. Alle þese thynges y haue tolde, þ*a*t he þat redyth̄ he*m* may 32
þe wyslocor in semblable causes wyrchen. And 3if be þis medycyne he my3te no3t sykerliche be restreynede, þ*a*t fallyth̄ ry3te selden, þe*n*ne me moste bre*n*ne þe hed of þe Veyne oþ*er*e of þe synwe wiþ hote yren, þ*a*t þilke hote yren my3te maken an harde croste. And 36
be war þat þou touche no3t þe lippes of' þe wou*n*de, ne þe synwe, ne no*n* oþ*er*e thynge, bot only þe veyn w*ith* hote yren. And 3if al þis crafte wolde no3t helpyn me, me*n* most drawen out þe Veyne, &

out' þe veyne & fle þe fleisch aboue here, & wynde þe veyne sadliche & bynde hir heed wiþ þin han[1]dis.—Bi[2] my witt' I[3] trowe amene þat' a bodi schulde make þeron a knotte I-knytt' of' him-silf' or ellis knytt' wiþ a þred. I woot' neuere wheþer he meneþ; for he seiþ in anoþer place tofore þat' I schulde knytte it' wiþ a þred, & þerfore I suppose bi my witt' þat' I schulde make a knotte þeron of' his owne silf' bi my witt'.—& sumtyme it' happiþ þat' an arterie is broken ouþer kutt' & þe fleisch þat' is aboue is hool & nouȝt' to-broke neiþir I-kutt', or ellis þe fleisch þat' is aboue þe arterie is helid tofore & not' þe arterie; & vndir þe fleisch þer is a swellynge of' blood þat' is clepid aperisma[4] ouþer mater sanguinis, & þerof' þe pacient' haþ greet' drede, lest' þat' þe skyn to-breke & þe blood go out', þe which blood is hard to restreyne / for of' þis maner sijknes spekiþ galion & seiþ þat' a seruaunt' of' sich a disposiciou*n* was helid of' a lewde man þat' tauȝte hi*m* þat' he schulde leie snow on his siknes. Wherfore a man may vndirstonde þat' to siche enpostymes colde medicyns & drie ben nessessarie. // // // // // // //

and if this fails, torsion and a ligature. [1 lf. 36, bk.]

In the case of rupture of an artery an aporisma is formed.

.Galion.

[2] An insertion of the scribe.

[3] *I trowe a mene*, "I believe to mean."

[4] *aperisma*, Lat. ophorisma seu mater sanguinis. Dufr. Gloss. med. Lat.: Aporisma—collectio sanguinis in aliquo membro extra venas non putrefacti maxime sanguinis arterialis.

---

flene þe flesch̄ aboue here & wynde þe Veyne sadlyche & bynde here hed w*ith* þyn handys. And su*m* tyme yt happyth̄, þ*at* an Arterye is y-broke oþ*er*e y-kutte, & þe flesch þ*at* is abou*e*n ys hol & noȝt to-broke ne y-kutte, oþ*er*e ellys þe flessch̄ þ*at* is aboue þe Arterye ys y-helyde & noȝt þe Arterye, & vndire þilke flessch̄ þ*er*e is a swellynge of blode [5]that is y-clepyde **Aporisma** oþ*er*e matere **Sanguis** & þ*er*e of þe pacient hath̄ grete drede, lest þ*at* þe skyn tobreke & þe blod gone out, þe whiche blod is hard to restreyne. Of þis man*er*e seknesse spekyth̄ **Galyen**, & seiþ þ*at* a s*er*uaun*t* of swyche a dysposisiou*n* was y-helyde of a lewyde man, þ*at* tauȝte hym þ*at* he scholde legge snowȝ vpon þ*at* seknesse, wherfore a ma*n* may vndirstande, þ*at* to swyche empostemys colde medicynes & drye beth̄ necessarye.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 57 *b*]

¶ Capm xm

The .x. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis [1] is of gouernaunce & diete [1] of men þat ben woun[2]did /

[2 lf. 37]

off dietynge for woundes.

Some physicians give nourishing food and wine,

pretending that water is harmful;

others allow only bread and water and sodden apples.

Both are dogmatic.

þer ben manye men þat discorden of dietynge of men þat ben woundid, for sum men ȝeuen to alle men þat ben woundid, wheþir þat it be in þe heed or in ony oþere place, good wiyn & strong fleisch of capouns & of hennes; & þei affermen þat bi sich a maner wey sike woundid men ben sunnere heelid / for þei seien þat water putrifieth lymes þat ben woundid & engendriþ enpostymes & corrumpiþ & febliþ complexcioun*s* & makiþ manye harmys / & summe oþere men gouernen alle maner of sike men þat ben woundid wiþ breed & watir & applis soden til ten daies ben goon / And if god wole eende þis book, it schal be remenynge errouris & declarynge & openynge doutis / I seie þat þese boþe sectis erren in her opynyouns, for þei taken hede oonly to her experimentis not considerynge resoun of complexioun of him þat is woundid / þe firste secte of þese two *[seyth] þat summen oonly eten breed & watir in so myche þei ben feblid þat blood & mater in her bodies may nouȝt be restorid; þe[3] which were sufficient to hele with her woundis,

[1—1] added in margin. [3] þe cancelled in MS.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ The x Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretys is of men that beth y-woundyde.

Many men discorden of dietynge of men þat ben woundyde, for sum men ȝeuen to alle men þat ben woundyde, wheþer þat it be in þe hed oþer in enye oþere place, gode wyn & stronge flesch of capouns & of hennys; and þey affermen þat by swyche a manere weye seke woundyde men sonnere ben y-helyde, ffor þey siggen þat watyre putrefyeþ lymes, þat beþ woundyde, & engendrith Apostemys & corumpyth & feblyth complexiouns, & makyth many harmys. Sum oþere men gouernen alle manere of syke men þat beþ woundyde with brede & water & Applys y-sodyn, tyl x dayes ben passyde, & ȝif þat god wyl ende þis bok, yt schal be remeffynge awey Errores, & declarynge & opnynge Dowtous. Y sigge, þat boþe þese sectes erryn in here opyniouns, ffor þey taken hede onlyche to here experymentys, noȝt considerynge resoun of þe complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde. The firste secte of þese *seyth þat some men, onlye etynge bred & watere, in so myche ben y-feblyde, þat blode & matere in here bodyes may noȝt be restoryde; þe whiche were suffi-

but' þei be*n* so feble þat' þei [1] dien, or ellis þei languren [2] longe [[1] lf. 37, bk.]
tyme; ne þe lymes may not' receyue resonable ve*r*tu as þei schulde;
& þese maner men ben of' cold complexcioun & drie & her bodies
4 weren feble or þei were*n* wou*n*did, & her stomak & her entrailis
wiþi*n*ne weren feble / þe secu*n*de secte seiþ: þat' su*m*me þat'
drinken wiyn & eten fleisch hadde i*n* þe me*m*bre þat' was wou*n*did
a greet' enpostyme & a febre—& þo be*n* ȝonge me*n* þat' be*n* of' an
8 hoot' complexiou*n* & a moist'—wherfore þei comau*n*dide to alle
maner o*þe*re of' complexiou*n* þat' þei schulden drynke no wiyn ne The patient ought, according to
ete no fleisch / ȝe schulen vndirsto*n*de þat' boþe þese sectis ben Rasis. & A. Galion.
nouȝt'; & þerfore I folowynge þe doctryne of' rasis, auicen, & galion
12 & of' o*þe*re doctouris, & also exp*e*rimentis þat' I haue longe p*re*ued, to abstain from wine at the beginning.
I seie þat' it' is nedeful þat' a wou*n*did man i*n* þe bigy*n*nynge ab-
steyne hi*m* fro wiyn, & namely if' þat' þe wou*n*de be i*n* þe heed
eiþir in ony p*ar*tie of' a senewe. for þ*er* is no þi*n*g' þat' so soone Nota
16 smytiþ greuau*n*ce i*n* þe heed or þe senewis as wiyn; for he is soone if he is wounded in his head or in a nerve,
co*n*uertid of' ky*n*dely heete & for he is so sotil, he p*er*siþ swiþe i*n*to
þe senewis, & he assendiþ soone into þe heed, bryngynge wiþ hi*m*
humouris & spiritis. It' [3] troubliþ a ma*n*nys witt', & wiyn greueþ [[3] lf. 38]
20 alle me*n* þat' ha*n* a feble heed / & þ*er*fore i*n* alle maner wou*n*dis of'

[2] *languren*, languent. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 286, *Languryn yn sekenesse* langueo. And *ibid.* note 5.

---

sau*n*t to hele w*ith* here wou*n*dys, bot þey ben so feble þat þey dyȝen, Add. MS.
o*þe*re ellys þey langoren longe tyme; ne þe lyme may noȝt resseyuen 12,056.
resonable ve*r*tue, as he scholde; & þese mane*r*e of me*n* ben of a
24 colde *com*plexiou*n* & a drye, & here bodyes weryn feble.—*The
secunde secte seyth̄ þat some þat dronken [4] wyn & etyn flesch̄ hadde [[4] fol. 58 a]
in þe membre þat was y-wou*n*dyde a gret enposteme & a ffeuyre—
and þo beþ ȝonge me*n* þat beþ of an hot *com*plexiou*n* & a moyst—
28 wherefore þey comau*n*dyde to alle o*þe*re mane*r*e *com*plexiou*n*s, þat
þey scholde noȝt drynke*n* no wyn, ne eten no*n* flesch. þe vnder-
standynge of boþe þese sectes nys noȝt comendable and þ*er*efore y
folwynge þe doctryne of rasys, Avence, galien, & of oþer doctoris,
32 & also exp*e*rymentis, þat y haue longe y-p*re*uyde, sigge þat it is
nedefuł in þe bygy*n*nynge þat a wou*n*dyde man Absteyne hy*m*
fro*m* wyn & namlye ȝif þat þe wou*n*de be in þe hed, o*þe*re in eny
p*ar*tye of a synwe. For þ*er*e nys noþynge þat so some smyteþ w*ith*
36 grevau*n*ce þe hed o*þe*re þe synwe as wyn; for he ys sone *con*uertyde
of' kendlye hete, and for he ys so sotył, he p*er*syth̄ swiþe into þe
synwes & he assendyth sone into þe hed, bryngynge w*ith* hy*m*
humo*r*es and spirites. Yt trublyth̄ a ma*n*nys wyt, & wyn greuyff'
40 alle me*n* that haþ a feble hed; & þ*er*e fore in alle mane*r*e wou*n*dys

if his complexion is hot and moist;

if he has a cold complexion he may have a little wine, but in general a specially prepared beverage.

þe heed & of' senewis he schal be forbode *in* þe bigy*nn*ynge namely to þo þ*in*gis[1] þat' han hoot' complexiou*n*s & moist' *in*to þe tyme þat' þe cure be ful endid / & to þo þat' ben of' a cold complexiou*n*, wha*nn*e .iij. daies ben passid, þou maist' ȝeue to drynke smal tem- 4 p*er*at' wiyn, & aft*er*ward a litil strengere, aftir þat' þou art' sikir þat' þer schal nouȝt' come to þe me*m*bre noon enpostyme. But þis[2] drinke schal be watir of' barlich, eiþ*er* wat*er* of' cru*mm*es of' breed bene soden in whit'[3] wy*n*,[4] or ellis lete þe breed lie in cold watir 8 raþ*er*e þa*n* þou faile þat' he schal drynke / but' he may tende weel to heete it', & nameliche *in* somer / & to þat' ben woundid[5] to drynke watir, or ellis with þe x. p*ar*tie of' wiyn of' pome garnates or ellis w*ith* þe sixte p*ar*tie of' wiyn agrestis þat' is smal brusk[6] 12 wiyn, or ellis þis is a p*er*fiȝt' drynke to wou*n*dis of' þe heed & to

R senewis: / Take a potel of' wat*er* & of' barly clensid .iiij. ℥., juiube,[7] sebesten[8] ana. ʒ. ß., of' drie prunis of' damascenes ℥ j, sugre of' rosis .℥ ij., seþe he*m*[9] to .iij p*ar*ties be*n* co*n*sumed, & þa*nn*e lete hi*m* 16

[11 lf. 38, bk.] drynke. To asaye it' softly[10] / [11]þis drynke is alteratijf': þat' is to seie, chau*ng*i*n*ge, ne it' swellip not', & it' lettip fumosite to arise

[1] þ*in*gis, inserted. [2] *þis*, error for *his*. [3] *whit*, error for *with*.
[4] *wyn*, inserted. [5] *woundid*, error for *wonid*. Lat. homini assueto.
[6] *brusk*, Roman brusco (Lat. rusticus?), harsh. See later reference in *N. E. Dict.*
[7] *Jujube*, a kind of prune growing in Italy. Kersey—1721.
[8] *Sebesten*, Arab. sebesten. Name for Cordia mysa vel sebastena.
[9] Corrupt passage. Lat.: donec consumetur tertia pars.
[10] *softly*, error for *soþly*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

of þe hed & off' synwes, he schal be forebode in þe bygy*nn*ynge, & namlye to þo þat han hot *com*plexiou*n*s & moiste, into þe tyme þat 20 þe cure be ful endyde; & to þo þat beþ of colde *com*plexiou*n*, whe*nn*e þre dayes ben passyde, þ*ou* maiste ȝeue*n* to drynke a smal temp*er*at wyn, & afterewarde a lyte strengore; after þat þou art sykere, þat þ*er*e schal noȝt come*n* to þe membre no*n* Aposteme. But 24 his drynke schal be watyr*e* of barlyche o*þ*ere watire þat cro*mm*es of brede ben sodyn yn, wiþ o*þ*e*r*e colde watyr & namlye in so*m*mere, & to þo þat beþ wou*n*dyde drynke watyr*e*, o*þ*e*r*e ellys wiþ tenþe p*ar*tye of wyn of pome garnettys, o*þ*e*r*e ellys wyth̄ sixte p*ar*tye of 28 wyn agreste þat is smal broske wyn, o*þ*e*r*e ellys þis is a p*er*fyte drynke to wondys of þe hed & of synwys: Take a poteH of watyr & of barlyche y-meynde ℥. iij, juiube, sebesten, ana .ʒ ß, of drye prunes of damacynes ʒ .j., sucr*e* of rosis ℥ ij, sethe he*m* to þre 32 p*ar*tyes ben *con*sumed, & þe*nn*e lete hy*m* drynk*en* yt. Sothlye þis drynke ys alteratyff': þat ys to sigge chau*ng*ygnge, ne hyt ne swel-

[12 fol. 58 b] lyth̄ noȝt. & yt latteþ fumosites to arys*en* to þe brayn. [12] Of mete

to þe brayn. Of mete I seie: to hi*m* þat is of a moist complexiciou*n* & hoot / bi no man*er* wey schulde not be ȝouen fleisch, fisch, mylk, eire*n*, ne no comfortable mete, but if þei weren ou*er*-
4 comen wiþ to greet febilnes; b*ut* he muste holde hi*m* content wiþ ius of barli or ellis of ootis wiþ almau*n*de mylk; outake[1] wou*n*de of þe heed, were[2] I ne ap*r*eue nouȝt almau*n*dis ne noon o*per* vaperous fruyt: as notis eiþir walnotis ei*per* avellanes; for þei han
8 a maner fumose p*rope*rte greuynge þe heed / he may eten amidou*n*, betis, letuse, & breed I-waische wiþ sugre if þat he were feble. & if þat he myȝte not absteyne hi*m* fro fleisch, ȝeue hi*m* fleisch of smale chikenes & of smale briddis & kidis & lambis & calues
12 I-sau*er*ed w*ith* agresta ei*per* wiþ wiyn of pome garnatis; & þilke dietynge he schal vse til he be sikir fro swellynge & þat þou schalt knowe wha*n*ne þat akynge swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben ceessid & þe wou*n*de almoost consowdid. If þat it was a wou*n*de
16 [3] þat was sowid ei*per* brouȝt togidere w*ith* by*n*di*n*ge, *in* whom quytture was nouȝt engendrid, & if þat it was a wou*n*de m*aa*d wiþ smytynge or ellis chau*n*gid wiþ þe eyr, *in* whom it is nedeful engendrynge of quytture, þa*n*ne it is siker þat it schal not enpos-

A patient of a hot and moist complexion should eat vegetables only;

Nota

if he cannot abstain from meat, chickens or veal may be given him.

[3 lf. 39]

[1] *outake*, except. See *Catholicon Angl.*, p. 264, Oute take, note.
[2] *were*, error for *where*.

---

20 y sigge: þat to hy*m* þat is of an hot & moiste *com*plexiou*n*, be no*n* man*er*e weye ne scholde noȝt be ȝeffen flesch̄, ffysch̄, Mylk*e*, eyren, ne no man*er*e *con*uertyble mete, bot ȝif þey weryn ou*er*e come w*ith* to gret febylnesse; but he mos'e holde hy*m* content w*ith* Iuse
24 of barlyche, o*per*e ellys of otys wiþ almau*n*de mylke; out take wou*n*de of þe hed, where y ne Ap*r*eue noȝt Almau*n*dys, ne no*n* o*per*e vaporose frutys, as notys o*per* walnottys o*per* Avelanes, for þey hau*en* a man*er*e fumose p*ro*prete greuynge þe hed; he may etyn
28 Amidu*n*, betes, letuse & bred y-wassche w*i*þ succre, ȝif þat he were feble. And ȝif þat myȝte noȝt Abstyne*n* hy*m* fro*m* flesch̄, ȝif hy*m* flesch̄ of smale chyknes, & of smale briddys: as larkys & o*per*e sengle briddys, & kyddes & lambres, & kalffes I-saveryde w*ith*
32 agresta, o*per* w*ith* wyn of pom garnett; & þis dyetynge he schaH vse, tyl he be sykere from swellynge, & þat þou schalt y-knowe, whe*n*ne þat Akynge, swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben secyde & þe wou*n*de is almost *con*soudcd. ȝif þat it was a wou*n*de þat
36 was sowyde o*per*e brouȝt togedyre w*ith* byndynge, in whom quyt*er* was noȝt engendryde, and ȝif þat it was a wou*n*de y-mad wyth̄ smytinge—o*per*e ellys y-chau*n*gyde w*ith* þe eyre, in whom yt is nedfuH engendrynge of quyt*er*, þe*n*ne yt is sykere þat yt schal nouȝt

Add. MS. 12,056.

Improve this diet when he gets better.

If he has a cold and dry complexion,

he should take meat from the beginning.

tyme, wha*nne* þat' he makiþ quytture plenteuousliche; & wha*nne* þat' þe lyme is weel disposid & not' to swolle ne d*ra*we abrood & is wiþoute akynge; þ*a*nne chau*n*ge a litil & a litil his dietynge til þat' þou come to his dietynge þat' he was wont' to vse tofore / & if' þat' 4 þe pacient' were of' a cold complexiou*n* & a drie & þat' he hadde bi nature eiþ*er* bi custu*m* a feble stomak, þ*a*nne it' were nessessarie to ȝeue hi*m* at' þe bigy*nn*ynge fleisch a litil sauerid w*ith* swete spicerie: as canel, gyng*er* & o*þer*e semblable to he*m*, & to ȝeue hi*m* i*n* þe 8 bigy*nn*ny*n*ge Julep[1]—þat' is a sirup m*aa*d oonly of' wat*er* & of sugre —& aftir iij. daies be*n* passid, wiyn, & boþe i*n* þe oon complexiou*n* & i*n* þe o*þer*e complexiou*n*. If' þat' a boon were broke wiþ a wou*n*de or wiþoute a wou*n*de aboute þe eende of' þe cure, þat' is to 12 seye, wha*nne* þou art' siker from apostyme & swelli*n*ge, it' is good to ȝeue norischau*nt*' metis þat' it' [2] myȝte make a good & a strong repeirement' of' þe boon þat' was to-broke: as furme*n*te soden in,[3] potage of' flour weel soden & wiþ þe extremytees of' beestis feet' & 16 swyne groynes & oxen wombe weel soden & bi siche o*þer*e þingis bi whom a good ligament' & a strong' may weel be engendrid / Wherfore it' is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe his dietynge, ve*r*tues of' coplexciou*n*s, agis, regiou*n*s, consuetudes & þe tymes of þe ȝeer þat' 20

[2 lf. 39, bk.]

Nota

If a bone has been broken, prescribe food which will repair the bones and ligaments.

[1] *Julep*, med. Lat. julapium, Fr. julep, Pers. goulāb. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

[3] *in*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056.

enposteme, whe*nne* þat he makyþ quyt*er* plentyouuslyche; & whe*nne* þat þe lyme ys wel dysposyde & noȝt toswolle, ne y-drawe*n* abrode. & ys wiþoute*n* akynge, & þ*a*nne chau*n*ge a lytel & a lytel hys dyetynge, tyl þat þou come to hys dyetynge, þat he was wont 24 to vse tofore. And ȝif þat þe pacient were of a colde *com*plexiou*n* & a drye & þat he hadde by nature o*þer*e by costeme a feble stomak,

[4 fol. 59 *a*]

[4] þ*a*nne yt were necessarye to ȝeue*n* hy*m* at þe bygy*nn*ynge flesch a lytel y-saueryde w*ith* swote spysorye: as kaneH gyngeffre & o*þer*e 28 semblable to he*m* & to ȝeue*n* hy*m* in þe bygy*nn*inge Julep—þat is a syripe y-mad only of watyre & of sucre—& aftere þre dayes ben passyde, wyn, and boþe in þe on *com*plexiou*n* & in þe o*þer*e *com*plexiou*n*. ȝif þat a bon were y-broke, wiþ a wonde ore wiþoute*n* 32 a wou*n*de, aboute þe ende of þe cure, þat is to sigge, whenne þou art sykere fro*m* a posteme & swellynge, yt is gode to ȝif norysschande mete, þat it myȝte make a gode & a stronge repayrment of þe bone þat was tobroke: as w*ith* ffurmente y-sode, & potage of flour*e* wel 36 y-sode, & w*ith* þe extremetes of bestys, as fette & swynes groynes & oxe wombys wel y-soden, & w*ith* swiche o*þer*e þynges by whom a gode ligamente & a stronge may wel be engendrede. Where fore yt is necessarie to a surgyne to knowe in hys dyetynge, ve*r*tues of 40 *com*plexiou*n*s, Ages, regeou*n*s *con*suetudes & þe tymes of þe ȝere, þat

he mowe chaunge his dietynge aftir þat dyuerse condicioun. Ne he schal not aftir o maner of counseil procede in his dietynge.

THe .xj. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis. ¶ Capm. xjm.

is of olde woundis þat ben maad of kuttynge or of openynge of a postyme, or ellis of a wounde þat is not heelid in his tyme, or ellis of sum maner fleinge, or of brennynge, or of to greet heete, or of to greet drouthe, or of to greet cold constreynynge, or of to greet abounddaunce of mater corrumpinge / For euery olde wounde hauynge rotnes or wire[1] þat is þinne venymous quyttir or ony oþir þing þan good quytture is not clepid a wounde, but it is clepid vlcus / Rowlond & Rogerine & þe moste [2]partie of men þat ben now, clepen it a festre[3] or a cankre, but it is neiþir festre ne cankre, but festre & cankre han difference fro þis / þis vlcus as a propre þing haþ difference from a þing þat is comoun / for ech festre & ech cankre þat is woundid, is clepid vlcus, but it ne schewiþ not þat ech vlcus is clepid cankre or festre

off olde verelent woundes

Various causes of ulcers.

Roulond & Rogeryn [2 lf. 40]

Ulcer is a more general term than fistula or cancer.

[1] *wire*, Lat. virus.

[3] *festre*, *fester* in Mätzner *Dict.;* O.Fr. flestre, festre; Lat. fistula. Comp. N. E. fester vb.

---

he mowe chaungen his dyetynge, aftere þat dyverse condycioun askyth. Ne he ne schal noȝt aftere on manere of counseylle proceden in hys dyetynge. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ The xi. Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretys is of olde woundes.

¶ Olde woundes ben mad of kuttynge oþer of openynge of a posteme, oþere ellys of a wounde þat is noȝt helyde in his tyme, oþer ellys of sum manere fleynge oþer of brennynge, oþer of to grete hete, oþer of to grete drovþe, oþer to gret colde constreynynge, oþere of to grete Abundaunce of moist mater corumpynge. For euery olde wounde, hauynge rotenesse oþere **virus** þat is þenne venemy quyter, oþer eny oþer þynge þenne gode quyter nys noȝt y-clepyde wounde, but is y-clepyde **vlcus** þat is an olde wounde. And of þis Vlcus, Rouland & Rogerine, & þe most partye of men þat ben now, clepyde it festre, oþer cancre. But it is neiþere festre ne cancre, but festre & cankre habbe dyfference from þis. [4] Vlcus, as a propre þynge hath dyfferencc, from a þynge, þat is comyn; for euerye festre & euerye cankere, þat is y-woundyde, ys y-clepyde Vlcus, but yt ne sywethe noȝt þat euerye Vlcus, ys clepyde cankre oþere festre, as y schal

[4 fol. 59 b]

Auicen distinguishes six kinds of ulcers.

as I schal telle openliche *in* ech chapitle bi hi*m*-silf[t] / Auicen seiþ, þat[t] þ*er* be*n* .vj. man*er* of þis vlc*us* : su*m*me þat[t] ben venemous, su*m*me hore, su*m*me depe, su*m*me cau*er*nose eiþ*er* hid, su*m*me corosif[t], su*m*me rotin, su*m*me a*m*bulatif[t] þat is spredynge abrood, & 4 su*m*me harde to consowde / Of þese man*er*s tofore seid, su*m*me[1] han acordynge w*ith* festris *in* tokenes & *in* foormes as venemous & holow3 & su*m*me ha*n* acordynge w*ith* cankris as spredynge abrood & fretynge hi*m*-silf & neþeles þei han difference, as it[t] is conteyned 8 *in* þe chapitle of[t] cankris I-wou*n*did & of[t] festre. & alle þese tofore seid han difference fro wou*n*de / for *in* a wou*n*de þ*er* is whi3t[t] quytture & euene *in* alle hise p*ar*ties & hole and nou3t[t] dep*ar*tid & wiþoute stenche. Þis maner of[t] quytture is engendrid of goodnes 12

[2 lf. 40, bk.] & ky*n*dely heete, & is p*er*fi3tly defied / But venym rotynes [2]& a cruste, & al oþ*er*e super*f*luyte of[t] olde wou*n*dis be*n* engendrid of[t] a strong[t] vnkyndly heete.

vlc*us* virulen*tum*

A uenym vlc*us* is *in* whom abou*n*diþ venym sutil & liquid. If[t] 16 þat[t] it[t] be reed or 3elu, or oon p*ar*tie redisch and scharp bitynge þe lyme, it[t] signifieþ lordschipe of[t] a strong[t] heete.

vlc*us* sordidu*m*

An hori elde wou*n*de þat[t] haþ su*m*me greete crustis, or ellis a wroting[t], sum gret[t] proud fleisch to hi3e.[3] 20

[1] MS. *sum men.*

[3] *proud fleisch to hi3e.* Lat.: carnem superfluam grossam. Proud flesh, Fungosity. Dunglison.

Add. MS. 12,056.

telle*n* opynlyche in eu*er*ye chapyteH be hy*m*-self[t]. Auesene seyth̄ þat þere ben sixe man*er*e of þese Vlcus, for su*m* ben Venemy, su*m* hory, some depe, some cauernouse oþ*er*e y-hud, su*m* corosyff[t], su*m* rotyne, some Ambulatyff[t]—þat is spredynge abrode, & some hard 24 to *con*souden. Of þese manerys tofore seyde, some hath̄ acordynge w*ith* festres in toknes & in fourmes: as Venemy & holwy, & su*m* han acordynge w*ith* cancre: as spredynge abrode & fretynge hy*m* self[t]. And naþeles þey habbe differe*n*ce as yt is conteynede in þe 28 chapytelles of cancre y-wou*n*dyde & of festre. & alle þese tofore seyde habbith̄ difference fro*m* a wou*n*de, for in a wou*n*de þere ys whyte quyt*er* & euene in al his p*ar*tyes & hol & no3t departyde, —& w*ith*oute*n* stynke. Þis man*er*e of quyt*er* is engendrede, of 32 godnesse of kendlye hete & is p*er*fitlye deffyede. But vemyn, rottenesse, & croste, & alle oþ*er*e super*f*luyte of olde wou*n*des ben engendred of a strau*n*ge vnkendlye hete. A venemy Vlcus is, in whom habu*n*deþ venym sotyl & liquydy. 3if þat yt be red oþ*er*e 36 3olwe, oþ*er*e a p*ar*tye redyssche, & scharpe bytynge þe lyme, hit synifieþ lordschipe of strau*n*ge hete. An hory olde wou*n*de ys y-clepyd, þat haþ su*m* grete crostes, oþ*er*e ellys su*m* grete awrotynge

A deep vlc*us* is þat', þat' haþ a greet' depnes & an holowȝ & pe*r*auenture crokinge. **vlc*us* profundum**

A wroting' vlc*us* is þat' of' his malice fretiþ bi cause þat' þe blood is sent to hi*m* so scharpe / Galion seiþ : þat' scharp blood not' oonli eorrodiþ [noȝt]*—fleisch i*n* wou*n*dis, but also hool fleiseh / **vlc*us* corosiuum G*alion*.**

A rotid vle*us* is stynkynge, hauynge a strong' heete i*n* his grou*n*d, & out' of' hi*m* passiþ a stynky*n*ge smel, eiþ*er* smoke, as doiþ out' of' fleisch þat' is rotid / þilke[1] word 'stynk' I vndirstonde it' bi my mane*r* witt' : sieh breeþ þat' comeþ out' of' a bodies ende, wha*n*ne a bodi breþiþ wiþ þe mouþ i*n* frosty wedir, þat' men taken a sau*m*ple, bifor to sle her lac dre / þa*n*ne wha*n*ne þou myȝt' se þe breeþ of' þi*n* owne ende eomynge out' at' þi mouþ i*n* þe eir. **vle*us* putr*i*du*m***

A walkynge / vlc*us* is þat' walkiþ hidirward & þidirward, & neþeles he p*r*ofou*n*diþ nouȝt' depe [2]i*n*to þe grou*n*d. **vlc*us* ambulat*i*vum** [[2] lf. 41]

An vlc*us* þat' is hard to helin is he þat' for his yuel p*r*opirte þat' is sent' to hi*m* fro þe bodi lettiþ hi*m* to heele. **ulc*us* difficilis.**

& for to heelen ech maner of' þese vle*us*, þe*r* ben manye dyuers rulis / þe firste rule is þat' þei mou*n* not' be heelid, but' þe super-fluytees þat' ben i*n* hem ben I-dried / þe secu*n*de rule / but' if' þat' bodi ouþ*er* þe membre be oute of' his naturel complexiou*n*, or þan þou þenke to heele þilke vle*us* þou muste brynge aȝen to his diete **Cura vlceris .1. .2.**

[1] This curious explanation of the word *stynk* is an insertion of the scribe. Read: *ste her laddre.* One letter half erased in *laedre.* *Ste*, see Stratm. *Dict.*, O.E. stîgan.

---

p*r*oud flesch̄ to hyȝe. A depe Vleus is þat þat haþ a gret depnesse & an holwe, & p*er*aunte*r* crokynge. A wrotynge vlcus is þat of hys malyce wroteþ, bycause þat þe blod þat is sent to hy*m*, is to scharpe. **Galien:** seharpe blod noȝt onlyehe cordyth̄ noȝt *fleseh in wou*n*des, but also hol fleseh. A rotyde vlcus is stynkynge, habbynge a strau*n*ge hete in his grou*n*de, & out of hy*m* passith̄ out a stynkynge smel o*p*e*r*e smoke, as þe*r*e doþ [3]out of fleseh þat is y-rotyde. A walkynge Vleus is þat walkeþ hyde*r*warde & þedirwarde & naþeles he profu*n*deþ noȝt depe into þe grou*n*de. An Vleus þat is hard to helyn, is he þat for his yuele p*r*oprete, þat is sende to hy*m* fro al þe body, latteþ hy*m* to hele. *&* forto helyn eu*e*ry mane*r*e of þese hulkes, þe*r*e ben manye dyve*r*se rulys. Þe firste rule ys þat þey mowe noȝt ben helyde, but þe super*f*luytes þat ben in he*m* ben dryed. Þe secunde rule ys þat ȝif þat þe body o*p*e*r*e me*m*bre be out of hys natureH̄ co*m*plexioun, ere þa*n* þou þynke to hele þilke Vlcus, þou moste bryngen aȝeyne to hys due **Add. MS. 12,056.** [[3] fol. 60 *a*]

.3. complexioun distemprid þilke bodi ouþir membre. þe þridde rule
is : þat' if' þe lyuere eiþir þe splene ben I-greued, as it' happiþ ofte
.4. tymes in olde wounds, þou muste rectifien hem / þe .iiij rule is :
þat' þe qualitees & þe quantitees of' humouris schulden be temperid 4
wiþ blood-letynge & purgaciouns & with good gouernaile / & if' þat'
þe eir be yuel, þe sike man schal be chaungid into good eyr / &
whanne þat' þe leche haþ tofore seen alle þese þingis, þanne he may
go to his cure / 8

If the ulcer is virulent, wash the wound with a wasohinge,

& if' þe vlcus be virulent, þat' is to seie venemi, loke if' þat' þe
venym þat' goiþ out' be rediseh or ȝelowiseh, & if' þat' þe lyme haue
ony maner heete; þanne waiseie it' wiþ water of' rosis & barlieh.
Nota[1] alim[2] & balaustia & lentiles with hony [3]symple eiþer compounned 12
[3 lf. 41, bk.] ben soden yn, & lete þis watir peersen to þe depþe of' þe wounde; &
if þe virus be wiþoute heete & þe membre haue noon heete, waische
it' wiþ watir or with wiyn þat' mirre wormode,[4] horhone,[5] sauge,[6]
pimpernelle[7] hony symple or compounned ben soden yn / Clense þe 16

and apply an vnguentum

wounde perfiȝtliehe & engendre fleisch & afterward consowde it'
wiþ þis propre oynement' þat' þi[8] olde foule venym woundis, eiþer

[1] MS. *Nona.* [2] *alim*, Latin : aluminis.
[4] *wormode*, absinthium. O.E. wormôd, M.E. wormwood.
[5] *horhone*, Marrubium vulgare. See Britten, *Dict.* [6] *sauge*, salvia.
[7] *pimpernella*, Pimpinella. [8] *þi*, error for *in*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

complexioun distempride[9] þilke body oþer membre. þe þridde rule
ys, þat ȝif þat þe lyfere oþere splene ben y-greuyde, as yt happyth̄ 20
ofte tymes in olde wounds, þou most retyfien hem. The fourth̄
rule ys : þat þe qualites & quantytes of humours scholde be tem-
pride with blodletynge, & purgationes & with gode governaylle ; and
ȝif þat þe eyre be yuel, þe syke man schal be chaungyde into gode 24
eire. And whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seye alle þese þynges,
þenne he may go to hys cure. & ȝif þat þe Vlcus be Virulente, þat
is to sigge Venemy, loke ȝif þat þe Venym þat goþ out be redysseh̄
oþere ȝolwe, & ȝif þat the lyme haue enye manere hete ; & þenne 28
wassche it wiþ water þat rosys & barlyche Alum & balaustia &
lentilis with honye symple oþere componed ben sodyn In. And lete
þis watere percen to þe depthe of þe wounde. And ȝif þe Virus be
withouten hete & þe membre haue non hete, wassche it with water 32
oþere wyþ wyn, þat Mirre, wermot, horhowne, sauge, pympirnel,
honye symple oþer componed ben sodyn In. Clanse þe wounde
perfitlye & engendre fleseh̄ & afterwarde consoud it with þis propre
oygnement, þat in olde foule venemy woundys oþer Vleus engend- 36

[9] At the margin.

vlc*us*, engendriþ fleisch, clensiþ & heeliþ as auicen & rasis witnessen / recipe litargiu*m*[1] as myche as þou wolt' & stampe it' in a morter[2] & putte wiþ hi*m* good oile of' rosis & vynegre now on & now þe oþ*e*re, alwey stiryng', til it' be p*er*fiȝtly an oynement' & come into þe foorme of' an oynement. & þis oynement' is clepid litargir*um* nutritu*m*, þ*at*' is to sai litarge nurschid, þ*at*' is p*ro*fitable i*n* manye causis / aft*er*ward take of' þilke litarge norischid .vij. p*ar*ties & of' alim, & of' balaustie or ellis in þe stide of' balaustie wormes of' þe erþe brent', bras brent', leed, gallis, sandragou*n* chathinie[3] argenti .an*a*. as myche as is xij p*ar*ties of' al þe oynement'; medle alle togidere and [4]make an oynement / þis oynement' schal be leid wiþi*n*ne þe wou*n*de & al aboue þe wou*n*de; for it' drieþ þe wou*n*de & engendriþ good fleisch & consowdiþ / Take hede to þis rule, þat' i*n* heelynge of' alle olde woundis aft*er* þ*at*' þei be*n* cle*n*syd, aboue þe oynement' it' is good to leie a ly*n*nen clooþ, to distende abrood on of' þe mu*n*dificatiuis of' ony which þ*at*' schal be told i*n* þe antidotarie, & leie aboue aboute þilke vlc*us* specialy from þe ouer p*ar*tie fro whens humouris fleen, a defensif' of' bole armonyak & terra sigillata; þ*at*'

Auic*en* & Ras*is*

letargiru*m* nutritu*m*

[4 lf. 42]

vnguentu*m* nutr*i*cu*m*.

No*ta*.

Put a "mundificatif" on a linen cloth upon the wound,

and add a T[5] deffensif dressing.

[1] "*Lithangyros*, Litharge or Silver-glet, the frothy Dross, or Scum that arises in the purifying of Silver with Lead."—Phillips.

[2] MS. *& putte it in a morter*, scribal insertion.

[3] "*Cathima* est minera de qua elicitur aurum vel argentum."—Sinonoma Barth. p. 14. *Cathimia:* argenti spuma, Cartelli *Diet.* [5] a sign like *Nota*.

---

reth flesch, cla*n*sythī & helythī as **Auecene** & **Ras*es*** wytnessithī, **litargiu*m* nutritu*m*.** R litarge as myche as þou wylt & sta*m*pe it & put it in a mortere & [6]putte wiþ hy*m* gode oyle of roses & vynegre, now þe on now þe oþ*e*re, alweye steryinge, tyl it be p*er*fitlyche augmentyd & come to þe fourme of an oygnement. & þis oygnement—litargiru*m* nutritu*m*—þ*at* is to sigge litarge y-noryssched, þ*at* is p*ro*fitable in many casis. Afterwarde take of þilke litarge viij p*ar*tyes, & of alym, & of balaustie oþ*e*re ellys, in þe stede of balaustye, wormys of þe erþe y-brend, brend bras, brent led, gallys, sank*e* dragou*n*, cathimie, Argenti an*a* as mychel as ys .xij p*ar*tyes of alle þe oygnement, and medle al togedre, & make an Oygnem*en*t. þis oygnem*en*t schal be leyde w*ith*y*n*ne þe wou*n*des & aboue þe wou*n*de, for yt dryethī þe wou*n*de, & engendrithī gode flesch & *con*soud. Take hede to þis rule, þ*at* in helynge of alle olde wou*n*des, aftere þ*at* þey ben clansyde, aboue þe oygnem*en*t yt is gode of one a ly*n*nen cloþ, forto dystende abrode on of þe mu*n*dyficatyfes of hony whiche þ*at* schulle be tolde in þe antitodarye. And leye aboue aboute þilke vlcus, & specialiche fro*m* þe ouere p*ar*tye, fro whom humores flotyn, a[7] defensif' of bol Armonyak*e* & t*er*ra

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 60 b]

[7] MS. *&*.

T R is maad on þis maner / take bole armoniak .ʒ j. terra sigillata. ʒ ß oile of rosis & vynegre þat suffisiþ, I-nowȝ do in þe oon now in þe oþer til þe oynement be ful maad & liquide I-nouȝ / so þat of þe oile of rosis be double as myche as of vynegre / þis defensiþ a membre fro corrupcioun & also vlcus þat he sprede nouȝt abrood /

Nota.

In a (2) sordid ulcer remove the scurf.

An hory wounde shal be heelid, in remeuynge awey þe crust eiþere filþe þat is in him wiþ poudre of affodill, þat schal be said in þe eende of þis book, ouþer wiþ sum oþer mundificatiuis; aftir consowde it wiþ consolidaciouns /

[1 lf. 42, bk.]

In a (3) deep ulcer cleanse the wound,

A deep wounde is heelid [1]wiþ castynge into þe depþe of þe wounde with an instrument maad to þe lijknesse of a clisterie, ony of þe waischingis þat ben seid in þe venemy wounde aboue, aftir þat þe disposiciouⁿ of þe membre askiþ of heete or of cold. & aftir þat, he is clensid in castynge in watre ouþir wiyn þat mastik or frank eucense is soden ynne & in leggyng wiþouten oon of þe mundificatiuis of hony þat schal be seid aftir. & also it is good to ordeyne þe lyme so þat þe mouþ of þe wounde hange dounward, & streyne þi ligature at þe ground of þi wounde, & bynde it losely at þe mouþ of þe wounde; also it were good, if þat it myȝte be, þat þer were maad a newe wounde in þe place þat is moost hangynge, þat þe rotynes & þe quytture myȝte þe bettere goon out; for so þilke vlcus myȝte þe sunnere be heelid /

and make the pus discharge itself freely.

Add. MS. 12,056.

sigillata þat is mad on þys manere: R bol armoneake ʒ j terre sigillate ʒ ß., oyle of rosis & vynegre, þat suffyseþ, now do in þe on, now þe oþer, tyl þe oygnement be ful mad & lyquyde ynowȝ; so þat of þe oyle of roses be duble as myche as of þe vynegre. þis diffensiff defendiþ a membre fro corupcioun, & also Vlcus þat he sprede noȝt abrode. An hory wonde ys y-helyde, in remeffynge awey þe croste oþere þe fylthe þat is in hym with poudre of affodylles schal be sayde in þe ende, oþere with sum oþere mundificatyfes; afterwarde consoude yt with consolydatyfes. A depe wounde ys y-helyde in castynge in to þe [2]depþe of þe wounde with an instrument y-mad to þe lyknesse of a clisteyre, any of þe wasschynges þat beþ seyde in þe Venemy wounde aboue, after þat þe disposisioun of þe membre askeþ of hete oþer of cold. And aftere þat he is y-clansyde, in castynge in water oþere in wyn þat mastyke oþere frankensence ys y-soden yn, & in leggynge without, on of þe mundificatyfes of hony, þat schal be sayde aftere. & also it is gode to ordeyne þe lyme, so þat þe mouth of þe wounde honge dunwarde, & streyne þi ligature at þe grounde of þy wounde & bynde it looslye at þe mouþ of þe wounde. And also yt were gode, ȝif þat it myȝte be, þat þere were made a newe wounde in þe place þat is most hongynge þat þe

[2 fol. 61 *a*]

A wroting[1] vlc*us* is heelid i*n* leggy*n*ge specialiche aboute hi*m* colde þi*n*gis whiche þat' be*n*[2] obtunden or casten bach þe scharpnes of' þe same vlc*us*; & also w*ith* amendynge, as w*ith* metis & drynkis, þe scharpnes of' þe same blood, & i*n* p*ur*gynge þe reed colere; & wiþ anoyntynge wiþ colde oynementis & consolidatiuis. & þe*r*to [3]is miche worþ vng*uentu*m albu*m* rasis þat' schal be told i*n* þe antidotarie /

(4) In a corroding ulcer, use an obtundeus, an appropriate diet, purging, and the vng*uentum* albu*m* rasis [3 lf. 43]

A stynkynge wou*n*de is heelid i*n* remeuy*n*ge awey þe stinche & þe rotenes; & þe*r*to is myche worþ a waischi*n*ge of' ydromel: þ*a*t is hony & watir soden togidere wiþ mirre, & a mu*n*dificatif' m*aa*d wiþ ius of' wormod & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat' is m*aa*d on þis maner / take ius of' wormod. ℥ iij. of' hony. ℥ iij. barli mele ℥ ij. of mirre an*a*. ℥ j. & compou*n*ne he*m* togidere & fille þe wou*n*de wiþi*n*neforþ w*ith* ly*n*net' of' ly*n*ne*n* cloþ. & if' þat' wormes ben engendrid in þe wou*n*de, sle hem wiþ þe ius of' calamynte ouþ*er* wiþ þe ius of' þe leeues of' pechis, or ellis p*er*sicarie,[3] eiþ*er* wiþ decoccio*u*n of' elebre. & wha*n*ne þat' a p*er*fi3t' mu*n*dificatif is m*aa*d, engendre fleisch & consowde as it' is seid tofore /

(5) In a stinking ulcer use a lotion of ydromel, and a mundificatif.

℞

Nota bene

A walkynge vlc*us* is heelid wiþ fleobotomie & formacie[4] þ*a*t' is rotnesse & þe quytere my3te þe betyre gone out, for so þilke Vlcus my3te su*n*nere be helyde. A ffretynge vlcus ys y-helyde, in leggynge specialiche aboute hy*m* colde þynges, whiche þ*a*t obtu*n*den oþ*er* castyn bach þe scharpnesse of þe same Vlcus, & also in amendynge w*ith* metys & w*ith* drynkes the scharpnesse of þe same blod, & in purgynge þe rede colo*re* & w*ith* anoyntynge w*i*þ colde oygnementes & *con*solidatifes, & þ*er*eto is myche worþ vnguentu*m* albu*m* Rasis, þ*a*t schal be told in þe antitodarye. A stynkynge wou*n*de ys y-helyde in remevynge awey þe stenche & þe rottenesse, & þ*er*to ys myche worth̄ a wasschynge of **ydromel** þ*a*t is hony & wat*er* y-sode togidre wiþ mirre, & a mu*n*dyficatiff' y-mad w*ith* Ius of wermot & barly mele & hony & mirre, þ*a*t is made on þis man*er*e: take jus of wermot .℥. iiij, of hony ℥ iij, of' barly mele .℥. ij, off' mirre ℥ .j., *com*pone hem togedire, & fulle þe wou*n*de, wiþy*n*ne forth̄ w*i*þ lynete of ly*n*nen cloþ. & 3if þ*a*t wormys ben engendr*i*de in þe wou*n*de, sle he*m* wiþ jus of calamynte, oþ*er*e w*ith* þe juse of þe leuys of pechys, oþ*er*e ellys p*er*sicarie, oþ*er* w*ith* decoccion [5]of ellebre. And wha*n*ne þ*a*t a p*er*fyte mu*n*dyficaciou*n* is mad engendre flesch & *con*soude, as yt is seyde tofore. A walkynge Vlcus ys y-helyde w*ith* flebotomye & **ffarmasye** þ*a*t is laxatyfes purgynge þe colere &

(6) In a walking ulcer use phlebotomy and purging,

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 61 b]

[1] *wrotyng*, error for *fretyng*.
[2] *ben*, erroneously inserted. [3] *persicarie* glossed *colorag*. See Notes.
[4] O.Fr. farmacie = purgation. See Littré, *Dict.*

laxatiuis purgynge þe colere & brent humouris, & in leggynge aboute a defensif of bole & terra sigillata þat is seid tofore in þis chapitle;

if necessary cauterization.

& with oon of þe cold mundificatiuis, & sumtyme þou muste cauterise þe vlcus aboue with an instrument of gold. For þilke maner of 4 brennynge rectifieþ weel þe membre /

[1 lf. 43, bk.]

(7) In a malignant ulcer remove any special cause of the ulcer.

þe cause whi þat summe vlcus [1] is hard to consowde is, for an yuel disposicioun þat is hid in þe bodi, & perfore it nediþ to rectifien þe membre & þe bodi as I haue seid tofore. & if þe cause be vpon,[2] 8 oon oþer manye, do awei þilke cause or ellis þe manye causis, or þat

The healing is delayed if the patient suffers from dropsy, the liver, the spleen, the blood, or the glands, or an inappropriate diet or medicine,

Nota.

þou go to þis principal cure / þese ben þe causis þat letten consowdynge of olde woundis: an yuel disposicioun of al þe bodi as ydropisie; or ellis an yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere as if þat he be 12 to feble, as to hoot or to cold, to moist or to drie, wiþ mater or wiþoute mater, as wiþ to greet hardenes; or ellis þe splene is to feble to purge þe malancolient blood; or ellis to myche blood or ellis to litil blood; or ellis þe veynes ben to fulle of blood þat goon 16 doun to þe vlcus; or elles þat glandeles þat ben kirnelis þat ben in þe ground[3] þat senden doun mater to the vlcus þat is in þe þies & in þe leggis; or ellis þe lippis of þe vlcus ben to grete; or ellis myche fleisch; or ellis mys-ordynaunce of dietynge or ellis an 20

[2] *vpon*, error for *open*. [3] *ground*. See *grynd*, page 41, note 3.

Add. MS. 12,056.

brende humoures, & in leggynge aboute a defensif of bol & terra sigillata þat is seide tofore in þe same Chapytle, & with on of þe colde mundyficatyfes & sum tyme men most cauterise þe Vlcus aboue with an instrument of gold. for þilke manere of brennynge 24 rectefieþ wel þe membre. þe cause why þat sum Vlcus is hard to consoude is, for an yuel disposicion ys y-hydde in þe bodye, & perefore it nedyth to retyfien þe membre & þe body as y haue seide tofore. And ȝif þe cause be opene, on oþere manye, do aweye þilke 28 causes oþer ellys þo manye causes, ere þanne þou go to þe pryncipal cure. þese ben þe causes þat lettyn consoudynge of olde woundes, an yuele disposisioun of alle þe body: as dropsye, oþer ellys an iuele disposisioun of þe lyuere: as ȝif þat he be to feble, as to hot oþere 32 to colde, to moiste oþere to drye, with mater ore withouten matere, as wiþ to grete hardnesse; oþere ellys þe spleen is to feble to purge þe malancolyent blod; oþere ellys to myche blod, oþere ellys to acute blod; oþere ellys þe veynes beþ to ful of blod, þat goþ doun 36 to þe Vlcus; oþer ellys curnellys þat glandeles, þat beþ kurnellys þat beþ in þe grynde, þat sendiþ doun matere to þe Vlcus þat is in þe thyȝes & þe legges, oþer ellys þe lippes of þe Vlcus beþ to grete & hard, oþere ellys to myche flesch, oþer ellys mysordeyninge of 40

inconuenient' medicyn to *þat'* membre or ellis þe lyme *þat'* is hirt' haþ an yuel discrasie; or ellis þilke vlcus is *in* an yuel place as *in* þe eende of' þe [1]elbowȝe; or ellis þe vlcus is al rou*n*d; or ellis þe [1 lf. 44]
4 boon *þat'* is vndir þe vlcus is corrupt / Alle þase tofore seid letten vlcus to be heelid / wherfore it' nediþ þe, to take kepe to alle þese *þin*gis tofore seid, to amende al þe bodi & namely þo lymes *þat'* han p*r*incipalte *in* ma*n*nes body, & kepen alle þe lymes *þat'* be*n* *in* her
8 naturel disposiciou*n* w*ith* *þin*gis *þat'* be*n* acord*in*ge to her naturel disposiciou*n*, þo / & if' þei be*n* discrasid, remeue þilke discrasie wiþ *þat'*, *þat'* is contrarie to þe discrasie / also tempre þe qualite & þe quantite of' þe blood & streyne þe veyne if' *þat'* þou brynge þidir
12 blood, or ellis if' *þat'* it' be possible latt' þe blood awey; vndo þe glandeles *þat'* ben kirnels *þat'* sendin *þid*er mat*er*, & remeue deed fleesch, smale þe lippis of' wou*n*dis *þat'* ben greete & kutte he*m* awey if' *þat'* þou myȝt' do noon oþirwise; amende his dietynge; &
16 brynge aȝe*n* þe rondnes of þilke vlcus into a long forme aftir þe lenkþe of' þe me*m*bre w*ith* a knyf' hoot' bre*n*nynge / but' if' a veyne or a senewe lette. & þou schalt' remoue þe boon *þat'* is corrupt' on þis maner: *in* kuttynge awey al þe fleisch & þe boon *þat'* is corrupt'
20 w*ith* an hoot' [2]iren, or wiþ a medicyn *þat'* schal be seid in þe laste eende of' þis book, or ellis it' is bettere to don it' awey wiþ hoot'

or if the condition of the wound is bad.

Remedial measures—

remove the dyscrasia, regulate the patient's blood,

give an oblong shape to a round ulcer,

remove any rotten bone by means of a hot iron—

[2 lf. 44, bk.]

---

dyetynge, o*þer* ellys an vncouenable medycine to þilke me*m*bre, o*þer* ellis þe lyme *þat* ys y-hurt haþ an yuele discrasie, o*þer*e ellys
24 þilke Vlcus is an yuele place—as in þe ende of þe elbowe, o*þer*e ellys þe Vlcus ys al rounde, o*þer*e ellys þe bon *þat* is vndire [3]þe vlcus is corupte. Alle þese tofore seide letteþ Vlcus to by helyde, where-fore yt nediþ þe, to take kepe to alle þese thynges tofore seyde, &
28 to amendyn alle þe body, & namlye þe lymes *þat* habbiþ p*r*incipalte in ma*n*nes body, & kepe alle þe lymes *þat* beþ in here natureH disposisiou*n* w*i*þ þynges *þat* beþ acordynge to here nat*ur*el disposisiou*n*, & ȝif þey ben discrasyede, remywe þilke discrasye w*ith* *þat*,
32 þat is contrarye to þilke discrasye. Also tempre þe qualyte & þe quantyte of þe blod, & streyne þe veynes ȝif *þat* þey brynge þedi*re* blod. O*þer* ellys ȝif it is possible, lete þe blod aweye. Vndo glandeles, *þat* beþ kurneH *þat* sendeþ þedi*re* mater, & remywe ded
36 flesch, smale lippes of þe wou*n*des þat beþ grete, & kytte hem awey, ȝif *þou* maiste do non o*þer*e weys; amende his dyetynge, & brynge aȝeyne þe rou*n*dnesse of þilke Vlcus in to a longe fourme, after*e* þe lengþe of þe me*m*bre, wiþ a knyf' hot bre*n*nynge, but ȝif *þat* a
40 synwe o*þer*e a Veyne latte. And *þou* schalt remywe þe bon, *þat* is corupe on þis man*er*e: unwrey al þe bon, in kuttynge awey al þe flesch,*—þe bon *þat* is corupte w*ith* an yren, o*þer* w*i*þ a medicyne *þat* schal be seyde in þe laste ende of þis boke. O*þer* ellys it is

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 62 *a*]

Nota. iren. & wha*n*ne þa*t*ᵗ þe boon þa*t*ᵗ is corruptᵗ[1] is vnkeuerid, schaue itᵗ
scraping and scratching generally give rise to fistulæ. notᵗ as manye men doon, butᵗ touche harde þa*t*ᵗ boon w*ith* hoot
iren; & aftirward heelde on þilke boon hootᵗ oile ofᵗ rosis, & leie on
oon of þe mu*n*dificatiuis þa*t*ᵗ ben in þe antidotarie whiche þa*t*ᵗ wolen 4
remoue þe rotid boon wiþoute violence / For vndirstonde weel þou3
þa*t*ᵗ þou clense þe rotid boon wiþ schauynge or wiþ filynge w*ith*
violence, neuere þe lattere kynde wole afte*r*ward don awey a schelle
ofᵗ þilke same boon, nou3tᵗ a3enstondynge þi schauynge & þi rasynge / 8
wherfore i*n* remeuynge þilke boon þo*u* multipliestᵗ þi traueile &
makistᵗ newe[2] mu*n*dificac*i*on to þe fulle[3] & þe*r*ofᵗ may come ofte
tymes an yuel festre. An inco*n*uenientᵗ medicyn is amendid i*n*
considerynge þe complexiou*n* ofᵗ al þe body & þe complexiou*n* ofᵗ þe 12
lyme & þe gre ofᵗ þe medicyn; for ifᵗ þa*t*ᵗ þe membre be drie as þe
eeris & al bony & gristly lymes, & þei ha*n* greetᵗ putride & rotschipe,
If the medicine was not [4 If. 45] þa*n*ne þou nedistᵗ a ful drie medicyn / & ifᵗ þa*t*ᵗ þe bodi or þe lymes
[4] be*n* mene bitwenc fatnes & lenenes þa*t*ᵗ is neiþ*er* to fattᵗ ne to 16
leene, þa*n*ne þou nedistᵗ a medicyn þa*t*ᵗ is i*n* kynde mesurabiliche
driynge / & ifᵗ þa*t*ᵗ þe bodi or þe membre be natureliche moistᵗ, & ifᵗ
þa*t*ᵗ he haue a litil putrede or rotschipe, þa*n*ne þou nedistᵗ a medicyn

[1] MS. *corrrupt.* [2] *newe*, error for *no*.
[3] *to þe fulle.* Lat.: ad plenum. See *Polychr.*, iii. 443, he forgaf him the trespas *at the fulle.*

Add. MS. 12,056. bettere to don it awey w*ith* hot yren & wha*n*ne þa*t* þe bon þa*t* is 20
corupte is vnkeue*r*yde, schaue yt no3t as many me*n* don, but touche
harde þilke bon w*ith* hot yren & aftere*w*arde helde on þilke bon
hot oyle of rosys, & leye on one of þe mu*n*dyficatyfes þa*t* beþ in þe
antitodarye, whiche þat wylle remywe þe rotyde bon w*ith*oute vio- 24
lence. Ffor vndirstond wel, þaw3 þat þou clanse þe rotyde bon w*ith*
schavynge o*þe*re wiþ vylinge w*ith* vyolence, neue*re* þe latere kynde
wyl afterwar*de* don aweye a schelle of þilke same bon, no3t a3en-
stondynge þy schauynge & þy raspynge; wherefore in remefynge 28
þilke bon, þo*u* multiplyest þy traueH, & þo*u* makyste no mu*n*difi-
catiou*n* to þe folle; & þe*r*of may come ofte tymes, an yuele fest*re*.
And inco*n*uenient medycine ys amendyde, in *con*syderynge þe
[5 fol. 62 b] *com*plexiou*n* [4]of alle þe bodye, & þe *com*plexiou*n* of þe lyme, & þe 32
gree of þe medycine; for 3if þat þe me*m*bre be drye as þe erys, nose-
þrylles & alle bony & grestly lemes, & þey han grete putrede &
roteschippe, þe*n*ne þou nedyste a ful drye medycyne; & 3if þat þe
body o*þe*re þe me*m*bre be naturellyche moist, 3if þat he haue a lyte 36
putrede o*þe*re roteschippe, þa*n*ne thou nedyste a medycine þat ys
lyte dryinge. And 3if þat the body o*þe*re þe lymes ben mene
betwene fatnesse and lenesse—þat nys neiþ*er*e to fatte ne to lene,
þe*n*ne þou nedyst a medycine þat is in kynde, mesurablyche dryinge. 40

*þat*ᵗ is litil driynge / & if ᵗ *þat*ᵗ .ij. membris ben in complexiou*n* I-liche euene, & þe toon haue myche quytture, & þe to*þer* litil quytture, he *þat*ᵗ haþ þe more quitture nediþ þe driere medicyn / & *he *þat*ᵗ haþ but ᵗ litil quytture, hi*m* nediþ his medicyn I-ma*a*d nou3t ᵗ fulliche so drie / *þer*fore it nediþ bi mesure *þat*ᵗ *þ*ou kepe naturel þing ᵗ wiþ *þin*g ᵗ *þat*ᵗ is acordinge to þe same naturel *þin*g ᵗ / & also remeue w*ith* mesurable cont*ra*riouste *þin*g ᵗ *þat*ᵗ is a3ens kynde / But ᵗ þe quantite of ᵗ medicy*n*s *þat*ᵗ schulden be leid to þe soor as galion witnessiþ mai not wiþ lettris be writ*en* / neþeles it ᵗ sufficiþ *þat*ᵗ a man diuise þe medicyn aft*er*[1] þe complexiou*n* mai bere / For kynde *þat*ᵗ is wondirful, fulfilliþ *þin*g ᵗ *þat*ᵗ is absent ᵗ, & *þat*ᵗ. *þat*ᵗ is to myche, castiþ awey, but ᵗ if ᵗ *þat*ᵗ it ᵗ be to myche a3*en* kynde ; & *þan*ne kynde muste nede faile in his kyndely worchinge / A medicyn mu*n*dificatif ᵗ [2]& exciccatif ᵗ *þat*ᵗ is nessessarie i*n* ech old holowe wou*n*de,——[3] & *þat*ᵗ may be knowe bi þis maner / if ᵗ *þat*ᵗ þe medicyn make þinne quytture & blodi & make þe wou*n*de holower, *þan*ne he schulde be, *þan*ne is medicyn to scharpe / & if ᵗ þe quytture be þicke & tow3, *þan*ne is þe medicyn to liþe / & also ano*þer* signe *þat*ᵗ þe

Galion.

appropriate, change it according to the patient's complexion.

[2 lf. 45, bk.]

A thin pus, a discoloured skin, a burning sensation show that the medicine was too dry.

[1] N. E. Dict. s. v., "after C. 2. c" gives later references for the use of *after* conj. = according as, without relative particle.

[3] Both MSS. omit the end of the passage. Lat. "Medicina vero mundificatiua & exiccatiua — — aut est fortior, quam conuenit, aut debilior competenti." Then, as a heading to the next passage : "Significatio si medicina est magis sicca quam oportet." The *þat* in *& þat may be knowe*, refers to this omitted heading.

Add. MS. 12,046.

And 3if *þat* two me*m*brys ben in *com*plexiou*n* i-lyche euene, & þe on haue myche quyt*er* & þe o*þer*e lyte quyt*er*, he *þat* haþ þe more quyt*er* nedyth þe dreyere medycine,*——afterwar*de* it nediþ by mesur*e* *þat* *þ*ou kepe naturel þynge, w*ith* þynge *þat* is acordynge to þe same nature, and also to remeffe w*ith* mesurable contraryouste þynge *þat* is a3eyns kynde. But þe quantite of medicynes *þat* scholde[4] be leyde to þe sore, as Galien witnesseþ, ne may no3t w*ith* lettres be*n* wryten. Neu*er* þe later*e* it suffisith, *þat* a man defye þe medycine, after*e* þe *co*mplexiou*n* may bere; ffor kynde *þat* is wondirful fulfylleþ þynge *þat* is absent & *þat* *þat* is to myche castyth aweye, but 3if *þat* it be to myche a3eyne kynde ; & *þan*ne kynde most nedys faylen in his kendlye wirchynge. A medycine mu*n*dyficatyff ᵗ & exsiccatif ᵗ *þat* is necessarie in eche olde holwe, vlcere,*—may be knowe by þis man*er*e : 3if *þat* þe medycine make *þen*ne quyt*er* & blody & make þe wou*n*de holwere *þan* he scholde be, *þen*ne ys þe medycine to acute ; & 3if þe quyt*er* be þikke & tow3, *þen*ne ys þe medycine to lythye ; and also an o*þer*e[5] signe *þat*

[4] MS. *þat scholde*, twice. [5] *medycine*, cancelled before *signe*.

medicyn is to scharp, þat þe place aboute þe wounde is to grene, blak, reed, eiþer ȝelow; & þanne þe sike man schal fele to greet heete & brennynge, also þe venym of þe wounde multiplieþ / and whanne þe vnkunnynge leche seeþ þese accidentis tofore seid, he ordeyneþ a drie medicyn; & so ech day þe wounde apeiriþ.[1] 4

A livid pus, or paleness and coldness of the limb, show that the medicine was not sufficiently dry.

& þe signe þat þe medicyn is of feble driynge is, þat þe quitture & þe rotynes þat goiþ out þerof is greet in substaunce, ponderous & vneuene, wan ouþir pale & þe membre is cold & is whiȝt ouþir wan, ouþir cleer in colour ouþer soft; & þe sike man feliþ cold in his membre / & whanne þat þou knowist þese þingis in þe firste cause make not þi medicyn so drie, & in þe secunde cause make þi medicyn more drie, & also chaunge þi worchinge as condicioun of kynde askith [2]boþe of bodi & membre as weel symple as compound medicyns / He þat knowiþ not þes canones. wel yuele schal he heele woundis / wherfore manye lechis bryngen liȝtliche woundis with her yuel worchinge into þe worste olde woundis þe whiche moun not aftir ben I-heelid bi a good leche / Þese ben liȝt medicyns whiche þat drien olde woundis þat neden a litil driynge: mastik, frank encense, barli mele. & þese medicyns ben sumwhat more driere: yrios,[3] aristologie rotunda, orabum[4] þat is wiilde tare, lupines, 8 12 16 20

[2 lf. 46]

An ignorant physician may make a dangerous wound out of a slight one.

A mild siccatif.

A stronger siccatif.

[1] *apeiriþ* intr. See Prompt. Parv. *Appeyryn*, or make wors. Pejoro, deterioro. [3] *yrios*. Lat. Iris. See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 123.

[4] "*Orobus*, gall. uesche, anglice thare uel mousespese."—Alphita, p. 131.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 63 *a*]

þy medycine is to scharpe, þat þe place about þe wounde ys to grene, blake, red oþere to ȝelwe & þe syke man felyþ to grete hete [5]& brennynge, & also þe Venym of þe wounde multiplyeth, and whanne þe vnkunnynge leche seþ þese Accidentes tofore seyde, he ordeyneþ a dryere medycine; & so eche day þe wounde apeirith. And þe signe þat þe medycine is of feble dreyinge is þat þe quyter & þe rotnesse, þat goþ out þere of, ys gret in substaunce, ponderose & vneuene, wan oþer pale; þe membre is colde whyte oþer wan, oþer clere in coloure, oþer softe, & þe syke man felyth colde in his membre, & whenne þat þou knowist þese þynges in þe firste cas, make noȝt þy medycine so drye. In þe secunde cas make þy medycine more drye, & so chaunge þy wirkynge, as condycioun of kynde askyth, boþe of body & of membre, as wel symple as componede medycines. He þat knowiþ noȝt þese kanones wel*—schal helen olde woundes; wherefore manye lechys brynge lyȝte woundes wiþ here iuele wirchynge, into þe worste olde woundes, þe whiche mowe noȝt aftere be helyde by a gode leche. Þese ben lyȝte medycines, whiche þat drye olde wondys þat neden a lytel dryȝinge; mastyke, ffrankensence, barlymele. Þese medicynes beþ sumwhat dreyere: yreos. Aristologia. Orobum þat is wilde Tare, lupines, þe rotenesse 24 28 32 36 40

þe rotynes eiþ*er* þe drie poudre of' trees; & þese medicyns ben strongere: balaustie, psidie,[1] rose, notts of' cipris *et cetera* / & þese be*n* liȝt mu*n*dificatiuis: sugre, hony, wat*er* of' barlich, gotis whay, watir of' þe see, watir of' brimstoon þat' clensiþ & heteþ, wat*er* of' alym þat' clensiþ & coldiþ. & þou schalt haue greet' plente of' enplastris, mu*n*dificatiuis, oyntmentis compou*n*ned i*n* þe antidotarie of' þis book / A mild mundificatif.

The .xij. chapitle of þe iij. techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis is of festre /

¶ Cap^m.xij^m.

Festre is a deep old wou*n*de, & þe mouþ of' hi*m* is streyt', & þe grou*n*d is brood, & he haþ [2]wiþi*n*ne hi*m* a calose[3] hardnesse al aboute as it' were a goos penne or ellis a kane / & a festre haþ difference from a deep vlcus & a cau*er*nose / for a deep vlcus & cau*er*nose of' whom it' is toold i*n* þe chapitle tofore seid, þou3 þat' þei acorden togid*er*e i*n* depnes & in streitnesse of' þe mouþ, þe vlcus haþ not' wiþi*n*ne hi*m* a calose hardnes / Wherfore a festre mai not be clensid wiþ waischinge w*ith* which a cau*er*nose vlcus mai be clensid / but' it' is nessessarie aftir þat' þou hast' waischen it' to

A fistula [2 lf. 46, bk.] is distinguishable from a deep ulcer by its hardness, which must be removed by cauterization.

[1] "*Psidia* cortex est mali granati."—*Synonoma Barthol.*, p. 35.
[3] O. Fr. calus, (Godefroy). See later references in *N. E. Dict.*

---

oþ*er* þe dry3e poudre of trees. Þese medycines ben strengere: balaustie, p*ro*sidye, rose, notys off' Cipresse et. cet. And þese[4] ben ly3te mu*n*dificatyfes in cure,[5] hony, watire of barlye, gotyswhey3, wat*er* of þe see, wat*er* of bry*m*ston þat clansith̄ & hetyþ, wat*er* of Alym þat clansyth̄ & coldyth̄. þou schalt haue grete plente of enplastres, mu*n*dificatyfes, and oygnementys *com*ponede in þe antitodarye of þis ilke book*e*. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap. xii of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretis is of a[6] festr*e*.

ffestre[7] is a depe olde wou*n*de and[8] þe mouth̄ is streyt of hy*m* & þe grou*n*de is brod, & he haþ wiþ y*n*ne hy*m* a callose hardnesse alle aboute, as yt were a gose pe*n*ne oþ*er* ellys a kane, & a ffestre haþ [9]diffence fro*m* a depe Vlcus & a cauernose; for a depe Vlc*us* & a Cau*er*nose, of whom yt ys tolde in þe chapitle toforeseyde, þow3 þ*at* þey acorde*n* togedire in depnesse & in streytnesse of þe mouþ, þe Vlcus haþ no3t wiþyn hy*m* a callose hardnesse, wherefore a fest*re* may no3t be clensyde w*ith* wasschynges, w*ith* þe whiche a[10] cavernose Vlcus may be clansyde, but it is necessarye, after*e* þat [9 fol. 63 b]

[4] MS. *þese*, twice. [5] *in cure*, a scribal mistake from *sugre*.
[6] *of a*, above line. [7] MS. *ffirste*.
[8] *in*, cancelled; *and*, above line. [10] *a*, above line.

remeue þilke calose hardnesse wiþ a cauterie eiþer with a medicyn cauterizinge þat is brennynge, þe which cauterie ouþir brennynge schulde make þe deþþe of þe vlcus holowere þan he was / Wherfore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe þe difference of þis science, 4 þat he mowe knowe to heele boþe þe vlcus & þe festre wiþ medicyns different þat longen to hem boþe /

Nota. If the fistula is in fleshy parts, use cleansing medicines.

& if þat a festre be in þe fleisch or ellis bitwene senewe & senewe, so þat þe substaunce of þe senewe be not corupt ne þe 8 boon, it is no nede to take noon opere medicyn but egrimoyne & staumpe it with salt as þou woldist make sause, & drawe out þe ius of þilke egrymoyne, & do it into þe [1]hole of þe festre wiþ a penne & leie þe substaunce of þe same eerbe þere-vpon til he haue 12 slayn þilke festre & clensid it; & þou schalt knowe bi reednes & sadnesse of fleisch þat is wiþinne þe festre al aboute; & aftirward haue þis sirup of hony wiþ þe whiche þou schalt waische þe festre þat is now vlcus I-componned in þis maner / Take a pound water, 16

[1 lf. 47]

R vynegre half a pound, of hony dispumed ℥ .iiij., of leeues of olyuetre bounden togidere wiþ a þred / ℥ j., of galingale[2] ʒ j, boile alle þese to þe perfiȝtnesse of a sirup, & lete it colden, & do awey þe

[2] *galingale*, ne. galangale, for *sagitelle*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þou hast y-wasschyde yt, to remeffyn þilke callose hardnesse with a 20 cauterye, opere wiþ a medycine cauterysynge þat ys brennynge, þe whiche cauterye oþer brennynge scholde make þe deþþe of þe Vlcus holwere þanne he was. Wherefore it is necessarie to a surgiene to knowe þe difference of þis scyence, þat he mowe conne hele boþe þe 24 Vlcus & þe festre with medycines different þat longyth to hem boþe. And ȝif þat a festre be in þe flesch, oþer ellys bytwene synwe & synwe, so þat þe Substannce of þe synwe be noȝt corupte ne þe bon, yt nys non nede to take non opere medycine but egremoyne, & 28 stampe hym wiþ salt, as þou woldest maken sause, & drawe out þe jus of þilke egremoyne, & do yt into þe hole of þe festre with a penne, & leye þe substaunce of þe same erbe þere-vpon, tyl he haue slaw[3] alle þilke festre & y-clansyde yt; & þat þou schalt knowen 32 by þe rednesse & sadnesse of flesch þat is withynne þe festre al aboute, & aftirwarde haue þis surype off honye, with þe whiche þou schalt wassche þe festre, þat ys now Vlcus componed, in þis manere:[4] R water ℔ .j., of vynegre ℔. ß, of hony despumed ℥ iiij, 36 off leuys of olyue-tre, y-bounde togedre with a þrede, ʒ .j., of

[5 fol. 64 a]

[5]sagytelle ℥ .j., boylle al þis to þe perfytnesse of a sirupe, & let yt

[3] At the end of the line. One letter wanting.
[4] *Confection of syrup mellyne*, in margin.

leeues of þe olyue, & kepe al þe remenaunt of þe sirup with þe leeues of sagittel & waische þe vlcus þat was festred tofore wiþ þis licour twies on þe day þat þe licour may go to þe ground, & aftir-
4 ward drie it weel & fille it ful of drie leeues of sagittelle & leie a sagittel-leef aboue; & þis medicyn þou schalt contynuen til it be hool / Euery festre þat is in fleisch is heelid wiþ þis medicyn I-preued, but if þat substaunce of þe senewe & of þe boon be
8 apeirid in þe ground, & specialiche if þat þe festre be not old, & if þat þe calosite be nouȝt to hard. In þese two causis þe medicyn of egrimoyne [1]ne suffisiþ nouȝt, but it is nessessarie to haue a cauterie of fier eiþer a medicyn caustik / & of þese medicyns þou
12 schalt haue a ful techinge folowynge in þe book / & if þat þe boone were corrupt in þe depþe of þe festre, do it awei aftir þe techinge tauȝt in þe chapitle tofore / & herof take hede, if þat a festre perse bi þe weyes of þe vryne so þat þe vryne go out bi þilke weie,
16 as we han seen ofte tymes, or ellis þat it go bi crokid placis & hid placis of þe face[2] persinge into depþe, it is[3] an vnperfiȝt cure, but þou maist pale[4] it, & do it awey þe stinche with hony waischinge, enplastre, & hony mundificatiuis, & with defensiuis aboute þe place

If parts of a bone or sinew are rotten,

[1 lf. 47, bk.]

use cauterization, or a caustic medicine, and remove the morbid bone.

[2] Lat. per tortuosas aut occultas partes faciei. [3] *it is*, above line.
[4] *pale*, Lat. palliare. Dufr., *Gloss.* : 1. tegere; 2. simulare.

---

20 coldyn & do aweye þe leffys of þe olyfe, & kepe alle þe remnaunt of þe surype with þe leffys of sagytelle, & wassche þe Vlcus þat was festre tofore with þis licoure twyes a day, þat þe lycoure may go to þe grounde, & afterwarde dreye it wel & fyl yt ful of drye leffys of
24 sagytelle, & leye a sagitelle leff aboue, and þis medycine þou schalt conteynen tyl þat it be hol. Every festre þat is in flesch ys helyde with þis medycine y-prefed, but ȝif þe substaunce of þe synwe & of þe bon be apeyred in þe grounde, & specialyche ȝif þe festre be
28 nouȝt old & ȝif þat þe callosite be nouȝt to hard. In þese tweye cases þe medycyne of egremoyne ne suffiseþ nouȝt, but it ys necessarye a kauterye of fyre oþer a medycine caustyke; & of þese medycins þou schalt han a ful techynge, folwynge in þe boke. And ȝif
32 þat þe bon were corupte in þe depþe of þe festre, do yt aweye after þe techynge, þat y haue tauȝte þe in þe chapiteH tofore. And hereof take hede: ȝif þat a festere perse be þe weyȝes of þe vryne, so þat þe Vryne go out by þilke weye, as we haue seyne ofte tymes,
36 oþer ellys þat he go by crokyde placys and hudel[4] places of þe face, persynge into þe depnesse of þe hed whose grounde þou maiste nouȝt perseyue, hit ys bettyre nouȝt for to cure with a perfyte cure, but þou maiste pale it & don awey þe stynke, with hony & wasschynges of
40 emplastre in mundificatyfes & with defensifes aboute þe place, þat

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] *hudel*, adj. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, hudels, sb. O.E. *hŷdels*, hiding-place.

cauterizacioun of þe senew þat is hirt.

þat his malice mowe[1] þen lasse greue. For a festre þat is in ioynturis as þe feet eiþer þe knee, eiþer þe hand, eiþir þe elbowe, is hard for to heele, & sumtyme impossible / & if þat he be in anoþer place, & he haue corrodid eiþer rotid sumwhat of þe senewe, þow þat it be greuous for to cure it, þer is noon oþer wey, but a liȝt cauterizacioun of þe senewe þat is hurt / For cauterizacioun wiþ hoot iren eiþer wiþ gold, þat is bettere, it clensiþ & drieþ þe senewe þat is corrupt & rectifieþ þe complexioun of al þe membre & [2]a medecyn caustik worchiþ þe contrarie / Brennynge medicyns, boþe þe symple & þe compound þou schalt haue to þe fulle[3] in[4] antidotarie of þis book, & þou schalt fynde þe maner of cauterisynge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretis folowynge. & whanne þou hast maad a perfiȝt mundificacioun of þilke colose fleisch, regendre fleisch & consowde with medicyns regeneratius & consolidatiuis þe whiche þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie //

[2 lf. 48]

¶ Capm xiijm canser vlcirat

The xiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of a cankre /

Cankre I-woundid comeþ of openynge, eiþer of kuttinge, eiþer of brekynge of a cankre not I-woundid, whos techinge þou schalt

[1] MS. *moore.* [3] See page 86, note 3.

[4] *þe þridde tretis folowynge / & whanne þou hast maad a perfiȝt mundificacioun* struck through in red. after *to þe fulle in.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

his malyce mowe þe lasse greff. A festre þat is in juncturys as þe fote oþer þe kne, oþer þe hand, oþere þe elbowe, is hard forto hele & sumtyme vnpossible. And ȝif þat he be in an oþere place & he haue coroded oþer rotyd sumwhat of þe synwe, þowȝ þat it be greffes forto cure it, þere nys none oþere weye bote a lyȝt cauterysacioun of þe synwe, þat is y-hurt: ffor cauterysacioun wiþ hote yren, oþer wiþ gold þat is betyre clansyth & dryeþ [5]þe synwe þat ys corupte, & rectefyeth þe complexioun of al þe membre, and a medycine caustyke worcheþ þe contrarye. Brennynge medycines, boþe symple & composed, þou schalt han to þe fulle in þe antitodarye of þis boke, & þou schalt fynde þe manere of cauterysinge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretys folwynge; & whanne þou hast made a perfyte mundyficacioun of þilke callose flesch, regenere flesch & consoude with medycines regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, þe whyche þou schalte fynde in þe antitodarye.

[5 fol. 64 b]

¶ Cap. xiii off þe þridde techynge off þe ffirste tretys is Off a Canker.

¶ Cankyre y-woundyde comyth of opnynge, oþere of kuttynge, oþere of brekynge of a cancre noȝt y-woundyde, whose techynge þou

haue *in* þe chapitle of[1] þe apostymes *in* þe þridde techi*n*ge / & he comeþ of[1] a wou*n*de yuel heelid, to whom comeþ a malancolient[1] mater rotid; or for þe mater þ*a*t[1] comeþ to þe wou*n*de is þ*e*re cor-
4 ru*m*pid & chau*n*giþ þe vlcus into a cankre / arises from a badly healed or purulent wound.

& þese ben þe tokenes of þe cankre / þe vlcus is foul & stynkynge, þe lippis be*n* grete, wan, or blak, hard, & wiþi*n*ne kirnely, & ou*e*r al aboute arerid and [1]holowe / & þis is þe difference bitwene
8 a cankre & a foul vlcus & an hori of[1] whom I haue m*aa*d mencio*un* aboue, þ*a*t[1] if[1] þ*a*t[1] þou waische he*m* boþe wiþ liȝe, þe cankre schal be palere & foulere þan he was bifore, & þ*e*re schal falle out[1] of[1] hi*m* pecis gobet[1]mele.[2] & þe vlcus is clensid wiþ þilke liȝe, & þe fleisch
12 is m*aa*d fairer þa*n* it[1] was tofore, ne þe vlcus stynkiþ not[1] bi þe same stinche as þe cankre doiþ; for þe cankre haþ a p*r*opre sauour, þe which mai not[1] be write wiþ lettre; but[1] þilke sauour is best[1] knowe of[1] me*n* whiche þ*a*t[1] best[1] han seiȝe cankreis.[3]

Its signs are: the peculiar condition of the wound, [1 lf. 48, bk.]

Nota the effect of a lye lotion, and the smell of the cancer.

16 A general rule in þe cure of[1] a cankre is, þat[1] a cankre mai not[1] be heelid, but[1] if[1] þat[1] he be do awey wiþ alle hise rotis / þe secu*n*de rule is, þat[1] he schal not[1] be touchid wiþ hoot[1] iren ne w*ith* hoot[1] medicyn caustik, þat[1] is to seie bre*n*ny*n*ge, but[1] he be *in* place

A cancer must either be left untouched or entirely removed.

[2] *gobetmele*, piecemeal. *Polychron.*, iv. 103: membratim. See further, Mätzner, *Dict.* [3] MS. *cankre is.*

---

20 schalt habbyn in þe Chapitle of enpostem*es* in þe þridde techynge & he comyth̄ of a wou*n*de yuele y-helyde, to whom comyth̄ a malycolient rotyde matere, o*þe*r for þ*a*t þe matere comeþ to þe wou*n*de is
24 þ*e*re coruppyd, & chau*n*gyth̄ þe Ulcus into a Cankere. And þese beþ þe toknys of þe cankere: þe Ulc*us* ys foule & stynkynge, þe lippes beþ grete, wanne, o*þe*re blake, harde, and w*i*þi*n*ne kernelly, & ou*e*re alle aboute areryde & holwy, & þis is þe dyfference bytwene cancre
28 & a foule Ulcus & an hory, of whom y haue made mensiou*n* aboue, þ*a*t ȝif þ*a*t þou wassche hem boþe[4] wiþ leyȝe, þe cancre schal be*n* pale & foulere þe*n*ne he was tofore, & þ*e*re schal fallen out of hy*m* pecys, gobetmele. And þe Ulcus ys y-clansede w*ith* þilke leyȝe, & þe flesch̄ ys made fayrere þe*n*ne yt was tofore, ne þe Ulcus stynkeþ
32 noȝt by þe same stenche as þe cancre doþ; for þe cankre hath̄ a p*r*opre saffoure, þe which̄ may noȝt be wryte*n* wiþ lettres, but þilke safoure ys best[1] knowyn to of me*n*, whiche þ*a*t beste han seye cankrys. A [5]gene*r*ath̄ rule in þe cure of cankre ys, þ*a*t a cankyre
36 may noȝt be*n* helyde bot ȝif þ*a*t he be done awey wiþ alle hys rotys. The secu*n*de rule ys, þ*a*t he schal noȝt ben touchyde w*ith* hot yren ne wiþ hot medycyne caustyk—þ*a*t is to sigge, bre*n*nynge

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 65 *a*]

[4] MS. o*þe*re.

Nota

where he may al be doon awey / for þe more þat' þou touchist' him wiþ a violent' þing' eiþer medicyn, þe more his malice is encreessid /

If possible, cut away and

Take þanne good heede if he be in a fleischi place, where þat' he may be don al wey, & þanne kutte him al awey wiþ alle hise rotis / 4

[1 lf. 49]

& þanne priste out' al þe malancolient' [1]blood þat' is wiþinne þe

burn the cancer, and apply a cleansing poultice.

veynes þat' ben aboute þe cankre. & aftirward brenne al aboute in þe place þere as þe cankre was with hoot' iren / aftirward leie on þis confecciou*n* maad of' flour of' wheete & hony & ius of' smalache,[2] til 8 þat' he be perfiȝtliche clensid. After regendre fleisch & cicatrice.

Nota

To þis rule / take hede as ofte as þou wilt' wiþ sirurgie heelen a

the consel off ypocras: if the cancer cannot be removed, try no cure at all.

cancre: first' euacue þe malancolient' mater, for þat' is ypocras techinge; & if' þat' he be growen in sich a place þere as he may not' 12 be doon al awey, as in þe necke or in þe tetis, or in þe face, or in þe arshole, or in þe mareis; & also for schortere conclusioun, & he be entrid in ony place þere as ony senewis, arteries, veynes, ben—as

ypocras.

ypocras seiþ—it' is bettere nouȝt' to cure þe cankre þan to cure. For 16 & he be curid, þat' is to seie kutt' or I-brent', þei perischen þe sunnere; & if' þei ben not' curid, þei lyuen þe lengere tyme—libro vj°. afforismorum: Cancri absconditi multum tempus perfuciunt'

[2] *smallage*, Halle Table, p. 12. "Smalache, Marche, or Marshe Persley." See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 217.

Add. MS. 12,056.

—but he be in place, þere he may al be don away; ffor þe more 20 þat þou touchiste hym with a vyolent thynge oþer medycine, þe more hys malys is encressyde. Take þenne gode hede ȝif he be in a fleschlye place, where þat he may be don al aweye, & þenne kutte hym al aweye wiþ alle hys rotys, & þruste out þe malencolyent blod 24 þat ys withynne þe Veynes, þat beþ aboute þe cancre, & afterwarde brenne alle aboute in þe place, þere as þe cankre was, wiþ hote yren. Afterward leye on þis confectioun y-mad of floure of whete hony, jus of smallache, tyl þat he be perfitly y-clansyde. After 28 regenere flesch & cycatrice. To þis rule take hede as ofte as þou wylt wiþ surgerye helyn a cancre: furst evacue þe malencolyent matere, ffor þat is ypocras techynge, & ȝif he be growen in swyche a place, þere as he may noȝt be done alle aweye, as in þe nekke ore 32 in þe tetys, oþere in þe face, ore in þe ers hole, oþer in þe marys, and also for the schortere conclusioun, & he be entrede in enye place, þere as enye Veynes, synwes, & arteryes buþ, as ypocras seith, yt ys betyre noȝt to cure þe cancre, þen to cure; ffor he be 36 curyde, þat is to sigge, y-kutte oþere y-brent, þey perysschen sonnere; & ȝif þey be noȝt curyde þey lyuen longe tyme—**libro sexto afforismorum Cancri absconditi multum tempus per ficiunt**

Regula, in margin.

curati vero cici*us* pe*r*eunt' / But' defende þe lyme þat' is hool aboute w*it*h defensif' of' bole þat' I haue ofte tymes seid & waische þe wou*n*de of' þe cankre wiþ gotis whey, & drie it' softly, [1]& anoynte
4 þe wounde wiþi*n*ne & wiþoute w*it*h þis oynement' of rasis &[2] tutie[3] / take ceruse,[4] tutie I-waische & medle he*m* wiþ oile of' rosis & wiþ ius of' purcelane[5] or of' sum oþe*r*e cold eerbe, putte y*n*ne sum of' þe toon, & now su*m* of' þat' oþe*r*, til þe oynement' be weel I-ma*a*d /
8 þis oynement' is myche worþ for to defende þat' þe malice of' þe cancre schal not' wexen, & also þat' þe pacient' vse a good gou*er*naile: as dri*n*ke good wiyn & cleer & lithe, & he muste leeue reed wiyn & troublid & þicke wiyn, & he ma*y* ete good fleisch, as
12 motou*n*[6] of' a weþe*r*, kide fleisch sowkynge, capou*n*s, he*n*nes, chikenes, partrichis,[7] fesau*n*tis, & smale briddis, & he muste leeue: beeues fleisch[8] & gotis fleisch, hertis fleisch & haris fleisch, goos, dokis, & alle greete briddis þat' lyuen in wat*ri* placis, & al salt'
16 þi*n*g' & acute þing': as garleek, oynonys & vynegre *et cetera* [þat]*

Use a lotion R [1 lf. 49, bk.] and vnguentum tute

the diet for þe canker: the patient shall only take white wine and digestible food.

[2] *&*, erroneously for *of*.

[3] *tutie*, Matth. Sylvat. "Tuchia . . Lat. Cadimia & pomfolix." Arab. tūtiā. Fr. tutie. See Wr. Wü., p. 559, 13. "Tucia, i. tutie" (xiiith cent.). It is: Oxidum Zinci impurum.

[4] *ceruse*, white lead. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Ceruse.

[5] *purcelane*, Lat. portulaca. Halle Table, p. 90. "Another herbe there is also called Portulaca marina, only of the likenes that the leaves therof haue with porcelaine." See "Purslane," Prior, *Popular Names*, p. 193.

[6] *moton*, carnes ovine, Wr. Wü., 741, 39, xvth cent.

[7] *partrichis*, *Cathol. Ang.*, p. 270, a Partryke, perdrix. See further Skeat, *Et. Dict.* [8] *bef*, added above line, in different hand.

---

curati v*ero* cici*us* pe*r*eu*n*t. ¶ But diffende þe lyme þat is hol aboute w*it*h defensiff' of bol, þat y haue ofte tymes seyde, & wassche
20 þe wou*n*de of þe cancre w*it*h gotys wheyȝ, & drye yt softlyche & anoynt þe wou*n*de w*it*h*in*ne & w*it*hout, wit*h* þis oygnement of rasys of tutye, R ceruse, tuthye, y-wasschyn and medle he*m* wiþ oyle of roses & wiþ jus of poslane, [9]oþe*r*e of su*m* oþe*r*e colde erbe, now puttynge in su*m* of þe on & now su*m* of þe oþe*r*e, tyl þe oygnement
24 be ful mad. Þis oygnement ys myche worth forto diffende; þat þe malys of þe cancre þat is y-wou*n*dyde schal noȝt waxen, and also þat þe pacient vse a gode gou*er*naylle: as drynkinge gode wyn & cler*e* & lyȝt, & he mote leu*en* red wyn and troblyde & þykke wyn;
28 & he may eten gode flesch̄, as motou*n* of a weþir*e*, kyde fflesch̄ sokkynge, Capou*n*s, hen*n*ys, Chykenys, partryches, ffesauntes, & smale briddes, & he moste leuyn beffys flesch̄, gotys fflesch̄, hertys flesch̄, harys fflesch̄, goses, dokys, & alle grete briddys. þat lyu*en*
32 in watrye places, & alle salt þynge & acute þynge: as garlyke, Oynou*n*s, vynegre, &c., þat* þe syke me*n* mowe lyu*en* þe lengere vpon

Add. MS. 12,056.

[9 fol. 65 b]

þe sike man may lyue þe lengere vpon erþe / Neþeles if' vlcus be riȝt' foul & haue nouȝt' so greet' malice as a cankre, of' þe which vlcus I haue told tofore may be curid wiþ poudre of' affadillis, and aftirward
[1 lf. 50] weel be clensid; & for þat' þis vlcus [1]þat' was so foul may be heelid / 4
Rogeryn and Rowlond & manye o*þer*e settide in her bokis þe cure
Rogeryn and Roland pretended to have healed old cancers.
of' a cankre, þouȝ þat' he be *in* a senewey place, & þei seien þat' þei han heelid hi*m* / But' vndirstonde weel for certeyn, þat' an olde cankre mai not' be heelid bi noon o*þer* wey, but' bi þe same wey þat' 8
I haue seid i*n* þe bigy*n*nynge of' þis chapitle / & if' þat' þou dredist' whe*þer* þat' it' be a symple vlcus or a cankre & a foul, for þe signes
In doubtful cases rub with a powder;
& þe tokenes tofore seid beþ doutis, bigy*n*ne to mortifie it' wiþ su*m*
man*er* of' poud*re*: as wiþ poudre of' affadillis, & bi my witt' poudre 12
of' erbe robert'[2] / & loke aftirward þe prosis of' þi worchinge seiþ
in the case of cancer the patient will grow worse.
þis boke[3] / For if' þat' he be a uerry cankre, þou schalt' se þe more
þou woldist' clense hi*m*, þe more his malice schal wexen / & if' he
be not' a cankre, he schal be cle*n*sid riȝt' as an vlcus / Wha*n*ne þat' 16
þou seest' þe wexynge of' a cankre & his malice agme*nten*, ceesse
from þe verry cure & turne aȝen to þe forseid cure of' þe oynement'
of' tutie, þe which þat' paliþ þe cankre. For & þou bisie þee to

[2] *erbe robert*, insertion of the scribe. Geranium Robertianum. See *Prior*, p. 113. Cronenburg. De Compositione Medicamentorum, a. 1555, fol. 106, A. Ruprechtskraut: Roberti herba (Geranii species).

[3] *seiþ þis book*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056.

erthe. Naþeles ȝif vlcus be ryȝt foul & hath̄ nouȝt so gret malys as 20
a cancre, off' þe whyche Vlcus y haue tolde tofore, may ben y-curyde
wiþ poudre of affedylle, and after*w*arde wel be clansyde, & for þat
þis Vlc*us* þat was so foul may be helyde. Rogeryne & Rouland
& manye o*þer*e settyde in here bokys þe cure of þe cancre, þowȝ 24
þat he be in a synwy place, & þey siggen þat þey haue helyde hym.
But vndirstande wel for certeyne, þat an olde cancre may noȝt ben
helyde by none o*þer*e wey, bote by þe same wey, whiche þat y haue
seyde in þe bygy*n*nynge of þys chapyteH. & ȝif þat þou dredyst, 28
whe*þer*e þat yt be a cancre o*þer*e a symple Vlcus & a foul, for þe
signes & þe toknys tofore seyde beþ doutes, begy*n*ne to mortefye
yt wiþ su*m* man*er* poudre as wiþ poudre of affodylles, & loke after-
warde þe p*ro*cesse of þy worchynge; ffor ȝif þat he be a verrey 32
cancre þou schalt se, þe more þou woldyste clansen hy*m* þe more
hys malys schal waxen, and ȝif he be noȝt a cancre, he schal be
[4 fol. 66 *a*] clansyde ryȝt as an Vlcus. Wha*n*ne þat þou seste þe waxyng [4]of
þe cancre & hys malys augmenten, sese fro þe verreye cure & turne 36
ageyne to þe forseyde cure of þe oygnement of tuetye, whiche þat
palyth̄ þe cancre. ffor & þou bysy þe to cure þe cancre, & þou p*ro*-

cure þe cankre, & þou procede in þi cure, þou schortistꝰ þe pacientis lijfꝰ / & ifꝰ þou palist, þou lenkþistꝰ his lijfꝰ /

[lf. 50, bk.] ¶ Capm xiiijm

4 The .xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is for to remeue causis þat letten þe cure of olde woundis /

I tolde þee aboue in þe general chapitle ofꝰ olde woundis cause whiche þatꝰ letten olde woundis to be heclid / & also I tolde þe 8 techinge plenerliche þatꝰ ben nessessarie to remeue ech sengle cause þatꝰ is nessessarie, how þatꝰ alle maner causis þatꝰ letten mai be don awey bi a good surgien & a wijs; so þatꝰ þou ioynestꝰ þis chapitle wiþ þe opere chapitle tofore seid, þou schaltꝰ han a pleyner techinge. 12 Ifꝰ þatꝰ þe bodi be ful ofꝰ olde humouris eiþer in þe idropisic, loke þatꝰ he may be heelid ofꝰ þilke disposicioun, & þanne heele him ifꝰ þatꝰ þou canstꝰ / &[1] ifꝰ þatꝰ he be notꝰ ful ofꝰ olde humouris whiche þatꝰ neden no curyngc ofꝰ olde disposicioun. Ne traueile notꝰ in deueyn[2] 16 þe sike man neiþir wiþ medicyns corosiuis, ne wiþ kuttynge, ne with puttynge into þe woundis greete tentis; butꝰ do aboue þe vlcus liȝtꝰ

If a patient is hydroptic or cachectic, his condition must first be improved,

[1] The translator, perhaps intentionally, altered his original: si non (scis), pete physicum qui curationem illius dispositionis faciat.

[2] *in deueyn* = in veyn.

---

cede in thy cure, þou schortest þe pacientes lyffꝰ. And ȝif þou palest þou lengthiste hys lyffꝰ. Add. MS. 12,056.

20 ¶ Cap. xiiij of þe þridde techynge of þe furste tretys, is forto remefe causes þat latten þe cure of olde woundys.

¶ I tolde þe aboue in þe general Chapytle of olde Woundes, causes 24 whiche þat latteþ olde woundys to by helyde. And also y telde þe techynges plenerlyche þat beþ necessarye to remywe eche sengle cause, þat is nccessarye to be done awey. And now y schal in þis specyal chapytle teche, how þat alle manere cause þat lettyth̄ may 28 be done awey by a gode surgyne & a wyse, so þat ȝif þou joynest þis chapitele with þe opere chapyteH to fore seyde, þou schalt han a plenere techynge. ȝif þat þe body be ful of elde humores, opere in þe dropsye; loke ȝif þat he may be helyde of þilke disposicioun, & 32 penne hele hym ȝif þat þou canst, and ȝif þat he be noȝt ful of elde humorys; whiche þat nedyth̄ to curyngc of olde disposicioun. Ne traueyle noȝt in deveyne þe syke man, nowþere with medycines corosifes, ne with kuttynges, ne with puttynges into þe wounde grete 36 tentys; but do aboffe þe Vlcus lyȝtc mundyficatyfes & swote

and in the mean time only mild mundificatifs applied.

mundificatiuis & swete smellynge, þat kepiþ þe membre liȝtliche clene þat it stynke not / & whanne þat he is keuerid from an yuel disposiciou*n*, tha*n*ne turne aȝen to þe principal cure / & þis same

[1 lf. 51 *a*]

þing [1]I saye of yuel disposiciou*n* of þe lyu*ere* of what maner cause 4

The same must be done if the liver or the spleen is bad.

þat he be enfeblid; þe same I saye of þe splene / But if þese tweyne ben in her kyndely disposiciou*n*, olde wou*n*dis mou*n* not be heelid. If[2] þat greet multitude of blood lettiþ, þat may be knowen

If the patient has too much blood,

bi ful replecio*u*n of þe veines of al þe bodi, bi reednesse & exten- 8 cio*u*n of þe face, bi swetnes of þe mouþ, bi flating[3] / Wha*n*ne þat a man is fastynge, bi heuynes of þe browis, & bi ȝong age, & his complexiou*n* is hoot & moist, & þat he haþ vsid in his dietynge

use phlebotomy.

wiyn and fleisch; & make hi*m* þa*n*ne be lete blood of þe veyne þe 12 which þat bryngiþ norschi*n*ge to þe lyme, & aftirward of þe veyne þat mai best voide*n* þe membre þat is hurt / & if þat þe blood trespace oonly i*n* qualite, amende hi*m* as if þat he be to hoot, voide hi*m* a litil & diete hi*m* w*ith* colde metis & stiptik. & aftirward 16 p*ro*cede forþ i*n* alle maner oþir causis as it is told i*n* þe general chapitle, takynge hede þat þer ben su*m*me maner medicyns whiche þat ben driynge & clensynge, & han a p*ri*uy[4] p*ro*pirte to consowde

[2] *if* above line.
[3] *flating*, Add. MS. *wlattynge*. See Wright Wü. O.E. *wlatung*.
[4] *privy*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, pryvay, occultus.
[a] Heading to this page: *Causes þat lettes þe cure off old woundes.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

smellynge þat kepyth the me*m*bre ly3tlyche clene, þat he stynke 20 no3t. And wha*n*ne þat he is curyde fro*m* an yuele disposiciou*n*, tu*r*ne a3eyne to þe p*ri*ncypal cure; & þis same þynge y sugge of yuele disposiciou*n* of þe lyfere, of what mane*re* cause þat þe enfeblyde; þe same y sigge of the spleen, ffor but 3if þese tweyne 24 ben in here kendlye dysposiciou*n*, olde wou*n*des mowe no3t ben helyde. 3if þat grete multitude off blode lette þe, þat may be knowe by ful replecio*u*n of þe veynes of alle þe body, by rednesse & extension of þe face, be swetnesse of þe mouth, be wlattynge, 28

[5 fol. 66 *b*]

whe*n*ne þat a man ys fastynge, by [5]heuynesse of þe browys, & by 3onge age, & þat hys *com*plexou*n* ys hot & moyst, and þat he hath y-vsyde in hys dyotynge wyn & fflesch, and þe*n*ne make hym be lete blode on þe veyne, whiche þat bryngeth norysschynge to þe 32 lyme, & afterwarde of the Veyne þat may beste voyden þe membre þat ys y-hurt. And 3if þat þe blode trepasse onlye in qualyte, amende hy*m* as 3if þat he be to hot, voyde hym a lytel & dyote hym wiþ colde metys & styptyke. And aft*er*warde p*ro*cede forth in 36 alle o*pere* manere cases as it ys tolde in þe gen*era*H chapyteH, takynge hede þat þere ben su*m* man*ere* medycines, whiche þat beþ dry3inge & clansynge, & haue a prefe p*ro*prete to *con*soude olde wou*n*dys,

olde wou*n*dis whiche þat' ben difficult' to be consowdid; of' þe whiche medicyns su*m*me be*n* symple & su*m*me [1]be*n* compou*u*ned / [1 lf. 51, bk.]
Symple ben: limature of' iren, flour of' bras brent', vitriol leed Simple consolidatifs.
4 brent', & alle scharpe corosiuis if' þat' þei ben brent'; for þat' þei han ve*r*tu more to consowden, & also her corrisou*n* is lessid / þis is
a medicyn compou*u*ned: take floris[2] eris, limature of' bras an*a*. ℥ j. a compound consoledatiff
litarge of' gold, litarge of' siluir, ʒ .viij. gu*m*me of' cip*r*esse, ʒ .iiij.
8 sal gemme,[3] ʒ .ij. aristologia I-brent' smal to poudre of' frankencense, an*a*. ʒ .v. wex & oile of' mirtill þat' suffisiþ // //

The .xv. chapitle of þe þridde techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis is of a crampe þat comeþ to a wounde / ¶ Capm. xvm.

12 Nessessarie þing' is to a surgian to knowe þe causis of' a crampe, þe which þat' comeþ to a wou*n*de þat' schulde be heelid, & also þat' he knowe þe disposicio*u*n of' hi*m* þat' haþ þe crampe, & also what' þi*n*g' þat' þe crampe is, þat' he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe /
16 þe crampe is a sijknes cordo*us* eiþ*er* neruous, i*n* þe which sijknes Cramp is a contraction of the tendons or nerves arising from
cordis & þe senewis weren drawen to her bigy*n*nynge; of' þe whiche drawynge þat' be*n* .ij. causis co*n*iunct': þe toon is replecciou*n* of' þe

[2] Lat. flor. æris.
[3] *sal gemme.* A Salt so named, from its Transparent and Crystalline Brightness.—Kersey.

---

whiche þat beþ deffykel to be *con*soudyde, of þe whyche medycines Add. MS.
20 some betħ symple & some beþ *com*ponned. Symple beþ: lymatu*re* 12,056.
of bras, lymatu*re* of Iren, ffloure of bras brent; vytreol rede y-brent, and alle scharpe corosifes, ȝif þat þey ben y-brent. ffor þat þey han þe mo*re* vertue to *con*souden, and al so her*e* corosion ys y-lassyde.
24 þis ys a medycine *com*ponyde: R. ffloris eris, lymatu*re* of bras ana .ʒ. j., litarge of gold, litarge of syluere ana. ʒ. viij., gu*m*me of cypresse .ʒ. iiij, sal ge*m*me .ʒ. ij, Aristologie I-brende, smal poudr*e* of ffrank Ensence ana. ʒ. v., wax & oyle of myrtyne þat suffyseþ.

28 ¶ Cap. XV. off the þridde techynge of þe ffirste tretys is off a Crawmpe, that comyth to a Wounde.

Necessarye thynge ys a surgyne, to knowe þe causys of þe cra*m*pe whiche þat comyth to a wou*n*de þat scholde ben y-helyde,
32 and also þat he knowe þe dysposicio*u*n of hy*m* þat haþ þe crampe. And also what þynge þe crampe ys, þat he mowe resonablyche hele þe crampe. The crampe ys a seknesse cordouse, oþ*er*e ellys nervose, in the whiche syknesse þe cordes & þe synwes were drawyne to
36 here bygy*n*nynge; of þe whiche drawynge þ*er*e beþ tweye causes

repletion or inanition.

[2 lf. 52]

sencwe, þe oþe*re* of' þe corde, þe oþe*r* is *in*anisiou*n*.[1] He þa*t*' is of' in-anisiou*n*, [2]oftc tymes he haþ a cause goynge tofore as to mychc cuacuaciou*n* of' blood eiþe*r* of' su*m* oþer þi*n*g', as to longe afflicciou*n* for long' akþe, or ellis for þe appetite of' þe sike ma*n* haþ be*n* longe tyme enfeblid; & þis comeþ litil & litil, & þe crampe þa*t*' comeþ of' boþe þese causis may not' be heelid. & he þa*t*' comeþ of' replecciou*n* haþ oon of' þe .iij. causis goynge tofore / þe firste cause is to greet' akþe / þe .ij. causc is cold / & þe .iij. cause is putrifaccciou*n* ciþer rotynge / & þou3 þa*t*' oon sengle cause su*m*tyme suffice to make a crampc, ofte tymcs alle þese causis happen to come togiders / And þis crampe may be heelid or þa*t*' he be confermed, & aftir þa*t*' he is confermed scelde*n* or neucre / A surgian mustc þa*n*ne be bisy i*n* al þa*t*' he my3tc, þa*t*' a crampe ne wexe not' i*n* þc wou*n*de þa*t*' schulde be hcelid, wiþ obuiaciou*n*[3] defendi*n*ge þe lyme, þa*t*' noon of' þe .iij. causis toforc seid ne come nou3t' into þc wou*n*de: þe oon is in defendynge þe lyme from putrifaccciou*n* / þe toþe*re* is for kepi*n*ge þe lyme fro rotynge / þe þridde is to gou*e*rne hi*m* from a greet' akynge / for it' is more sikir to defende þa*t*' a crampe [4]ne come not', þa*n*ne aftir þa*t*' he is come with medicyns þa*t*' is douteful or dredeful to

Repletion occurs after .1. great pain, .2. cold, .3. putrefaction.

Cramp must be prevented in three ways: .1. .2. .3.

[4 lf. 52, bk.]

as it is difficult to heal.

[1] *inanisiou*n, Lat. inanitio. Vigo. Interpretation. "*Inanition*, emptyng."
[3] *obuiaciou*n. Lat. cum obuiatione defensiuorum.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 67 *a*]

*con*juncte: þe on ys repletion of þe synwe, oþe*re* of þe corde, þe oþe*re* is Inanysion. He þa*t* ys in[5] avision ofte tymes haþ a cause goynge to fore, [6]as to myche evacuaciou*n* of blod, oþe*re* of su*m* othire thynge; as to longe afflictiou*n* for longe akþe, oþe*re* ellys, for þe Apetite of the syke man hath be longe tyme enffeblyde; & þis comyth lytel & lyteH, and þe crampe þa*t* comyth of boþe þese causys may no3t be*n* helyde. And he þa*t* comyth of repletion hath on of þre causys goynge tofore: þe firste cause ys to grete akþe, þe secunde cause ys colde, þe þridde ys putrefaccciou*n* oþe*r* rotynge; and þow3 þa*t* one sengle cause su*m*tyme suffiseth to maken a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causes happe to come togedres. And þis crampe may ben y-helyde ere þa*t* he be comfermyde, & after þa*t* he ys *con*fermyde selden oþe*re* neffere. A surgyne moste þe*n*ne be busye; in alle þa*t* he my3te, þa*t* a crampe no wexe no3t in þe wou*n*de þa*t* scholde be helyde, wi*t*h obuiacion dyffendynge þa*t* none of þe þre causes tofore seyde ne come no3te to þe wounde; þe one ys in deffendynge þe lyme fro*m* putrefaccciou*n*, þe oþe*re* is in kepynge þe lyme fro*m* rotenesse, þe þridde is to gou*e*rne hy*m* fro*m* gret akynge; ffor it is mor*e* sykere to dyffende, þa*t* a crampe ne come no3t, þe*n*ne aftere þa*t* he ys come wi*th* medycine þa*t* is doutes oþe*re* dredful to

[5] Scribal mistake.

do awey / For if[1] a feuere come to an heed or to a senewe þat[1] is woundid, & if[1] þe crampe folowe, euermore it[1] is deedliche.

Take hede þa*n*ne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anoyntynge of[1] oile of[1] rosis, i*n* doynge as I haue seid afore i*n* þe chapitle of[1] senewis þat[1] ben woundid; for ofte tymes þe crampe comeþ fro woundis þat[1] ben m*aad* i*n* þe heed or ellis in þe senewe / & if[1] þat[1] akþe were so greet[1], þat[1] makiþ þe crampe for þe p*ri*ckynge of[1] a senewe or ellis of[1] a corde / & if[1] þat[1] þou my3tist[1] nou3t[1] defende þe crampe neiþir wiþ blood letynge, neiþ*er* wiþ ventusynge, ne wiþ clisterie, ne wiþ suppositorie, ne wiþ defensif[1] i*n* anoyntynge þe necke, ne þe grynde, ne þe arm hoolis, þa*n*ne it[1] is nessessarie þat[1] þou kutte al atwo þilke senewe or þilke corde þ*at*[1] is p*ri*ckid, þou3 þat[1] þe felynge or þe meuynge of[1] þe lyme to whom þilke senewe or þilke corde serueþ i*n* p*ar*ti or i*n* al be lost[1] / For it[1] is bettere þat[1] a man lese þe felynge & þe meuy*n*ge of[1] a lyme, þan for to deie. But[1] it[1] is bettere, if[1] þat[1] þou cowdist[1], to kepe a man þer-fro w*ith* o*þer*e [1]medicyns þan þat[1] þe senewe or þe corde be kutt[1] al atwo. *&* if[2] þat[1] þou were not[1] at[1] þe bigy*n*nynge, & þou fyndist[1] a man hauynge þe crampe for a wounde, do þou as I dide at[1] melain. Þer was a scoler of[1] myn þat[1] w*as* a surgia*n* þat[1] was clepid Olyuer, which þat[1] curide a scheþere

Treatment of cramp. Allay the suffering with an ointment, if necessary, cut the injured nerve or tendon. [1 lf. 53] Nota.

[2] *if*, above line.

---

don aweye, Ffor 3if þ*at* a ffeuy*re* come to an hed o*þer*e to a synwe þ*at* ys y-wou*n*dyde, & þe crampe folwe euyre more, yt ys dedlyche. Take hede þe*n*ne to aswage þe akþe w*ith* anoy*n*gty*n*ge of oyle of rosys, and in doynge as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of synwes þ*at* beþ y-wou*n*dyde; ffor ofte tymes þe crampe comyth for woundys, þ*at* beþ made in þe hed o*þer*e ellis[3] in þe synwe: And 3if þ*at* akþe were so grete, þ*at* makyth a crampe for þe p*ri*kynge off[1] a synwe o*þer* ellys of a corde, and 3if þ*ou* my3test no3t deffende þe crampe, newhere wiþ blode letynge, ne w*i*þ ventosynge, ne wiþ clysterye, ne wiþ suppositorye, ne w*ith* defensif[1] in anoyntynge þe nekke, ne þe grynde, ne þe arme holys, þe*n*ne yt is necessarie þ*at* þou kytte alle atwo þilke synwe o*þer*e corde þ*at* is y-p*ri*kyde, þow3 þat þe ffelynge o*þer*e þe meffynge of þe lyme, to whom þilke synwe o*þer*e corde servyde, in p*ar*ty o*þer* in al be loste. Ffor yt is bettyre [4]þ*at* a man lese þe felynge & þe meffynge of a lyme þe*n*ne þaw3 þ*at* he dey3e. But yt is bettyr*e* 3if þ*at* þou couþest kepen a ma*n* with o*þer*e mane*r*e medycines, þe*n*ne þ*at* þe synwe o*þer*e corde be y-kutte al atwo. And 3if þ*at* þou were no3t at þe bygy*n*ninge, and þou fyndest a man hauynge a crampe for a wou*n*de, do þou as y dyde at Melan. Þe*r*e was a Scolere of myne þ*at* was a Surgyne þ*at* was y-clepyde Olyfer*e*, whyche þ*at*

Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 67 b]

[3] *ellis*, above line.

Case of a shepherd who had hurt his head.

of[t] a wou*n*de þat[t] he hadde in þe heed; & bi þilke wou*n*de þe pa*n*nicle ouþir þe skyn þat[t] keueriþ þe brayn panne þat[t] is vnde*r* þe fleisch was hurt[t], & neuer-þe-lattere þe brayn panne was not[t] hurt[t]. &

The wound was closed too soon, and cramp ensued.

þilke leche, or þa*n*ne he hadde pe*r*fi3tlich purified þilke pa*n*nicle, 4 sowdide þe wou*n*de wiþoutforþ[1]; & wha*n*ne þilke wou*n*de wa*s* sowdid, þe pa*n*nicle þat[t] was not[t] weel heelid hadde a dedein[2] & was cause of[t] gendrynge of[t] a crampe i*n* þilke wou*n*de. & at[t] þe

Lanfranc found the patient dying.

laste I wa*s* clepid to þe sike man, & I foond hi*m* hauynge þe 8 crampe, & wiþ þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostymes aboute his face—& þat[t] is an yuele tokene in þe woundis of[t] þe heed—& þa*n*ne I demede hi*m* for deed / Neþeles at[t] þe instau*n*ce of[t] hise

[4 lf. 53, bk.]

He reopened the wound,

freendis I wolde asaie þe worchinge of[t] kynde vpon resou*n*; I made 12 his heed to be schaue,[3] & I kutte a3e*n* þe wou*n*de þat[t] was [4]consowdid wiþ a rasour to þe deppe of[t] þe same wou*n*de, & aftirward I

anointed

fulfillide þe wou*n*de with hoot[t] oile of[t] rosis, & I anoyntide al þe heed wi*th* þe same oile of[t] rosis & a litil vynegre medlid togidere, & 16 I anoyntide þe nolle & þe necke oonly wiþ oile of[t] rosis, & I dide on þe wou*n*de þe 3elke of[t] an ey wiþ oile of[t] rosis, and I boond al

[1] *wiþoutforþ*, extrinsecus, from without.

[2] *dedein*, Lat. panniculus *indigna*tus causa fuit spasmi. The translator misunderstood *indignatus*, and gives us an "indignant pannicle." *indignatus*, Med. Lat. damaged, hurt. See Tommas. s. v. indegnare 3.—Compare *þe ludych lorde—hade dedayn of þat dede.*—Allit. Poems, B. 74.

[3] *I made his hed to be schaue*, abradi caput feci.

Add. MS. 12,056.

curyde a schepe*r*e of a wou*n*de þat he hadde in the hed; & by þilke wou*n*de þe pannycle o*þ*e*r*e þe skyn þa*t* keuerytħ þe breyne pa*n*ne, 20 þa*t* is vndire þe fflesch̄, was y-hurt, & nere þe late*r*e þe breyn pa*n*ne was no3t y-hurt. & þilke leche, ere þa*n*ne he hadde pe*r*fytlyche y-puryfiede þylke pannycle, soudyde þe wou*n*de wi*th*outen forth̄; & wha*n*ne þa*t* þilke wou*n*de was y-sowdyde, þe pannycle þa*t* was no3t 24 wel helyde hadde a dedeyne, & was cause of engendrynge of a crampe in þilke wou*n*de. And at þe laste y was clepyde to þilke syke ma*n*, & y fonde hy*m* habbynge þe crampe, & wi*th* þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostem*es* aboute hys face, & þa*t* ys an 28 yuele tokne in þe wou*n*dys of þe hed, and þe*n*ne y demyde hy*m* for ded. Naþeles at þe instau*n*ce of hys frendys y þa*t* wolde assaye þe worchynge of kynde vpon resou*n*, I made hys hed be*n* y-schaue, and y kutte a3eyne þe wou*n*de, þat was *con*soudid, wi*th* a rasour*e* to þe 32 deppe of þe same wounde, & afterewarde y fulfylde þilke wou*n*de wi*th* hote oyle of rosys, & y anoyntede alle þe hed wi*th* þe same oyle of roses & a lyteħ vynegr*e* y-medlyde togedre, & y anoyntede þe nolle & þe nekke onlye wiþ oyle of rosys, and y dyde on þe wou*n*de 36 þe 3olke of an eye wit*h* oyle of rosys, and y bonde alle þe hed wi*þ* a

þe heed wiþ a boond leiynge þ*er* vndir herdis[1] or tow3 smal I-tosid, and I openede his mouþ & putte into his mouþ þe broþ maad of' a chiken, wiþ comyn & also wiþ cleer wiyn medlid wiþ myche wat*er*; on
4 þe morowe I turnede a3en & I foond þe sike of' bettere disposicioun, & I openede bettere his mouþ, & he spak bettere; neþeles I foond þe wou*n*de drie, & þa*n*ne I dide ofte tymes þe same medicyn & þe same oyntur*e*. In þe þridde dai þe skyn of' þe heed was m*a*ad
8 moist', þe which was bifore as drie as þe skyn hadde be rostid at þe fier, & i*n* so miche[2] þe skyn was maad þi*n*ne, þat' þer was no þi*n*g' bitwene þe skyn & þe brayn pa*n*ne. & at' þe laste þe wou*n*de quyt-turide wiþ contynuau*n*ce of' þe same cure tofore seid, & in þis [3]maner [3 lf. 54]]
12 þe 3onge man was heelid boþe of' þe crampe & also of' þe wou*n*de / But' þilke crampe was wiþoute feuere; for I may not' þenke þat' I haue seen a feuere i*n* þe wou*n*des of' þe heed, or ellis of' þe senewis prickid a crampe, þat' nou3t' a3enstondynge remedie eiþ*er* medicyns
16 þe pacient' þat' hadde þe crampe diede / My beste counseil is to lete him blood i*n* þe bigy*n*nynge þat' haþ þe crampe, namely, & he be strong' & replete, & if' þat' he haue not' bled ynou3 at' his wou*n*dis; & anoynte his nolle & his necke wiþ hoote oynementis as wiþ oile

and bandaged the head,
gave strengthening nourishment,
and so cured the patient.
If fever occurs death ensues.
Bleed the patient,
use ointments,

[1] *herdis.* See Wright Wü. 614. 2. "Stupa, herdes." [2] *þat*, inserted.

---

20 bonde leggynge þ*er*e undyre hurdys oþ*er*e tow3 smal tosyde, and y opnyde hys mouth̄ & put into hys mouth̄ þe broth̄ of a chyken y-made with̄ comyn, and also cler*e* wyn y-medlyde w*ith* myche watyr*e*. On þe morwe y turnyde a3eyne & y fonde þe syke of
24 bettyr*e* dysposicioun, & he opnyde bettyr*e* hys mouth̄, & he spak bettyre; & naþeles [4]y fonde þe wou*n*de drye, & þe*n*ne y dede efte sonys þe same medicyne & þe same vncture. In þe þridde day þe skyn of þe hed was y-mad moyst, whyche þat was to forne as drye
28 as a skyn hadde be rostyde to þe fyre, and in so myche þe skyn was y-made þu*n*ne, þat þ*er*e was noþynge betwene þe skyn & þe breyne pa*n*ne. & at þe laste þe wou*n*de quyteryde w*iþ con*tynewau*n*ce of þe same cur*e* tofor*e* seyde, & in þis man*er*e þe 3onge man was helyde
32 boþe of þe crampe & eke of þe wou*n*de. But þilke crampe was w*ith*outen ffeuyr*e*; ffor y ne may no3t þynke þat y haue seyn[5] a ffevyre in þe wou*n*des of synwes, oþ*er*e ellys of þe hed precede a crampe, þat no3t a3eyne stondynge remedye / oþ*er*e medycynes þe pacient þat
36 hadde þe crampe ne deyede. My beste *con*seyle is to letyn hym blod in the bygy*n*ninge þat haþ þe crampe, namly, & he be stronge & replete, and 3if þat he haue nou3t bled ynow3 at hys wou*n*de; and anoynte hys nolle & hys nekke wiþ hote oynementys, as wit*h* oyle of

Add. MS. 12,056.
[4 fol. 68 *a*]

[5] *a wounde* struck through after *seyn*.

Nota. of' nardinc, euforbinc, oilc of' rue,[1] lilijs *et cetera* / & also to make
small cauteries, smalc cautcries pu*n*etale, þat' is to seie as smal as þe eende of' a
prieke, bitwene ech whirlebo*n* of' þe neeke, so neuere-þe-latterc *þat'*
bandages. þe eauterie go not' ouer depe / Aftirward byndc lo*ng*' wollc to his 4
heed bihynde & to his neeke & to hise sehuldris, & do þeron hoot'
oile, & leie hi*m* in a soft' bed & lete hi*m* be in reste & in pees /
But' þer be*n* su*m*me *þat'* sette*n* in her bookis medieyns *þat'* pro-
ypocras. uoke*n* þe feueris; for *þat'* ypoeras techiþ in .iiij^to^ afforismoris: a 8
[3 lf. 54, bk.] **spasmo[2] vel te[3]tano habito febre[4] supe*r*ueniente soluit' egritudi-**
says that fever takes away the cramp or tetanus; ne*m* / *þat'* is to seie: if' *þat'* a man haue a erampe or ellis a tetane
þat' is a sijknes *þat'* halt' þe membre lieh streit' on boþe sidis as a
crampe halt' þe oon side of' þe membre & þe feue*r*c come on þilke 12
crampe eiþir þilke tetane, he distrieþ þe crampe eiþir þe sijknes; &
also þei anoynte wiþ to hoot' an oynement' to p*r*ouoke þe feue*r*es, þe
he is wrong, if the cramp comes from a wound. whieh þing' I ne ap*r*eue not i*n* þe erampe of' a wounde þou3 *þat'*
þilke oynement' my3te be p*r*ofitable in a erampe wiþoute wou*n*de, & 16
where *þat'* humouris abou*n*de, namely, if' it' be fleume.

Signs (symptoms) of cramp. General signs. Su*m*me be*n* general tokenes & su*m*me be*n* speeial of' sehewynge
of' þe crampe / General tokenes be*n* þese: to greet' akþe, crokidnes[5]

[1] *rue*, ruta. Turner, *Herbal*, ii. 122 b. Ruta is named in Greke Pegamon, in English Rue or herbe grace, in French rue de gardin, in Dutch Weinraut. [2] Cramp and Tetanus. See *Notes*.

[4] *febre superveniente*, error for *febris superveniens*.

[5] *crokidness*, Lat. obliquitas.

Add. MS. 12,056. nardyne, enforbine, Oyle rewe, lylyes &c., and also to make smale 20
eauteryes pu*n*ctales, *þat* is to sigge as smale as þe ende of a prykke,
bytwene eu*er*y whirlebone of þe nekke, so neu*er*e þe latere *þat* þe
cauterye go nou3t ou*er*e depe. Aft*er*warde bynde longe wolle to
hys hed be hynde, & to his nekke, & to his sehuldres, & do *þer*e 24
on hote oyle, & leye hy*m* in a softe bed, & lete hy*m* ben in reste &
in pees. But *þer*e be su*m*me *þat* setten in here bokys medycines,
þat p*r*ovoeen þe ffeuerys; ffor *þat* ypocras teehyth in quarto afforis-
morum: **a spasmo vel detano habito febr*e* supe*r*veniente soluit** 28
egritudinem *þat* ys to sigge; 3if *þat* a man haff þe crampe, o*þer*e
ellys a tetane, *þat* is a sykncsse *þat* halt the me*m*bre y-lyehe streyt
on boþe þe sydes, as a erampe halte þe on syde of þe me*m*bre, & þe
ffeue*r*e come on þilke erampe o*þer*e þilke tetane, he distroyeth þe 32
erampe o*þer*e þe seknesse, and also *þey* anoynte wit*h* to hote oyne-
ment to p*r*ovoke þe ffeuerys, þe whyehe þynge y ne apreff' nou3t in
þe erampe of a wou*n*de, þow3 *þat* þilke oynement my3te be p*r*ofitable
[6 fol. 68 *b*] in a erampe w*it*houten [6]wou*n*de, & where *þat* humores habou*n*de, 36
namlye, 3if yt be fflewme. So*m*me ben gene*r*al toknys, & some be
speeiaH of sehewynge of a erampe. General toknys ben þese: to

of' ȝen, & crokidnes of' schewynge, & crokidnes of' eeris, of' þe nose
þrillis, & of' þe lippis, & wha*n*ne þ*at*' a man may not' speke, & þe
cheke be constreyned & difficulte of' meuynge, and namely, of'
4 þe necke, & ofte constreynynge togidere, & a sodeyn schakynge
togidere. Special signes maken oon of' þre maner of' crampis : þe Special signes.
toon is clepid amprostonos[1], þe to*þer* empistenos[2], þe .iij. tetan*us* / .1. .2. .3.
In þis maner of' crampe þ*at*' is clepid ampros[3]tonos, þe senewis tofore [3 lf. 55] amprostonos
8 ben drawe togidere / þe fore p*ar*tie of' þe heed is crokid, þe sike
ma*n* may not' heuen it' vp, he beriþ his chyn as it' lijþ on his brest',
& his mouþ is streit' & he may not' opene it', & þe fyngris of' his
hand ben folden into his fist' / & in empistonies þe necke is crokid, Empistonos.
12 his mouþ is open, hise chekis ben open, & þe fyngris of' his hand
ben streyned bacward / & þe tetane halt' þe boþe p*ar*ties of' þe Tetanus.
body, so þ*at*' he may not' turne his necke to no p*ar*tie but' al þe
bodi is stif' & streyned, as a staf' were putt' yn at' his necke & out'
16 at' his ers / Alle þese tokenes or ellis su*m*me of' hem schewiþ þe
disposicio*un* of' hi*m* þ*at*' haþ þe crampe / And whanne þ*at*' þese
tokenes falle*n* in þe wou*n*de of' þe heed, or ellis of' a senewe þei
techen bettere þe leche to fle from þe sike man þa*n* on hi*m* to abide
20 & cure /

[1] Latin, *Emprosthotonos.* [2] Latin, *Opisthotonos.*

---

gret akþe, crokydnesse of eyȝen, & crokydnesse of erys of nose þreH Add. MS.
& of lyppes, & whe*n*ne þ*at* a man may noȝt speke, & þe chekys ben 12,056.
*con*streynde, & dyficulte of swolwynge, & diffyculte of mevynge,
24 namlye of þe nekke, & ofte constreynynge toged*re*, & sodeyne
schakynge togedi*re*. Special signes maken one of pre manere of
crampes : þe on ys y-clepyde **Emprostonos**, þe o*þer*e **Empistonos**, þe
þridde **tetanus**. In þese manere of crampe þat is clepyde Empros-
28 tonos þe synwes tofore be drawe*n* togedire, þe fore p*ar*ty of þe hed
ys crokyde, ne þe syke ma*n* ne may noȝt heffyn it vp, he beriþ̄ hys
chyn as yt leye on hys brest'; hys mouþ is streyte, ne he ne may
noȝt opyne yt, and þe ffyngres of hys hande be*n* foldyde into hys
32 fust'. And in Empistonos þe nekke ys crokyde, his mouþ is opyne,
his chekes beþ opyne, & þe fyngres of hys handys ben streynde
bakwarde, and þe tetane halt boþe þe p*ar*tye of þe body, so þ*at* he
may nouȝt turne hys nekke to no*n* partie, but alle þe body is styffe
36 & streynde, as a staf' were put in at hys hed & out at his ers. Alle
þese toknys o*þer*e ellys su*m* of hem schewiþ̄ þe disposicio*un* of hy*m*
þ*at* haþ þe crampe. And wha*n*ne þ*at* þese toknys fallyn in þe
wou*n*de of an hed o*þer*e ellys of[4] a synwe, þey teche bettire þe leche
40 to fle fro*m* þe syke ma*n*, þe*n*ne on hy*m* to abyde & cure. The firste

[4] *of*, above line.

¶ The firste tretis is eendid wiþ þe help of almyȝty god. Now w*ith* þe help of þe same, go to þe secu*n*de /

¶ Cap^m j^m

NOw bigynneþ þe secunde tretis of p*ar*ticuler woundis of membris of office from þe heed to þe foot / and first bigy*n*ne at anotamie of þe heed /

[1 lf. 55, bk.] Al þi*n*g^t [1] brefly ordeyned aftir my symple wiH diuisynge, which þat^t longiþ to þe firste tretis of^t þis book which þat^t holdiþ certeyn rulis & techinge of^t surgerie vndir general chapitlis as we han bihiȝt^t / now we wolen bigy*n*ne to treten of^t curis aftir þat^t þe lymes be*n* i*n* ma*n*nes bodi. & first^t I wole bigy*n*ne at^t þe heed & at^t his anotamie, & so p*ro*cede forþ to ech membre dyuysynge þe anotamie of^t ech me*m*bre, & i*n* ordeynynge þe curis of^t wou*n*dis þat^t ben ma*a*d in ech sengle membre. I seie þat^t þe heed is ma*a*d of^t þre p*ar*ties: of^t a fleischi p*ar*tie, of^t a bony p*ar*tie, & a brawni p*ar*tie. þe fleischi p*ar*tie is aboue þe brayn panne, þe which þat^t is ma*a*d of^t an hery skyn; & þilke skyn is fulfillid wiþ braynes in euery p*ar*tie /

The head consists of three parts.

[2] Heading to this page: *Anotemy off þe hed & woundes off the same.* / Compare Vicary's *Anatomie*, ch. iii. p. 24.

Add. MS. 12,056. tretys ys y-endyde wiþ helpe of almyȝtie god, now w*ith* þe helpe of[3] þe same y go to þe secunde.

¶ Now begy*n*neþ þe secunde · tretys off particuler wou*n*des of membris of office fro*m* þe hede to þe ffot, and ffirste y begynne at the Anotamye off the hed.

Al thynge breffliche y-ordeynde, aftere þe devysinge of my Symple wytt^t, whiche þat longith to þe firste tretys of this [4] boke whiche þat holdyth certeyne rulys & techynges off^t surgerye vndire gene*r*al chapitelis, as we han byheyȝt. Now we wylle begy*n*ne to tretyn of certeyne cures, aftere þat þe lymes ben in ma*n*nys body. & firste y wyl begy*n*ne at þe hed & at hys anotamye, & so þe p*ro*cesse forþ to eue*r*yche me*m*bre devysinge þe Anotamye of eu*er*y me*m*bre, & in ordeyny*n*ge þe cures of wou*n*dys þat beþ made in eche sengle me*m*bre, I sigge þat þe hed ys made of þre p*ar*tyes: of a fflesch̄y party, a bony p*ar*tye, and a braynie p*ar*tye. þe fflesch̄ p*ar*tye is aboue þe brayn pa*n*ne, whiche þat is made of an herye skyn; & þilke skyn ys fulfylde w*ith* brawnys in eu*er*y place. þe

[4 fol. 69 *a*]

[3] MS. *of* twice.

Þe heeris of' þe heed weren for greet' profite ordeyned þat' neiþer cold ne hoot', ne schulde not'.sodeynli entre þe poris of the skyn, & neuer-þe-lattere þat' þe fumosite of þe heed myȝte go out' bi þe poris þere as þe heer growiþ; & þe heed myȝte be þe more semeloker, & þat' þe colouris of' þe heeris of' dyuers men myȝte schewen þe compleccioun̄s of' þe heedis //

The hair protects the brain, and adorns the head.

[1 lf. 56]

Þe skyn þat' is [1]aboue þe brayn panne is lacertose, & ful of' þicke fleisch, þat' he myȝte wrie þe brayn panne, þat' he schulde not' fele sodeynliche to greet' heete ne to greet' cold. Þe which skyn is maad of' sutil þredis of' senewis þat' comen fro þe brayn, & of' veynes & of' arteries sotilliche I-maad; & so þe skyn of' þe heed is sotilliche ioyned wiþ þe skyn of' al þe bodi / & also þe skyn of' þe heed is more þickere þan þe brain sculle, þat' it' schulde ben more rare[2] & more porose, þat' is to seie, more ful of' hoolis / Þe lacertis of' þe skyn proceden aftir þat' þe goynge procediþ of' þe heeris /

skyn. is muscular, is made of fibrous cords and veins, is thick and porous.

Þe brayn panne is maad of' manye boonys / Þe firste summe,[3] þe whiche þat' holdiþ þe prouitis þat' longen to þe brayn panne, haþ .ij. helpingis; oon helpinge is: þouȝ þat' an hurtynge come to oon boon, neuere-þe-lattere he schulde not' falle to alle þe boonys / Þe secunde help is, oon boon þat' is to hard in oon partie ne schulde not' be so

The skull consists of many bones for different reasons, as .i. touching the skull itself.

[2] *rare.* Lat. rarus. [3] Lat. Prima nanque summa . .

---

herys off' þe hed were for grete proffyte y-ordeynde, þat neiþere colde ne hete ne scholde noȝt sodeynliche entre þe pores of þe skyn, & neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosyte of þe hed myȝte go out be þe pores þere as þe here growyth̄, and þat þe hed myȝte be þe more semlykere, and þat þe coloure of þe herys myȝte schewe þe complexioun of þe hed. Þe skyn þat is abouen þe breyne panne ys lacertos & ful of þykke flesch̄, þat he myȝte wreyen þe breyn panne, þat he scholde noȝt fele to sodeynlyche neiþere to grete hete ne to cold. Þe whiche skyn ys made of sotyH̄ þredys of synwes þat comeþ from þe brayn & of veynis & of arteryes sotylliche y-mad; and so þe skyn of þe hed ys sotylliche y-Ioyned with þe skyn off' alle þe bodye, and also þe skyn of þe hed ys more þykkere benne þe brayne scolle, þat it scholde be more rare & more porose þat is to sigge more ful of holys. Þe lacertes of þe skyn proceden after þat þe goynge procedyth̄ of þe herys, þe brayn panne ys mad of manye bonys. Þe fyrste summe, whiche þat wiþholdyth̄ þe profites þat longyth̄ to þe brayn panne, haþ tweye helpynges; on helpynge ys, þowȝ þat an hurtynge come to on bon, neuere þe latere he scholde noȝt fallen to alle þe bonys; þe secunde helpe is þat on bon þat is to harde in on partye, ne scholde noȝt be so [4]hard in an opere

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 69 b]

.2. the organs under the skull.

[1 lf. 56, bk.]

The sutures of the skull

a. form the ways for the veins,

.b. let the nerves go out

.c. and the fumosity,

.d. support the dura mater and pia mater.

The brain pan is formed of two tables,

hard in anoþir p*ar*tie. / þe secunde su*m*me, þe which þ*a*t[1] wiþhalt[1] þe helpingis þ*a*t[1] ben vndir þe brayn panne, haþ wiþi*n*ne hi*m*. iiij. helpi*n*gis; þe whiehe helpingis ben ful maad by þe [1]semis þat[1] ben of[1] þe brayn panne; ne þe helpingis my3te not[1] be maad, but[1] if[1] þ*a*t[1] 4 þer were manye boonys / þe first[1] help is, þ*a*t[1] þe veynes my3te*n* go dou*n* bi þe semis of[1] þe bray*n* panne berynge[2] norischinge to þe same brayn[3] / þe secu*n*de help is, þ*a*t[1] þe senewis þ*a*t[1] eomen out[1] of[1] þe brayn my3te haue wey i*n* goynge out[1] / þe þridde help is, þ*a*t[1] þe 8 fumes of[1] þe brayn my3ten haue wey of[1] smokyng[1] out[1] / þe fourþe is, þ*a*t[1] neiþ*er* dura mat*er*, ne pia mat*er*, þ*a*t[1] as þei ben hangid, ne my3te not[1] greue þe brayn.

So þ*a*t[1] þe brayn panne is m*aa*d of[1] ij. smeþe li3t[1] tablis, þ*a*t[1] oon 12 is aboue, þe toþir is bynеþe / & þei ben su*m*what[1] spongio*us* i*n* þe myddis, & rare þ*a*t[1] þe smoke of[1] þe heete my3te bettere passe out[1] & þei ben smeþe þ*a*t[1] þei my3ten not[1] greue þe brayn / Dyuers me*n* þ*a*t[1] maken dyuers anotamie dyuyden þe brayn pa*n*ne diu*er*slyeh / su*m*- 16 me*n* nou*m*bren mo boonys þan su*m*me oþir speken of[1] / but[1] soþenes is, þ*a*t[1] þ*er* be*n* .vj. & oon which þ*a*t[1] susteyneþ þe sixte. Þe firste boon is clepid, þe boon of[1] þe forheed or ellis eoronale, & he bigy*n*neþ fro*m* þe browis & lastiþ to þe seem þat[1] dep*ar*tiþ þe heed quarter. 20

has seven bones.

I. Coronal.

[2] MS. inserts *§*. [3] *panne* after *brayn* cancelled.

Add. MS. 12,056.

p*ar*tye. Secu*n*de su*m*me, whiche þ*a*t wi*th*halt helpynges, þ*a*t beþ vnd*er* þe brayn pa*n*ne, haþ wi*th* hy*m* iiij helpynges; þe whiehe helpynges beþ ful mad be þe semys þ*a*t beþ of þe breyn pa*n*ne. Ne þo helpynges ne my3te no3t be mad, but 3if þ*a*t þ*er*e were manye 24 bonys. Þe firste helpe ys, þ*a*t þe veynes my3te go dou*n* by the semys of[4] þe brayn pa*n*ne, berynge norosschynge to þe same brayn.

Secunde helpe ys þ*a*t þe synwes, þ*a*t comyth̄ out of þe brayn, my3te habbe wey in goynge out. Þe þridde helpe ys, þ*a*t þe fumes 28 of þe brayn my3te habbe wey of[1] smokynge out. Þe ffourþe ys, þ*a*t neiþ*er*e dura mater ne pia mater, þ*er*e as þey ben y-hongyde, ne my3te no3t greue þe brayn. Sytthe þ*a*t þe breyne pa*n*ne ys made of two smeþe ly3te tablys, þ*a*t one ys aboue & þe oþ*er*e bynеþe, & 32 þey be su*m*what spongyouse in þe myddel & rare, þ*a*t þe smokys of þe hed my3te þe bettyr*e* passen out, & þey be smeþe þ*a*t þey my3te no3t greue þe brayn. Dyu*er*se me*n* þ*a*t makyth̄ dyu*er*se Anotamye devydeþ þe breyn pa*n*ne dyuerslyche. So*m*me now*m*bryth mo 36 bonys, þe*n*ne su*m*me oþ*er*e spekyn of; but soþenesse ys that þ*er*e ben sixe; & one whyehe þ*a*t susteyneþ þo sixe. Þe ffyrste bon ys clepyde þe bon of þe[5] fforhed oþ*er*e ellys eoronale, & he bygy*n*neþ fro*m* þe browys, & lastyth̄ vnto þe seme þ*a*t dep*ar*tyth̄ þe hed 40

[4] *of* above line. [5] *þe* above line.

[1] & þilke is clepid coronale / þis boon haþ *in* sum maner of[1] men a smal seem in foldynge of[1] þe forheed, & þe*r*fore su*m* me*n* seyn þat[1] þe*r* ben .ij. boonis. ij oþir boonys ben ioyned w*ith* þilke boon coronable *in* þe myddis of[1] þe heed ou*er*þwert[1] ouer; þat[2] þei be*n* bou*n*de togidere bi oon ioynture, þe which þat[1] strecchiþ fro*m* bifore to bihynde to þe lenkþe of[1] þe heed, þe which is clepid sagittales, by as myche as he is schape lijk an arowe / & þese .ij. boonys ben clepid nerualia bi-cause þat[1] þe figure of[1] þe seem þat[1] is w*ith* þe coronable is þe figure of[1] a senewc eiþ*er* of[1] a corde / þese boonys ben in þe hiȝeste coppe of[1] þe heed & byhynde in þe nolle þe*r* is a boon þe which is clepid alauda.[3] & it[1] is maad *in* þe symilitude of þis : Λ : which þat[1] is ioyned wiþ þe boones nerualib*us* tofore seid bi þe mene of[1] oon þa*n* I-made to þe lijknes of[1] þe boon tofore seid. & þese þre semes whiche þat[1] ioynen togidere þe .iiij. boonys tofore seid, ben m*aa*d as it[1] were two sawis, þe whiche tecþ ben ioyned, ech of[1] he*m* in oþir in þis mane*r* ΛΛΛΛ / & þis ioyny*n*ge togidere of[1] oon boon wiþ anoþir was maad bi-cause of[1] iuvamentis þat[1] I haue told to[5]forn; þe*r* is no boon ioyned w*ith* anoþ*er* as þese boonys be*n*.

[1 lf. 57]

The sagittal suture unites the nerval bones (side bones), II, III.

IV. Occipital bone with the lambdoidal suture.

figure in augrim[4]

[5 lf. 57, bk.]

[2] *þat* insertion.

[3] Latin : "Quartum os est ex parte posteriori in puppi ; et conjungitur cum prædictis nervalibus mediante una commissura ad modum literæ laudæ grecæ." The word *lauda* is a corruption of *lambda*.

[4] *augrim*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s.v. algorism.

---

twarte offe*re*. And þylke bon is y-clepyde **coronale**: þis bon hath̄ in some mane*re* of me*n* a smal seme in þe ffoldynge of þe fforhed, & þe*re* fore su*m* me*n* siggeþ þat þe*re* beþ tweye bonys. Tweye oþe*re* bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þylke bon **coronale** in þe myden of þe hed twarte offe*re*, & þey ben y-bou*n*de togedyre by one Iuctu*re*, þe whiche þat strecchiþ fro*m* tofore to byhynde, by the lengthe of þe hed, þe whiche ys y-clepyde **sagyttalis** by as myche as he ys schapyde lyke an arwe. And þese tweye bonys beþ y-clepyde **Nerualia,** by cause of þe ffigure of the seme þat ys wiþ þe coronale, [6]ys þe ffigure of a synwe oþe*re* of a corde. And þese bonys ben in þe heyest coppe of the hed, and behynde in þe nolle þe*re* ys a bon whyche þat is y-clepyde **Alauda,** & ys y-made to þe Symilitude of þis cyffre of Augrym Λ, whiche þat ys Ioynede w*ith* þe bonys nerualib*us* tofore seyde, by þe mene of on ȝem y-mad to þe lyknesse of þe bon tofore seyde. & þese þre ȝemes whiche þat Ioyneþ togedyre þe foure bonys to fore seyde, ben y-made as yt were tweye[7] ȝawes, whos teth̄ joyned eche of hem in oþe*re* in thys mane*re* / WNOW & þis ioyninge togedire of on bon w*ith* an oþer was y-made by-cause Iuvamentes þat y haue tolde beforn; þe*re* nys no bon y-ioynede with̄ an oþe*re* as þese bonys ben. Undi*re* þe bon þat ys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 70 *a*]

[7] MS. *tweye* twice.

V. Tassillus (Basilar bone) supports all the other bones.

Vndir þe boon þat is clepid alauda, *þer* is a ful hard boon & holid *in* þe myddil, þe which boon susteyneþ alle þe boonys of þe heed. Þe which boon is clepid passillus, & he is ioyned byneþe wiþ þe firste boon of þe nake. Þe schap of þe coniu*n*ccioun of þe .v. boonis of 4 þe heed is in þis maner ᵉᶜᵐ. Boþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift side of þe forseid boonys, whiche þat be*n* clepid nerualia *[whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere

VI, VII. Temporal bones (mendosa); one portion is called os petrosum.

syde.] & þo boonys þat vndir setten ben clepid ossa mendosa. & þese 8 boonys *in* oon pa*r*tie be*n* ful hard þere as þe hole of þe eere passiþ þoruȝ, & þei ben clepid petrosa; & su*m*men seien þat *per* be*n* .iiij. boonys ij. on eiþir side / & wha*n*ne þat alle þe boonys of þe heed ben ioyned

The skull has seven bones,

togidere, þou schalt fynde in soþfastnes þat þer ben but vj. boonys, 12 wha*n*ne þat þou rekenest os[1] coronale for oon boon, & .ij. boonys þat be*n* clepid mendose, ij. & oon þat be*n* iij, & o boon þat is clepid alauda. & ij. boonys þat ben clepid nerualia þat be*n* .vj.; & þe .vij. boon is clepid passillare, þe which is not of þe boones of þe 16

three true sutures, [3 lf. 58]

heed, but he susteyneþ alle þe o*per*e boonys of þe heed.[2] & iij. man*er* of semes [3]makiþ coniuncciou*n* of alle þe boonys *in* þis maner ȝȝ

[1] MS. *as.*

[2] Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is vnterberynge in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp, or paxillus.*"

Add. MS. 12,056.

y-clepyde Alauda, *þere* ys a ful harde bon & y-holyde in þe myddle, þe whyche bone susteynetħ alle þe bonys of þe hed. Þe whiche 20 bon ys y-clepyde **Passilus**, & he ys ioynede byneþe wiþ þe fyrste bon of þe nekke. Þe schappe of þe *coni*uccioun of þe fife bonys of þe hed ys in þis manere ᵉᶜᵐᵉⁿ. Bothe on þe ryȝte syde & on þe lefte syde of þe forseyde bonys whiche *þat* beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**,* 24 whiche *þat* beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, *þere* ben twey bonys on eiþ*ere* syde*; þe whiche *þat* beþ vndiresetterys to þo bonys *þat* beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**; & þo bonys *þat* vndir*e* set'en, ben y-clept ossa mendosa. And þese bonys in one pa*r*tye ben ful 28 harde, *þere* as þe hole of þe ere passytħ þorwȝ, & þey ben y-clepede [4]petrosa & su*m* men siggen *þat* *þere* ben foure bonys, two on eythe*re* syde. & wha*n*ne *þat* alle bonys of þe hed be Ioynede togedir*e* *þou* schalt fynde in sotfastnesse, *þat* *þere* ben but sixe bonys wha*n*ne 32 *þat* þou reknyste **os**[5] **coronale** ffor on bon, & tweye bonys *þat* beþ y-clepyde mendose tweyne *þat* beþ þre, and o bon *þat* ys y-clepyde Alanda, & tweye bonys *þat* is y-clepyde nerualia—*þat* beþ sixe, and þe vij bon ys y-clepyde passillare, þe whiche ys nought of þe 36 bonys of þe hed, but he susteynetħ alle þe o*per*e bonys of þe hed. And þre man*er* of semys makytħ *coni*uccioun of alle þe bonys on þis

[4] MS. petotra. [5] MS. as.

& wiþ .ij. semes mendose in þis maner 22ʊ. & wha*n*ne þat' þe crou*n*ne of' þe heed is p*er*fiȝt', þe heed is m*aa*d in þis maner ꟻꟻꟻ / þis is þe foorme of' an heed weel p*ro*possiou*n*d, round ⊖ þat' he my3te more wiþholde, & þat' he my3te lasse be hurt', & þat' he be longe warpid[1], hauy*n*ge tofore & bihynde eminence: þat is to seie apeirynge, þat' þe senewis þat' comen out' of' þe brayn my3ten haue a porose place of' goynge out'. & neþeles as ypocras & galion, whiche þat' expowneþ ypocras, telliþ[2], it' is possible to fynde oþir in man*er* of' makyng' of' heedis. Oon maner is, if' eminence be not' *in* p*ar*tie of' þe heed tofore, for if' þat' he be pleyn in p*ar*tie tofore, bi þat' pleynes þe seem is lost', þat' is clepid coronalis / þe secunde is, if' þat' þe heed haue noon eminence bihynde, but' þat' þe hyndere p*ar*tie be pleyn, & bi þat' pleynes þe seeme is lost' þat' is clepid alauda / þe þridde is, if þat' þ*er* be noon eminence bifore ne bihinde *in* þe heed, but' al þe heed is rou*n*d as a sercle, & þ*a*nne þ*er* is b*u*t' oon seem *in* þe myddil of þe brayn panne: for it' is vnpossible þe heed to haue ony oþ*er* [3]schap wiþoute lesynge of' su*m* p*ar*tie of' þe brayn, & were contrarious a3ens þe lijf' / Bi þe myddil seem which þat' is in þe heed, þ*er*e discendiþ a ueyne comynge fro þe lyuere bi þe

two false sutures (mendosæ).

A well-proportioned head is oblong with openings for the nerves,

ypo*cras*. & G*alion* enumerate peculiar forms:

.1. front part flat,

.2. back part flat,

.3. without any prominence.

.No*ta*.

[3 lf. 58, bk.]

A vein and artery come through the basilar bone,

[1] *longe warpid*, Lat. oblongus. Comp. Langwyrpe bôc, *Indiees Monast.* 12, ed. Kluge. [2] *telliþ*, error for *tellen*.

---

manere ⊖, & w*ith* tweye semys mendose in þis manere ⊖. And wha*n*ne þat þe corone of þe hed ys p*er*fyt, þe hed [4]ys mad in þis manere ⊖. Þis ys þe forme of an hed wel p*ro*porcionede, þat he be ronde because þat he myghte þe more w*ith*holde, & þat he my3te þe lasse be y-hurt, and þat he be longewarped havynge tofore & behynde eminence þat is to sigge aperynge, þat þe synwes þat comyth out of þe brayn, myghte haue a porose place of goynge out. And naþelese as ypocras & galyen, whiche þat exponeþ ypocras, tellyn: it is possible to fynden þre oþ*er*e manere makynge of hedys. On manere is, 3if eminence be no3t in þe p*ar*tye of þe hed tofore; for 3if þat he be pleyn in þe p*ar*tye tofore, by þat pley*n*nesse þe seme is y-lost þat is y-clepyde **coronalis**. Secu*n*de ys 3if þe hed haff' no*n* eminence behynde, but þat þe hyndore p*ar*ty be playn, and by þat play*n*nesse þe seme ys y-lost þat ys y-clepyde Alauda.[5] Þe þridde ys 3if þ*er*e be non eminence tofore ne behynde in þe hed, but alle þe hed ys rou*n*de as a cercle. And þe*n*ne þ*er*e nys but on sem in þe myddel of þe breyn pa*n*ne, ffor it is vnpossible þe hed to habben enye oþ*er*e schappe wiþoute*n* lesyng of some p*ar*ty of þe brayn; & þat were co*n*trariouse a3eyne lyf. By þe myddele seme, whiche þat is in þe hed, þ*er*e dissendyth a veyne comynge

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 70 *b*]

[5] MS. *Abauda*.

brayn panne of' a boon which þat' is holid þat' is clepid passillarus. & bi þe same weye þer risiþ an arterie comynge from þe herte, & þei ben ioyned togidere, & of' þe weuingge of' þe tweyne per is maad an hard pannicle þat' is to seie a clooþ þat' is vndir þe brayn 4 panne; & he is hangid with summe smale ligamentis to þe brayn panne in summe of' þe semes. Þe which pannicle byndiþ þe boonys togidere, & it' is clepid dura mater. & it' is riȝtful þat' an arterie schulde arise vpward from bynepe, for þe blood þat' is in him is 8 sutil, & his meuynge is pulsatif; & he hadde discendid from aboue dounward, he schulde haue discendid wiþ to greet' an hastynes, but' þilke ascendynge temperiþ þilke flux. & it' is couenable þat' þe veyne discende bicause þat' þe blood þat' is in þe veynes is more þickere, 12 & þe blood þat' is in þe veynes goiþ doun sotilli. & boþe þese veynes þat' ben pulsatif' & not' pulsatif' ben ioyned wiþ dura mater / Also þe [1] veyne strecchiþ more lower, & of' hem is engendrid pia mater / Aftir þei discenden doun to þe brayn, & þei bryngen lijf' & dewe 16 norischinge & cordialle[2] spiritis, þe which is in þe brayn & pere is defied, & pere resseyueþ naturel foorme of' vndirstondynge. Pia mater enuyrounneþ al þe brayn, & departiþ him into iij. celoles þat'

and make the dura mater.

The blood flows upwards in the artery,

downwards in the vein.

The veins from the pia mater

[1 lf. 59]

bring the vital spirit to the brain, and turn it into understanding.

iij. cellis of þe brayn

[2] MS. inserts *þe*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

from þe lyffere, by þe breyn pomne, of a bon whiche þat is y-holyde. 20 þat is y-clepyde pasillaris. And by þe same weye pere arysith an Arterye comynge fro þe herte, and þey ben Ioynde togedire, & of þe weffynge of þo tweyne pere is y-mad an hard pannycle þat is to sigge a clothi þat is vndir þe brayn panne, and he is hongyde wiþ 24 sum smale ligamentys to þe brayn panne in some of þe semys, þe whychi pannycle byndeþ þe bonys togedire, & it is clepyde **dura mater**. And yt is ryȝtful þat an Arterye scholde arysen vpwarde from bynepyne, for þe blod þat ys in hym þat is sotyH, & hys 28 meffynge þat ys pulsatyff'[3]; and he hadde discendyde from aboue dunwarde, he scholde han discendyde wiþ to gret [4]an hastynesse, but þe ascendynge tempritHi þulke fflux. And yt is couenable þat þe veyne discende, bycause þat þe blod þat ys in þe veynes ys more 32 þykkore, & þe blod þat is in þe veyne geþ doun softliche. & boþe þese veynes þat buþ[5] pulsatyf' & nouȝt pulsatyf' beþ y-Ioynede wiþ dura matre. And also þowȝ þe veyne streche more lowere, & of hem ys engendryde pia mater. Afterward þey descenden doun to 36 þe brayn. & þey bryngen lyf' & dywe norysschynge & cordyal spirites, þe whiche is in þe brayn and pere is diffyede, & pere resseyueþ naturel forme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater environeþ al þe brayn, & departytHi hym into þe þre celoles[6] þat beþ chaumbres: 40

[4 fol. 71 *a*]

[3] MS. *prilsatyff*. [5] *buþ*, above line. [6] MS. *cololes*.

ben chaumbris: þe firste, þe myddile, & þe laste. & þouȝ þat alle
þese ben dyuydid syngulerly bi hem-siluen, it semeþ þat þe celole[1]
þat is tofore in þe brayn is departid in two parties; & bi þat cause
4 summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. ventriclis of þe brayn. þe forþere partie
of þe brayn is greet & brood, bicause þat he schulde resceyue manye
spiritis þat ben sent to him; for þat place is propre instrument of
ymagynacioun þe which resceyueþ þingis þat comprehendiþ of
8 fantasie;[2] & þo þingis kunnen vndirstonde resceyueþ[3] bi propre
instrumentis þat longiþ. & þouȝ þat al þe brayn, in comparisoun of
þe herte & of alle opere membris of þe body, be deemed cold &
moist, þis celule hauynge comparisoun to opere celules is deemed
12 hoot & drie. & þe myddil part of þe brayn is lasse [4]þan ony opere
of þe opere two parties, & her foorme is punat[5] brood twoward þe
forþere side of þe heed, & scharpere twoward þe hyndere syde, þat
he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue ymagynatif þingis, & þo
16 þingis to ȝeue to þe ynnere partie, & þo þingis þat ben ȝeue to wiþ-
holde / þis ventricle is sett bitwene two addiamentis of þe brayn;
þe whiche addiamentis ben lijk to tweie buttokkis of a man þat ben
ioyned togidere, & þei ben [to]* þis ventricle as it were a sittynge

The foremost cell or Ventricle is the largest one, and contains Imagination.

Nota

[4 lf. 59, bk.]

The middle Ventricle has a pineal form,

lies between two additaments of the brain (optical lobes),

[1] MS. *celose.* [2] Lat.: res a phantasia comprehensas.
[3] Read, *þo þingis comyn undirstondynge resceyueþ.* Lat.: quas(res) communis sensus recipit. [5] *punat*, Lat.: pineatus.

---

20 þe firste, þe myddle, & þe laste. And þowȝ þat alle þese ben
diffyede senglerlyche by hem selffyn, yt semeþ þat þe celele þat is
tofore in þe brayn ys departyde in two parties, & by þat cause
sum men siggen, þat þere ben foure ventricles of þe brayn. þe
24 furþere part of þe brayn ys gret & brod, by cause þat he scholde
resseyue manye spirites þat ben y-sende to hym for þat place is
propre instrement of y-maginacion, þe whiche resceyueþ þynges þat
buþ comprehendide of fantasie; and þo þynges comen vndirstond-
28 ynge resceyueþ by propre Instrementys þat longyth to hym, and
þawȝ þat al þe brayn, in comparson of þe herte & of alle opere
membres of þe body, be y-demyde colde & moist, þis celule hauynge
comparson to opere celules ys y-demyde hot & dryȝe. þe myddel
32 part of þe brayn ys lasse þen eny of þe opere two partyes, & here
forme ys pyneat, brod towarde þe furþere syde of þe hed and
scharpere towarde þe hyndor syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to
resceyue y-maginatyf þynges & þo þynges to ȝefe to þe ynnere
36 partye & þo þynges þat beþ y-ȝefe to with holde. þis ventricle ys
y-sette bytwene tweyne additamentes of þe brayn, þe whiche addita-
mentes ben y-liche þe two buttokkes of a man þat beþ y-Ioynede
togedre, and þey beþ to * þis ventricle as yt were a syttynge place

Add. MS. 12,056.

place eiþir a couche vpon þe which he is drawen abrood, wha*n*ne
stretches and contracts during perception, þat' he resseyueþ ymagynatif' þingis; aftirward he is drawe togidere
as a worm, wha*n*ne þat' he resseyueþ ymagynatijf' þi*n*gis; & wha*n*ne
þat' þe sentencc of' þilke ymagynacio*un* is brouȝt' forþ, þa*n*ne þilke 4
is smaller than the other Ventricles. ventricle is drawe along', & also þe smallere eende of' þe ventricle
entriþ into þe ventricle þat' is bihynde *in* þe hecd. & þis ventricle is
myche lasse þan þe o*þe*re tweyne, bicause þat' no senewis p*ro*ceden[1]
not' out' of' hi*m*, & þat' manye þi*n*gis myȝte be comprehendid [in 8
litel]* place þat' vertu of' witt' myȝte þe su*n*nere be gaderid togidere
[2 lf. 60] to take his [2]cou*n*scil; & þis ventricle to comp*ar*isou*n* of' o*þe*re ven-
The third Ventricle is the largest, triclis is deemed hoot' & drie. & aftir þat' þe hyndere ventricle, þe
which is grettere & hardere þan þis; þe which [in]* comp*ar*isou*n* to 12
from it starts the Spinal Marrow. þe o*þe*re tweyne is demed cold & drie, þe which is brood twoward
þe fore p*ar*tie of' þe heed & scharp bakward, þe which resceyueþ
sente*n*ce þat' ben schewid & kepiþ hem p*ri*uyliche as a cheste kepiþ
tresour. & out' of' hi*m* goiþ out' nucha þoruȝ þe hole of' þe boon, 16
þat' is clepid passillaris, & þilke nucha is cloþid wiþ two pannicles
þat' goon out' of' þe brayn.

The brain is cold and moist, & al þe brayn is deemed cold & moist', bicause þat' he schulde

[1] MS. *procende.*

Add. MS. 12,056. o*þe*re a couche, vpon þe whyche he ys drawyne abrode, whe*n*ne 20
[3 fol. 71 *b*] þ*a*t he resseyueþ [3]y-maginatyff' þynges. And aft*er*warde he ys
y-drawe togedi*re* as a worme, whe*n*ne þ*a*t he resceyueth̄ y-magina-
tyff' þynges; and whe*n*ne þ*a*t þe sentence of þilke y-magynacio*un*
ys y-brought forth̄, þe*n*ne þilke ventricle ys y-drawe alonge. And 24
also þe smallere ende of þis ventricle entrith̄ into þe ventricle þ*a*t
ys behynde in þe hed, and þis ventricle ys myche lasse þe*n*ne þe
o*þe*re tweyne bycause þ*a*t non synwes p*ro*cedent not out of hy*m*,
and þ*a*t manye þynges myghte be endyde in litel* place, þat vertue 28
of wytt' myghte þe so*n*nere be y-gedryde togedre to taken hys
cou*n*seyH̄. And thys ventrycle to co*m*parson of o*þe*re ventricles ys
y-demyde hot & drye. Aft*er* þ*a*t ys þe hyndere ventricle, whiche
ys grattere & hardere þe*n*ne thys; þe whiche in *co*mparson of þe 32
o*þe*re tweyne ys y-demyde colde & drye, þe whiche is brod towarde
þe fore partye of þe hed & scharpe bachwarde, þe whyche ressey-
uyth̄ sentense þ*a*t beþ schewyde & kepyth̄ he*m* p*ri*uyliche as a
chest kepyth̄ tresore. And out of hy*m* goth̄ out[4] nucha[5] browe þe 36
hole of þe bon þ*a*t ys y-clepyde passilarys. And þilke nucha ys
y-clothyde[6] wiþ tweye pa*n*nycles þ*a*t goth̄ out of þe brayn. And
alle þe brayn ys y-demyde colde & moyst'. bycause þ*a*t he scholde

[4] *in þe a*, struck through after *goth out.*
[5] *nucha* on margin. [6] MS. *ys y-clothyde* twice.

atempren spiritual fumosite þat comen of þe herte, & þat he schulde not ben dried for to myche meuynge þat he haþ in worchinge of vertues; & þe brayn is whijt, bicause þat he schulde þe bettere
4 resseyue resoun & vnderstondynge / For if peyntouris whanne þey schulen peynte a table, first þei maken it whiȝt, for þer wole no colour lasten but þoruȝ him; & it is neische þat þe meuynge of vertues myȝte þe bettere han place; & þe brayn is towȝ þat þe
8 senewis þat goon out of hym [1]myȝte be þe more towȝ, & þe more þei ben enlongid from her bigynnynge & þe more hardere þei schulen be, & also þat þei schulden be bowable ynowȝ & nouȝt aȝenstondynge her hardnesse. & it is nessessarie þat þe brayn be cloþid wiþ
12 .ij. panniclis: þat is to seie .ij. cloþis, þat in his meuynge, [as]* I haue seid tofore, þat it schulde not be hurt of þe brayn panne. Al þe brayn is departid into .iij. colules[2] with addiamentis of þe panniclis of pie matris, þat þe spiritis myȝten þe lengere dwelle in þe ventricle
16 to resseyuen bi ordure of digestioun, foorme & perfeccioun more þan þei hadden first of þe herte; & þat euery vertu myȝte fulfille his accidens[3] in his ventricle, or þan þe vois[4] þat is comprehendid

white like a painter's table,

soft and tough.

[1 lf. 60, bk.]

The brain is protected by two Pannicles (Membranes);

which divide it into three cells,

where thought is formed.

[2] *cellis*, written above line. [3] *accidens* for *accioun*.

[4] *vois*, Lat.: "antequam res comprehensa posset ad sequentem ventriculum pertransire."

---

atempren spirituel ffumosites þat comyth̄ of þe herte, and þat he
20 scholde noȝte ben y-dreyȝede fforto myche meffynge þat he haþ in worchynge of vertues. And þe brayn is whit bycause þat scholde resceyue þe bettere resoun & vnderstondynge. Ffor þese peyntores, whenne þey schulle peynten a table, firste þey maken yt whyte, for
24 þere nylle none coloure lasten but yt be leyde vpon whyt; & it is þenne oþere rare, because þat vndirstondynge myȝte þe sonnere passe þorwe hym; & yt is nessche þat þe meffynges off vertues myghte þe betyre habbe place; & þe brayn ys towȝ, þat þe synwes
28 þat goth̄ out of hym, myȝte be þe [5]more towȝere, and þe more þat þey ben enlongyde from here bygynninge, þe more hardere þey scholde be; and also that þey scholde be bowable y-nowȝ nought aȝeynestondynge here hardnesse. And yt is necessarye þat þe
32 brayn scholde be cloþed with tweye clothys, þat in hys meffynge as *y haue seyde tofore he scholde nought ben y-hurt of þe brayn panne.

Also þe brayn ys departyde into þre celules with þe additamentes of þe pannycles of pie[6] matris, þat þe spirites myȝt þe
36 lengore dwellen in þe ventricles, to reseyfen by ordre, digestioun, forme & perfeccion, more þanne þey hadden fyrst of þe hert, and þat euery vertue myghte fulfylle hys accioun in hys ventrycle, ere

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 72 *a*]

[6] MS. *pie*, twice.

Part of the brain is most essential to life,

Nota

[3 lf. 61]

especially the substance of the Ventricles.

myȝte passe to þe ventricle þat is sewingge.[1] Not aȝenstondynge
þese propirtees þe brayn haþ sum substaunee of marie þe which
fulfilliþ þe voidenes of þe forseid pannielis. & þilke mary enuyroun-
neþ þe forseid pannielis, of þe whieh mary þer may sum partie in 4
hurtynge of þe heed be lost; & not aȝenstondynge þe goynge out[2]
of sum partie of þilke mary, a man schal noȝt die. For þis mary
[3]is not of þe substaunce of þe ventriclis of þe brayn of þe which
mynde is maad; for þei ben of so greet nobilite, þouȝ þat þer be 8
neuere so litil infeecioun, or ellis þat þer falle neuere so litil a lesyng
of hem[4] þei ben depriued of her heelþe, in so myche þat oon eolule[5]
may not be lost & a man be saued, as manye idiotis supposen con-
trarie / [6]Anotamie of yȝen, eeris, nose, ehekelappis, mouþ, tunge & 12
teeþ, we deferren to ordeyne in þe þridde tretis, in þe whiehe if god
wole we þenken to treten, & of opere siknessis, & of opere lymes
out-eept woundis.

Different kinds of wounds on the head.

& þo hurtyngis þat ben maad in þe heed eiþir þat ben maad 16
wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde. & wheþer þat þei ben wiþoute
wounde or wiþ wounde, eiþir þei ben wiþ brekynge of þe brayn

[1] MS. *swingge.*
[2] MS. inserts *ſ.*
[4] *of hem* written on margin.
[5] *cellul* written above.
[6] The MS. has a marginal note: *Anotemy off eyen, eres, nose, chekes, mouthe, tounge, teth.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

þanne þe foys þat ys eomprehendyde myghte passe to þe ventriele
þat ys sywynge. Nowȝt aȝeynestondynge þese propretes, þe brayn 20
haþ sum substaunee of marie whiehe fulfilleþ þe voydenesses of þe
forseyde pannycleres. And þilke marye envyrownyth̃ þe foreseyde
pannyeles, of þe whyehe marye þere may sum partye in þe hurtynge
of þe hed ben y-lost; and noȝt ageynestondynge þe goynge out of 24
sum partye of þilke marye, a man schal noȝt deye. Ffor þis marye
is nought of þe substaunee of þe ventrieles of þe brayn, of whiehe
mynde ys y-mad; ffor þey ben of so grete noblete, ȝif þere be neuere
so litel infectioun opere ellys þat þere falle neuere so lytel a lesynge 28
of hem, þey ben depreffyde of alle here helthe, in so myche þat on
eelele may noȝt ben y-lost, and a man ben saffyde, as manye
ydyotes supposen. Anothomye of eynen, neose, erne, ehekelappes,
mouþ, tonge & teþ, we deferren to ordeynen in þe þridde tretys, in 32
þe distynciounn whiche ȝif god wol, we þynkeþ forto treten of opere
syknesse of þe lymes, outsepte woundes. And þo hurtynges þat
beþ y-mad in þe hed, opere þey ben mad without wounde, opere
with wounde. & wheþere þat it be wyth̃ wounde opere wiþouten 36
wounde, opere þey ben with brekynge of þe brayn panne, opere

panne or wiþoute brekynge of þe brayn panne / Or wheþer þat it be maad wiþ breche of þe brayn panne, or wiþoute breche of þe brayn panne, summe ben wiþ hurtynge of þe brayn, & summe ben wiþoute hurtynge of þe brayn / & riȝt as þilke hurtis haue difference in tokenes, so þei han difference in perels & pronosticaciouns & maners with þe whiche þei musten ben holpen /

[1]& if þat ony hurt be in þe heed wiþoute ony wounde as wiþ fallynge or wiþ smytynge of a stoon or of a staf or wiþ sum oþir þing þat brusiþ, & if þat it be wiþoute breche of þe brayn panne & wiþ hirtynge of þe brayn panne, it nediþ not but schauynge of þe heed & anoyntynge with hote oilis of rosis & [abofen þe vncture]* to strawen on þe poudre of mirtillis seed, & streyne þe place wiþ a boond til al þe place be fastned & þe swellynge be vanyschid awey / In þis maner þou fastne al þe place þat no þing schal be corrumpid, or ellis þer schal dwelle a litil corrupcioun, & if þat ony þing of corrumpcioun abide, þe place schal be opened wiþ an instrument, & so schal þe quyttur be excludid, & he schal be curid riȝt as oþere empostymes þat ben woundid.

[1 lf. 61, bk.]

hurt of þe heed without any wound or fracture.

Nota Have the head shaved and an ointment applied.

& if þat þe brayn panne were broke wiþoute wounde of þe heed þe which may be knowe bi disposicioun of þe cause & also of þe sike man, in biholdynge, if þat þat smytiþ were strong, or ellis

Fracture of the skull, without any open wound.

---

without brekynge of þe breyn panne. And wheþer [2]þat yt be mad wiþ þe breche of þe brayn panne oþere withouten breche of þe breyn panne, some ben with hurtynge of þe brayn, some without hurtynge of þe brayn. And ryȝte as þilke hurtynges habben dyfference in toknes, so þey hauen differens in pereles & pronosticaciouns & maners, with þe whiche þey most ben y-holpen. And ȝif an hurt be in þe hed withouten wounde, as with fallynge, oþere with smytinge of a ston, oþere a staff, oþere with sum oþere thynge þat brusyth, and ȝif þat yt be withouten breche of þe brayn panne, & with outen hurtynge of þe brayn panne, it nedyth nouȝt but schaffynge of þe hed, & anoyntynge wiþ hote oyle of roses, and abofen þe vncture* to strawyn on þe poudre of þe seed of myrtylles, & streyne þe place with a band tyl al þe place be y-fastnyde & þe swellynge be y-vanschyd aweye. In þis manere þou schalt fastne al þe place, þat noþyng schal be corumped, oþere ellys þere schall dwelle a lytel corupcioun. And ȝif enye þynge of corumpcion abyde, þe place schal ben y-opnyde with an Instrument, & so alle þe quyter schal be excludyd, & he schal ben y-curyd ryȝt as oþere empostemys þat beþ y-woundyde. And ȝif þat þe brayn panne were y-broke withoute enye wounde of þe hed, þe whiche may ben y-knowe by dysposicioun of þe cause & eke of þe syke man, in byholdynge ȝif þat þat smyt

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 72 b]

Symptoms of the fracture: [1 lf. 62] as giddiness, vomiting, headache.

þat þe sike haue falle from his place, or ellis þat he was smyte *with* strong smyti*ng*, & also if þat he fel & my3te not hastili arise. [1]& if þat he hadde scotomie,[2] þat is to seie a maner sijknes, wha*nne* þat þer semeþ as flie*n* or o*þe*re smale gnattis fleen tofore his y3en / or 4 ellis he spewiþ his mete, or he feliþ to gret akþe in þe heed, & if þat he may not breke a knotte of a straw wiþ hise teeþ, & if þe heed be smyte wiþ a li3t drie staf as of salow or ellis of pinee— & þanne leie þin eere to his heed, & if þat þe boon be hool þou 8 schalt he*re* an hool soun aftir þe comp*ar*isou*n* of þe soun of an hool belle, also if þou makist þe sike man to holde bitwene his teeþ a þred twyned & I-wexid, & þanne bigynne to harpe *with* þi nailis vpon þe þred faste bi þe sike mannes mouþ, & so harpe wiþ þi naylis 12 vpon þe þred alwey streyned & makynge sou*n* to þe eende of þe þred, & þilke þred schal ben on le*n*kþe fro þe mouþ of a eubite, & so þou schalt harpe ofte tymes, & if þat þe pacient mowe susteyne þe sou*n*, he haþ not his brayn pa*nne* broke, for if his brayn 16 panne were broke, þe sike man my3te not susteyne þe sou*n* of þe þred. Alle þese signys, or ellis manye of he*m* bitokenen þat þe brayn panne is broken / & tweyne [3]of þe laste signys ben

Test by harping on a thread, which the patient holds with his teeth. [3 lf. 62, bk.]

[2] *scotomie.* Vigo Interpret. "*Scotomia.* They shoulde saye, Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth, when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

Add. MS. 12 056.

were stronge, o*þe*re ellys þat þe syke haue y-falle*n* fro*m* hye plaee, 20 o*þe*re ellys þat he was y-smyte *with* stronge smytynge; and also 3if þat he fel & myght nought hastlye aryse, and 3if þat he hadde scotomye: þat ys to sugge a mane*re* seknesse, whe*nne* þat þere semytħ as flye3es, o*þe*re smale blake gnattys vley3e*n* tofore hys 24 ey3en, o*þe*re ellys he spyweþ hys mete, o*þe*re he felytħ to grete akþe in hys hed, and 3if þat he may nought breken a knotte of a straw3 *with* hys tetħ, and 3if þe hed be smyte*n* *with* a ly3t drey3e staff, as of salwe o*þe*re ellys pyne, and þe*nne* leye þy*n* [4]ere to hys hed; & 28 3if þat þe bon be hol, þo*n* sehalt heren an hol sou*n* aft*er* þe *com*parsou*n* of þe sou*n* of an hol belle & a bloke belle; also 3if þat þou makyste þe syke ma*n* to holde bytwene hys teþ a þrede y-twyned & y-waxed, & þe*nne* begy*nne* to harpe*n* *with* þy naylles vpon þe 32 þrede faste be þe seke ma*n*nes mouthħ, & so harpe *with* þyne naylles vpon þe þred alle wey streyned, in makynge sou*n* to þe ende of þe þred, & þilke þred schal ben of lengþe fro*m* þe mouthħ be þe spaee of a Kubyte; and þo*n* schalt harpe so ofte tymes, & 3if þat þe 36 paeient mowe susteyne þe sou*n*, he haþ no3t hys brayn pa*nne* y-broke; ffor 3if hys breyn pa*nne* were broke, þe seke ma*n* myghte nought susteyne þe sou*n* of þe þred. Alle þese signes o*þe*re ellis manye of hem betokne þat þe breyn pa*nne* is broken. And to þe 40

[4 fol. 73 *a*]

more certeyn þan ony of þe o*per*e. & vndirstonde þat þe brayn pa*n*ne mai ofte tymes be to-broken, & neþeles þe brayn feliþ noon harm i*n* þe bigy*n*nynge. But aftirward ofte tymes of hirtynge
4 of þe brayn panne, þe brayn is hirt / Galion witnessy*n*ge, þe brekynge of boonys in þe heed is dyu*er*s in p*er*els fro brekynge of o*per*e boonys in þe bodi, for þe accidens þe which þat falliþ ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Neiþir is no man ne neuere
8 was þat myȝte euermore helpe to alle accidentis, wha*n*ne þat þe brayn was meued i*n* þe bigy*n*ny*n*ge þat not aȝenstondynge his help,[1] be he neuere so good a leche, þat þe sike ne muste die /

Galion

Fracture of the skull is very dangerous,

the following accidents (symptoms) are frequently mortal.

Euel accide*n*tis þe whiche þat [comyth to þe accidentes of þe
12 brayn & of hys]* pannicle ben[2] alwey dwelly*n*ge as constipac*ciou*n of þe wombe, or ellis þe flix of þe wombe, or ellis crokidnes, or ellis lokynge asquynt of þe iȝen, or ellis wepinge of þe oon yȝe, or ellis an hard scotomie, or ellis febilnes of alle þe ve*r*tues & chau*n*gynge.
16 Not oonly animal ve*r*tues, þat be*n* vertues of þe brayn, ben[3] I-chau*n*gid, also naturel ve*r*tues & liui[4] ve*r*tues—sensibles & [5]motifes ;

Evil symptoms: yvel accidentes

If the animal, natural, and vital functions,

[5 lf. 63]

[1] *help* in margin.

[2] One word "*spewinge*" omitted, and *as* erroneously inserted in both MSS. Lat.: "Mala autem accidentia . . sunt vomitus perseverans constipatio ventris," etc.

[3] MS. inserts *nouȝt*.

[4] *liui*, Lat. vitales.

---

laste signes beþ mor*e* serteyne þe*n*ne enye of þe o*per*e. And vnde*r*stonde þat þe breyn pa*n*ne may ofte tymes ben to-broke, & naþeles
20 þe brayn felyth nought in þe bygy*n*ninge none hurtynge. But aft*er*wardys ofte tyme of hurtynge of þe brayn pa*n*ne þe brayn ys y-hurt, Galien wytnessynge; the brekynge of þe bonys of þe hed ys dyuers in perelys fro*m* brekyng of oþer bonys of þe body, for þe
24 accidentes whiche þat fallyth ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn pa*n*ne. Ne þe*r*e nys no ma*n*, ne neue*r*e ne was, þat myȝte euyre mor*e* helpe*n* to alle accidentes whe*n*ne þat þe brayn was meffyde in þe bygy*n*ninge, þat nouȝt ageynestondynge his helpe, be he neue*r*e
28 so gode a leche, þat þe syke ne moste deye. Euyle accidentes whiche þat *comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys pa*n*nycle, be*n* alwey dwellynge: as *con*stipaciou*n* of þe wombe, o*per*e ellys flux of þe wombe, o*per*e ellys crokydnesse, o*per*e ellys lokynge a-
32 squynte of þe eyȝen, o*per*e ellys wepynge of þat on eyȝe, o*per*e ellys an hard scotomye, o*per*e ellys ffebylnesse of alle þe vertues & chau*n*gynge. And noȝt only anymal vertues, þat beþ ve*r*tewys of þe brayn, beþ noȝt y-chau*n*gyde, but also natureH ve*r*tewys, & lyfy
36 ve*r*tewys sensyble & motifes; sensible, for þat þey seen noȝt

Add. MS. 12,056.

the imagination, reason,

memory, and motor power are affected.

A strong fever preceded by a cold shivering,

blackness of the tongue, blains, etc., are bad symptoms.

[7 lf. 63, bk.]

sencible, for þei be*n*[1] not' riȝtfulliche; for boþe her heerynge & o*þer*e
comou*n* wittis ben troublid; also p*ri*uy v*er*tues þat' be*n* troublid as
ymaginatif', for þei bileuen þei seen, [þat þey seen nouȝt];* also
resonable vertues, for þei speken in deuyn[2] & answeren wha*n*ne þei 4
ben nouȝt I-askide / also[3] memorial þ*at*' þei þenke nouȝt' on her owne
name / also meuable v*er*tues is so myche greued þ*at*' v*n*neþe þei mou*n*
nouȝt' meue hem namcliche aboute þe necke. Þei syke greuousleche,
& a scharp feuere falliþ, þe which arrigor, þat' is to seie a cold schurg- 8
ynge[4] goiþ tofore / Arrigor is no þing' ellis, but' as it' werc a p*ri*ck-
ynge of' nedelis, or ellis of' netlis i*n* þe fleisch, & if' þis rigor come wiþ
a feuere, or ellis w*ith*out' feuere, it' is þe worste signe tokene of' deeþ,
& if' þe crampe folowe it' is deedly / Also þese ben yuel accidentis: 12
blaknes of' þe tu*n*ge, bleynis aboute þe skyn or þe chekis, or in ony
p*ar*tie of' þe heed þa*n*ne [in]* þe wou*n*de, is an yuel signe.[5] & sum-
tyme blood comeþ out' at' þe eeris & noseþrillis. & if' þe more p*ar*tie
of' þese tokenese or ellis alle come*n*, þe sike ma*n* muste nedis die, 16
namely, & þe accidentis conteynen[6]; [7]& specialy if' þe sike man
haue be her-to-fore manye daies in good disposiciou*n*, & after þilke

[1] *ben*, error for *seen*. Lat.: quia non recte vident.
[2] See page 102, note 2. [3] MS. *alle*. [4] *schurgynge*, schurien, to shower.
[5] Lat.: vel in alia parte capitis quam in vulnere: quod est malum signum.
[6] *conteynen* for *contynwen*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[8 fol. 73 b]

Sygnu*m* Mortal.

al[8]so p*ri*uye vertues ben y-trublyde as ymagenatyff', ffor þey
beleffe þ*at* þey seen, *þat þey seen nouȝt; also resonable vertue, for 20
þey speken in deveyn, & þey answeren wha*n*ne þey beþ nouȝt
y-askyde; also memoryal, þ*at* þey þynke nouȝt on here owne name;
also meffable vertue ys so myche y-greuyde, þ*at* vnneþe þey mowe
nouȝt mefen he*m* namlyche aboute þe nekke. Þey syken greuouslye, 24
and a scharpe ffeuere fallyth̄, þe whiche a rigoor goth̄ tofore. A
rigoor nys nothynge ellys but as yt were a p*ri*kynge of nedlys o*þer*e
of nettlys in þe flesch̄, and ȝif þis rigoor come w*ith* a ffeuyre o*þer*e
ellys w*ith* oute*n* ffeuyre, yt is worst signe, and ȝif the crampe fol- 28
we*n*, yt ys dedlye. Also þese beþ yuele accidentes: blaknesse of þe
tonge, bleynesse[9] aboute þe chyn o*þer*e þe chek*e*nesse, o*þer*e in enye
o*þer*e p*ar*tye of þe hed þe*n*ne in* þe wou*n*de, ys an yuele signe, and
su*m* tyme blod comyth̄ out at þe erys & noseþrylles. And ȝif þe 32
more p*ar*tye of þese toknys, o*þer*e ellys alle come*n*, þe syke man
moste nedys deyȝen, namlye & þo Accidentes contynewen, and
specialy ȝif þ*at* þe syke ma*n* haue y-be tofore manye daies in gode
disposiciou*n*, & after þilke disposiciou*n* þese yuele accidentes fallen; 36

[9] *bleynesse*, leady colour. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. bley; mistake for *bleynes*, blains.

good disposiciou*n* þilke yuel accidentis fallen; but' sumtyme in þe bigy*n*nynge þese yuel accidentis fallen wickid, & aftirward bi good gouernaile & good help of' þe leche þilke yuel accidentis ben
4 departid & good comeþ, and þanne it' is a [good]* signe, for it' bitokeneþ strenkþe of' kynde, hauynge no drede of' þe sijknes, & ku*n*nynge of' þe leche / O holi goost', al þing' fulfillynge, alle þingis sanctifiynge, & alle þingis liȝtnynge, & alle þingis gouernynge, opene
8 þe yȝen of' he*m* þat' loken & reden on þis book, þat' þei mou*n* vndirstonde þat' þi*n*g' þat' is weel seid, & þat þei mou*n* demene[1] þoruȝ þi cleernes þat', þat is yuel seid, & specialy in þis caas[2] where þat oonly not I þat' am vnwijs & vnku*n*nynge, but' also greete maistris
12 & more ku*n*nynge han writen sotilliche, & han sett' in þis caas dyu*er*s vndirstondynge. Ne þei ne I ne foond no wey in þis werk þat' myȝte us make sikir, specialiche i*n* scryuyngis of' þe brayn pa*n*ne, i*n* þe whiche cure[3] dyvers men haue[3] I-wrouȝt' dyu*er*sliche.
16 [4]I wole bigynne at' a symple wou*n*de of' þe fleisch of' þe heed, in þe which þat' þe*r* is noon hurtynge of' þe brayn ne brayn panne. // Biholde whe*þ*ir þilke wou*n*de be m*aa*d wiþ a swerd or ony þi*n*g' sembla[b]le to it', & þa*n*ne sowe þilke wou*n*de, & caste aboue þe

It is a good sign when evil symptoms grow better.

May the Holy Ghost enlighten the readers.

[4 lf. 64]

Nota

Treatment of a symple wounde.

[1] *demene*, O.Fr. "demener," for *demen*.
[2] *in þis eaas*. Lat.: in isto passu. See below *pas*.
[3] *eure*, *have*, above line.

---

20 ryȝtfullyche, for boþe herynge & o*þe*re comyn wyttes ben y-trublyde; but su*m*tyme in þe bygy*n*ninge euyle accidentes comyth̄, after*w*arde, by good gouernayle & by gode helpe of the leche, þese euyle accidentes ben dep*a*rtyde & good comyth̄, & þe*n*ne yt is a good*
24 signe, for it betoknyth̄ strengþe off' kynde, hauynge no*n* drede of þe syknesse & konyngnesse of þe leche. O holy gost, al thynge fulfyllynge, al þinge sanctifyinge, lytnynge & gouernynge, opyne þe eyȝen of hem þ*a*t redyn in thys booke, þ*a*t þey mowe*n* vndirstonde
28 þ*a*t þynge þat is wel seyde, & þat þey mowe demen þorwe þy clernesse þ*a*t þat[5] ys euyle seyde, specyaliche in pas where þ*a*t only nouȝte y þ*a*t am vnwys & vnku*n*nynge, but also grettere maistryes & more ku*n*ny*n*ge han y-write*n* dotousliche. & haþ y-sett in þis cas
32 [6]dyu*er*se vnde*r*stondynges. Ne þey ne y ne fonde no*n* wey in þis werke þ*a*t myȝte make*n* vs sykere, specialiche in grefynges of þe breyne pa*n*ne, in whose cure dyu*er*se me*n* han wrought dyu*er*slye; y wyH̄ begy*n*ne at a symple wou*n*de of þe flesch̄ & of þe hed, in þe
36 whiche þ*a*t þere ys no*n* hurtynge of þe brayn ne of þe brayn pa*n*ne. Byholde whar þilke wou*n*de be mad with̄ a swerde o*þe*re enye þynge semblable to hit, & þa*n* sowe*n* þylke wou*n*de, & caste abofe*n* þe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 74 *a*][7]

[5] MS. *at*.
[7] Heading of the page: *Cure of symple Wounde off þe hed.*

wou*n*de þe poudre of' lym tofore seid, & do al þing' bi ordre, as it' is conteyned aboue *in* þe chapitle of' wou*n*dis of' fleisch /

Treatment of a contused wound.

& if' þat' a wou*n*de be ma*a*d *in* þe heed wiþ brusynge, as wiþ a mace,[1] or wiþ a staf', or ony þi*n*g' þat' brusiþ, þa*n*ne it' is nessessarie to leie aboue þe brusynge a maturatif' ma*a*d of' .iiij. pa*r*ties of' watir, & oon pa*r*tie of' comon*n* oile & flour of' wheete, þa*t* suffisiþ to make it' þikke,[2] til þa*t*' þe mater þa*t*' is brusid be maturid; þe which maturatif' schal be do abrood vpon a ly*n*nen cloop & leid to þe wou*n*de, & þou schalt' fulfille þe wou*n*de wiþ oile of' rosis & ȝelke of' an ey, & lynt' of' an oold ly*n*ne*n* cloop medlid togidere, til þa*t*' þe wou*n*de ȝeue quytture & þe akþe be aswagid. & aftirward leye *in* þe wou*n*de drie lynt' of' old cloop, & fille þe wou*n*de of' þe same lynet', & leie aboue þe mu*n*dificatif' of' mel roset' & barly mele, [3]til þa*t*' it' be pe*r*fiȝtly clensid; & leie aboute þe wou*n*de, from þe bigy*n*nynge til þa*t*' þe wou*n*de be parfiȝtly clensid, a defensif' of' bole armonyak, þe which I haue told ofte tyme; aftirward incarne it', þa*t*' is to seie brynge ou*er* fleisch, & aftirward consowde.

Apply a maturatif,

[3 lf. 64, bk.] a mundificatif, and a defensif.

Cure of a wound which touches the membrane.

& if' þa*t*' þis wou*n*de towche þe pannicle þa*t*' byndiþ boonys togid*er*e, þouȝ þa*t*' þe boon be not' to-broken, charge it' not' litil, but'

[1] *mace*, Lat. macia.
[2] MS. *þilke*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

poud*re* of lym tofo*re* seyd, and do alle þynge be ordre as yt is *con*teynede aboue in þe chapiteH off' wou*n*de of þe flesch̄; and ȝif þat a wou*n*de be mad in þe hed w*ith* a brusynge, as w*ith* a mace o*per*e a staf', o*per* w*ith* enye þynge þat brusyth̄, þa*n*ne it is necessarie to legge*n* abofe þe brusynge a maturatyf', y-mad of foure pa*r*tyes of wate*r*, & on pa*r*tye of comy*n* oyle & floure of whete, þat suffiseþ to maken yt þikke, tyl þat þe matere þat is brusyde be matured; þe whiche maturatyff' schal be do abrode on a eloþ & y-leyde to þe wonde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wou*n*de w*ith* oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an neyȝe,[4] & lenet of an olde ly*n*ne clout y-medlyde to gedre, tyl þat þe wou*n*de ȝif quyte*r* & þe akþe be aswagede. & afte*r*warde leye in þe wou*n*de dreye lynet of ly*n*ne eloth̄, & fille þe wou*n*de fuH of þe same lynet, & leye aboue þe mu*n*dificatyff' of mel rosat & barlye mele, tyl þat he be pe*r*fitlye clansyde, & leye aboute þe wou*n*de fro þe begy*n*nynge, tyl þat þe wonde be pe*r*fitlie clansyde, a defensyf of bol armonyak, þe whiche y haue tolde of ofte tymes; afterward incarne hit—þat is to sigge, brynge ou*er*e flesch̄, & afte*r*warde *con*soude yt; and ȝif þat þis wou*n*de touchith̄ þe pa*n*nycle þat bynde þe bonys togedre, þowȝ þat þe bon be nouȝt to-broken,

Maturatif for brosure

[4] *neyȝe* at the beginning of a line.

take þerof' good hede, & do þerynne in þe wounde hoot' oile of' rosis doun to þe pannicle þat' byndiþ boonys togidere, til þat' þer be noon akynge in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde as þou woldist' kepe oþere woundis of' þe brayn panne; & kepe þe brayn fro cold & fro heete, for cold is moost' greuous to boonys & to panniclis þat' ben woundid. þer ben summe maner men þat' leien wiþout' forþ on alle maner woundis of' þe heed, wheþer it' be wiþ wounde of' þe brayn panne or wiþoute þe wounde of' þe brayn panne, in what' maner þat' þe heed be hurt', a lynnen clooþ wet' in þe oynement' þat' is maad on þis maner / Take white rosis libram ℔, oile of' rosis ℥ v, whiȝt' wex ℥ iij, þei melten alle togidere in an yren panne, & þei maken [2]þerof' .j. bodi, & boile it' aftirward in good wyn bi þe space of' an hour; & þei leten it' aftirward nyȝ colden, & þei weten þerinne a pece of' a lynnen clout', & þei schapen þilke pece wiþ a schere aftir þat' þe wounde is, & panne þei baþe þilke pece in good wiyn, & þanne leie þilke pece [on þe wounde]*, & anoon aftir þei leien vpon þilke pece on eiþir side of' þe wounde a plumaciol I-wet' in good hoot' wiyn; & þei leien on a drie pelowe of' herdis vpon þo two wete pelowis, þe which drie pelewe of' herdis schal comprehende þe tweie wete, & bynde hem faste; & þei ȝeuen to summen to drynke

Apply olium ro. hoot.

Nota

Some physicians use a general treatment for wounds on the head.

Entreet.[1]

They apply Compresses with an ointment, [2 lf. 65]

[1] *Entreet.* See entreten ne. entreat, Mätzner, *Dict.*

---

charge yt noȝt litel but take þere of gode hede, & do in þe wounde hot oyle of roses don to þe pannycle, tyl þat þere be non akþe in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde, as þou woldiste kepen oþer wondys of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, fro colde & from hete; ffor colde ys most greuest' to bonys & to pannycles þat beþ woundyde. [3]þere ben some manere of men þat leggen withouten forth̄ on alle manere wondys of þe hed, wheþere it be wiþ wounde of þe brayn panne oþere without wounde of þe brayn panne, in what manere þat þe hed ben y-hurt, a lynnen cloth̄ y-wett in þe oignement y-made in þis manere: ℞ whit resine ℔. ℔., oyle of roses ℥ v., whyt wex ℥ iij., þey melten alle togedres in an erthyne panne, & þey maken þere of on body, & þey boyllen yt afterward in gode wyn by þe space of an Oure; & þey leten afterwarde nyȝh̄ colden, & þey weten þere ynne a pece of lynnen cloth̄, & þey schapen þilke pece with a schere aftere þe wounde ys, & þey baþen þylke pece in gode wyn, & þey leggen þilke pece on þe wounde,* and anon afterwarde þey leggen on þilke pece on eiþere syde of þe wounde a plumacyole, y-wet in good hote wyn, & þey leggen on a drye pylwe of herdes vpon þo tweye wete pylwes, þe whiche dreye pylwe schall comprehende þe tweye wete & bynden hem faste; and þey ȝeuen some men to drynken gode

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 74 b]

Cura Ancellina

and diet with wine and fowls.

riȝt[t] good wy*n*, & to ete good fleisch of[f] he*n*nes & of[f] capou*n*s; & [1] þei comau*n*den to drynke a drope of[f] wate*r*; & þei gouernen on þis mane*r* alle me*n* þat[t] ben wou*n*did i*n* þe heed differentliche, & þei seyn þat[t] mo me*n* ben heelid bi þis mane*r* cure þan dien. But[t] bi as 4

I never dared to try this treatment.

myche as alle auctouris ben aȝens þis cure, namely i*n* dietynge, I ne was neue*r*e hardi to p*r*eue þis mane*r* cure; for i*n* ma*n*nys bodi a

[2 lf. 65, bk.]

medicyn schal not be p*r*eued which þat[t] is not[t] acordynge to resou*n* /

Nota bene.

For alle autouris acorden þat[t] þer is no þi*n*g[g] [2] þat[t] so soone greueþ þe 8

Wine is especially dangerous.

brayn & þe senewis as wiyn doiþ, & vsynge of[f] fleisch is cause of[f] bryngynge yn an hoot[t] enpostyme. Neue*r*e-þe-latter if[f] a ma*n* þat[t] vsiþ of[f] custu*m* sich a mane*r* dietynge haue a strong[g] heed, i*n* his hele hi*m* drediþ no wiyn, & þe ve*r*tu of[f] hi*m* þat[t] is sijk be strong[g]— 12

in su*m* manere of[f] folk wiþ þis maner gouernaile, ve*r*tu is more stre*n*kþid, & þe su*n*ner þei be*n* heelid. But I ne p*r*ocede not[t] wiþ sich a maner dietynge bi cause of[f] drede lest[t] an hoot[t] enpostyme schulde come to þe sore, but I p*r*ocede in dietynge & worche aboute 16

þe wou*n*de as I haue scid tofore.

Treatment if the skull is broken:

Oþe*r*e men loke [in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat]* þe brekynge of[f] þe brayn panne be w*it*h a greet[t] wou*n*de, or smal

[1] Lat.: & præcipiunt quod unam guttam aquæ *non* bibat.

Add. MS. 12,056.

wyn, & to ete*n* gode fflesch of capou*n*s & of he*n*nys; & þey 20

comau*n*den to drynke*n* a drope watere; and þey gouer*n*e*n* on þis mane*r*e alle me*n* þat ben wou*n*dyde in þe hed differentlyche, & þey sigge þat mo[3] me*n* ben y-helyde by þis mane*r*e cure þe*n* dyȝen. But by as mychc as alle auttorys beþ aȝeyns þis cure, namlyche in 24

dyetynge, y ne was neue*r*e hardye to p*r*euen þis mane*r*e of cure; ffor in ma*n*nys bodye a medycine schal nouȝt ben p*r*euyde, whiche þat is noȝt acordynge to resou*n*; ffor alle auctores acorden, þat þe*r*e ys noþynge þat so sone greuyth þe brayn & þe synwes as wyn doþ, 28

and vsynge of flesch ys cause of bryngynge in an hot Emposteme. Neue*r*e þe late*r*e ȝif a ma*n* þat vsith of custome swyche a mane*r*e dyetynge haffe a stronge hed, & in hys hele he dredyth no*n* wyn,

[4 fol. 75 *a*]

& þe ve*r*tue of hy*m* þat ys seek [4]be stronge, in some mane*r*e of folk 32

wi*th* þis mane*r*e of[f] gou*e*rnaylle ve*r*tue ys more y-streynþed, & su*n*ne*r*e þey ben y-helyde. But y ne p*r*ocede nouȝt wiþ swyche a mane*r*e dyetynge, by cause of drede leste an hote empostome scholde come to þe sore; but y p*r*ocede in dyetynge & worche aboute þe wou*n*de, 36

as y haue seyde toforn. Oþe*r*e me*n* loken* in brekynges of þe brayn pa*n*ne, wheþe*r* þat þe brekynge of þe breyne pa*n*ne be w*it*h a gret wou*n*de oþe*r*e a smal wou*n*de, oþe*r*e w*it*hout wou*n*de; and ȝif

[3] MS. *no*.

wou*n*de, or w*ith*oute wou*n*de. *&* if þat þe be a greet wou*n*de, þei loken whe*þe*r þei mou*n* se if ony pece of þe brayn panne be to-broke*n*, & þei don it awey. & aftirward þei putten bitwene þe
4 brayn pa*n*ne & dura*m* matrem a þinne clout wet *in* þe white of an ey, & su*m*what þe white comp*r*essid out, & þei fulfillen al þe wou*n*de of þe brayn panne w*ith* sich a man*er* cloop. & þei leyn *in* þe ou*er* wou*n*de which þat is *in* þe fleisch, lynet wet in þe white of an ey,
8 til þat þe blood be stau*n*chid; [1]& þei leien aboue a plumaciol wet *in* an ey. & wha*n*ne þe blood is stau*n*chid, þei leien a dreie cloop vndir þe brayn panne in þe wou*n*de, & þei leien aboue þe wou*n*de a potage, þe which engendriþ quytture; & wha*n*ne þat þe quytture is
12 engendrid, þei leien *in* þe wou*n*de carp,[2] eiþir lynet of a cloute; & þei anoy*n*te aboute þe wou*n*de wiþ vnguento fusco; & at þe laste eende þei leien aboue apostolico*n*.[3]

Broken pieces are removed, wet compresses applied to stanch the blood; [1 lf. 66] then dry compresses, a poultice, and an ointment.

& þei asaie in þis maner if þat þe brekynge of þe brayn pannc
16 be wiþ a rimel,[4] þat is to seie a chene, eiþir a creueis; & if þat ilke creueis peerse to wiþi*n*ne, makynge þe sike man to streync his

Treatment of a fissure of the skull:

[2] *carp*, Lat. carpia, 'charpie.' *oile* struck through after *carp*.

[3] *Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelve Drugs, according to the number of the Apostles.—Kersey. 1706.

[4] *rimel*, Lat.: si fractura esset rimalis. O.Fr. rimule, Lat. rimula, a small chink.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat þe*re* be*n* a gret wou*n*de þey loken whe*þe*re þey mowe seen ȝif enye pece of þe brayn pa*n*ne ben to-broken, & þey don yt awey.
20 And aft*er*warde þey putten bytwene þe bray*n* pa*n*ne & duram matrem a þe*n*ne clout y-wett in þe whyte of an eyȝe, & su*m*what þe whyte *com*pressyde out, & þey fulfyllen alle þe wou*n*de of þe brayn pa*n*ne w*ith* swiche a man*er*e clothe. & þey legge*n* in þe ofe*re*
24 wou*n*de whiche þat ys in þe flesche, lenyt y-wett in þe whyte of an eyȝe, tyl þat þe blode be stau*n*chyde; & þey legge*n* aboue a plumacyole y-wet in an eyȝe. And wha*n*ne þat þe blode ys y-staunchyde, þey leggen a dreyc cloth vndire þe brayn pa*n*ne in þe
28 wou*n*de, and þey legge*n* aboue þe wou*n*de a potage, the whiche engendryth quytere; & whe*n*ne þat þe quyte*r* ys engendryde, þey legge*n* in þe wou*n*de carp o*þe*re lyneth of a clout; and þey anoy*n*t[5] aboute þe wou*n*de w*ith* oygnement fusco; and at þe laste ende þey
32 legge*n* aboue Apostolicon. And þey assayen in þis manere: ȝif þat þe brekynge of þe brayn pa*n*ne be w*ith* a rimele, þat ys to seye a chyne, o*þe*re a creueys; & ȝif þat þilke creveys p*er*se to wiþy*n*ne, makynge þe syke man to streyne*n* hys mouþ & hys nese, & þey

[5] At the end of the line.

mouþ & his nose, & þei maken hi*m* þa*n*ne to blowen, & þei loke*n*[1] if' ony þi*ng*' exale out' bi þilke rimele,[2]— as blod or ony other mater, þei drede not' to perse þilke rimelle. & þa*n*ne su*m*me seien þa*t*' þilke rimele schulde be to-broke eiþir peersid from þe toon eende to 4 þe toþir wiþ ri*n*spindelis,[3] pe*r*ischinge þe brayn scolle / A rinspindil is an instrument' þa*t*' coteleris poudren[4] wi*th* her haftis, þe which figure schal be schapen i*n* þis same chapitle folowynge. & þe worste þi*ng*' þa*t*' a man may do is to peerse þe rimele on boþe sidis / 8 Bu*t*' oþe*re* [5]men don bettere which þa*t*' peerse þe rimele on þe oon eende which is moost' hangynge; & þei make*n* as manye hoolis, oon biside anoþe*r*, as it' is nessessarie to make an hole i*n* þe brayn panne, bi þe which hole if' ony þi*ng*' be fallen vpon, dura*m* matre*m* 12 my3te be clensid; & þese, in as myche as touchinge trepanaciou*n*[6] worchiþ best' / & wha*n*ne þa*t*' þei han maad manye hoolis, þei kutten from oon hole to anoþe*r* hole wiþ an instrument', þa*t*' þei mou*n* drawe out' þe boon þa*t*' is bitwene þe ordure of' holis þa*t*' was 16 ma*a*d & þe rimele, & þei casten hi*m* awey, & aftirward þei *pro*ceden

Some physicians open the fissure from end to end,

which is entirely wrong.

[5 lf. 66, bk.]

Better open only one end of the fissure, make several holes in the skull,

and remove a piece of the bone.

[1] *þa*nne struck through after *loken*.

[2] *as blod or ony oper mater . þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle*, this is as a note at the bottom of the page.

[3] *rinspindil*, see mod. Germ. Rennspindel, f., upright drill, pump drill. Trépan.—Rumpf, *Technolog. Dict.*

[4] *poudren* for *boren*, under the influence of 'pore.' Lat. porus.

[6] Lat.: quantum est ad trypanacionem.

Add. MS. 12,056.

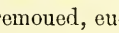
maken hy*m* þe*n*ne to blowen, & þey loken 3if enye þynge exale out by þilke rymele. *& 3if þa*t* enye þynge exale out by þylke rymele, as blod ore enye oþe*re* matere, þey drede no3t to perce þilke rymele; 20 and þe*n*ne some sigge þa*t* þilke rymele scholde be to-broke oþe*re* y-pe*r*ced. fro*m* þa*t* one ende to þa*t* oþe*re* wi*th* Rynspyndles, pe*r*synge

[7 fol. 75 *b*]

þe braynscolle. [7]A rynspyndeH ys an Instrume*n*t þa*t* Cutlers poudre*n* wiþ here hefftes, whose ffigure schal be schappyde[8] in þe 24 same chapitle ffolwynge. And þe worste þynge þa*t* a man may do, ys to pe*r*ce þe rymele on boþe sydes. But oþe*re* me*n* don bettyre whiche þa*t* pe*r*ce*n* þe rymele at þa*t* one ende, whyche is moste hongynge; and þey maken as many holys on bysyde an oþe*re*, as 28 beþ necessarie to maken an hole in þe bray*n* pa*n*ne, be þe whiche hole 3if enye þynge beþ[9] fallen vpon þe duram matrem my3te ben y-clansyde; & þese in as myche as towchynge trepanaciou*n* worchiþH best. And whe*n*ne þa*t* þey haue made manye holys, þey kutten 32 fro*m* on hole to an oþe*re* wiþH an spatymyne,[10] þa*t* ys an Instrume*n*t, þa*t* þey mowe drawyne out þe bon, þa*t* ys betwene þe ordre of holys þa*t* was y-made & þe rymele, & þey casten hy*m* aweye, afte*r*warde

[8] MS. *seharpyde*. *rp* for *pp*, like *lk* for *kk*. See p. 120.

[9] þ above line. [10] Lat.: cum spatumine.

forþ in o*þe*re maner þingis as it is seid tofore / For wha*n*ne þou desirist way of[1] trepaninge [þis man*e*re trepanynge]* sufficiþ to þee i*n* þe rimelis of þe brayn panne. Þis schal be þe foorme of a trepane [w*ith* þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ]* . & þis is þe foorme of a spatina*m*, wiþ þe which a man schal kutte fro*m* oon hole to ano*þe*r hole  . & þou schalt smyte wiþ a mal[2] ei*þe*r an hamer on þe greet eende; & wha*n*ne þou hast remeued of þe boon þat schal be remoued, euene þe brynkis w*ith* schauy*n*ge, þat þou mowe not leue no maner scharpnes i*n* þe brynkis. Þis is þe man*e*r of þe schap , [3]& þis schaue schal kutte on þe side þat foldiþ ynward, & it schal be blunt on þe oon side þat is outward. & þei fulfillen þe wou*n*de þat is wiþi*n*ne þe fleisch wiþoutforþ, as I haue seid, w*ith* þe cloop expressid of þe white of an ey & lynet, til þat þe wou*n*de be ful, & also til þat þe kynde haue regendrid a repeirement, þe which sch*a*l fulfille þe place þe*re* as þe boon w*as* don awey. Aftirward þei curen þe wou*n*de aftir comou*n* cure of wou*n*dis / Alle o*þe*re maner of trepanaciou*n* is comp*re*hendid vndir o su*mm*e, þou3 þat su*mm*en ordeyne p*ar*ticuler aftir her dyuyse, diu*er*s maners.

A description of the instruments used: the trepan, the spatina (spattle).

[3 lf. 67]

The further treatment is the usual one for wounds.

But bi as myche as I haue not seen i*n* þis caas no way þat

[1] *þe* struck through after *of*. [2] *mal*, Lat. malleus.

þey p*ro*ceden forth̃ in o*þe*re manere thynges, as yt is seyde tofore. And whe*n*ne þat þou desiriste þe wey of trepany*n*ge, *þis man*e*re trepanynge suffiseþ to þe in þe rimeles of þe brayn pa*n*ne. Þis schal be*n* þe forme of a trepane, *w*ith* þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ . And þis is þe forme off a spatimene, w*ith* þe whiche a man schal kutte w*ith* fro*m* on hole to an o*þe*re hole . And þou schalt smyte*n* w*ith* a Mal o*þe*re an hamere vpon þe gret ende; and whe*n*ne þ*ou* haste remefed of þe bon þ*a*t schal be remeffyde, euene þe brynkes w*i*þ schauynge, þat þ*e*re mowe no3t lefe no*n* man*e*re scharpnesse in þe brynkes. Þis ys þe man*e*re of þy schafe , and þis schafe schal kutte*n* on þe syde þ*a*t feldyth̃ inwarde, & schal be blunt on þe syde þ*a*t ys outwarde. And þe*n*ne fulfyllen þe wou*n*de þ*a*t is in þe flesch̃, wiþoutforþ as y haue seyde tofore, w*ith* cloþ expressyde of þe whyte of an ey3e, & lynet to þ*a*t þe wou*n*de be ful, and also tyl þ*a*t þe kynde haue regeneryd a repeyrement, þe whiche schal fulfylle þe place where þ*a*t þe bon was don awey. [4]Aft*er*warde þey cure þe wou*n*de aftere comyn cure of wondys. Alle o*þe*re man*e*re of trepanaciou*n* ys *comp*re*h*endyde vndire on So*mm*e, þow3 þ*a*t su*m* me*n* ordeynen p*ar*tyklerliche aftere here devyse, dyu*er*se maners. But be as myche as y haue no3t seyne in þis place no wey þ*a*t my3te remefe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 76 *a*]

Trepanning is dangerous.

myȝte remeue me from doute, bi as myche as I haue saied bi longe tyme, boþe bi summe auctouris experimentis, & also bi myn experiment', & þat' wei is not' certeyn / þerfore here þei Galien, þat' seiþ: if' we mowe remeue quytture wiþoute doynge awei of' boonys þat' schulde be do awey, it' is good / And auicen & serapic[1] acorden to þe same sentence of' cure of' heed akþe þat' comeþ of' smytynge or ellis of' fallynge, where þat' he towchiþ[2] þe worchinge of' hurtis of' þe brayn [3]panne, not' bi trepanaciou*n*, but' bi emplastris & medicyns / & also I took good hede þat' manye mo men ben heelid bi maner of' medicyns & emplastris, þan ben heelid bi trapanes, þat' ben peersynge or þrillynge / For I ne vse not' instrumentis to remeue the boon but' in two causis / þe oon cause is if' þat' þe brayn panne be so mychc I-slend[4] þat' þe part' þat' is broke, entre vndir þe partie þat' is hool / þe secunde caas is, if' ony pece be departid from þe brayn panne, þe which þat' prickiþ duram matrem / In þe firste caas dura mater is compressid. In þe secunde caas dura mater is prickid, which is cause of' akþe, & akynge is cause of' drawynge humouris, þere engendriþ an empostyme vpon þe same pannicle, þe which is cause of' a crampe, & of' opere accidentis tofore seid; &

Galien

and

Auicen

used medicines instead of operating.

[3 lf. 67, bk.]

Nota.

I operate if the broken piece .1. gets under the healthy bone, .2. or hurts the dura mater,

causing a tumour,

then cramp,

[1] *Serapie*, probably Ser. the Elder, an Arab physician, cc. 900.

[2] *towchiþ* for *techiþ*.

[4] *islend*, Add. MS. *ysclend*. See *slent*, to tear, to rend (Dorset).—Halliwell.

Add. MS. 12,056.

me fro doute, by as myche as y haue assayede longe tyme boþe by sum auctores experyment', & also by myn experyment, & þat wey is noȝt certeyn, þerefore here þey Galien, whiche þat seith: ȝif we mowe remywe quyter without doynge awey bonys þat scholde be do awey, hyt is good. And Auisene & Serapio acorden to þe same sentense of cure of hed-akþe, þat comyth off' smytinge opere ellys of fallynge, where þat he techith þe worchynge of hurtynges of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, noȝt by trepanaciou*n*, but by emplastres & by medycines. And also y toke gode hede þat manye mo men ben y-helyde by manere medycines & emplastres, þenne ben y-helyde by trepanes þat beþ persynge opere þryllynge. Ffor y ne vse noȝt Instrumentes to remywe þe bon, but in tweye cases—þat on cas ys ȝif þat þe breyn panne be so myche y-scleud, þat þe part þat ys y-broke entre vndire þe partye þat ys hol, þe secunde cas ys ȝif þat enye pece be departyde from þe brayn panne, whyche þat pryketh duram matrem. In þe firste cas dura mater ys compressede. In þe secunde cas dura mater ys y-prikyde, þe whiche ys cause of' akþe, & akynge ys cause of drawynge of humoures, the whiche engendrith a posteme vpon þe same pannycle, the whiche is cause of a[5] crampe, & of opere accidentes tofore seyde, & at þe laste þey bryngen deþ

[5] *a*, above line.

at' þe laste þei bryngen deeþ to þe pacient' / In þese .ij. causis finally death.
I leeue he*m*[1] constreyned to remeue a boon wiþ handely[2] instrumentis. I*n* alle oþ*er*e maners of' breehis eiþ*er* i*n* creueis, i*n* what' In all other cases I use medicine,
4 maner þat' þei happe*n*, þou3 þat' I be not' siker of' þe paeientis lijf', neþeles I p*r*ocede i*n* þis mane*r* w*ith* more trist', bisekynge alwey help of' god, þe whieh þat' [3]haþ heelid mo me*n* bi my*n* hondis, þat' [3 lf. 68]
am his instrument', þan haue ben deed, nou3t' a3enstoⁿdynge alle and by God's help I have generally been successful.
8 my eautels & helpi*n*ge. For soþe þat' I haue biholde soþliehe resonis
& þe p*r*oces of' oþ*er*e auetouris, I holde þis wey lasse dredeful þan
ony oþ*er*e / for I folowe þe sentence of' Galien, which þat' seiþ: Galien
if' þat' a man haue b*ut*' o wei to his hele,[4] it' is good þat' he holde
12 þilke wey, þou3 þat' it' be yuel.

& wha*m*ne þat' I come to a man þat' is wou*n*did in þe heed, & I Treatment of fractures of the skull, without trepanning:
knowe þat' þe bray*n* panne be broke, bi tokenes tofore seid, first' I
considere þe vertu of hi*m* þat' is pacient', & also his age & alle
16 oþ*er*e p*ar*ticuler þi*n*g', & nameli v*er*tu, & gladliche I leue þe cure,
if' þat' I se ony deedly tokenes, but' if' it' so be þat' I be p*r*eied wiþ
þe grettere instau*n*ce of' þe freendis of' þe sike ma*n*. & not' a3en-
stondynge her p*r*eier I telle hise freendis þat' bi wey of' resou*n* þe

[1] *hem* for *am*; *leeue* is erroneously added in margin.
[2] *handely* ne. handy. [4] MS. *ixele*.

---

20 to þe paeient. In þese tweye causes y am constreynde to remefe a Add. MS. 12,056.
bon w*ith* handly Instrumentes. In alle oþ*er*e man*er*e of breehes
oþ*er*e of crefeys, in what man*er*e þat þey happen, þow3 þat y be
no3t sykere of þe paeiente, naþeles y p*r*oeede in þis man*er*e w*ith*
24 more trest, by sechynge alweye help of god, þe whyehe þat haþ
y-helyde mo m[5]en be my*n* handys, þat am hys Instrument, þe*n*ne
han be ded, nou3t a3eynestondynge al my eauteles & [6]helpynge. [6 fol. 76 *b*]
Ffor sytthe þat y haf' beholde sotelyehe þe resou*n*s & þe p*r*oeesses
28 of oþ*er*e auetorys, y holde þis wey lesse dredful þe*n*ne enye oþ*er*e.
Ffor y folwe þe sentence of galien, whieh þat seiþ: 3if þat a man
hath but o wey to hys hele, hyt ys gode þat he holde þilke weye,
þow3 þat þilke wey be eueh. And whe*n*ne þat y come to a Man
32 þat is wou*n*dyde in the hed, & knowe þat hys breyn pa*n*ne ys
to-broke, by þe tokenys tofore seyde, ffirste y *con*sidere þe vertu of
hy*m* þat ys paeient, & also hys age & alle oþer[7] partyclere thynge,
& namly vertue. And gladliehe y leue þe eure, 3if þat y se enye
36 dedlye signes; but 3if þat so be þat y be preyde wiþ the grettere
Instau*n*ce of þe frendes of þe seke man. And no3t a3eynestondynge
here preyere, y telle hys frendys þat by resou*n* þe pacient scholde

[5] MS. *m*, *en* cut away. [7] *oþer*, above line.

If there are no mortal symptoms and if the wound is large,

[1 ff. 68, bk.]

I shave the head and apply Olium Rosarum,

a defensif ointment,

compresses,

and bandages.

paeient' schulde die, & þanne I worche aboute him as in a man in whom yuele accidentis appere. & if' þat' þe signys ben not' deedliche, & þe breche of' þe brayn panne be with a greet' wounde of' þe heed, & þat' a greet partie of' þe brayn panne be do awey al 4 togidere, so þat' I mowe [1]haue a good wey to leie medicyns vpon duram matrem / First I do schaue his heed, afterward I leie on an eeld lynnen clout' & a þenne,[2] wett' in .ij. parties of' oile of' rosis swete smellynge, & oon partie of' mel roset' colat', bitwene þe duram 8 matrem & þe brayn panne sliȝly & softli, þat' dura mater be not' compressid wiþ þe eloop þat' is wet' tofore seid; & I fulfille þe wounde of' þe fleisch wiþ lint' of' oold lynnen cloop wett' in þe ȝelke of' an ey, & oile of' rosis, boþe liehe myche; & anoynte aboute þe 12 wounde wiþ a defensif' of' bole armoniak ofte tymes I-seid, & leie aboue þe wounde a plumaciol, þe which þat sehal keuere al þe wounde; & þanne aboue al-togidere I leie a greet' plumaciol, wett' in good hoot' wiyn. & aftirward I bynde þe wounde wiþ a boond, 16 byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe heed wiþ þe lynet' & þe cloop, þe which þat' is in þe wounde & aboute þe wounde myȝte not' slide to no partie, & bynde þe wounde in þat' maner þat' dura mater bi no

[2] MS. *þanne*, error for *a þenne*. Lat.: pannum lineum vetustum et subtile. See below.

Add. MS. 12,056.

deyȝe, & þenne y wirehe aboute hym, as y worehe in a Man in 20 whom yuel aceidentes apere. And ȝif þat þe signes be nought dedlyche, & þe breche of þe breyn panne be with a gret wounde of þe hed, & þat a grete partye of þe breyn panne be don aweye alle togedre, so þat y mowe han a gode wey to legge medycynes vpon 24 duram matrem. ffirste y do sehaffe hys hed, afterwarde y legge an olde lynnen elout & a þenne, y-wett in two partyes of oyle of rosys swote smellynge, & on partye of mel rosat eolat bytwene þe duram matrem and þe brayn panne, slyȝlye & softlye, þat dura mater be 28 noȝt compressyde with þe eloth þat ys y-wett tofore seyde, & y fulfille þe wounde of þe ffleseh with lynt of olde lynnen eloþ wet in þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses, of boþe y-lyehe myche; & y anoynte aboute þe wounde with deffensyfe of bol armonyak ofte 32 tymes seyde, & y legge abouen þe wounde a plumacyole whiehe þat sehal keuere alle þe wounde, and þenne [3]abouen alle togedre y legge a grete plumacyole in-wet in gode hot wyn. And afterewarde y bynde þe wounde with a bande, in byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe 36 hed, þat þe lynet & þe eloþ whyche þat is in þe wounde & aboute þe wounde myȝte noȝt slyde to non partye, and y bynde þe wounde in þat manere þat dura mater be no weye be compressyde. Þe

[3 fol. 77 *a*]

wey be compressid. þe heeris of þe heed schulen be remeued awcy on þis maner: clippe hem first with scheris, afterward take .ij. parties of water cold, & oon partie of oile [1] of rosis in somer, & make hoot þe same water & oile in wyntir, & waische þe heed softliche, takynge hede þat no water ne oile entre into þe wounde, & þanne schaue it wiþ a rasour / & whanne þat I haue serued þe pacient on þis maner, I lete him reste til on þe morowe, & aftirward I serue þe wounde on þe same maner til þat þe wounde be hool / Neþeles I considere if þat þe pacient be ful of blood, & his vertu be strong, & if he be ȝong, & litil blood bled at his wounde, & whanne alle þese þingis acorden, I make him to be leten blood on þe coral[2] veyne of þe arme / & but if he mowe go to priuy, I helpe him oonys aday, or wiþ suppositories or wiþ clisterie; & I procede in dietynge, as I haue seid in þe chapitle of dietynge / & whanne þat þe wounde makiþ sufficiently quytture, I leie in þe wounde of þe brayn panne, & vpon þe brayn panne, as I haue don tofore; & aboue þe wounde I leie a mundificatif of mel roset, colat, & barly mele, til þat þe wounde be clensid, & þat þe dura mater be sowdid with þe brayn panne / & þanne I caste in þe wounde of þe heed a poudre maad on þis maner / Take frank encense & ciperi, þat is þe

How to shave the head.

[1 lf. 69]

If the patient is strong,

I bleed and purge.

If pus is discharged

I use a mundificatif and puluis capitalis.

[2] *coral veyne*, vena cephalica.

---

herys of þe hed schul be remywede awey on þis manere: clippe hem firste with scherys, afterwarde take two partyes of colde water & on partye of oyle of roses in somere, & make hot þe same watyr & þe oyle in wyntere & wassche þe hed softliche, takynge hede þat non watere ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þenne schaffe yt with a rasoure. & whenne þat y haue seruyde þe pacient on þis manere, y lete hym resten tyl on þe morwe; and afterwarde y serfe þe wounde on þe same manere tyl þat þe wounde be hol. Naþeles y consydere ȝif þat þe pacient be replet of blod, & hys vertue be stronge; & ȝif þat he be ȝonge, & lytel blod haue nouȝt go out of hys wounde, & whanne alle þese þynges acorde, y make hym to by leten blod on þe coral veyne of þe arme; & but ȝif he mowe schiten, y helpe hym onys a day, opere wiþ suppositorye opere wiþ clisterye; and y procede in dyetynge as y haue seyde in þe chapyteH of dyetynge. And whenne makyth sufesentlyche quyter, y legge in þe wounde of þe brayn panne & vpon þe brayn panne as y haue don toforn, & above þe wounde y legge a mundyficatyff of mel rosat colat & barlye mele, tyl þat þe wounde ben y-clansyde, & þat þe dura mater be y-soudyde wiþ þe breyn panne; & þenne y caste in þe wounde of þe hed, poudre y-mad on þis manere: R ffrank Ensence, ciperi, þe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[1 lf. 69, bk.][2] note of a cipres, [1]seed of mirtilles, mirre, ana. orobi, ℥ j; make poudre, & leie þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leie þredis of lynnen cloop, or ellis lynet; & aboue al-togidere leie an entreet maad of .ij. parties of whiȝt rosyn,[3] & oon partie of wex 4 moltun togidere vpon strong vynegre, & colid þoruȝ a þinne streynour vpon cold water / & whanne þin hondis ben anoyntid wiþ oile of rosis, malaxe[4] it longe tyme togidere. In somer take euene porcioun of whiȝt rosyn & of wex; in wyntir / take .iiij. 8 partis of rosyn,* & þe .v part of wex, & drawe abrood þat treet[5] on a cloop, & leie it on þe wounde til þat he be perfiȝtliche cicatrisid. & if þat þer were ony partie of þe boon þat prickide duram matrem, þanne I aforce me to remeue þilke partie þat 12 prickiþ wiþ pynsouns,[6] if þat I may; & if þilke partie þat prickiþ be ioyned so faste to þe hool boon þat he wolde not be remeued awey, þanne I remeue him awey wiþ rugement[7] from þe partie þat halt,[8] in makynge oon hole or two, or mo, aftir þe quantite of þe 16

Lay over all an Entreet (Plaster) made from wax and oil of roses.

I remove a bone which pricks the membrane, with pincers.

[2] At the foot of lf. 69 is this note: R *radicis erios, aristologe, thuris, mer, aloes, sanguis draconis, orobus ana, ffac pulvis.*

[3] *whight rosyn.* hardened Terpentine.

[4] *malaxe*, Lat. malaxo, mollify.

[5] *treet* = *entreet.* See p. 123, note 1.

[6] *wiþ pynsouns*, cum piccario. See Pynsone, Tenella. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 400.

[7] *wiþ rugement.* Lat.: cum rugine ruginando, Fr. rugine, ruginer.

[8] Both MSS. omit to translate the Lat. *si non possum.*

Add. MS. 12,056. note of cypresse, sede of mirtylles, mirre ana. ʒ. i., oreby. ʒ. j., mak poudre & leye þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leye þe þredys of lynne cloþ oþere ellys lynet; and aboffe al togedire y-[9 fol. 77 b] legge an entrete [9]y-made of two partyes of whyte resyn & on party 20 of wex y-molten togedre, & vpon stronge Vynegre, & y-colyd þorwe a þenne streynoure vpon[10] colde water; & whenne þat þyne hondys ben anoyntede with oyle of roses, & malaxe yt longe tyme togedyre. In somere take euene porcioun of whyt resyn & of wex; in wyntere 24 take foure partyes of —* & þe ffifte partye of wex, & y-drawe abrode þilke tret on a cloþ & legge yt on þe wounde, tyl þat he be perffitliche cycatrysede. And ȝif þat þere were anye —* of a bon. whiche þat prekyde duram matrem, þenne y aforce me to remeffe 28 þilke partye þat prykeþ with pynsones ȝif y may. And ȝif þilke partye þat prikeþ ys y-ioynede so faste to þe hol bon þat he nyl nouȝt be remeffyd awey, þenne y remeffe hym aweye wiþ rugenynge. from þe partye þat halt, in makynge an hole, oþere two, oþere mo, 32 after þe quantyte of þe bon þat scholde be don awey,* þat halt with þe hole bon; & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole

[10] MS. *o pound.*

boon þat schulde be don awey [þat halt with þe hole bon & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole to anoþere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde aweye.]* / & whanne þat þe boon is remeued
4 awei, I procede in þe cure as it is [1]seid in þis chapitle / But [1 lf. 70]
whanne I remeue a boon wiþ instrumentis of þe brayn panne, I stop the patient's ears during the operation.
panne I stoppe þe sijk mannes eeris, þat he mowe not heere þe
soun of þe yren þat trepaniþ. & I remeue þe same maner þe partie
8 þat is broke, þe which þat goiþ vndir þe partie þat is hool, & compressiþ þe dura mater. & if þat a gobet eiþir a pece of a boon
holde sumwhat in þe wounde, & myȝte not liȝtliche be remeued
away, & he prickiþ not dura mater ne compressiþ not dura mater,
12 panne at þe bigynnynge I do on þe boon hoot oile of rosis, & I
fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & þe ȝelke of an ey medlid **Nota**
togidere, til þat þe boon be neischid & may liȝtliche be remoued I soften the bone before removing it.
awey; panne I remeue þe boon softliche, & I procede in þe
16 worchinge bitwene þe boon & duram matrem, as it is seid tofore /

& if þat þe breche of þe brayn panne were as a creueis or ellis I-slend, & neiþer part of þe boon were lowere þan oþer, panne I considere if þat ilke slendynge[2] perce al þe brayn panne; & þat
20 þou schalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid, or ellis þou schalt
knowe bi þis signe, þat neuere failiþ / Make [3]a plastre of poudre of [3 lf. 70, bk.]

[2] *slendinge*, see p. 128, note 4.

---

to anoþere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde aweye.* And whenne þe bon Add. MS.
ys remefyde awey, y procede in þe cure, as yt is seyde in þis same 12,056.
24 chapyteH. But whanne þat y remeffe a bon with Instrumentes of
þe brayn panne, þenne y stoppe þe syke mannys eres, þat he mowe
noȝt here þe sonn of þe eyren þat trepanyth. And y remeffe þe
same manere, þe partye þat is broke, whiche þat goþ vndire þe
28 partye þat ys hol, & compressyth þe dura mater; and ȝif þat a
gobbet oþere a pece of a bon helde sumwhat in þe wounde, &
myȝte noȝt lyȝtlye be remeffyde awey, and he prikyde nouȝt ne
compressyde nouȝt duram matrem, penne at þe bygynninge y do on
32 þe bon hot oyle of rosys, and y fulfylle þe wounde with oyle of roses
& þe ȝolke of an eyȝe y-medled togedire, tyl þat þe bon be y-
nesschyde, and mowe lyȝtlyche be remywede aweye; þenne y
remeffe þe bon, & y procede in worchynge bytwene þe bon &
36 duram matrem, as it is seyde tofore. & ȝif þat þe breche of þe
breyn panne [4]were as a cerfes, oþere ellys y-sclend, & neiþere party [4 fol. 78 *a*]
of þe bon were lowere þenne oþere, þen y consydere ȝif þilke
sclendynge parten alle þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe by
40 þe toknys tofore seyde, oþere ellys þou schalt y-knowe by þis signe
þat neuere faileþ: make a plastre of þe poudre of mastyk & þe

How to discern by means of a Plaster, whether the fissure pierces the skull or not.

mastik & þe white of an ey, medlid togidere as þikke[1] as hony, & distende[2] it vpon a cloop, & leie it on þe place *þat* is hurt fro morowe til euen, or ellis from þe euene til þe morowe / & wha*n*ne *þat* þe plastre is remoued awey, if *þat* þe creueis peerse þoru3 þe 4 brayn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drie a3ens þe creueis þan in ony o*per* place, for þe greet heete *þat* comeþ fro þe brayn [& 3if þe breyn panne]* be nou3t I-slend þoru3, þe plastre sch*al* be nomore drie aboue þe creueis þan on anoþ*er* place / & if þe creueis p*er*se 8 not þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as it is seid i*n* þe bigy*n*ny*n*ge of þis chapitle, þ*er*e as I tolde of cure of wou*n*de of þe heed, where *þat* þe brayn pa*n*ne eiþ*er* þe brai*n* is not hurt. For if *þat* ilke remile peerse

When the skull is pierced,

some physicians use trepanning.

þe brayn panne, þ*er* is a greet doute i*n* þe caas, for su*m*men seien *þat* 12 it is impossible sich a wou*n*de to heele; but if þe remele be trepaned, & a quantite of þe boon be doon awey, *þat* þe sup*er*fluyte *þat* is cast vpon dura*m* matre*m* may be doon awey, or ellis þe dura mat*er* schulde putrifien & be corupt, & bi *þat* skil[3] þe pacient schulde 16

[1 lf. 71] die, þe which *þat* my3te [4]be heelid bi þe remeuynge of þe boon /

Nota.

Nota. Neþeles I *þat* haue seen i*n* trepaninge greet p*er*el, namely wha*n*ne

[1] MS. *þilke.* [2] *distende*, Lat. distendo.

[3] *bi þat skil*, Lat. quare. Skil = causa, synon. with 'resoun' occurs frequently in *Polychron.* See Gloss. The same construction in: '& by þe same skile' ea ratione, *ibid.*, iii. 465.

Add. MS. 12,056.

whyte of an ey3e, y-medlyde togedyre as þykke as hony, & distende it on a cloþ, & leye it on þe place *þat* ys hurt fro*m* morwe tyl euene, 20 o*per*e ellys fro*m* euene tyl þe morwe. And whe*n*ne *þat* þe plastre ys remefyd awey, 3if *þat* þe crefeys persitħ þorwe þe breyn pa*n*ne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drye anonde[5] þe crefeys þen in enye o*per* place, for þe gret hete *þat* comytħ fro*m* þe brayn;* & 3if þe 24 breyn pa*n*ne* be no3t y-sclend þorwe, þe plastre schal be namore rye abou*e*n þe creffeys þe*n*ne on an o*per*e place. And 3if þe crefeysd perse nou3t þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as yt is seyde in þe by-gy*n*nynge of þis chapyteH, þ*er*e as y tolde of þe cure of wou*n*de of 28 hed, where *þat* þe breyn pa*n*ne o*per*e þe brayn ys no3t y-hurt. Ffor 3if *þat* þilke ryemele persytħ þe breyn pa*n*ne, þ*er*e ys a gret doute in þe cas, ffor some seyne *þat* yt ys vnpossible swyche a wou*n*de to ben y-helyde, but 3if þe rymele be y-trepanyd & þat a quantyte 32 of þe bon be y-don awey, *þat* þe sup*er*fluyte *þat* ys y-caste vpon dura*m* matrem mowe be done awey, ellys þe dura mater scholde putrefien & be corupt, & by *þat* skylle þe pacient scholde deye, whiche *þat* my3te be helyde by remywynge of þe bon. Naþeles y 36 *þat* haue y-seye in trepanynge grete peryle, namlyche wha*n*ne *þat*

[5] Over an erasure.

*þat*ᵗ þe creucis is bisidis þe semys, where *þat*ᵗ þe trepaninge is deedlich / & I haue seen manye *þat*ᵗ wiþoute trepany*ng*ᵗ almyȝty god haþ delyuerid bi my*n* hondis, wiþoute touchinge of ony brayn
4 scolle wiþ ony trepan or wiþ iren; but I helde i*n* to þe creueis hoot de vertute Oliu*m* Ros*arum*.
oile of rosis colat, & mel roset colat, medlid togidere aftir þe doct*r*ine tofore seid, fulfillynge al þe wou*n*de w*ith* sich maner I use oil of roses,
cloþis; & aftirward leie aboue þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of rosis
8 medlid togidere, & aboute a defensif of bole armoniak tofore seid, a defensif
til *þat*ᵗ þe quytture be engendrid. & aftirward I contynue mel
roset & oile of rosis i*n* þe wounde, & aboue a mu*n*dificatif of mel and a mundificatif medicine,
roset & barly mele til *þat*ᵗ þe ligament be fully engendrid on þe
12 brayn pa*n*ne, & *þat*ᵗ þou schalt knowe wha*n*ne *þat*ᵗ þou seest þe boonys ben[1] ioyned togidere, as it were two bordis weren ioyned togidere w*ith* cole[2] or w*ith* glu; & þa*n*ne I fulfille þe wou*n*de wiþ drie þredis of clene ly*n*nen cloop, & aboue [3]a mu*n*dificatif, til *þat*ᵗ [[3] lf. 71, bk.]
16 þe boon be keuerid. Þa*n*ne I strowe on aboue þe capitale poudre tofore seid, & I leie on þe schauynge or ellis þe rasure[4] of lynnen cloop, & aboue al þis I leie on a treet of whiȝt rosyn; & I do alle and a plaster of terpentine.
þese þi*n*gis *þat*ᵗ I haue seid tofore til *þat*ᵗ þe wounde be consowdid /

[1] *ben*, above line.
[2] *cole*, Lat.: sicut si essent duo ligna cum glutino in simul *incolata*.
[4] *rasure*, Lat. rasura.

---

20 þe crefeys ys bysyde þe semys, where *þat* trepanynge ys dedlyche, Add. MS.
and y haue seye manye *þat* wiþoute*n* trepanynge almyȝtie god haþ 12,056.
delyue*r*ede be my*n* handys, w*ith*out touchynge enye brayn scolle
w*ith* trepane o*þe*r wit*h* eyren; but y helde into þe crefeys hote
24 oyle of roses, and y legge aboue cloþes y-wett in mel rosat colat, &
oyle rosat colat y-medlyde togedyre afte*r*e þe doctryne tofore seyd,
ffulfyllinge aH þe [5]wou*n*de wi*þ* swyche mane*r*e clothys, & after- [[5] fol. 78 *b*]
warde y legge aboue þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses y-medlyde
28 togedres, and aboue þe wou*n*de a defensiff of bol armonyac tofore
seyd, tyl *þat* þe quyte*r* be engendryd. & afte*r*warde y *con*tynwe
mel roses & oyle ros*arum* in þe wou*n*de, & aboffe a mu*n*dificatyf of
mel ros*arum* & barly mele, tyl þat þe ligament be fulliche engendrede
32 on þe breyn pa*n*ne, & *þat* þou schalt y-knowe whe*n*ne *þat* þou seste
þe bonys Ioynyde togedre, as yt were tweye bordys Ioynede to
gedre wiþ colle o*þe*re wi*þ* glewȝ; & þe*n*ne y fulfylle þe wou*n*de w*ith*
drye þredys of ly*n*nen cloþ, and abou*e*n a mu*n*dificatyf tyl *þat* þe
36 bon be keffride aboue. & þe*n*ne y strawe on aboue þe capytale
poudre tofore seyde, & y legge on þe schaffynge o*þe*re ellys þe
rasure of ly*n*nen cloþ, and abou*e*n al þis y legge on a Tret of resyne;
& y do alle þynges *þat* y haue seyde tofore tyl þe wou*n*de be *con-*

Nota.

& if' ȝe make an obieccioun how þat' it' myȝte, wiþoute arerynge of' þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat' fil doun bi þilke slendynge vpon duram matrem / I answere: riȝt' as þe mater of' þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge[1] þat' is more doutes, bi emplastris wiþoutforþ I-leie is dissolued, & þer is no slendynge of' þe brayn panne, ne no wounde in þe skyn, myche more liȝtloker & more bettere þe blood, þat' is liȝt' & able to be resolued, þe which þat' wente doun bi þe forseid slending', may bi þe forseid slendynge þe bettere be exaled. Ne þilke blood is not' viscat'[2] in þe substaunce of' dure matris, as þe mater is in empostymes, wherfore he is more obeisschaunt'* — — to þe attracciou*n* of' medicyns /

This remedy dissolves the blood and pus,

which exhales through the fissure.

[3 lf. 72]

Treatment of a wound of the skull when the skin is not broken.

& if' þe brayn panne be hurt' wiþoute wounde [3]of' þe skyn, þe which þou shalt' knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid / þanne summen kutte aboue þe hurtynge in þe maner of a crose, & þei areren þe .iiij. quarters, & þei kutten & fleen þe pannicle þat' keueriþ þe boonis. & aftirward þei vsen trapanes & her opere comoun curis, as it' is schewid tofore / But' I kutte not' þe skyn in þe maner of' a crose, but' in þe maner of' a scheeld or ellis of' a þing' þat' is triangle in þis maner ◁, & I make but' oon quarter, & I vnwrie þe boon þat' þe oile of' þe rosis may peerse yn, & þat' þe vertu of' þe medicyn,

Some physicians use trepanning.

I apply oil of roses.

[1] *litarge*, Lat. lethargus. Lethargy, stupor.
[2] *viscat*, Lat. inviscatus, inclosed. See below, *inviscat*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

souded. And ȝif me maken an obiectioun how þat yt myȝte without*en* arcrynge of þe bon, þe blod & þe quyter be dreyede whiche þat fel doun by þilke sclendynge vpon þe duram matrem, I answere: ryȝte as þe matere of þe frenesie & þe matere of þe litargie þat is more doutes, by emplastres without*en* forth leyd is desolfed, and þere nys none sclyndynge of þe breyn panne ne no wounde in þe skyn, myche more lyȝtlokere & more bettere þe blod þat is lyȝt & able to ben reselfyde, whiche þat wende done be þe forseyde sclendynge, may be þe forseyde sclendynge beter ben exaled. Ne þilke blod ys noȝt inviscat in þe substaunce of dure matris as þe matere ys in apostemys, wherfore he ys more obeyssaunt to* þe expulcioun of kynde, & also ys more obeyssaunt to the attractioun of medycine. And ȝif þe brayn panne be hurte wiþout wounde of þe skyn, þe whiche þou schalt y-knowen by þe toknys tofore seyde, þenne sum men kutten aboue þe hurtyng in þe manere of a cros, & þey areryn þe foure quarters, & þey kytten & flen þe pannycle þat keferith þe bonys, & afterwardes þey vsen trepanys & here opere comyn cures, as [4]yt ys schewyde tofore. But y kytte noȝt þe skyn in manere of a cros, but in þe manere of a Schelde opere ellys of a thynge þat ys tryangle in þis manere ◁, & y make but on quartere & y vnwreye þe bon, þat þe oyle of roses may persen yn,

[4 fol. 79 *a*]

þat is maad of hony of rosis & oile of rosis, may drawe fro bynepe þe brayn-panne / & I do in þis caas al þing as it is declarid next aboue. & if ȝe make obiecciou*n* aȝens me bi costantyne[1] or ellis bi **Constantyn objects,**
4 op*er*e, þat seien þat bi al oure myȝt we eschewen þat neiþ*er* oile ne noon oyntuose þing fallip not wiþinne þe brayn-pa*n*ne / I answere wiþ auicen, þat seiþ: þat he worchiþ riȝtfulliche þat vsiþ **but Auicen,** teped[2] oilis, & þe same tellen galion & serapion; & also I seie þat **Galion, Serapion, and I use**
8 oile of rosis, þe which þat schal [3]be maad of g*ra*pis of olyue trees **[3 If. 72, bk.]** þat be*n* not ripe, is not oyntuose, but it is drie, & is clepid oile **Oleum enfancinum** enfa*n*cinu*m*;[4] & namely wha*n*ne þat rosis ben medlid wiþ þilke **as a strengthening remedy.** oile, þilke oile haþ gete to hi*m* a swete smellynge & a drie þing of
12 comfortynge[5] animal spiritis; & also þat oile haþ a vertu exp*r*essif, as galion telliþ *in* þe book of symple medicyns, bi þe whiche þe **Galion.** brayn is comfortid & akþis ben swagid / & if þ*er* be maad ony greet blood, it is maad sutil w*ith* þat oile; & wha*n*ne alle þese þingis
16 ben congaderid & leid aboue dura*m* matre*m*, it is clensid /

¶ Sumtyme þe brayn is meued of sum greet hurt eiþ*er* of su*m* **Concussion of the brain not complicated** fallynge or of sum smytynge wiþoute ony wou*n*de or wiþoute ony

[1] Constantinus Africanus, c.c. 1070. [2] *teped*, Lat. tepidus.

[4] *enfancinum*, for *omfacinum* ὀμφάκινον ἔλαιον, oil made from unripe olives (*Diosc.* I. 29). Vigo *Interpr.*: "Omphax in Greke is an vnripe grape. Vigo calleth oyle of omphacyne, that oyle that is made of vnrype Olyves." Compare *Tomm. Dict.* s. v. onfacino. [5] See below.

---

and þat þe vertue of þe medycine, þ*a*t ys y-mad of honye of **Add. MS. 12,056.**
20 ros*e*s & oyle of roses, may drawe fro bynepe þe brayn-pa*n*ne; and y do in þis cas al þynge, as yt declarith nexte aboffe. And ȝif me*n* make obiectiou*n* aȝeyns me by *con*stantine op*er*e ellys by hy*m*, þ*a*t seyth þat by alle oure myght we enchewyn þ*a*t nep*er*e oyle ne
24 no*n* vncomys[6] þynge falle noȝt w*ith*ynne þe brayn-pa*n*ne, I answere w*ith* Avecene, þ*a*t seyth: þ*a*t he wirchep ryȝtfulliche þat vsith certeyne oyles, & þe same telliþ galien & *ser*apion, and also y seye þ*a*t oyle of roses, whiche þat be mad of grapes of Olyue tres þat beþ
28 noȝt ripe, is noȝt vnctuose, but is dreyȝe; & it is clepyde oyle Omfaci*n*um, & namlye wha*n*ne þ*a*t roses ben y-medlyde w*ith* þat oyle, þilke oyle hath y-gete to hy*m* a swete smellynge & a dreyȝinge, cu*m*ffortynge animal spirites; and also þilke oyle hath a vertue
32 expressif, as galien tellyth in the bok of symple medycines, by þe whyche þe brayn ys conffortyde & akþes ben aswagede, & ȝif þ*er*e be mad enye gret blod, yt is y-made SotyH; & whe*n*ne alle þese þynges ben y-gadryde togedyre & leyde abouen, dura mater ys
36 clansed. Su*m*tyme þe brayn ys meffyde of su*m* gret hurt op*er*e of su*m* fallynge, op*er*e of su*m* smytynge w*ith*outen eny wou*n*de ore enye

[6] Corrupt, probably for *vnctouys*.

by a wound or fracture.

Nota

A certain Canon fell from his horse, and was left senseless.

[1 lf. 73]

I thought him dying,

Nota

but entreated by his friends

I anointed his head

and laid on compresses,

breche of ony boon, þanne do þou as I dide to a chanoun of þe ordre of seynt austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lept vpon an hiȝ hors & haue seten in þe satel, þe hors areride vpon hise two hyndere feet, & þilke chanoun fel doun bacward vpon þe erþe vpon his heed; & al his bodi was brusid & namely aboute þe heed, þat anoon he loste þe meuynge and þe felynge of al his body / þanne a lewid leche [1]þat was frend to þilke chanoun was clepid, & he cowde not helpen him, for he hadde neuere seen þe same caas, ne he cowde not no lettrure[2] / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I foond him neiþer heerynge, ne spekynge, ne no þing meuynge, & I deemede him for deed / & neþeless[3] I seide, & he were my broþer, I nolde not for an .C. mark, but I asaiede in him goodnes of þe helpinge of medicyns / for ofte tyme kynde wiþ good werkis helpiþ priuyliche þat semeþ vnpossible to a leche. & þei þanne preieden me with greet instaunce / & I made þe heeris of his heed to be schauen & þanne I anoyntide al þe heed wiþ. iij. parties of oile of rosis, & oon partie of vynegre hoot medlid togidere, & I castide aboue poudre of mirtillis, & leide aboue a sotil lynnen cloþ þinne, wett in þe same

[2] Lat.: nec sciebat aliquid de scripturis. O.Fr. lettreure. See *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat. Gloss.

[3] Lat.: meo tamen addens judicio quod pro centum marchis argenti non dimitterem, quin adhuc probarem in eo, si meus esset frater, juvamenta medicinæ inducens.

Add. MS. 12,056.

breche of eny bon, þan do þou as dyde y to a Chanoun of þe ordre of seint Austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lopyn vpon an hye hors and haue seten in þe sadyH, þe hors areryde vpon hys two [3 fol. 79 b] [3]hyndere fete, & þilke chanoun fel doun bakwarde vpon þe erthe on hys hed; & alle hys bodye was y-brusyde, and namlye aboute þe hed þat anon he lost þe ffelynge & þe meffynge of alle his bodye. Þanne a lewyde leche þat was frende to þilke Chanoun was y-clepyde, & he couþe helpe hym noȝt, for he had neuere seyne þe same cas, ne he ne couþe noȝt on lettre. And at þe laste y was clepte, & y fonde hym noȝt herynge ne spekynge ne nothynge mevynge, I demyde hym for ded, and naþeles sauyde, ȝif þat he were my broþere y nolde nouȝt for an hundrede mark, but y sayede in hym þe godnesse & þe helpynge of medycines; ffor ofte tymes kynde with gode werkys helpiþ preueliche þat semyth vnpossible to a leche. And þenne þey preyede me with gret Instaunce, and y made the herys of hys hed to be schaffen and þenne y anoynt aH þe hed with þre partye of oyle of roses, & on partye of vyneger hot y-medlyde togedyre, & y caste abouen þe poudre of mirtylles, and y leyde abouen a sotyH þenne clothi y-wet in þe same oyle & vynegre,

oile & vynegre, & aboue *þat*[t] tow3 smal tosid, & I boond al þe heed wiþ a boond, & aboue I leide a lambis skyn. & so I chau*n*gide it[t] þries ech day i*n* anoyntyn*g*e þe nolle & þe necke into þe myddil[1] of[f] þe rigge-boon bihynde wiþ hoot[t] oile of[f] camomille / In þe ij. day he openede a litil hise y3en, & he bigan to loke aboute [2]him as it[t] hadde be a deef[f] man *þat*[t] were i*n* a wondri*n*g[g] / & þa*n*ne su*mm*e wolden haue asaied if[f] *þat*[t] he my3te haue ete / & I wolde not suffre hi*m* to ete / & I seide þou3 *þat*[t] he wolde ete *þat*[t] he schulde not[t] / In þe iij. day I spak to hi*m* / he answeride me babelynge as a child *þat*[t] bigy*n*neþ to speke, but[t] he my3te forþ wiþ no word[3] / In þe iiij. dai he spak boistousliche[4] / & þa*n*ne I 3af hi*m* to drynke hoot[t] ypocras[5] *þat*[t] is maad of[f] sugre & of[f] watir / In þe v. day he took þikke ti3a*n*ne[6] / In þe vj. dai I 3af[f] hi*m* broþ of[f] a chiken; and þa*n*ne he bigan to strenkþe litil & litil, & litil & litil to meuen / & neuer-þe-lattere he my3te not[t] walke not[t] manye daies aftir. & wha*n*ne *þat*[t] he my3te take sufficiently mete, I comaundide

a bandage, and a lamb's skin.

On the 2nd day he opened his eyes. [2 lf. 73, bk.]

On the 3rd he babbled.

On the 4th he spoke boisterously.

From the 6th day I gave him strengthening food,

[1] *of þe myddil*, inserted.

[3] See below, note 8.

[4] *boistisliche*. Lat.: balbutiendo, stammering, seems to connect the sense of O.Fr. boistous, lame, with boisterous.

[5] *ypocras*, errour for *ydrosacre*. See below. "*Hydrosaccharum*, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar." Phillips. *Hippocras*, a kind of "Artificial Wine, made of Claret or White Wine, and several sorts of Spice." *Ibid.*

[6] Lat. ptisana*m* spissam. Matth. Sylv.: "Tisanna i. aqua ordei uel fariola."

& aboue *þat* tow3 smale y-tosyde, & y bonde alle þe hed *with* a band, & abou*e*n y leyde a lambys skyn, & so y chau*n*gede yt twyes eu*er*ye day; in anoyntynge þe nolle & þe nekke into þe myddeH of þe rygge-bon byhynde wiþ hote oyle of Camamylle. In þe secunde day he opnyde a lyte his ey3en, & he bygan to loken aboute hy*m* as it hadde be a deff[f] ma*n*, o*þ*e*r*e ellys a man *þat* were in a wondrynge; and þe*n*ne some wolde*n* haue assayede 3if *þat* he wolde eten, & y wolde nou3t [7]Suffren hy*m* to eten, & y seyde þow3 *þat* he wolde eten he scholde no3t[t]. In þe þridde day y spak[t] to hy*m*, & he answerde me bablynge as a childe *þat* begy*n*neþ to speke, but he my3te formen no*n* worde.[8] In þe fourþe day he spak[t] bostynglyche, and þe*n*ne y gaf hy*m* to drynke hot ydrosacr*e*, *þat* ys y-mad of Sugr*e* & of watyr*e*. In þe ffyfte day he toke þikke[9] tysan. In þe sixe day y gaf hy*m* þe broth̄ off[f] a chykne, & þe*n*ne he gan to strengþe litel & lytel & lytel, & lytel to meffen, & neu*er*e þe latere he my3te no3t walkyn by manye dayes. And wha*n*ne *þat* he my3te take Suffisau*n*tlye mete, y comau*n*dyde hy*m* to take Pylulas Cochias, for to

Add. MS. 12,056.

[7 fol. 80 *a*]

[8] Lat.: verbum non potuit formare.

[9] MS. þilke.

purgative pills,

and brain of fowl and kid.

him to take pilulas chochias[1] for to resolue bi cuaciacioun þe matere þat I-gaderide togidere in þe heed bi þilke fallinge / & I comaundide him to ete ofte þe braynes of briddis heedis, & of hennys & of smale briddis & kedis / & in þis maner he was hool; neþeles he was 4 neuere so sotil of witt as he was tofore /

Evil symptoms [3 lf. 74]

are: cramp, immobility except of the muscles of the chest.

Three ways of treatment:

.1. the way used by Anselme.

.2. trepanning.

.3. my own way,

In þis ben yuel signes as þe face to be to[2] crokid, & þe yȝen to loke asquynt [3]eiþer crokidliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schite wiþoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outcept þe lacertis of 8 þe brest þat moun be saaf[4] / He þat rediþ þis book may chese aftir his owne wil oon of iij. weies þe whiche þat ben now vsid / þe toon is þe wey þe whiche þat is seid in þe bigynnynge of þis chapitle, þe which wey manye vsen, & a leche of Ianewe[5] þat is clepid anselme 12 vsiþ þis wey, & þerbi he gate myche money / neþeles I wiste weel þat manye men dieden in hise handis bi þis wey / þe secunde maner is in almaner hurtyuge of þe heed to vsen terabracioun[6] eiþer remeuynge of þe boon wiþ handliche instrumentis / þe iij. is my wey þe 16

[1] *Cochia.* An ancient name for several officinal purgative pills. Dunglison, *Medic. Lex.* κόκκος, a pill. Alex. Trall. Compare Fr. cochée.

[2] *be to*, added in margin.

[4] Lat.: præterquam lacertorum pectoris qui sallire videntur. The translator evidently read *salvere* instead of *sallire*.

[5] Anselmus de Ianua. A. de Porte, quoted by Guy de Chauliac as Anserinus de Ianua, XIII. cent. Ianua is Genoa, see Eloys Dictionn. historique.

[6] "*Terebration*, a boring or piercing; a Term more especially used in Surgery." Phillips. "*Terebra*, an Awger or Wimble, a Piercer; also an Instrument to engrave on Stones; also a Surgeon's Trepan or Trepandiron." *Ibid.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

resolfe by evacuacioun þe matere þat was y-gadrede togedire in þe hed by þilke fallynge. And y comaundyde hym to eten ofte þe braynes of briddys hedys, as of hennys & of smale bryddes, & also of kyddes; and in þis manere he was hol; naþeles he was neuyre 20 so sotyl of wyt as he was tofore. In þis cas buþ yuele signes: as þe face to be crokyde, & þat ou eyȝe to loken asquynt oþer crokydlyche, apoplexie, crampe, to schyte wiþout felynge, & vnmevablete of alle þe membris outsepte þe lacertes of þe brest þat 24 mowe be saff. He þat redith þis bok may chesen after hys owne wyl, one of þre weyes whiche þat beþ now y-vsyde, þat on ys þe wey whiche þat ys seyde in þe bygynninge of þis chapiteH, þe whiche weye many vsen, and a leche o Ianewe þat is y-clepyde 28 Anselme vsith þis weye, & þereby he gat mychc moneye, naþeles y wyste wel þat manye men dyȝedeu in his handys by þis wey. þe [7 fol. 80 b] [7]secunde weye is in alle manere hurtynges of hed to vsen terebracioun, oþere ellys remeffynge of þe bon with handlyche Instru- 32 mentes; þe þridde ys my weye whiche þat y haue tolde opynlye in

which þat' I haue told openliche *in* almaner caas / & I bileue, if' þat' he take hede to alle þese weyes & þat' he wole wisely discussen alle þe opynyons of auctouris, þat' he schal seen fewere die bi my .iij. wey þan bi ony of' þe o*pe*re .ij. weyes // Almyȝti god lede þe redere of' þis werk *in* þe best' wey, þoruȝ whos myȝtis, wordis takis sentencis & also vndirsto*n*di*n*ge. where fewer people die.

Þouȝ þat' we han bihoten to tretyn of' anoˡtamie of membris [¹ lf. 74, bk.] þat' be*n* compou*n*d, in þe bigy*n*nynge of' eueri chapitle of' þis secu*n*de tretis, neþeles we leeuen[2] it' for þe bettere for to treten of' anotamie of' þe visage, to þe þridde tretise, where we schulden treten of' sijknes þat' come*n* to þese me*m*bris, þe whiche syknessis ben non[3] woundis // // // The anatomy of the face is given in the 3rd treatise.

The secunde chapitle of wou*n*dis of þe face & anotamie of þe same. ¶ Cap. ij.

Wou*n*dis þat' ben maad *in* þe face, or þei be maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum dinge[4] ellis þat' wou*n*diþ, or þei ben maad wiþ p*ri*cknyge of' a knyf, arowe, eiþ*er* spere. It' is necessarie þat' a surgian haue more diligence in þe wou*n*dis of' þe face, for it' is a place þat' is myche seen, & it' is wel to do make[5] a sotil[6] cicatrice / A wounde Wounds of the face must be treated carefully.

[2] Lat. relinquimus tamen propter melius.
[3] MS. *now.* [4] *dinge*, in margin.
[5] Compare: *þis instrument may ȝe do make wiþoute grete cost.* Quinte Essence, p. 62. [6] *a sotil*, in margin.

---

alle mane*r*e of cas; and y beleue ȝif þ*a*t he wyl take hede to alle þese weyes, & þ*a*t he wyH wyslye dyscussen þe opynio*un*s of Auctores, þ*a*t he schal se fewere dyȝe be my pridde weye þe*n*ne by enye o*pe*re. Almyȝtie god lede þe rede*r*e of þis werk' in þe beste wey, þorwe whose myȝte, wordes takyth̄ sentence & echyn vnd*er*stondynge. Þowȝ þ*a*t we han behoten to treten of Anotamye of me*m*bres þat ben co*m*poned, in þe bygy*n*ninge of eu*er*y chapyteH of this secu*n*de tretys, naþeles we leuen yt for þe bettir*e* for to treten of þe Anotamye of þe vysage, to þe pridde tretys, where we schulle tretyn of seknesse þ*a*t comyth̄ to þis me*m*bres, whyche seknesse beþ no*n* wou*n*des. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap. off woundes of þe face & Anotamye of þe same.

Wou*n*des þ*a*t ben made in þe face, o*pe*re þey beþ mad with a swerde, ore wiþ su*m* thynge ellys þ*a*t wou*n*deþ, o*pe*re þey be*n* mad wiþ p*ri*kynge of a knyf', arwe, o*pe*re spere. Yt is necessarye, þ*a*t a surgyne haue mor*e* diligence in þe wou*n*des of þe face, for it is a place þ*a*t is myche y-seyne, & yt ys wel y-do to make a sotyH cicatryce. A wou*n*de þ*a*t ys mad w*it*h a swerde o*pe*re w*it*h su*m* þynge

There is a lie about replacing a nose cut off.

Wounds of the nose:

a longitudinal cut,

a transverse cut, the nose still hanging.

Adjust the nose, retain it in position by splints of wax,

sew it,

þat is maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ sumþing semblable þat is alwei in lenkþe, a man muste sotilliche sowen & gaderen þe parties of þe wounde togidere / & for þat manye men liȝen of þe wounde of þe nose, þei seien þat oon bar his nose kutt of in his hond, þe which 4 nose was afterward sett aȝen in his owne kynde; þe which is an open lesynge / For þe spirit of lijf of felynge & [1] meuynge passiþ, whanne a membre is depertid from þe bodi / I wole bigynne at a wounde of þe nose þat is kutt in lenkþe, þe which cure is liȝt to hele / Brynge þe 8 parties togidere of þe wounde & sowe hem, & worche aboute þe wounde as I haue seid tofore in þe chapitle of woundis / & if þat þe nose were kutt ouerþwert doun to þe ouer lippe, & neþeles þat þe ouer lippe & þe nose were kutt al awey, but þat it held faste at boþe þe eendis 12 of þe eendis of þe wounde, þanne sette aȝen þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrillis ech aȝen oþir as þei weren toforn, & make two smale tentis of wex & putte on eiþir noseþrille aboue þe wounde, if þat þou maist, & þanne make a poynt bi þe space of a litil fyngre from þe oon 16 eende of þe wounde, & anoþer poynt at þe oþere eende of þe wounde, & anoþir poynt in þe myddil of þe nose aȝen þe forheed; and aftirward a poynt on eiþer side of þe nose, aftirward make [a poynt]* bitwene eueri poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntis 20

[1 lf. 75][2]

[2] Heading to this page: *Off wondes off the fface & Anotumy off þe same ffrom the face to the ffote.*

Add. MS. 12,056. [3 fol. 81 *a*]

semblable þat is alweye in lengthe, a man moste sotylliche sowyn & gedre þe parties of þe wounde. And for þat many men lyȝen [3] of þe wounde of þe nese, þey seyȝen þat on bare hys nose y-kytte of in hys haude, þe whiche nose was afterwarde y-sette aȝeyne in hys 24 owne kynde; þe whiche ys an opyn lesynge, for þe spiryt of lyf of felynge & of meffynge passiþ aweye, whanne a membre is departyde from þe body. I wylle begynne at þe wounde at þe nese þat is y-kutte in lengthe, wose cure ys lyȝt to hele; brynge þe parties to- 28 gedre of þe wounde & sowe hem, & wirche aboute the wounde as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of wondes. And ȝif þat þe nese were y-kutte twarte offere doun to þe ouere lippe, & naþeles þat þe ouyre lippe & þe nose were noȝt kutte al awey, but þat it helde 32 faste at boþe þe endys of þe wounde, þanne sette aȝeyne þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrellys yche aȝeyns oþere as þey were tofore, & make two smale tentys of wex, & putte in boþe þe noseþrellys aboue þe wounde, ȝif þat þou maist, & þenne make a poynt 36 by þe space of a litel fyngere from þat on ende of þe wounde, & an oþere poynt at þe oþere ende of þe wounde, and an oþere poynt in þe myddel of þe nose anentys þe forhede; & afterwarde a poynt on eiþere syde of þe nose, afterwarde make a poynt* 40 betwene evyry poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntes,

wha*nne* þei ben ful maad, .ix. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seid vpon þe wou*n*de, þat is maad of [1]lime, frank encense, & sandragou*n* / & take þe white of an ey & oile of rosis, & bete he*m* togid*e*re, & wete þ*er*i*n*ne a ly*n*nen cloop & leie aboue þe wou*n*de / Aftirward bynde* þerto þre plumaciols, oo*n* vndirneþe, anoþ*er* on þe oon side, anoþir on þe toþir side / & þa*n*ne bynde þe nose wiþ two bandis / þe toon schal holde vp þe nose þat he may not discende dou*n*ward / þe toþir schal be leid aboue þat he mowe kepe þe plumaciols, poudre, & þe sowynge / & þilke boond þat is vnd*er* þe nose þat halt þe nose vpward, schal be knytt[2] aboue vpon þe heed, & aftirward he schal be turned ouertwert ouer þe forheed, þat he mowe holde þe boond, þat þe nose decline to neiþir[3] side. & þe boond þat is leid aboue þe nose, schal be bou*n*den bihynde i*n* þe nolle / & aftirward he schal turne aȝe*n* aboue þe nose, holdynge þe plumaciols þat þei mou*n* not wagge to neiþir side aboute þe sowynge; & aboute þe forheed, þou schalt leie þe defensif of bole, & aftirward þou schalt worche on þe wou*n*de of þe nose, as I haue seid i*n* a wou*n*de of fleisch i*n* þe fourþe[4] tretis / þe wou*n*dis þat be*n* ma*a*d i*n* o þ*er*e p*ar*ties of þe face [5]as wiþ a swerd or ony þi*n*g semblable, brynge he*m* togidere & sowe hem & cure hem, as it is conteyned in general chapitlis of wou*n*dis, takynge

throw a powder on the wound, [1 lf. 75, bk.]

apply three pledgets, and two bandages,

one holds the rose in position,

the other the pledgets.

[5 lf. 76]

Wounds on other places must be carefully stitched,

[2] MS. *kutt.* [3] MS. *þe neþir.* [4] *fourþe* for *firste.*

---

whe*n*ne þey ben ful mad, .IX. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seyde vpon þe wou*n*de, þat is y-mad of lym, ffrank ensence, sancdragou*n*, & take whyte of an ey & oyle of roses and bete he*m* togedire, & leye þ*er*ey*n*ne a ly*n*ne cloþ & leye abou*e*n þe wou*n*de, aftirwarde [bynde]* þ*er*eto þre plumaciolus, one [6]vndireneþe, & on on þat o syde, an o þ*er*e on þe o þ*er*e syde; & þa*n*ne bynde þe nose wiþ tweye bandys, þat on schaH holden vp þe nose þat he may nouȝt discendyn dun-ward, þat o þ*er*e schal be leyde aboffe þat he mowe kepyn þe plum-acyolus, poudere, & þe sowynge. And þilke bande þat ys vnd*er* þe nose þat halt þe nose vpwarde, schal be knett abou*e*n on þe hed, and aftirwarde he schal be turnyde twarte offere þe forehed, þat he mowe holde þe bande, & þe nose declyne to neiþ*er*e syde. And þe bande þat ys leyde aboffe þe nose, schal be bou*n*den behynde*n* in þe nolle; and aft*er*wardc he schal turnen aȝeyne aboffe þe nose, hold-ynge þe plumacyoles þat þey mowe noȝt wagge on neythe*r*e syde aboute þe sewynge; & aboute þe forhed þou schalt legge þe deffensif of bol, and aftirwardc þou schalt worche on þe wou*n*de of þe nose as y haue seyde in a wou*n*de of flesch in þe firste tretys. þe wou*n*des þat beþ y-mad in o þ*er*e partye of þe face as w*ith* a swerd ore o þ*i*re þynge semblable, brynge he*m* togedire, sowe hem, & cu*r*e he*m*, as yt ys conteyned in gen*er*aH chapitle of wou*n*dys, takynge

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 81 *b*]

hede herto þat þe sowynge þat is maad in þe face schal be more
Nota bene sotil & fairer þan in ony opere partie of þe body / & þou maist
make a sowynge in þe face, if þat þe wounde be not to myche, on
þis maner / Take mastik, sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem 4
togidere wiþ þe white of an ey to þe þickenesse of hony, & wete
or brought together by an adhesive plaster. þerinne two pecis of lynnen cloop as longe as þe wounde / & leie þe
toon on þe oon side of þe wounde, & þe oper on þe topir side & lete
hem drien / & aftirward make þe wounde summwhat to blede, & 8
þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togidere; & sowe þilke .ij.
pecis togidere, & caste aboue poudre of lyme, frankencense, sandragoun tofore seid, & wete a cloþ in þe white of an ey & oile of
rosis, & leie aboue al togidere, & kepe þe partiee wiþ ligature & 12
prosede forþ in alle þingis as I haue tofore seid /

A wound made with a dart or an arrow. & if þat þe wounde be maad wiþ a dart or wiþ an arewe & þe
arowe be drawe out & þe wounde be myche sene, þanne þe cure is
[1 lf. 76, bk.] [1] þe same þat was seid in þe same chapitle or elles in þe firste tretis, 16
If the arrow head is hidden, wheper þat per be a senewe prickid eiþir noon. But if þe arowe
heed were entriged in ony priuy place of þe face, so þat it myȝte
not be seen, þanne euery man bisie him to knowe bi his witt how
try to find it, þat þe sike man stood, whanne þat he was smyte, & whens þat þe 20
arowe cam, & to what partie þe wounde strecchiþ, þat he mowe loke

---

Add. MS. 12,056. hede hereto, þat þe sowynge þat ys y-mad in þe face, schal be more
sotyl & fairere, þanne in enye opere party of þe body. And þou
maiste maken a sowyng in þe face, ȝif þat þe wounde be nouȝt to 24
myche, on þis manere. R mastyk & sangdragoun & poudre hem &
tempre hem togedire wiþ þe whyte of an eyȝe to þe þyknesse of
hony, & wete þereynne tweye pecys of lynnen cloþ as longe as þe
[2 fol. 82 a] wounde, & leye one on þat o syde of þe [2] wounde, & þe opere on þat 28
opere & lete hem dreyȝen, and afterwarde make þe wounde sum
what to blede, & þenne brynge þe partyes of þe wounde togedires;
& sowe þilke two pecys togedres, & caste aboue þe poudre of lym,
ffranc ensence, sancdragoun tofore seyd, & wete a cloþ in þe whyte 32
of an eyȝe & oyle of roses, & leye abofe al togedyre, and kepe þe
partyes with ligature, & procede forþ in alle þynges as y haue tofore
seyd. And ȝif þat þe wounde be y-mad with a dart opere with an
arwe, & þe arwe ben y-drawe out and þe wounde be myche y-sene, 36
þenne þe cure ys þe same þat was seyde in þe same chapyteH opere
ellys in þe firste tretys, wheþere þat þere be a synwe prikyde opere
none. But ȝif þat þe arwe-hed were entrygede in enye privy place of
þe face, so þat yt myȝte nouȝt ben seyȝen, þenne euerye man bysie 40
hym be his wyt, to knowe how þe seke man stod, whanne he was y-
smete, & whennys þat þe arwe come, & to what party þe wounde
strecchitH, þat he mowe loke ȝif þat he mowe fynden enye manere

if^t þat he mowe fynde ony man*er* wey how he may drawe out þilke arowe-heed; & þanne drawe hi*m* out^t þe best^t maner wey þat^t he may / & if^t he may not^t, heelde he *in* þe wounde oile of^t rosis & þe 4 ȝelke of^t an ey togidere medlid; & wiþ þis medicyn worche in þe wounde, til þat^t kynde schewe su*m* maner wey / Manye men han born an arowe-heed i*n* þe p*ar*ties of^t her face bi longe tyme; & after longe tyme kynde haþ cast^t out^t þe arowe heed, or ellis he haþ 8 schewid su*m* wey bi þe which wey þilke arowe-heed myȝte be taken out^t. & þou must^t take hede bi al þi miȝt^t þat^t, wha*n*ne þat^t þou sowist^t þe wou*n*dis of^t þe face, þat^t þe mouþ be not^t crokid, but make so sliȝly þi sowynge þat^t þilke accident^t may [1]not^t fallen; & þat^t þou 12 maist^t do weel, if^t þat^t þou cowdist^t ordeyne weel þi sowynge / & if^t þat^t þou canst, kepe weel þi sowynge wiþ plumaciols and wiþ byndyngis // // //

and draw it out; if you fail, apply Olium Rosarum till nature works.

Beware of disfiguring the mouth in making the suture.

[1 lf. 77]

¶ Cap^m ȝ^m

The þridde chapitle of þe secu*n*de tretis is of 16 woundis of þe necke & anotamie of the same.

Bi þe necke is conteyned al þe place þat^t is bitwene þe heed & þe schuldris, þe which anotamie I wole telle as I haue bihiȝt^t / Su*m*men maken difference bitwene þe necke & þe wesau*n*t^t[2] & þe

Anatomy of the neck.

[2] *wesaunt* gula; *wesande*, ysophagus. Wright W., page 676, XV. cent. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 4.

---

20 wey, how he may drawe*n* out þilke arwe-hed; and þe*n*ne drawe hy*m* out þe beste mane*re* þat he may. And ȝif he may nouȝt, helde into þe wou*n*de oyle of roses, & medle he oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an eyȝe togedre, & helde into þe wou*n*de, & wiþ þis medycine 24 worche in þe wou*n*de, tyl þat kynde schewe su*m* mane*re* wey. Manye me*n* han born an arwe-hed in þat partyes of here face by longe tyme; and aftere kynde haþ cast out þilke arwe-hed, o*þer*e ellys haþ schewyde su*m* weye by whom þilke arwe-hed myȝte be 28 taken out. And þou moste taken hede be al þy myght þat wha*n*ne þat þou sowyste þe wou*n*des of þe face þat þe mouþ be noȝt crokyde, but make so slylye þy sowynge þat þylke accident may noȝt [3]ffallen; & þat þou maiste do wel, ȝif þat þou couþest ordey*n* wel þy sowynge 32 & ȝif þou couþest kepen wel þy sowy*n*ge wiþ plumacyolus & wiþ byndynges.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 82 b]

¶ Cap. iij. tretis ij is off wou*n*des of þe nekke & Anotomye of þe same.

36 ¶ By the nekke is *con*tynwede alle þe place þat is bytwene þe hed & þe schuldre*s*, whose Anotamye y wyH telle*n* as y haue behyght^t. ¶ Some me*n* makyth̄ dyffere*n*ce bytwene þe nekke & þe

In the neck are vij spondilis, or Vertebræ, the 1st is articulated with the occipital bone.

þrote-bolle, & alle þese ben comprehendid vndir þe name of þe necke. In þe necke þer ben .vij. spondelis þat is to seie whirl-boonys / whirlboonys of þe rigge. þe firste of þe boonys is bounde wiþ a boon of þe heed *þat* is clepid passillare[1] *with* manye smale 4 feble ligamentis; & þei were feble bi-cause þat þilke ioynt next to þe heed myȝte meue many weies. & þe cause whi *þat* þer were smale ligamentis multiplied in *þat* ioynt, *þat* manye smale myȝten susteyne a greet burþun as weel as a fewe greete; & if *þat* *þer* were 8 a fewe greete, þei weren not so able to be meued / þe firste spondile [2]is bounde to þe secunde / þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe / þe fourþe to þe fifþe, þe fifþe to þe sixte / þe sixte to þe seuenþe / þe seuenþe is bounde loseliche to þe firste spondile of þe 12 rigge, *þat* þe necke myȝte more liȝtliche meuen, which *þat* is clepid þe .viij. spondile / whanne *þat* þou rekenest [from þe hed dunwarde]* Seuene peire of senewis proceden out [by þese .vii. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out]* bitwene þe firste 16 spondilis and[3] þe boon of þe heed *þat* is clepid passillare / þe secunde peire of senewis is bore bitwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passen out bitwene ech spondile / þese senewis ben

[2 lf. 77, bk.] .1. .2.3. .4.5.6. 7

From the cervical vertebræ spring 7 pairs of sinews,

[1] See *Vicary*, page 44, note 2.

[3] MS. *of*. Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is vnterberynge in þe hynder partic al þe bones of þe heued. & þerfore he is clepid þe berere rp or paxillus.*"

Add. MS. 12,056.

wesant & þe þrote-bolle, and alle þese be conprehendyde vndire þe 20 name of þe nekke. In þe nekke *þere* ben vij spondiles—*þat* is to say, whirle bonys of þe rigge. þe furste of þe bonys ys y-bounde wiþ a bon of þe hed *þat* ys y-clepyde passilare wiþ manye smale feble ligamentys; & þey weren feble bycause *þat* þilke Iuncte 24 nexte þe hed myȝte meffe manye weyes. And þe cause why *þat* *þere* were manye smale lygamentes multeplyede in þat Iuncte, *þat* manye smale myȝte susteyne a grete burthyne as wel as a fewe grete; & ȝif *þat* *þere* were a fewe grete, þey were nouȝt so able to 28 be meffyde. The firste spondyle ys y-bounden to þe secunde, þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe, þe iiij. to þe v., þe v. to þe vi., þe sixte to þe seuenþe, þe vij. ys y-bounden loselyche to þe fyrste spondile[4] of þe rugge, *þat* þe nekke myȝte more lyȝtlyche 32 meffen, whiche ys clepyde þe viij. spondile, whenne *þat* þou reknyste from þe hed dunwarde.* vij. peire off synwes growiþ out by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out* bytwene [3 fol. 83 *a*] þe fyrste spondile [5]& þe bon of þe hed *þat* ys y-clepyde passilare; 36 þe secunde peire of synwes ys y-bore bytwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passith out bytwene euery spondile.

[4] MS. *Whenne* *þat* *þou reknyst from* *þe hed*, struck through, after *spondile*.

dyuydid *in* many weies bi þe heed, þe necke and þe face, & þe brest, schuldris & þe armes; þe braunchis of[t] þe senewis of þe heed in sum place ben conteynued & ioyned w*ith* þese senewis / & þese senewis ben clepid meuynge, riȝt[t] as þe senewis þat[t] come*n* of[t] þe fore p*ar*tie of[t] þe brayn ben clepid felynge, & þese han also felynge. Of[t] þese senewis þ*a*t comen of þe spondilis of þe necke þ*e*re ben maad braun*n*ys, þe whiche ben instrumentis of[t] meuynge of[t] þo p*ar*ties. *In* [1]þe necke bihynde, þ*e*re ben ordeyned open[2] veynes comynge fro þe lyuere þe whiche þat[t] ascenden into þe heed / & vndir þe veynes þ*e*r ben arteries p*ri*uyliche[3] comynge fro þe herte & goynge to þe heed for notable p*ro*fitis. & wha*n*ne þ*a*t[t] þei han[4] doon al her office in þe heed þei discenden dou*n* bi þe place þat[t] is bihynde þe eeris & þei bringe p*ar*tie mat*er*ie sp*er*matife: þ*a*t is to seie mater of[t] sp*er*me, dou*n* to þe ballokis / & þ*er*fore it[t] is seid if[t] þ*a*t[t] þo veynes weren kutt, a man schulde neucre engendre[5] / On þe riȝtside & also on þe liftside of[t] þe necke ben ordeined. ij. nollis[6] whiche[7] ben of[t] ligamentis matire, þe whiche p*ro*ceden out[t] of[t] þe

communicating with the sinews of the head.

[1 lf. 78]

The neck contains veins and arteries, ascending from the heart,

and bringing spermatic matter to the ballocks,

it contains also ligaments,

[2] *open*, Lat. manifestæ, superficial. [3] Lat. arterie occulte. [4] MS. *ben*.

[5] Avicenna quotes Hippocrates as authority for this curious belief: "Et Hip. q*u*idem dixit in suis inte*n*tionib*us* q*uod* plurimu*m* materiei spermatis est ex cerebro & q*uod* desce*n*dit ex duab*us* venis que sunt post ambas aures. Et p*ro*pter hoc abscindit phlebotomia ambar*um* generationem & facit incurrere sterilitatem." *Canon Lib.* III, *Fen* XX, Tract. 1, Cap. 3, ed. Ven. 1523, fol. 5.

[6] *nolles*, Latin cervices, seem to be the transverse processes.

[7] *whiche*, struck through after *nollis*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þese Synwys buþ devyeded manye weyes by þe hed, & þe nekke, & þe face, & þe breste, schuldres, & þe armes; þe brau*n*ches of þe synwes of the hed in some place beþ contynwede & Ioynde w*ith* þese synwes. And þese synwes buþ y-clepyde meffynge ryȝte as þe synwes þ*a*t comyth̄ of þe fore partye of þe brayn beþ y-clepyde felynge & þese habbiþ also felynge. Of þese Synwes þ*a*t comyth̄ of þe spondlis of þe nekke þ*e*re beþ mad brawnys, þe whiche beþ instrumentes of mevynge of þe p*ar*tyes. In þe nekke behynde, þ*e*re ben y-ordeynde opyn veynes comynge fro*m* þe lyffere whiche þ*a*t ascendyn to þe hed, and vndire þo Veynes þ*e*re ben Arteryes y-hud p*ri*uelyche, comynge ffro*m* þe herte & goynge to þe hed for notable p*ro*fetes. And wha*n*ne þat þey han do al here office in þe hed, þey descenden dou*n* by þe place þ*a*t beþ behynde þe erys & þey bryngen **materie sp*er*matice,** þ*a*t is to say mater of sperme, don to þe ballokes, & þ*er*efore it ys y-seyde: ȝif þ*a*t þo Veynes weren y-kutt, a man scholde neu*er*e engendre. On þe ryȝt syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe nekke þ*e*re ben y-ordeynde tweye nolles, þe whyche beþ of lygamente mater, þe whiche p*ro*cedeþ out of þe bonys

boonys of þe heed & of þe spondilis, & þei strecchen doun to þe eeris[1] in lenkþe biside þe spin boon, & þei ben a couche & a restynge place to þe senewis þat comen out of þe nucha. In þe fore partie of þe necke *þere* is gula, þe which þat strecchiþ from þe chyn doun to þe forke of þe brest;[2] & bitwene þe necke & gula wiþinneforþ *þere* is ordeyned mary,[3] þat is to seic þe wesant; þe which þat discendiþ of[4] a smal skyn enucrou*m*nynge [5]al þe mouþ wiþinneforþ & so goynge doun to þe stomak, & he is hool & conteyned wiþ þe stomak, & is of substaunce of þe same stomak, & he discendiþ doun bi þe hyndere partie of þe necke cleuynge to þe spondilis til þat he come to þe fifþe spondile of þe rigge; & *þere* he is departid from þe spondilis, & he declineþ into þe *y*nnere partie til þat he peerse þoruȝ þe mydrif,[6] & is compou*m*ned of .ij. panniclis, & *in* þe *y*nnere cloþ *þere* ben brau*n*nys *in* lenkþe bi þe whiche drauȝtis is maad of mete & of drynk, & þe vttere cloþ *þere* ben brawnys *in* brede bi þe whiche is castynge out of super*f*luytees; & he haþ noon transuersarie, *þat* is to seic goynge ouerþwert, for wiþholdynge is not nedeful to hi*m*. & in þe fore partie of þe brest *þere* is sett þe canne[7] of þe lungis, þe which is compou*m*ned of gristil ryngis bou*n*de

to support the sinews.

Gula, [5 lf. 78, bk.] gullet running from the mouth to the stomach.

The gullet has 2 coats.

The windpipe is made of gristle,

[1] *eeris* for *ers.* [2] *the forke of the brest*, the clavicle.
[3] *mary*, Lat. meri siue oesophagus. Arab. marī'.
[4] MS. *of*, twice.
[6] *mydrif*, diaphragma. Wright W., *Gloss.*, page 578, l. 23, XV. cent.
[7] MS. *same*. Lat. canna pulmonis. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 7.

Add. MS. 12,056.

of þe hed & of þe spondiles, & þey strecchen doun to þe ers in lengþe besydes þe spyne bon, & þey ben a couche & a restynge place to þe synwes *þat* comyth out of þe nucha. In þe fore p*ar*tye of þe nekke *þere* ys gula whiche *þat* strecchiþ fro*m* þe chyn dou*n* to þe furcle of þe brest; and bytwene þe nekke & þe gulam wiþy*n*neforþ *þere* ys [8]y-ordeyned mery—*þat* ys to seye þe wesand; þe whiche *þat* discendiþ of a smal schyn environynge alle þe mouth w*ith*y*n*neforþ, & so goynge dou*n* to þe Stomak, & he ys hol & conteynde wiþ þe Stomak, & ys of S*u*bstau*n*ce of þe same stomak, & he dissendiþ dou*n* by þe hyndere partye of þe nek clevynge to þe spondelis; tyl *þat* he come to þe .v. spondile of þe rugge, & *þere* he ys departyde fro*m* þe spondelis and declyneþ into þe Innere partye tyl *þat* he perce þorwe þe mydryff, & he ys *com*poned of twey pa*n*nycles, and in þe Innore cloþ *þere* ben brawnys in lengthe, by þe whiche drauȝte ys made of mete & drynke, and in þe vtter cloþ *þere* bene brawnys in brede by whom ys made castynge out of super*f*luyte; and he haþ no*n* transversarye, *þat* ys to seye goynge twartoffere, ffor wythhold-ynge ys nouȝt nedfful to hym. And in þe fore p*ar*tye of þe brest *þere* is y-set þe canne of longes, þe whiche ys *com*poned off grustlye

[8 fol. 83 *b*]

togidere wiþ pannicleris ligamentis, hauynge *in* þe y*n*nere p*ar*tie a
ful smeþe pannicle ioynynge togid*ere* þilke gristili ryngis. & þilke
ryngis wha*n*ne þei ben ioyned wiþ merie, þei ben defautif[1] aȝens þe
4 merie / & þe foorme of[1] þe canne of[1] þe lu*n*gis is* as it[1] were þe
foorme of[1] a cane, [1] þ*at*[1] is to seie a rehed,[2] of[1] þe which rehed þe [[1] lf. 79]
fourþe p*ar*tie were kutt[1] awey *in* lenkþe, & aftirward þilke caane is
wrie w*ith* a sotil clooþ þ*at*[1] wha*n*ne þ*at*[1] a greet[1] mussel of[1] mete passe
8 dou*n* bi þe merye, he schulde not[1] haue lett*in*ge, but[1] þilke pa*n*nicle and gives way to great morsels.
of[1] merye ȝeueþ stede[3] to þe greet[1] mete passynge dou*n* to þe stomak.
þe þrote-bolle[4] is maad of[1] iij gristlis, & is sett[1] aboue þese two
weies. & boþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift[1] side of[1] þe caane of[1] þe The 2 Venæ organicæ (Jugular Veins) and 2 great Arteries go along the windpipe.
12 lungis þ*er* ben ij. greete veynes þat[1] ben clepid organice or ellis
guydes[5]; & vndir þe veynes þer ben greete arteries, & of[1] þe kutt-
ynge of[1] þilke veynes & arteries þer comeþ ofte tyme greete p*er*els,
& sumtyme deeþ; for þe grete affenite þat[1] þei han wiþ þe herte, An incision into them is dangerous, for they are near the heart and the liver.
16 and þe greet[1] noyousnes[6] þat[1] þei han to þe lyu*er*e, bi he*m* sonner[7]
blood is euacued, wherfore sp*iritus* exaliþ, þe whiche þ*at*[1] ben

[2] Read *reed.*

[3] *ȝeueþ stede,* Lat. cedere. See *Catholicon Angl.*, page 155, *to giffe stede,* cedere, locum dare. [4] *þrote-bolle.* See *Vicary*, page 48, note 1.

[5] *guydes,* Lat. guidegi, *Ibid.* p. 48, note 3. Compare Arab. widādsch, vena jugularis. Matth. Sylv.: "Guedegi sunt vene guides. Alguidegi in collo flobotomantur."

[6] *noyousnesse.* See *noyous*, *Cathol. Angl.*, page 256. The Latin has: *propinquitatem,* and the translator seems to have been influenced by the preceding *affenite.* [7] *sonner,* in margin.

---

rynges y-bou*n*de togedire w*i*þ panycleris ligamentes, habbynge in Add. MS.
þe Innore partye a ful smeþe pa*n*nicle Ioynynge togedire þilke 12,056.
20 grustly rynge*s*. And þilke rynges, whe*n*ne þ*at* þey ben ioynede w*ith*
mery, þey ben defautyf anonde þe mery. And þe forme of þe canne
of þe longes [is]* as yt were þe forme of a cane—þ*at* is to say a reed,
of þe whiche reed þe fourþ part were kutt away in lengthe, & aftere-
24 ward þe canne ys y-wreye wiþ a sotyl cloth̄, þat wha*n*ne þ*at* a grete
mosseH of mete passe dou*n* be þe mery, he scholde han no*n* lettynge,
but þilke pa*n*nicle of mery ȝeuyth̄ stede to þe grete mete passynge
dou*n* to þe stomak[t]. þe þrotbolle þat is mad of þre grustlys, ys y-sette
28 aboue þese [9]two weyȝes. And boþe on þe ryȝte syde & eke on þe [[9] fol. 84 *a*]
lefte syde of þe cane of þese longes, þ*er*e beþ tweye grete veynes þ*at*
beþ y-clepyde **organice** oþ*er*e ellys **guydes**. & vndir*e* þe veynes
þ*er*e be*n* grete arteryes, and of þe kyttinge of þilke Veynes &
32 Arteryes þ*er*e comyth̄ ofte tymes gret peryle & su*m*tyme sodeyne
deþ; for þe grete afynite[10] þ*at* þey han in þe herte & þe grete noye-
nesse þ*at* þey han to þe lyffer, sennore by hem blod ys evacued,
wher*e*fore spirites exaleþ whyche þ*at* buþ frendys, boþe to þe body &

[10] *a*, above line.

freendis boþe to þe body and also to[1] þe soule[2] / þe ligament' of' þe
The muscles, nerves, and vessels of the neck
þrote is clepid emanence eiþir þe heiȝþe of' þe epiglote, & in þe sidis
of' þe þrote *þere* is sett gula. &[3] þe goynge of' brawnys, senewis
[4 lf. 79, bk.]
and cordis, veynes & arteries & her brau*n*chis bi [4]*par*ties of' þe heed 4
pass in its longitudinal direction.
*pro*ceden aftir þe ordour of' eeris,[5] & þei ben ordeyned in þe necke
& in gula aftir her lenkþe. & herbi þou maist' se þat' it' is necessarie
a surgian to make hise kuttyngis & hise bre*n*nyngis bi lenkþe of' þe
necke & of' þe þrote, & þat' þe woundis þat' ben m*aa*d ouerþwert' 8
ben more *per*lous, þan þo þat' ben in lenkþe /

Wounds on the neck are either longitudinal or transverse.
Now we wolen tretyn of' wou*n*dis *þat'* ben maad in þis place,
wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum þi*ng* semblable to hi*m*, or wiþ an arowe or
sum þi*ng* semblable to hi*m*. & if' it' be wiþ a swerd, eiþir it' is ouer- 12
þwert' eiþir in lenkþe / & if' it' be ouerþwert' & *þere* be kutt' greete
In the latter case staunch the blood,
veynes eiþ*er* arteries, it' is to dreden. Neþeles þou schalt' helpe to
staunche þe blood & consowde þe veyne, aftir þe techinge tofore
asigned i*n* þe chapitle of' flux of' blood. & if' þer be a senewe kutt', 16
sew the vein, and the nerve,
þa*n*ne brynge boþe p*ar*ties of' þe senewe togidere & sowe þe pellicis
of' þe senewe wiþ þe sowynge of' þe wou*n*dis, as I haue tauȝt' tofore
and apply a preparation
in þe place of' sowynge of' senewis, & leie aboue lu*m*bricus of' þe

[1] *to*, above line.
[2] Lat.: qui est inter corpus et animam amicabile ligamentum.
[3] *in*, inserted. [5] *eeris* for *heeris*.

Add. MS. 12,056.
eke to þe soule. Þe ligamente of þe þrote ys y-clepyd þe[6] eminence 20
o*pere* þe hekþe of þe **epiglote**, & in þe sydes of þe þrote *þere* is y-set
gula. & þe goynge of brawnys, cordys, synwes, veynes, arteryes &
here brau*n*chys by parties of þe hed *pro*ceden aftyr*e* þe ordre of
heres, & þey ben ordeynde in þe nekke & in þe gula aftir*e* here 24
lengþe. And hereby þou maiste ysene, how *þat* yt is necessarye a
surgyn to make*n* hys kuttynges, & hys bre*n*nynges by lengþe of þe
nekke & of þe þrote, and *þat* þe wou*n*dys þat ben y-mad twarte
offere beþ mo*re* perylose, þe*n* þo þat bene in lengthe. 28

Wonde of þe nekke. ¶ Now we wyl tretyn of wou*n*des þat
beþ mad in þis place wiþ a swerd o*pere* w*ith* su*m* þynge semblable
to hy*m*, o*pere* w*i*þ an arwe, o*pere* w*ith* su*m* þynge semblable to hy*m*.
And ȝif it be wyth a swerde, o*pere* yt ys twarte offe*re* ore in lengthe ; 32
and ȝif it be twart offere, and *þere* ben y-kutt grete Veynes o*pere*
arteryes, hit ys gretly to dreden. Naþeles þou schalt helpe to
stau*n*che þe blod & to *con*soude þe veyne, after þe techynge tofore
asygned in þe chapytle off' fflux of blod. And ȝif *þere* be a synwe 36
kutte, brynge þe p*ar*ties of þe synwe togedyre, & sowȝ þe pellykles
of þe synwe w*ith* þe sowynge of þe wou*n*de, as y haue tauȝt tofore
[7 fol. 84 *b*]
in þe [7]place of sowynge of synwes, and leye aboffe lu*m*bricus of þe

[6] *þe*, above line.

erþe, þat beth erþe-wormes staumpid & boilid wiþ oile of rosis, & kepe þe sowynge [1]with byndynge, & so procede forþ in al þing of þe cure, as it is told in þe chapitle tofore schewid / & if þat þe wounde were in lenkþe, it is not necessarie but for to sowe þe wounde & caste aboue þe poudre of lyme, frankencense, & sandragoun, & kepe þe poudre & þe sowynge wiþ byndynge, til þe wounde be ful consowdid / & if þe wounde were maad in þe parties wiþ an arowe or wiþ a knyf, or with a spere or sum þing semblable to hem, & if þer be an arowe, drawe him out; & if an arowe be drawe out, loke if þer folowe emorosogie,[2] þat is to seie, a greet flux of blood, & þanne staunche it aftir þe doctryne þat is told tofore / & if þer be no flux of blood, loke if þer be akþe / & if þer be acþe, putte in þe wounde a litil tent þat may holde þe wounde open al a day, þat þou maist seen þat þe woundid man schal haue noon acþe / & if he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it happiþ, þat an arowe or sum þing semblable passiþ þoruȝ þe necke & þe prote, & he touche not þe senewe, arterie, ne veyne, & þanne it nediþ not but þat þe wounde be [3]consowdid. & if þer were akþe eiþer bigynnynge of swellynge, þanne it were necessarie to fulfille þe wounde wiþ hoote oile of rosis & to putte in a tente not to

of earth-worms. [1 If. 80]

If the wound is longitudinal it needs sewing and puluis

An arrow must be drawn out, and if Emorogie (hemorrhage) ensues, staunch the blood, if there are pains, tent the wound.

[3 If. 80, bk.]

If there are pains and swelling, tent the wound and apply oil of roses.

[2] Lat. emorosagia. Matth. Sylv.: "Emorogia. Emorosagia .i. sanguis fluxus vel discursus."

---

erthe þat beþ erthe wormes y-stampyde & boylled wyth oylle of roses, & kepe þe sowynge with byndynge, and so procede forþ in alle þynge in þe cure, as yt is tolde in the chapitle tofore schewyde. And ȝif þat þe wonde were in lengþe, yt ys noȝt necessarie but forto sowe þe wounde & to casten aboue, þe poudre of lym, ffrank ensence & sank dragoun, & to kepe þe sewynge & þe poudre with byndynge, tyl þat þe wounde be ful consouded. And ȝif þat þe wounde were y-mad in þo parties with an arwe oþere a knyff, oþere a spere, oþere sum þynge semblable to hem, and ȝif þere be an arwe, drawe hym out, and ȝif þe arwe be drawen out, loke ȝif þere folwe emorosogie, þat ys to seye, a gret flux of blod, & þenne staunche hym aftere þe doctryne y-told tofore. & ȝif þere be non flux of blod, loke ȝif þere be akþe; & ȝif þere be akþe, put into þe wounde a lytel tente þat may holde þe wounde opyn al day, þat þou may se þat þe wounded man schal han non akþe. And ȝif he haue non akþe, lete þe wounde be consoudyde; ffor sum tyme it happith, þat an arwe, oþer sum thynge semblable passith þorwe þe nekke & þe þrote, & ȝit he touchiþ noȝt veyne, arterye, ne synwe, & þenne it nediþ noȝt but þat þe wonde be consouded. And ȝif þere were akþe oþere ellys a bygynnynge of swellynge, þan yt were necessarie to fulfylle þe wounde wiþ hot oyle of roses & to put in a tente noȝt to grete,

Add. MS. 12,056.

greet', wet in þe ȝelke of' an ey & oile of' rosis hoot', & so holde þe wounde open, til þat' he ȝeue quytture, & aftir clense him & aftir consowde him / Vndirstonde þe perilis þat' comen for [wondys]* þat ben maad in þis place / þe firste perel is: if þat' þe necke be kutt' ouerþwert' wiþ a sweord, so þat' þe necke-boon & þe marie of' þe necke-boon be al atwo, it' is deedliche. & if' þat' nucha, þat' is mary of' þe necke boon, is not' kutt' al atwo but' is hurt', it' is perile of' lesynge, felynge & meuynge,[1] & at' þe laste be deed, but' if' þat' medicyns þat' I schal telle moun helpe / & if þat ony veyne or ony greet senewe be kutt' ouerþwert', I suppose þat' he be heelid, þe necke schal neuere haue[2] his free meuynge; & if' þat' ony of' þe veynes organik, þe whiche þat' ben clepid guydes, or ellis ony of' þe arteries þat' ben vndir hem be kutt', it' is drede of' sodeyn deeþ, for sodeyn exalacioun of' þe spiritis & also for affinite of' þe herte; & also if' þat' þe cane of' þe lungis be kutt' ouer[3]þwert' al atwo, for þe more partie it' is deedliche / Also it' is seid, þat' if' þe veynes þat' ben bihynde þe eeris bee kutt' al atwo, he ne schal neuere engendre. And also sumtyme it' is kutt' eiþir prickid þe senewe þat' is clepid reuersif', þat' is vndir boþe sidis of' þe eere, of' þe whiche kuttynge or prickynge euermore is maad hosnesse[4] / And if' þat' þe places

Nota

The wound is mortal if the Spinal Cord is cut,

and generally mortal

if a great blood-vessel is cut,

[3 If. 81]

or the wind-pipe.

Nota.

Hoarseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior).

[1] Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. [2] *haue*, in margin.
[4] *hosnesse*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 248. "*hoorsnesse*, Rancor."

Add. MS. 12,056.

y-wett in þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses hot, & so holde þe wounde open to þat he ȝyfe quyter, & afterwarde clanse hym & afterwarde consoude hym. Nota: vndirstande þe peryles þat comeþ from wondys* þat ben mad in þis place. Þe firste [5]Perel ys: ȝif þat þe nekke be kutte twarte offere with a swerd, so þat þe nekke-bon & þe marye of þe nekke-bon be y-kut al atwo, yt is dedlyche; and ȝif þat nucha, þat ys þe marye of þe nekke-bon, is noȝt y-kut al atwo but ys y-hurt, yt is peryle of leosynge, ffelynge & meffynge, & at þe laste to be ded, but ȝif þe medycines þat y schal tellen afterwarde mowe helpen. And ȝif þat enye Veynes oþere enye gret synwe be y-kut twart offere, y suppose þat he be helyde, þe nekke schal neuere haue hys fre meffynge; and ȝif enye of the veynes organyk' whiche þat beþ clepyde guydes, oþere ellys enye of þe arteries þat beþ vndire hem beþ y-kut, yt ys drede of sodeyne deþ, ffor sodeyne exalacioun of þe spirites & also for Afynyte of þe herte; & also ȝif þat þe canue off' þe longes be y-kut twarte offere al atwo, for þe more partye it is dedlyche; & so it ys seyde ȝif þat þe veynes þat beþ behynde þe eres be y-kut al atwo, he schal nevire engendre. Also sum tyme ys y-kut oþere y-prekyde þe synwe þat is clepyde reuersiff', þat ys vndire boþe þe sydes of þe ere, of whose kuttynge oþere prekynge euere more ys mad horsuesse. And ȝif

[5 fol. 85 a]

ben peersid *with* an arowe, & þou3 þat' trache arterie be peersid or ellis ysophage, so þat' nucha be nou3t' *pr*ickid bi þe mydle, þanne 3itt' he may be heelid wiþ gode medicyns & acordynge.

4 Þou schalt' helpe nucha þat' is hurt' in þis maner: þou schalt' helde into þe wou*n*de, *in* þe bigy*nn*y*n*ge, oile of' rosis, & aftirward do yn oile of' rosis & 3elke of an ey medlid togidere, and þou schalt' be bisy in al maner to aswage akþe; & whanne *þat* quytture is 8 maad, þa*n*ne leie a mu*n*dificatif' wiþ medicyns comfortatiuis & incarnatiuis m*aa*d in þis maner / Take oile of' rosis colate ʒ .iiij., wex, rosyn of ech two dragmis, terbentine .iij. ʒ, frankencense, mastik of' ech .i. ʒ, mirre, sarcocol,[1] mu*m*mie[2] of ech ʒ .ß., barly mele ʒ ß., 12 streyne it' on a clooþ & [3]leie it' on þe nucha *þat'* is hurt. & þei *þat'* here*of*[4] *pr*onosticaciou*n* schulde go tofore, þe which schulde schewe to yuel, neþeles bi þis medicyn þer comeþ a rectificaciou*n* to þe nucha, & melioraciou*n* of' meuynge of' lymes, þat' ben bynеþe þe 16 place of' þe nucha *þat'* is hurt', more helpinge, þat' semeþ possible to þe leche. For þer is no þing' vnpossible to stalworþe[5] nature; namely, wha*n*ne þat' it' is holpen wiþ a good leche & wiþ þingis, *þat'* be*n*

Treatment if the spinal marrow is hurt.

Apply Oliu*m* Ros*arum*.

℞ **Modus confortandi & mundifficandi vul*nera* Nuche.**

[3 lf. 81, bk.]

Tho' the prognosis is unfavourable, yet medicine,

Not*a* nature and the physician may help.

[1] *Sarcocolla*, Gr. Σαρκοκόλλα, "is the Gumme or liquore of a tre growyng in Persia." Halle, *Table*, p. 109.

[2] *mummie*, mumia. See Halle, *Table*, p. 72, and Notes.

[4] MS. *of here*.

[5] *stalworthe*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. Stalwart.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat place ben y-p*er*ced *with* an arwe, & þow3 *þat* trachea arteria be 20 y-p*er*cyde o*þer*e ellys ysophage, so *þat* Nucha be no3t þrillede be þe mydle, þey mowe ben y-helyde *with* gode medycines & acordynge. *Þou* schalt helpe Nucha *þat* ys y-hurt in þis man*er*e: þou schalt helden into þe wou*n*de in þe bygy*n*ninge oyle of roses & aft*er*warde 24 leye aboffe oyle of roses & þe 3elke of an ey3e, and þou schalt be busy in alle man*er*e to aswage akþe; & whe*n*ne *þat* quyt*er* ys y-mad, þe*n*ne leye a mu*n*dificatyff' wiþ medicynes *con*fortatyff' and [6]Incarnatyfes y-mad in thys man*er*e: R. oyle of ros*is* colat .ʒ. iiij, *with*[7] 28 resyne ana. ʒ. ij, terbentyne ʒ. iij, frank ensence, mastyk' ana. ʒ. i, mirre, sarcocolle,[8] mumie ana .ʒ. ß, barly mele .ʒ. ß; streyne it on a cloþ & leye yt on þe nucha *þat* is hurt. And þaw3 *þat* hereof eu*er*e more *pr*onosticacion scholde go tofore whiche scholde sownе*n* to 32 yuele, naþeles by þis medicine þ*er*e comytħ rectificaciou*n* to þe nuca, & amelioraciou*n* off' mevynge of lymes þat beþ beneþe þe place of þe nuca *þat* ys y-hurt, more helpynge, þe*n*ne semytħ possible to þe leche. For þ*er*e ys noþynge vnpossible to Stalworthħ nature; namlyche 36 wha*n*ne *þat* yt is holpen wiþ a gode leche & wiþ þynges, *þat* beþ

[6 fol. 85 *b*]

[7] *wiþ* for *wex*.

[8] MS. *sarcticolle*.

Wounds of the brain, the Spinal Cord,

and the principal nerves

[4 lf. 82]

are mortal.

Avoid such hopeless cases.

helpinge & acordynge to a good intencioun / Here vndirstonde þat' al maner wounde þat' peersiþ to þe substaunce of' þe brayn or ellis to þe nucha, so þat' bi þer hurtynge of' þe nucha þe meuynge & þe felynge of' summe lymes ben lost', nameliche from þe whirle-boonys of' þe rigge, of' þe reynes vpward, & al maner wounde þat' is maad in þe extremitees of[1] þe lacertis[2] as .iij. fyngir mele[3] brede vndir þe schuldris, eiþer .iii. fyngir mele brede aboue þe elbowe eiþer bynepe, eiþir .iij. fyngir mele aboue þe kne or bynepe / & ech wounde þat' is in a senewe place with strengest' akþe & hardnes, [4]schal be deemed deedlich, for þe nobilte of' þilke brayn, & for þe affinite of' þe nucha wiþ þe brayn, of' þe which nucha passiþ as a reuere[5] from a welle, & for þe affinite of' þilke senewe wiþ þe brayn bi mene of' nucha, of' þe whiche þei passen out' as a flood / Wherfore þou schalt' euermore in sich maner woundis pronosteken deth, & euermore fle as miche as þou myȝt' from vnresonable curis, but' if' þou be with þe more instaunce y-preied / Neþeles sumtyme nature wiþ good helpinge worchiþ þat' semeþ to þe leche vnpossible, neuer-þe-lattere loue noon sich [cures]* but' if' þou be greetliche preied & þanne entermete of' þe cure of' þe sike man //

[1] MS. *as.* Lat. in extremitatibus lacertorum.
[2] *lacertis*, the sinewy part of the arm. See *Vicary*, p. 57, note 1.
[3] *iij fyngir mele brede.* Lat. tribus digitis.
[5] MS. *rēuere.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

of woundes þat ben dedlich̄

helpynge & acordynge to a gode entencioun. Here vndirstande þat alle manere wounde þat persith̄ to þe substaunce of þe brayn opere ellys to þe nuca, so þat by þe hurtynge of þe nuca þe meffynge & þe ffelynge of some lymes ben y-lost, namlyche from þe whirle-bonys of þe rugge, of þe reynes vpwarde, & alle manere wounde þat ys mad in þe extremites of þe lacertes as þre fyngremele brede in þe schuldres, opere þre fyngre mele brede aboue þe elbowe opere bynepen, opere þre fyngre mele aboue þe kne opere bynepene, & euery wounde þat ys in a synwye place with strengest akþe & hardnesse, schal be demyde dedlyche: ffor þe noblete of þilke brayn, & for þe Affynite of nuca wyth̄ þe brayn, of þe whiche nuca passith̄ as þe Ryuere from a welle, & for þe Afynite of þilke Synwes wiþ þe brayn, by mene of þe Nuca, of whom þey passen out as of a flod, where-fore [6]þou schalt euyre more in swiche manere woundes pronostiken deþ, and euere more fle as myche as þou mayst' from vnresonable cures, but ȝif þou be wiþ þe more Instaunce y-preyȝede. Naþeles sumtyme nature with gode helpynges worchith̄ þat semeþ to the leche vnpossible. Neuere þe latere loue non swiche cures* but ȝif þou be gretliche y-preyede, and þenne entyremete of þe cure of þe syke man.

[6 fol. 86 *a*]

THe .iiij. chapitle of þe .ij. tretis is of wou*n*dis of þe spaude,[1] schuldre, arm, handis, fyngris, brawnys, veynes, & her anotamie / ¶ Capm iiijm

4 þe spawde is oon of' þe iiij. boonys, þe which þ*at*' makþ þe foorme of' þe schuldre / & þe spawde-boon is þ*in*ne & brood two-ward þe schuldris & i*n* hise endis gristly. On þe vpper side of' hi*m* he haþ an egge su*m*what' greet' & twoward þe arm [2]*in* þe place 8 of' þe schuldre he is greet' & rou*n*d ; & þilke eende is holowe as a box, & þis boon is lich to a pele[3] wiþ þe whiche men setten breed into þe ouene, & on þe hyndere p*ar*tie of' the schuldre he haþ an emine*n*ce. & in þe box of' þis boon — —[4] þe which is clepd adiu-12 tori*um*; þe which is oon boon su*m*what' crokid, greet' & holowe / þis boon is greet' for necessite of' strenkþe, & of' schap holowe, þ*at*' he were liȝt', þ*at*' he schulde not' þoruȝ his heuynes lette þe worch-inge of' lacertis, & þe rou*n*d extremite of' þis boon entriþ into þe 16 holownes of' þe spawde. & þei ben bou*n*den togidere wiþ a bowable ligament'. þe canel-boon[5] of' þe brest is in þis maner maad, hauynge

[1] Lemma: 1 The Shoulder-blade.

[2] lf. 82, bk.

[2] Lemma: 2 The Adjutor (Humerus) is strong and hollow.

[3] Lemma: The Cannel bone (Clavicle)

[1] *spaude*, spatula = scapula, shoulder-blade. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 352. "*spawde* Armus." O.Fr. espalde.

[3] *pele*, Lat. palla. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 273, note 4.

[4] Some words are wanting in both MSS. (*entriþ þe extremite of a boon*). Lat.: In hac pyside sive concavitate huius ossis, intrat extremitas ossis adiutorii.

[5] See *N. E. Dict.* This is the earliest reference for *canelbone* = clavicula.

¶ Capit. iiij. t*retis* .ij. is of wou*n*des of þe spaude, schuldre, arme, handis, ffingres, brawnes, veynes, 20 and here Anotamye. Add. MS. 12,056.

þe spawde ys one of þe iiij bonys whiche þ*at* makiþ þe forme of þe schuldre, & þe spawde-bon is þ*en*ne & brode towarde þe schuldres & in hys endys grustly. On þe vppe*re* syde of hy*m* he 24 haþ an egge su*m*what gret & towarde þe arme in þe place of þe schuldre he ys grete & rou*n*de. And þilke ende ys holwe as a box, and þis bon ys lyche to a pele, þe whiche me*n* settytħ brede into þe ovyne, and on þe hyndere partye of þe schuldre he haþ an 28 emynense. & in þe box of þis bon — —* whiche ys y-clepyde adiutori*um* þe whiche ys a bon su*m*what crokyde, gret & holowȝ. þis bon ys gret for necessite of strengthe, & of schappe holwe, þ*at* he were lyȝte, þ*at* he scholde nouȝt prowe*n* his hevynesse lette þe 32 wirchynge of lacertes, and þe rou*n*de extremite of þis bon entreþ into þe holwenesse of the spaude. & þey beþ y-bou*n*de togedre wit*h* a bowable ligament. þe canel-bon of þe brest ys in this mane*re*

an additament' su*m*what' rou*n*d in þe neþ*er* p*ar*tie, þe which entriþ a maner box, þe which is in þe ouer p*ar*tie of' þe ou*er* boon of' þe .vij. boonys of' þe brest'. Euery extremite of' þilke vij. boonys ben ioyned w*ith* þe spawde, þ*at*' þe schuldre myȝte be þe more strengere, 4

joins with the Os Rostrale (Coracoid), [2 lf. 83]

& forto make þis place more strengere, þ*er* ben sett' .ij. smale boonys, þe whiche be*n* clepid rostralia[1] to þe lijknes of' þe bele [2]of' a crowe, & for to fastne þe schuldre, þis boon rostral is putt' i*n* maner of' a wegge / But' þe boon of' þe adiutori haþ i*n* þe neþ*er* p*ar*tie twoward 8

and has 2 eminences.

þe elbowe .ij. eminentis, & þe oon of' þe eminence is more hiȝere þ*an* þ*at*' oþ*er*; & boþe þese eminence ben as þei it' were holf' a boket[3] wiþ þe which me*n* draw*en* watir / & þilke .ij. additamentis be*n* ioyned

The Forearm has two bones (Ulna and Radius),

wiþ þe boonys of' þe arm / þe arm from þe elbowe dou*n*ward haþ .ij. 12 bonys; & þe ou*er* boon, þe which þ*at*' arecchiþ fro þe þombe to þe boon þ*at*' is clepid adiutori*um*, is þe smallere boon; & þe neþir boon þ*at*' strecchiþ from þe litil fyngir to þe elbowe is þe grettere boon. &

and an "Additament" (Olecranon).

he haþ in þe ouer ende twoward þe elbowe an additament' lijk twoward 16 a bille or a pike; & þilke pike makiþ þe elbowe scharp wha*n*ne þe arm is folden, & it' lettiþ þ*at*' þe arm may not' be bowid [bakwarde]*.

[1] *rostralia.* Coracoids. "*Rostriformis Processus*, a Process of the Shoulder-blade, and of the lower Jawbone."—Phillips.

[3] Compare *Vicary*, p. 49, l. 18, where the word *polly* is substituted for bucket.

Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 86 b]

y-made, habbynge an additamente su*m*what [4]rounde in þe neþ*er*e partye, þe whiche entryth a man*er*e box, þe whiche ys in þe offere 20 partye of þe ovy*r*e bon of þe vij. bonys of þe brest'. And eu*er*ye extremyte of þilke vij. bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þe spawde, þ*at* þe schuldre myghte be þe more strenger; and forto make þis place þe more strengere, þ*er*e beþ sette two smale bonys whiche beþ y-clepyde 24 **rostralis** to þe lyknesse of þe byle of a crowe, & forto fastne þe schuldres, þis bon rostrale ys y-put in þe man*er*e of a wegge. But þe bon of þe adiutorie haþ in þe neþ*er*e p*ar*tye towarde þe elbowe tweye emynences, and þe on of þe emynence ys more herr*e* þe*n*ne 28 þe othir*e*; and boþe þese emynence beþ as yt were half' a boket' w*i*þ þe whiche me*n* drawiþ water; and þilke tweye Additamentis beþ y-Ioyned w*ith* þe bonys of þe arme. þe Arme fro*m* þe Elbowe dunwarde, haþ two bonys, and þe offe*r*e bon whiche þ*at* strecchiþ 32 fro*m* þe þowmbe þ*at* ys clepyde adiutori*um* is smaller*e* bon, and þe neþ*er*e bon þ*at* strecchith fro*m* þe lytel fyngere to þe elbowe is þe grettere bon. & he haþ in þe offe*r*e ende towarde the elbowe an additament like to a byle oþ*er*e a pyk', and þilke pyk' makyth þe 36 elbowe scharpe, whe*n*ne þ*at* þe arme ys y-folden, and it letteþ þ*at* þe arme may noȝt ben y-bowyde bakwarde.* þese tweye bonys beþ

þese .ij. boonys be*n* so ioyned togidere, þat' it' semeþ as þouȝ it' were b*ut'* oo. boon. & þe neþir ende of' þese boonys be*n* ioyned w*ith* þe boonys of' þe hand, þe whiche be*n* clepid rasceta,[1] þat' be*n* .viij. boonys, .iiij. of [2]he*m* ben ordeyned & ioyned w*ith* su*mm*e additamentis to þe .ij. boonys of' þe arm / & þe oþ*er*e .iiij. ben conteyned[3] w*ith* þe boonys of' þe hand þat' ben clepid pecten[4] / þe firste boon of' pecten is ioyned w*ith* þe first' boon of' rasceta,[5] & þe oþ*er*e .iij. i*n* þe same maner outaken þe þombe. ——[6] þat' haþ .iij. boonys as þe oþ*er*e fyngris han, conteyneþ[3] his firste boon wiþ þe extremite of' þe ouer fosile,[7] & þe þombe euenliche aȝenstondiþ þe strenkþe of' þe oþ*er*e fyngris in clicchinge.[8] & alle þese boonys þat' mencio*un* is maad of', þat' be*n* *in* ioynturis, as þe schuldris, elbowis, raschet', & þe knottis of' alle þe fyngris, be*n* ioyned togidere bi mene of' ligamentis, as it' is seid tofore / & þese boonys be*n* cloþid wiþ symple fleisch & brawnys aft*er* þat' þe dyuersite of' foorme of' lymes askiþ /

To the arm-bones are joined the 8 hand-bones, the Rasceta.

[2 lf. 83, bk.]

The wrist articulates with the 4 metacarpal bones.

The thumb has 3 phalanges.

& alle þe greete senewis p*ro*ceden out' of' nucha, þe whiche senewis be*n* conpou*nn*ed wiþ ligamentis & wiþ symple fleisch, makyn*g*e brawnys meuynge þo pa*r*ties; of þe whiche brawnys su*mm*e be*n* open to a ma*n*nys siȝt, & su*mm*e ben hid; for þei ben dep*ar*tid i*n* two [9]þe leeste p*ar*ties[10] / þ*er*e be*n* .iiij. brawnys ope*n* in þe fleischy p*ar*tie of' þe arm, bitwene þe schuldre & þe elbowe: oon on þe y*n*nere half', anoþir on þe vttere half', anoþir on þe lowere half', anoþir on þe hiȝere half'. Wha*nn*e þe y*n*nere brawn is drawe togid*er*e þanne is þe arme foldid ynward, & þe contrarie brawn on

The Sinews, Ligaments, and simple flesh form the Muscles.

[9 lf. 84]

The Upper Arm has 4 Muscles.

When the inner Muscle contracts,

[1] *Rasceta*, Arab = carpus. Castelli, *Lexicon medic.*, p. 139. See Littré: "rachette," and Devic Suppl. to *Littré. Dict.*

[3] *conteyned*, *conteyneþ* for *contynued*, *contynueþ*.

[4] *pecten*, Latin, pecten manus. See Halle, *Treatise of the Anatomye*, p. 62 (A.D. 1562). "And after these bones Rasseta, are constitute the bones of the palmes of the hands, called Ostea metacarpis. i. Postbrachialia, Palma, vel manus pectus." The corrupt form *Patinis* occurs in *Vicary*, p. 50, l. 9.

[5] MS. *pascta*.

[6] Two words (*þe þombe*) are wanting. Latin: Nam pollex tria habens ossa. . . . He counts the metacarpal bone of the thumb as a phalanx.

[7] *fosile*, Latin: focile. See *Vicary*, p. 49, note 3.

[8] *in clicchinge*, Latin: (pollex) ut sit solus ex opposito comprehendens cum aliis firmius, et firmius retinens apprehensum.

[10] Lat. in tres partes minimas diuiduntur.

---

so y-Ioynede togedir*e*, þat it semyth̄ as on bon. And þe neþ*er*e ende of þese bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þe bonys of þe hande, whiche beþ y-clepyde rasceta **þat beth viij bonys.**

Here the Add. MS. ends.

the outer extends.

þe vttere half[t] is m*aa*d long[t]; & whanne þat[t] þe vttere brawn of[t] þe[1] arm is maad schort[t], þanne is þe arm drawe outward & þe y*n*nere is maad long[t]; & in þe same maner by[2] oþ*er*e .ij. brawnys, þe arm is houe vp & lete falle dou*n* / & wha*n*ne þ*a*t[t] alle þe brawnys traueilen liche myche, þe arm stant[t] euene riȝtliche & declyneþ to no p*ar*tie /

The muscles end in Cords near the joints of the arm.

& þese brawnys,[3] .iiij fyngir mele from þe ioynture of[t] þe schuldre, ben nakid cordis, & þei ben þe same fro*m* þe ioynture of[t] þe elbowe & in þe myddil of[t] þe adiutorie, þ*a*t[t] is þe place þat[t] is from þe schuldre to þe elbowe; þe cordis be*n* multiplied dyuersliche wiþ fleisch to þe composicio*un* of[t] þe same brawnys, .iij. fyngir mele aboue þe elbowe. & .iij. fyngir mele by[4]neþe þe elbowe ben nakid cordis; & þ*er*e þei maken anoþir[5] brawn; & in þis man*er* ben maad nakid cordis & generacio*un* of[t] brawnys, til euery lyme haue his meuynge, aft*er* þ*a*t[t] it[t] nediþ hi*m*.

[t lf. 84, bk.]

N

From the Vena Cava one branch runs to each armpit,

In boþe þe armes be*n* .iiij. open veynes þ*a*t[t] comen from þe lyuere, & be*n* scharpeled[6] þoruȝ þe arm. For þ*er*e is a braunchid veyne þe which wexiþ on þe vttere p*ar*tie of[t] þe lyuere, & is dyuydid i*n* two p*ar*ties: oon arisynge, anoþir discendynge; þe veyne arisynge comeþ to þe mydrif[t]; & su*m* p*ar*tie of[t] hir is sparpoiled[7] þoruȝ þe mydrif[t] & þe lymes of[t] þe brest[t] / þ*a*t[t] oþ*er*e p*ar*tie of[t] þe veyne passiþ to þe arm-hoolis, & þere he is forkid. & þat[t] veyne passiþ bynepe the arm to þe elbowe, & þ*er*e sche may be seen; & he is clepid basilica[8] or ellis epatica, & aftirward he strecchiþ bi þe neþir p*ar*tie of[t] þe arm to þe hond, bitwene þe litil fyngir & þe leche[9] fiyngir, & sche is clepid saluatella[10] or ellis epatica in þe riȝthond, & i*n* þe lifthand splenatica. þe toþir p*ar*tie of[t] þis veyne þat[t] is dyuydid fro þis assellari strecchiþ to þe vttere p*ar*tie of[t] þe schuldre: & þere is

where it divides into 2.

1. at the elbow called Basilica,

in the right hand Salvatella, in the left hand Splenatica;

[1] *brawn*, struck through after *of* þe. [2] MS. *ben*.

[3] *be*n, inserted.

[5] *corde*, cancelled, after *anoþir*.

[6] *ben schorpeled*, Latin: disperguntur—O.Fr. escharpiller, mettre en pièces. See Godefroy.

[7] *is sparpoilid*, Latin: dispergitur—O.Fr. esparpeiller. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 351, note 6.

[8] *Basilica*. See *Vicary*, p. 52, note 5. There is one reference for φλὲψ βασιλική given in *Stephanus Thes.*, from Synesius, De febribus, which is a translation of an Arab. treatise by Constant. Africanus.

[9] *leche fyngir*. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 291, note 4. O.E. *lǣcefinger*, Leechd., vol. i. p. 394. See Notes.

[10] *Salvatella*. See *Vicary*, p. 53, note 1. Dufresne gives one reference for Salvatella with a different meaning: "Pellicula involvens cerebrum." It occurs frequently in the Latin translations of Arab. authors, and translates Arab. sceilem or osailemon.

[1 lf. 85]

[1]dyuydid. & þe oon p*ar*tie goiþ to þe heed & þe oþir p*ar*tie to þe arm. & þilke is eftsoones dyuydid, & þe oon p*ar*tie is spred bi þe arm manye weie*s* wiþoute forþ, þat is clepid funis[2]; & þe oþ*er*e p*ar*tie strecchiþ euene to þe elbowe, & þ*er*e sche is schewid bi þe ou*er* p*ar*tie of' þe arm; & so sche strecchiþ to þe hand, & þ*er*e sche apperiþ bitwene þe fyngir and þe þombe, & is clepid cephalica. ij. braunchis þat' be*n* diuided þat' comen fro þe schuldre, þe toon is cephalica, þe oþ*er*e fro*m* assillari,[3] þat' is basilica, maken oon veyne þat' is clepid mediana eiþ*er* p*ur*purea. & þ*er*e be*n* .iiij. veynys, as it' is seid bifore, *scilicet*, finis[4] brachij þat' strecchiþ bi þe vttere p*ar*tie of' þe arm, & sephelica þe which þat' strecchiþ bi þe ouer p*ar*tie, & basilica þat' strecchiþ bi þe lower p*ar*tie **& communis seu mediana seu purpurea seu fusca** q*uod* **idem** e*st* is comu*n* veyne eiþir myddil veyne, þe which þat' is compou*n*ned of' basilica & cephalica tofore seid, & sche apperiþ openliche in þe foldynge of' þe myddil of' þe arm. // ¶ þe veynes þat' comen from þe lyuere han manie dep*ar*ti*n*gis [5 lf. 85, bk.] [5]& dyuers placis, & for to telle alle þe dep*ar*tyngis, it' is not' p*ro*fitable for a sirurgian / Saue it' suffisiþ for a sirurgian, for to knowe i*n* what' place þe grete veynes sitten & þe arterijs, so þat' he mowe saue him-silf' from p*er*el & helpe he*m*, wha*n*ne þei ben kutt' / þis þou schalt' wite, þat' from þe lyu*er*e þ*er* comeþ a veyne to eu*er*y lyme bicause of' nurischi*n*ge. & for to make þe lymes ful of' lijf, Arterijs come*n* þ*er*to also. & þ*er*fore i*n* eu*er*y place þ*er*e þat' be*n* grete veynes, i*n* þe same place ben arterijs.

[1 lf. 85] 2. the other runs *a.* into the head; *b.* one branch, *funis*, outside the arm; another branch, *Cephalica*, along the arm, between the thumb and the 1st finger. The Basilica with the *Cephalica* form the *Mediana*.

Besides these 4 chief Veins, there are many smaller ones, which a Surgeon needn't know.

With every vein there is an Artery.

¶ Bi þes þi*n*gis þat ben aforseid, þou maist' wite wel þat' þ*er*e comeþ greet' p*er*el of' wou*n*dis, þat' ben aboute þe schuldris & vndir þe arme-pittis,[6] & i*n* þe boon of' adiutorie, & in þe arm, & i*n* þe hondis / for whi: if' wou*n*dis be m*aa*d i*n* adiutorijs & i*n* þe arme ouerþwert', it' is greet' p*er*el lest' þe brau*n* be kutt' awey, wh*er*by þe arme schulde haue his meuynge; & it' is p*er*el of' kuttynge of' veynes and arterijs, lest þe blood myȝte not' be stau*n*chid. ¶ And if' it' be m*aa*d a wou*n*de w*ith* a þing' þat' prickide, & falle vpon a

Off perelles off wondes an quuttes, if an important muscle is cut or a blood-vessel, if a Cord or Tendon is wounded,

[2] *funis*, Castelli, *Lexic. Medicum*, p. 351. "Arabes venam Medianam vocasse Funem brachii, testatur Ioh. Zecchius, lect. ii. in sect. 1. *Sph. Hipp.* p. m. 109." On this place *funis* evidently means not the vena mediana, but one of the recurrent veins.

[3] *Vena ascellaris.* Matth. Sylv.: "Vena co*m*munis nigra purpurea media — — dicitur co*m*munis quoni*am* componitur ex assellari et humerali."

[4] *finis* for *funis*.

[6] *þe arme-pittis.* See *Wr. W.*, 627. 3. xv. cent.

[1 lf. 86] eorde þat is *in* þe [1]ende of þe braun, & is elepid thenantos,[2] þanne it is greet drede of þe spasme & aftirward of deeþ, for þe akynge entriþ *in* þe eorde þat is prickid, & so þe akynge arisiþ vp to þe brayn, & þanne comeþ spasme. ¶ Also it falliþ many tyme þat a man is hurt þe brede of iij. fyngris wiþinne aboue þe elbowe, þer is þe eende of þe braun & þere ben eordis; & þanne þer wole come greet akynge, & þanne þe spasme aftir, & þese woundis ben mortal.

where cramp may arise,

especially if it is the tendon of the elbow.

¶ If þat wounde be maad endlongis *in* þe arme & *in* adiutorio, þanne it is not so greet drede þerof, þerfore it is necessarie for a sirurgian to knowe þe perel of woundis þat falliþ *in* þis place, & wheþer þe wounde be ouerþwert or endelongis. & if þe wounde be endelongis, þanne he schal ioyne þe wounde togidere & sewe hem, & sprynge þeron þe poudre of lyme & oþere þingis, as it is aforeseid, for to kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis togidere & alle þingis as it is aforeseid *in* þe wounde of fleiseh. ¶ If þer be ony nerues, or arterijs, ouþer veynes kutt [3]ouerþwert: þanne þou schalt worehe *with* þingis þat streyneþ blood, & þou schalt sewe þe hedis of þe nerues togidere or of þe cordis. & þe pacient schal be kept from akynge wiþ good kepinge & *with* reste, & he schal ligge *in* an euene bed. & þou schalt leie aboute þe wounde a defensif of bole & of oile of rosis þat is aforseid / And þou3 þis defensijf be for3ete in oþere woundis, *in* þis wounde it may not in no maner. ¶ þou schalt kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis *with* poudre & lynet, as it is aforseid / Also þis þou must knowe if þou sewist sich a maner wounde of nerues & eordis, & if þe akynge go not awey, þou muste rippe þe sewynge a3en, & þou3 þis be eontrarie to þe soudynge of þe nerues, 3itt it is bettere to do[4] *þus*, þou3 he lese þe meuynge of sum lyme, þat þe nerue seruede þerfore, þan falle *in* þe spasme; for þanne it were drede of deeþ / þerfore it is neeessarie for to opene þe wounde & fille it ful of oile of rosis & of 3elke of an ey. & vpon [5]þe wounde leie of þe same medicyn til þe wounde quytture, & þanne make þe wounde clene *with* mundifieatiues, & þanne regendre fleisch as it is aforseid // If it be so þat þere come ony hoot apostymes vpon woundis *in* þis place: þanne þou sehalt worehe as it is aforseid in a propre ehapitre // If it so be, þat þou leie vpon þe wounde oile of ro*sis*, & 3elke of an ey for to do awei þe

Treatment: A wound along the arm is not dangerous,

and must be sewn.

If nerves or blood-vessels are cut,

[3 lf. 86, bk.] staunch the blood, join the nerves or cords

and apply a defensive medicine.

If the pains do not cease, open the suture,

and fill the wound with oil of roses

[5 lf. 87] until pus is discharged.

[2] *thenantos*, sinew. Matth. Sylv.: "Tenantos gre. est chorda que in capitibus musculorum aggregatur." It is a corrupt form of Gr. τένοντες (Suidas Gloss.).

[4] *do* above line.

akynge, & if' *per*e falle a flux of' blood, & *pa*nne if' *p*ou leidist' *per*to ony constreyni*ng* *p*i*n*gis, *p*e akynge wolde be *p*e more, & if' *p*ou leidist' *per*to *p*e ȝelke of' an ey & oile, *pat*' wole make *p*e flux of' blood *p*e more—In *p*is caas what' is for to done? *P*ou schalt' bre*n*ne *p*e hedis of' *p*e veynes & of' *p*e cordis w*ith* an hoot' yrn, but' *p*ou schalt' not' touche *p*e lippis of' *p*e wou*n*de wi*p* iren i*n* no maner; & *pa*nne *p*ou schalt' leie in the wounde *p*e ȝelke of' an ey & oile of' rosis, til al *p*e rynde of' *p*e bre*n*nyng' falle awei. & *pa*nne *p*ou schalt' leie *per*to mu*n*dificatiues, & *pa*nne *p*ou schalt' regendre fleisch, and *p*anne *p*ou schalt soude *p*e wounde /

If oil causes hemorrhage, and styptics pain, then use the Cauterium actuale (red-hot iron).

[1]Of woundis of thoracis & of *p*e brest & of *p*e membris *p*at be*n* *con*teyned in it, & anoth*am*ia.

[1 lf. 87, bk.]

¶ V. C°.

THorax is m*aa*d of' .vij. boonys & eu*er*y boon at' *p*e eende is cartilaginosu*m* / *p*ese .vij. boonys be*n* ioyned togidere in *p*is maner *pat*' eu*er*y leene*p* vpon o*p*ir, & wi*p* *p*ese .vij. boonys be*n* maad fast' .vij. ribbis *p*at' ben grete ribbis, & *p*o .vij. ribbis be*n* maad fast' i*n* *p*e rigge boon bihynde, & *p*ese ribbis ben crokid / Wi*p*i*n*ne[2] *p*ese .vij. ribbis be*n* v. ribbis *p*at' ben lasse, & be*n* clepid litil ribbis, & ben maad fast' bihynde w*ith* .v. boonys of' *p*e rigge, & in *p*e forside of' a man *p*ei haue no fastnynge to no boon, saue *p*ei be*n* maad fast' w*ith* lac*er*tis.[3] & bitwixe *p*e .viij. boon & *p*e .ix. boon, diafragma is m*aa*d fast', for to bigy*n*ne tellyngis of' boonys abouefor*p*. & *p*is diafragma dep*ar*ti*p* *p*e sp*iri*tuals fro*m* *p*e guttis. & i*n* *p*e holownes *pat*' is aboue liggi*p* *p*e herte & *p*e lu*n*gis /

The Brest has 7 bones with gristly ends, 7 true, 5 false Ribs, and the Diafragma, which divides the Spiritual Members from the guts.

*P*e herte [4]is maad of' hard fleisch & strong' & of' lac*er*tes *pat*' *p*ei mi*p*te be hard, *pat*' it' ne schulde take a greuau*n*ce li*p*tli.[5] & *per*fore su*m*men seide*n* *pat* it' is al brau*n*; but' it' is not' so, for *p*e brau*n* of' a man meue*p* wha*n*ne he wole, & resti*p*, & *p*e herte is alwei meuynge & not' reste. & *p*e herte is schape aftir a pyne, & hangi*p* in *p*e myddil of' *p*e hi*p*ere holownes, & hangi*p* sum-what' to *p*e liftside-ward; & *p*e hi*p*ere *per*of' is brood, & *pat*' place is medlid wi*p* car-tilaginosis ligaturis, & is maad fast' in *p*e lungis[6]; & *p*e lungis touchi*p* not' *p*e herte, saue i*n* *p*e aboue, *per*e it' is maad fast' togidere,

[4 lf. 88]

The heart is made from muscular fibres, is like a pine, is surrounded by Pannicles (Pericardium),

[2] *wi*p*inne*. The Latin has *infra*, which the translator took for *intra*.

[3] *lacertis*. See *Vicary*, page 57, note 1.

[5] Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen XI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Venet, 1527, f. 204: "Cor quidem creatum est ex carne forti ut sit longinquum a nocumento."

[6] *lungis*, a mistranslation of *panniculi*. The pericardium is also called panniculus cordis.

and has ij. ventriclis.

& þe lunge defendiþ þe herte from greuaunce. & þe herte haþ two ventriclis .i. two holowe placis wiþinne, & þat oon ventricle sittiþ in þe riȝtside of þe herte, & þat oþer in þe liftside[1]; & þese ventriclis holdiþ & resseyueþ eir & norischiþ þe herte / In þe riȝt ventricle 4 comeþ a greet veyne þat is clepid ramosa[2] þat comeþ from gibbo[3] epatis, & comfortiþ diafragma, & peersiþ þoruȝ diafragma. & þis veyne is ful of greet [4]norischinge blood & hoot, & it norischiþ lymes of greet substaunce. & þis veyne goiþ bi þe riȝtside of þe 8 herte, & filliþ þe herte ful of norisching blood. & þanne þe blood in þe herte sutilliþ[5] & filliþ ful þe two ventriclis of þe herte, & of þis clene blood þe spirit is engendrid; which spirit is more cleer & more schynyng & more sutil, þan ony bodi þat is maad of þe iiij. 12 elementis. & þerfore it is turnid[6] into heuenly bodies, & it is bitwixe a mannys bodi & his soule a louely byndynge. ¶ And of þe lift ventricle þere wexiþ out ij. [arteries][7] and þat oon þerof haþ a maner coote, & þerfore of summen it is clepid arteria venalis.[8] & 16 þis arterie beriþ sutil blood to þe lungis & norischiþ þe lungis / And þat oþere arterie haþ .ij. cootis. & of þe ilke[9] comeþ alle þe arteries in a mannys bodi, & ben departid in euery lyme of a mannys bodi. & þese arterijs makiþ alle a mannis lymes to haue lijf & spiritis; 20 & alle þes arterijs & alle þese spiritis þat ben aforeseid; and þese arterijs goiþ to þe brayn [10]& þei goiþ to þe lyuere & ȝeueþ him vertu ful myche & makiþ defiynge / And þese arterijs goiþ to a mannys ballokis & ȝeueþ him vertu for to engendre; & in þis place 24 þe vertu of alle þe spiritis of a mannys bodi ben ioyned togidere.[11]

Into the right one comes a Vein from the liver,

[4 lf. 88, bk.]

and fills the Heart with nourishing blood, which is refined into a clear spirit between body and soul.

From the left Ventricle springs arteria venalis

and the Aorta from which all other Arteries proceed.

[10 lf. 89]

[1] The translator has omitted the following passage: "In medio illorum duorum ventriculorum est quedam fouca: & vocatur a quibusdam ventriculus tertius, super ventriculo dextro et sinistro. Item duo additamenta cartilaginosa fortia et flexibilia quandam habentia concauitatem, et constringuntur & dilatantur, & recipientes & retinentes nutrimentum et aerem ad nutriendum et temperandum cor."

[2] The translation is not correct. Lat.: "ad dextrum nanque ventriculum venit una vena *ex ramosa vena*." This vein is the vena cava inferior, which gets the blood from the liver by the venæ cavæ hepaticæ. "The seconde veyne is called Vena choele, or Vena concaua, and of some Vena Ramosa." Halle, *Anatomie*, page 78.—1565.

[3] *gibbus*. See *Vicary*, page 69, note 1. [5] *sutilliþ*. Latin: subtiliatur

[6] MS. *turid*. Latin: vergit in naturam supracelestium corporum.

[7] *arteries*, wanting. [8] *Arteria venalis*. See *Vicary*, page 58, note 1.

[9] MS. inserts, *ij cootis*

[11] The translation is corrupt. Lat.: Iste namque spiritus cordialis, qui per viam quæ dicta est a corde sumit originem, sicut omnes virtutes, quarum est instrumentum, cum ad ventriculos peruenit cerebri, aliam ibi recipit digestionem, quæ meretur formam suscipere spiritus animalis, & ita ut ad epar dirigitur, in ipso formam recipit nutritiui, et in testiculis generatiui, donec

¶ Þe lu*n*gis ben maad of .iij. substau*n*cis: of fleisch þat is recchinge,[1] & brau*n*che of arterijs, & of veynis,[2] & of cartilaginis þat ben holow, & þese goþ out of canna pulmonis as it is afore-
4 seid. ¶ Þe profit þat þe lungis doiþ a man is þis: þe lungis drawiþ eir into þe herte, for to do awei þe fume & þe vntemprid heete of þe herte, & makiþ þe herte in tempre hete / And in tyme wha*n*ne þe herte is constreyned, þanne it is necessarie for to drawe coold eir
8 to þe herte; & if þe lungis myȝte not drawe eir to þe herte, þe spirit of lijf schulde be stoppid, & so a man schulde be deed / & þerfore it is necessarie þat a man haue clene eir, for þe eir passiþ þoruȝ þe lungis þat ben tendre & goiþ to þe herte; & þerfore vnclene
12 eir doiþ harm to þe lungis & also to þe herte. & þerfore þe lungis ben [3]departid into .ij. placis, & if þer falle ony harm to þe oon partie of þe lungis, þanne þat opere partie beriþ al his charge //

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe brest. If þe wounde go into þe
16 holownes, þanne it is miche to drede þerof, for þanne it miȝte falle þat sum substau*n*ce of þe herte miȝte be harmed, & þanne þe wounde were mortal // ¶ Ouþer if þe wounde ȝede into þe lungis, þere were greet perel: for þe wounde mai not be helid but if it be soudid
20 anoon // ¶ And if þe wounde go þoruȝ diafragma, it is mortal / And if it be so þat þe herte be hurt, þere liþ no[4] cure þeron, saue he schal die anoon; for þe herte takiþ no lijf of no lyme of al þe bodi, saue þe herte ȝeueþ lyues to euery lyme of þe bodi; & þe
24 herte ordeyneþ alle lymes to vertues, & þe herte is þe welle of lijf; & þerfor þe herte mai suffre noon harm, saue ioie ouþer sorowe / þerfore if þe herte be kutt wiþ a swerd ouþer ony greet arterie þat is nyȝ þe herte, þe wounde is mortal; for þe arterijs goiþ to þe herte
28 [5]& þanne al þe blood of þe herte & þe spirit passiþ out bi þe arterijs, as þou myȝt se bi ensaumple of a candel. For if a candel þat brenneþ, ouþer a weke, be putt al in oile ouþer in grese, þe fier þerof wole out; in þis same maner is þe spirit of lijf queynt, whanne þe
32 herte is hurt, for þe greet flux of blood, þat falliþ to þe herte & stoppiþ þe spirit of lijf / Ouþer if þer be greet flux of blood comynge fro þe herte, þanne þe spirit passiþ out þerwiþ; as þou miȝt se bi ensaumple of a candel: whanne þe talow of a candel is doon,
36 or wex, or oile, þanne þe liȝt wole passe, & in þe same maner it

Þe lungis are made of 3 tissues, flesh, vessels, and ligaments.

They bring cool air to the heart.

The air ought to be clean.

[3 lf. 89, bk.]

Wondis mad in the brest

Wounds of the lungs are dangerous,

wounds of the midriff, or the heart are mortal.

When the heart, the well of life, is hurt,

[5 lf. 89*]

either the blood rushing to the heart quenches the flame of life,

or the blood and the spirit of life flow out from the wound.

omnis spiritus, omnisque particularis virtutis perfectio cum virtutum operationibus coniungatur.

[1] *recchinge.* Latin: rara.

[2] *braunche of arteriis & of veynes.* Latin: ramis arteriæ venalis.

[4] MS. *do.* Lat.: Cor autem vulneratum curam non recipit.

When the lungs are hurt the wound must be stitched before it suppurates.

fariþ bi a ma*n*nis lijf', as it' is aforseid. ¶ þe lungis wolen take no souding' whanne þei be*n* hurt', but' if þe leche be þe more ku*m*nyng' & soude þe wou*n*de or it' quytture. For if' it' qutt*ur*e, þe lungis mou*n* not' be m*aa*d clene but' wiþ cowȝyng', & þe more þ*at*' þe pacie*n*t cowȝeþ, þe more þe wounde wexiþ // ¶ Also þe lungis be*n* euermore meuynge; & [if] wou*n*dis[1] schule*n* be soudid i*n* lymes, þe lyme [2]mote reste; & þ*er*fore for þe contynuel meuynge of' þe lungis, þe woundis þ*er*of' be*n* seid incurable // ¶ Also þouȝ a man wolde soude þe woundis of' þe lungis wiþ ony medicyne þat' is consolidatif', it' ne mai not' come þ*er*to but' bi a long' wey as bi þe stomak, ouþ*er* bi þe lyu*er*e, ouþir bi veynes, & so þe v*er*tu of' þe medicyne ne may not' come to þe lu*n*gs, but' bi þe forseid weies; & þ*er*fore me*n* þ*at*' ben hurt' in þe lungis falliþ i*n* þe tisik[3] / ¶ If' a man be hurt' in diafragma, þ*er* is no remedie þ*er*of'; for diafragma is alwei meuynge, for þ*at*' is an instrume*n*t' of' wijnd to the herte, riȝt' as a belowe is an instrument' for a fier / For riȝt' as a below, whanne he is opened, he takiþ in wijnd, & whanne he is closid, he puttiþ out' wijnd & blowiþ þe fier /

[2 lf. 89*, bk.]

Medicines reach the lungs by a long way, and therefore the patients get phthisis.

The midriff is to the heart what bellows are to a fire.

Symptoms if þe herte be wonded,

¶ If' þe herte be woundid, i*n* þis ma*n*er þou schalt' knowe: þe pacient' schal swowne, & þe blood þat' comeþ out' is blak, & he schal siȝe sore, & þanne he is but' deed //

[4 lf. 90]

and if þe lungs be wonded.

¶ If' þe lungis ben hurt', þou schalt' [4]knowe i*n* þis maner bi cowȝynge, & þe blood þat' goiþ out' of' þe wounde wole be spumous & cleer / If' þe wou*n*de he*r*eof' be streit' wiþoutforþ, make it' larg*er*e, & þanne in þe wounde of' þe lu*n*gis caste poudre of' mastix. & olibani,[5] drag*an*ti, gu*m*me arabici, fenigreci an*a*; & he schal ete no mete saue þ*at*', þ*at*' he mai soupe, & penidis[6] medlid þ*er*on, & loke þ*at*' he haue scielence & good reste, & þ*at*' he t*ra*ueile not'; & þou schalt' not' close þe wounde wiþoute, til þe wou*n*de of' þe lu*n*gis be sowdid, & þanne soude þe wou*n*de wiþoutforþ //

Throw a powder into the wound,

and close the wound when the lungs are healed.

De vulnere dia diafragma.

¶ If' þat' a wounde be i*n* diafragma, þes ben þe signys þ*er*of': streit' secchinge of' breeþ, & greet' agreuau*n*ce for to d*ra*we his breeþ, & greet' akynge i*n* his side, & greuous cowȝyngs; alle þese ben signys of' deeþ, & principali if' þese signys be greet' & greuous /

Symptoms of a wounded midriff.

[1] *þat* inserted. Lat.: et vulnerata membra indigent ut quiescant.

[3] "*Tisica*, Italis et Hispanis Phthisis."—Dufresne. "*Tissick*, an Ulceration of the Lungs, accompany'd with an Hectick Feaver, and causing a Consumption of the whole Body."—Phillips, 1706. *tysyk*, Hampole, 701. "*þat man þat hath þe tisik & þe etik*," Quiutess, p. 17, 7.

[5] *Olibanum*. Thus masculinum. Arab. al-louban (Devic. Dict.). N.E. oliban.

[6] *Penidium*, barley sugar.

If' þese signys be*n* but' litil & not' strong' greuous, þa*n*ne ȝeue hi*m* metis & drynkis þat' mowe swage[1] þe cowȝe, & þa*n*ne take a tent' þ*at*' be not' to greet', & wete it' *in* þe ȝelke of' [2]an ey & oile of' ro*sis*, [2 lf. 90, bk.]
4 & þanne cure þis wou*n*de as þou doist' oþ*er*e woundis /

Allay the coughing and apply a tent.

If' it' so be þ*at*' a wou*n*de be in a eaua[3] & noon of' þe forseid lymes ben not' hurt', þanne wete a tent' *in* oile of' rosis hoot' & putte in þe wou*n*de; & wha*n*ne þou remeuest' þi medicyne ouþer leist'
8 þ*er*to ony medicyne, be war þ*at*' þ*er* passe out' noo*n* eir þoruȝ þe wounde, ne entre *in* noon eir *in*to þe wounde, & þ*er*fore or þou ehau*n*ge þi tent', loke þ*at*' þou haue þ*in*gis þ*at*' be*n* necessarie þ*er*fore redi, þat' þe wounde mowe be stoppid anoon, þ*at*' þ*er*e go no breeþ
12 into þe wounde, ne out' of' þe wounde / For if' þ*er* go ony breþ out', it' wole afeble þe pa*tient*, & if' þ*er* go ony breeþ þ*er*e, it' wole do harme to þe spaulis. Leie vpon þe wounde oile of' ro*sis* & þe ȝelke of' an ey, & herwiþ wete þi tent' til þe wounde quytture. & þa*n*ne
16 eu*er*y dai make hi*m* to turne vpon his side, & make hi*m* cowȝe & spitte out' þe quytture, & avoide þe quytture bi þe wou*n*de also. & if' þ*er*e be myche quytture, & may not' be avoidid bi þe wounde, þa*n*ne þou schalt' make sich a maner waischinge & putte it' yn wiþ [4 lf. 91]
20 [4]an instrument' m*aa*d lijk a elist*er*ie / ℞ .mel ro. ℥ iiij., mirre, R
feni*g*reci, farine lupino*rum* an*a* ʒ ß, boile hem to þe consumpciou*n* of' þe .iij. part' in lī j. of' swete wijn, & lī j. of' wat*er*, & þanne cole hem & putte *in* þe colat*ur*e as it' is aforseid. Vpon þe wou*n*de
24 wiþoutforþ, from þe tyme þ*at*' it' quytturiþ, leie þis mundificatif' planed vpon a eloop.[5] ℞ mel ro. lī j., farina ordei substillissimi. ℥ R
iiij., mirre, feni*g*reci an*a*. ʒ j., be þei encorp*er*at'[6] & boilid at' esi fier / & whanne þei ben weel boilid, & weel medlid togidere so þat'
28 it' be þicke, do he*m* dou*n* of' þe fier, & do þ*er*to ʒ .iij. of' terbentyne waische*n* & medle hem weel togidere. þis emplastre þou schalt' vse, & þe waischingis þ*at*' is aforseid, & þou schalt' holde open þe wounde w*ith* a tent' wet' *in* oile, til þe quytture þ*at*' is w*ith*ynne be
32 p*er*fitli dried / þis þou schalt' knowe bi þe v*er*tu of' þe pa*tient* & bi þe sauour of' his breeþ, & wha*n*ne his cowȝynge goiþ awei, & wha*n*ne

a loscion for wondis within the brest

A cleansing (mundificatif) plaster.

One knows by the odour of the patient's breath

[1] *swage*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 372.

[3] MS. *canna*. Lat.: Cum autem vulnus est in cassum penetrans. *Cassus*, Pecten. Semibarbaris ex Arabico. Castellus, Lex. Med. *Casse*, Arab. Kas, cup, calice.—Devic. I would rather trace it from Lat. cassus adj. void, hollow, and cassum, i = cassa, orum sb. the hollows. The latter form cassa gave origin to Ital. cassa f. See cassa del cranio, etc.

[5] &. Lat.: super pannum distensum. O.Fr. planer, Lat. planare.

[6] *encorp*er*at*. Lat. incorporatus, O.Fr. encorperer.

if the wound is clean.

[1 lf. 91, bk.]

When suppuration continues, a weak patient dies.

his vnky*n*dely heete goiþ awei / If' þou doist' alle þese þi*n*gis to hi*m* þat' be*n* aforseid, & þe quytt*ur*e [1] be not' wiþdrawe þ*er*wi*th*, & his cow3ynge & his akynge be not' aswagid, & his ve*r*tu be feble, & his spirit' be nou3t', þanne do þ*o*u nomore þ*er*to, sane he schal al turne 4 hi*m* to goddis merci // ¶ Saue if' it' so be þ*at*' he hane þe cow3e &

If the patient is strong, make a new incision.

greet' quytture i*n* þe wou*n*de, & he be stro*ng*', & principali if' þ*er* wexe ony swellyng' i*n* his side bihinde bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib, þa*n* þ*er*e þou schalt' make a newe kuttyng' & lete out' þe quytture, 8 & bi þis place d*ra*we out' þe quytture, & holde þe wou*n*de open, & lete þe olde wou*n*de close togidere. & if' it' be nede, caste yn þe forseid waischinge bi þis wou*n*de & leie a m*u*ndificatif' wiþoute

Do the same, if blood and pus gather on the midriff.

til þe quytture be al aweie, & þis cure þ*o*u schalt' folowe / It falliþ 12 ofte tyme þat' a man is hurt' an hi3 aboue i*n* þis place, & þa*n*ne þe blood & þe quytture falliþ vpo*n* diafragma & gaderiþ togidere, þa*n*ne þou schalt' kerue hi*m* bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib as it' is aforseid, for þe blood & þe quytture mai haue no cours to þe wou*n*de 16 aboue; & if' he is kutt' so bynepe, þa*n*ne þe blood & þe quytture

[2 lf. 92]

mai be drawe awey; [2]& if' þou doist' not' þ*us* þe pacient' schal die, & if' þou doist' þus þe pacient' schal be delyuerid wel // Whanne wou*n*dis be*n* i*n* thorase ouþ*er* i*n* þe brest', & þe wou*n*dis ne goon 20 not' þoru3, þa*n*ne þou schalt' cure hi*m* as it' is aforseid i*n* oþ*er*e wou*n*dis //

Of wou*n*dis of þornis[3] ouþ*er* spondiliu*m*, & of þo þ*at* be*n* *con*teyned i*n* hi*m* & anotha*m*ie /[4] 24

¶ vj? c° /

BOnys of' þe necke, as we haue aforsed, ben .vij, & rigge boonys of' þe brest' be*n* .xij, & of' þe reynes be*n* .v. riggeboones, &

The spinal column is composed of 30 Spondles or Vertebræ.

vndir þe reynes be*n* .iij. riggeboones, & vpon þe place þ*at* is clepid[5] —þe boo*n* of' þe tail is m*aa*d of' .iij. rigge boones, & þ*er*e be*n* .xxx. 28 ¶ Eueri boon of' þe rigge is an hole þoru3, & þoru3 þe ilke hoolis nucha[6] goiþ endelong' þe rigge; & eu*er*y boon of' þe rigge haþ .iiij. addiciou*n*s to hi*m*, & su*m*me han mo; þis is not' necessarie to telle to a sirurgian, sane it' is necessarie to a sirurgian for to knowe þis: 32

[3] MS. *þorais*. Lat.: De vulneribus spinæ seu spondylium & eorum anatomia. The scribe changed *þornis*, the translation of 'spinæ,' into *þorais*, for *thoracis*, as in the heading to Cap. V. The words: *& of þo þat be*n *conteyned* in *him* are taken from the same Chapter-heading.

[4] See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 74.

[5] One word is here wanting. Lat.: super locum qui dicitur aboratur alahume. *aboratur* is perhaps a corruption for *ab arabis*, *alahume* is the Os sacrum. [6] *nucha*, Arab. nukha', spinal marrow.

þat' eu*er*y rig'-boon haþ a greet' hole, & nucha goiþ þer þoru3. & þer ben o*þer*e smale hoolis in þe boones bi þe sidis aboutforþ, & *þer*e þoru3 goon nerues for to holde þe lymes faste [1]togidere. & so þese .xxx. boones be*n* bou*n*de*n* togid*er*e wiþ stronge ligaturis, & þei be*n* so strongeli bou*n*den togidere *þat*' þei semeþ al oon boon. Þese boones bineþe þe necke is clepid þe rigge ou*þer* spina, & þis is þe fou*n*dement' of' al þe bodi //

Through the Vertebræ passes the Spinal cord. [1 lf. 92, bk.]

The Spondles form the Back-bone.

¶ Woundis *þat*' be*n* m*aa*d *in* þis place. If' nucha be kutt' þoru3 ou*er*þwert', þe wounde is mortal for þe nobilte of' nucha *þat*' comeþ fro þe brayn ri3t' as a ryuer comeþ of' wellis.[2] ¶ And þou3 nucha be n*ot*' kutt' al þoru3 saue hurt', it' is greet' p*er*el *þer*of', for þe lymes bineþe schule*n* lese her meuynge, for þe nerues *þat*' be*n* aboute þe boones of' nucha ben kutt'. & also þe rigge-boones ben kutt' & herof' come*th* greet' p*er*el / And if' þe braun *þat*' sittiþ endelongis þe rigge in boþe sidis of' þe rigge-boon & duriþ[3] from þe heed adou*n* anoon to þe tail eende, & if' ony of' alle þese be kutt' ou*þer* prickid, it' is greet' p*er*el for þe spasme, for þe causis *þat*' be*n* aforseid /

The Prognosis is unfavourable, if the Spinal Cord is cut, or the Spondles, or the Muscles along the Spine are severally injured.

Þe curis herof' ben lijk to þe curis *þat*' be*n* aforseid of' o*þer*e wou*n*dis, saue it' is necessarie for a cirurgian to knowe p*ro*nosticatiuis of' þis [4]place, & also if' a ma*n* be hurt' *in* *þat*' place, he mote haue for þe causis aforseid //

The Treatment is the same as in other wounds. [4 lf. 93]

Of wou*n*dis of þe stomac / & *in*testinu*m* & wo*m*be, & anotha*m*ia /

¶ vij°. c°.

I Haue seid heretofore i*n* wha*t*' maner mery[5] goiþ dou*n* þoru3 þe necke wiþi*n*neforþ, and goiþ þoru3 diafragma, & is m*aa*d fast' w*ith* diafragma, & diafragma goiþ aboute þe mouþ of' þe stomak. & þe stomak is schape *in* þis maner,[6] & in oon side he is gibbous, & *in* þe to*þer* side he is more play*n*. & þe stomac is m*aa*d of' .ij. cloþis. & *þat*' oon clooþ sitt' wiþoute & *þat*' o*þer* wiþi*n*ne, & þe clooþ *þat*' sittiþ wiþi*n*ne is villos*us* & ne*r*uo*us*, & þe clooþ *þat*' is wiþoutforþ is fleischi / ¶ In þe y*n*ner clooþ be*n* longe villis wh*er*of' comeþ drawynge, & *þer*e be*n* villis ou*er*þwert', wh*er*of'

The stomach is made of 2 Membranes with longitudinal and transverse fibres.

[2] Rases, Liber ad Almansorem, Tract. I, Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 2. "Cerebrum quasi fons sensuum est et motus voluntarii, Nucha vero sicut fluuius magnus ab eo manans."

[3] *duriþ.* Lat. distenditur. As to the local sense, compare O.Fr. durer.

[5] *mery*, oesophagus. Arab. *marijun*, windpipe.

[6] In the margin is a diagram of the shape of the stomach.

comeþ wiþholdyng' / In þe clooþ þat' is wiþoutforþ, þere ben longe villis, & þat' makiþ expulcioun. Þe ynner clooþ is neruous, þat' it' mowe fele whanne it' is ful; wiþoutforþ it' is fleischi for to make him hoot' & moist', þat' he miȝte helpe for to make digestioun. Þat' skyn þat' is wiþinne þe stomak is norischid with moisture of' mete [1] þat' is resseyued into þe stomac / The skyn þat' is wiþoute þe stomac is norischid of' blood, þat' comeþ fro þe lyuere in smale veynes & goiþ al aboute þe stomac. ¶ Also þere comeþ arterijs from þe herte to þe stomak & makiþ him to haue lijf', & of' þese .ij. þingis, þat' is to seie vena & arteria, gibbus[2] is maad þat' gouerneþ þe stomac & þe guttis wiþ his fatnes, & makiþ hem hoot'. ¶ In þe botme of' þe stomak þere is a mouþ, and þat' mouþ is more streit' þan þat' aboue. & þe firste gutt' is maad fast' to þe lower mouþ, & þis gutt' is clepid duodenum.[3] Þis is þe skille whi he is clepid so, for he is of' þe lengþe of' xij. ynchis; & þanne þere ben .vj. guttis bineþe him; & þanne þis firste gutt' is maad of' .ij. cootis, as alle þe oþere guttis ben, but' þe .ij. gutt' is smal & folde togidere. Þe .iij. gutt' is clepid ieiunum,[4] *id est*, fastynge, for he is euermore voide,[5] & þat' is for he is ny3 þe galle & resseyueþ myche colre[6] for to avoide him, & þere goiþ to him manye veynes, wherbi he is voidid / Aftir him þere comeþ a gutt' þat' is clepid orobum[7] [8] ouþer a sak, & it' haþ but' oon mouþ, & he resseyueþ alle þe fecis; & þere is fulfillid þe firste digestioun of' þe guttis / Aftir þis gutt' þer is a gutt' þat' is clepid colon, & lijþ ouerþwert' þe wombe & resseyueþ feces / And aftir þis gutt' comeþ langaon,[9] & is þe eende of' alle; & he haþ .iiij. brawnys, & þerof' he haþ vertu for to wiþholde þe fecis yn, & for to putte hem out' whanne a man wole / Euery meuynge of' þe guttis is kindely & eueri gutt' of' þese þat' ben aforseid haþ diuers kynde // ¶ Þer ben manye maner causis whi þat' guttis ben folde with nerues: þe firste enchesoun is þis, þat' a man schulde not' as soone as he hadde ete, anoon ri3t' go to sege as

[1 lf. 93, bk.]

Arteries bring life to the Stomach.

The Entrails or Guts: duodenum.

Ieiunum.

Orobum,

[8 lf. 94]

where the first digestion is made

Colon.

langaon.

retains and finally evacuates the faeces.

The entrails are nervous

.I.

that the food may be retained

[2] *gibbus*, mistake for *ȝirbus*. See *Vicary*, page 64. note 2; and page 86, note.

[3] *duodenum*. See *Ibid.* page 65, note 1.

[4] *jejunum*. See *Vicary*, page 65, note 2.

[5] Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen. XVI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1527, f. 248. "et nominatur hoc intestinum ieiunum, quum ipsum inuenitur secundum plurimum inanitum et vacuum."

[6] *colre*. Lat. cholera. Choler, "Bilis."—Huloet.

[7] *orobum*. Lat. orbum. The *Ileum* is here meant.

[9] *langaon*. See *Vicary*, page 66, note 5. Lat. longanon, longao = the straight gut.

doiþ a beest'. þe .ij. cause is *þat'* þe mete miȝte abide *in* þe stomak for to make digestio*n*, & *þat'* *þat'* is not' fulfillid *in* þe stomak is fulfillid *in* þe guttis. þe .iij. cause is þis, *þat'* it' first' abide *in* oon gutt' / & þa*n*ne it' is sent' to anoþ*er* & so forþ. & þa*n*ne for to holde alle þese þi*n*gis / þe stomak & þe guttis is ordeyned a skyn, *þat'* is clepid þe siphac[1]; & is a syngle skyn & is not' [2]villous, & is engendrid bineþe as is diafragma is aboue, as it' is aforeseid, & is m*aad* fast' at' þe rigge bihinde, for to holde vp þe stomak & þe guttis / In þis p*ar*tie bineþe þis þer ben engendrid of' siphac ij. þi*n*gis *þat'* ben clepid dindimi[3] & goiþ adoun al aboute þe ballokis, & is clepid *þat'* ynner skyn of' þe ballokis; & þoruȝ þis dindimi goiþ arterijs & veynes to þe ballokis, & makiþ he*m* haue lijf' & norischinge & kynde of' sperme // ¶ Alle þese þi*n*gis þanne be*n* comp*r*ehendid *in* a skyn *þat'* is fleischi & of' lacertis m*aad*, & is clepid mirac, & is clepid þe vtt*er*e wombe *in* whiche be*n* lacertis, for to helpe putte out' þe fecis & wijnd & vrine /

.2. and digested in the stomach

.3. and the guts.

[2 lf. 94, bk.]

Siphac (Great Omentum):

it is continuous in its lower part with the dindimi (Tunica vaginalis).

ciffac is þe inar sken,

mirac the vtter. (Peritoneum)

þerfore wou*n*dis *þat'* be*n* m*aad* *in* þe stomac be*n* p*er*ilous, & *in* þe guttis, for manie causis / þe firste cause is þis, for her worchinge is necessarie to þe bodi, for þei be*n* þe firste instrument' of' digestiou*n*, & her worchinge is so necessarie to þe bodi, *þat'* it' mai in no man*er* be susteyned, ne abide wiþoute he*m* / þerfore if' *þ*e*r*e be ony wou*n*dis *in* þis place her wor[4]chinge is lost', but' if' þe wou*n*de be soudid anoon; & *þat'* is ful hard & su*m*tyme *in*possible for þei be*n* neruous, & *þ*e*r*e is no fleisch on he*m*, & also for þei be*n* alwey meuynge, & p*r*i*n*cipali whanne wou*n*dis be*n* m*aad* in þe hindere p*ar*tie of' þe stomac ouþir in þe smale guttis / For if' þe wou*n*dis falle *in* þe neþir p*ar*tie of' þe stomac *þat'* is fleischi, ouþ*er* *in* þe greete guttis bineþe, if' þe leche be ku*n*nynge, þe pacient' mai lyue /

Wounds of the stomach and the bowels are dangerous, as their functional activity is necessary.

[4 lf. 95]

The patient may recover if the fleshy part of the stomach or guts is wounded. Nota.

¶ If' it' bifalle *þat'* a man be hurt' *in* ony of' þese placis *þat'* be*n* aforseid *in* þe stomak ouþ*er* in þe guttis, þe leche muste knowe whe*þ*er þe substau*n*ce of' þe guttis or of' þe stomak be prickid þoruȝ or no; *þat'* þou miȝt' knowe bi þe goyng' out' of' þe fecis at' þe wou*n*de, & þa*n*ne þe wou*n*de is iugid mortal. ¶ If' a ma*n* be woundid *in* his stomak & þe wounde of' þe wombe wiþoutforþ ne be not' brood, þa*n*ne kutte it' more & þa*n*ne sewe the wou*n*de of' þe stomak wiþ a nedele *þat'* is iiij. squar & wiþ a sutil þreed, & þis þou schalt' speciali, wha*n*ne þe wounde is *in* [5]a fleischi place of' þe stomak,

A wound which perforates the entrails is mortal.

Sew the wound in the stomach,

[5 lf. 95, bk.]

[1] *siphac.* See *Vicary*, page 62, note 4.
[3] *dindimi*, used elsewhere to signify the Testicles.

for if' þe wonnde be aboue in a place of' þe stomak þat' is neruous, ne traueile þou not' þere aboute þanne, for it' is an idil / Whanne þou hast' sewid þe wounde bineþe as it' is aforseid, þanne springe

and keep the external wound patent while the stomach heals.

þeron poudre consolidatif' & soude þe wounde of' þe stomak, & holde 4 open þe wounde of' þe skyn wiþoute, til þe wounde of' þe stomak be hool // ¶ If' it' bifalle þat' a man be hurt' in þe greete guttis bineþe, so þat' þe wounde be not' to greet', þanne þou schalt' sewe þe gutt', & þe eendis of' þe þredis schulen hange out', & þe vtter wounde schal 8 be holde open, til þe wounde of' þe gutt' be soudid ¶ If' it' so be þat'

When the bowels fall out from the wound, replace them,

þe wounde of' his wombe wiþoutforþ be so brood þat' þe guttis falle out', putte hem yn anoon while þei ben hote / If' it' be so þat' þe guttis be colde, or þat' þou come þerto, & þe wounde of' þe wombe 12 be to swolle, & þe guttis be chaungid wiþ þe eir, wherfore þe guttis wolen not' in aȝen, þanne þou must' sutilli make þe wounde of' þe wombe a litil more, þat' þe guttis [1]mowe liȝtly falle yn aȝen wiþoute greuaunce. Whanne þe guttis ben ynne, sewe mirac & siphac in 16 þis maner togidere, so þat' þei moun boþe be soudid togidere; for if' mirac were soudid & not' siphac, þanne aftir þe tyme þat' þe wounde were soudid, þere wolde leue a crepature.[2] þerfore þou must' sewe in þis maner / Take þat' oon side of' mirac & siphac togidere so 20 þat' þei be euene, & loke þat' þi nedel be .iij. squar, & þanne make oon poynt' poruȝ hem ij. togidere, in þe same maner in þe toþer, & þus þou schalt' make þeron as manie pointis as þou þenkist' necessarie / And whanne þou hast' sewid mirac & siphac togidere in a 24 good maner, þanne knytte þe þredis togidere þat' þei vnknytte not', as þou seest' þat' is to doing'; & lete þe eendis of' þe þredis hange out', & þanne springe vpon þe sewynge þe poudre consolidatif' þat' is aforseid, and holde open þe wounde wiþoutforþ til mirac & siphac 28 be perfitli soudid, for in þis maner mirac & siphac moun be soudid bi þis cause: Siphac is neruous & haþ [3]no fleisch, & mirac is fleisch, & bi þe vertu of' him siphac is soudid; & þanne do þe cure herof' aftir as it' is tofore // ¶ Summen seien þat' þe smale guttis moun 32 be sowdid in þis maner: make a pipe of' eldre, & putt' wiþinne þe gutt', & þanne soude þe gutt' per vpon. & I seie þat' it' is not' sooþ, for þis þing', þe smale guttis wolen not' soude, & to þe greete guttis þis queyntise is nouȝt'; þerfore triste to þe maner þat' is aforseid, 36 & take kepe of' þe perels þat' ben forseid.

[1 lf. 96]

Nota.

sew the Siphac and Mirac together,

and keep the external woundpatent.

[3 lf. 96, bk.]

Some physicians put a reed-pipe into the wounded intestine before sewing it.

[2] *crepature*, hernia.

Of woundis of þe lyuere & splen & reynes & þe bladdre, and anothamia[1] /

¶ viij. C. The Liver is made of blood.

The firste schapinge of' þe lyuere is maad of' þe .ij. spermes as
4 ben þe oþere principal lymes, saue þe greetnes of' þe lyuere is principali maad of' blood & is in þe hardnes of' fleisch. & þe substaunce þerof' is fleischi, & it' is in þe maner as it' were blood runne, & chilus comuneþ fro þe stomac to þe lyuere for to ȝeue him
8 norischynge, & þe lyuere is gibbous wiþoute, & wiþinne holow þat' it' miȝte be þe more closynge to þe stomac. & þe heete of' þe [2]lyuere makiþ þe stomac to seþe as fier makiþ a furneis to seþe.[3] ¶ The lyuere haþ addicioun, & ben diuers; for in summe ben .iiij. & in
12 summe ben .v. & in summe ben .iij. Of' sperme þe mater of' þe lyuere wiþinne is gaderid. & þerof' comeþ a greet' veyne & is engendrid in sima[4] epatis, & is clepid þe ȝate of' þe lyuere. & of' þis veyne summen seien þat' þere ben engendrid .viij. veynes, & sum-
16 men seien þat' þere ben mo; & þus veynes ben ȝatis riȝt' as rootis of' a tree.[5] & þese veynes ben clepid miseraice / & summe of' þese veynes ben maad fast' wiþ þe botme of' þe stomac, & wiþ a gutt' þat is clepid duodeno, & summe wiþ þe smale guttis, & summe wiþ þe
20 gutt' þat' is clepid ieiunum, & summe wiþ orobo ouþir wiþ þe sak //

[2 lf. 97] The Liver is to the Stomach, what fire is to a furnace.

lyuer. From the spermatic part of the Liver comes the Vena Porta.

The Mesenteric veins are branches of the Vena Porta.

¶ þe lyuere is maad fast' to þe riȝtside of' þe stomac, & in þe liftside of' þe stomac sitt' þe splene, & is schape along', & is maad fast' with o partie of' þe stomac. & oon partie þerof' is maad fast'
24 twoward þe rigge in þe liftside, & haþ .ij. poris, & þoruȝ þat' oon pore he drawiþ malancolious blood of' [6]þe lyuere, & clensiþ þe lyuere of' malancolious superfluite, & þerof' þe splene is norischid. & þere is anoþer pore þat' goiþ to þe mouþ of' þe stomac, & makiþ
28 þe mouþ of' þe stomac to haue appetite[7] //

The Spleen draws the Melancholic Blood from the Liver, [6 lf. 97, bk.] and incites Appetite in the Stomach.

[1] See *Vieary's Anatomy*, page 68.

[3] "for his heate is to the stomacke as the heate of the fyre is to the Potte or Cauldron that hangeth ouer it."—*Vieary*, p. 69.

[4] *sima*, concavitas hepatis. Matth. Sylv., see Dufr. σιμός, ή, όν, hollow, concave: τὰ σιμὰ τοῦ ἥπατος, the bottom of the liver. Poll. 2. 213, Galen. It is used opposite to κυρτὸς, convex, curved, in Galen ad Glauc. 2.—See *Stephanus Thesaurus*.

Sloane 2463, fol. 40: "*Syma of þe lyuer is as it were þe palme oþer þe holwenesse of þe hond. The vtilite, whi þat it is of suche forme oþer schappe is because þat it schulde ben aplied oþer leyen to þe stomak as þe hond lieth to an appull, whan þe appull is in þe hond.*"

[5] Lat.: venæ quæ sunt ipsi portæ sicut radices arbori.

[7] *De propr. rer. Trevisa*, Lib. V., Cap. 41, Add. 27,944, fol. 57 *b*: "*& Constantyn seiþ þat þe melte is i-set in þe lift side, & þe schap þerof is*

The Reynes

þe reynes be*n* set', þat' oon i*n* þe riȝtside & sittiþ hiȝere, & þat' oon i*n* þe liftside & sit' lowere, & be*n* ma*a*d of' hard fleisch, & ben sett' i*n* two sidis of' þe rigge boon. Boþe þe reynes haue*n* .ij. veynes ouþir .ij. neckis, & þat' oon is aboue, & þat' oþe*re* is bineþe. þoruȝ 4

draw watery blood from the vena ramosa, and transmit urine to the

þe necke aboue of' þe reynes is drawe watri blood & comeþ from vena ramosa[1]; & þis wat*ri* blood is vryne, & from þe reynes it' goiþ to þe necke of' þe bladdre þoruȝ a veyne þat' is clepid kylym,[2] & in þis man*er* þe vryne comeþ i*n*to þe bladdre / 8

bladdre via the ureters.

þe bladdre is ma*a*d of' .ij. þi*n*ne skynnes, & boþe sky*n*nes ben neruous, & þe necke of' þe bladdre is fleischi. In me*n* þe necke is long', for it' passiþ þoruȝout' þe ȝerde, & i*n* wy*m*me*n* þe necke of' þe bladdre is schort', & is ma*a*d fast' to the cunte.[3] / þe necke of' þe 12

The Bladder has a neck, longer in men than in women.

bladdre ha*th* oon braun, & is i*n* þe mouþ of' þe bladdre [4]& þat' makiþ a man holde his vryne wha*n*ne he wole, & putte out' his vryne wha*n*ne he wole, wiþ help of' þe wombe þat' pressiþ, & of' 16

[4 lf. 98]

galle.

lacertis // ¶ Of' þe galle we makiþ noon anothamie, for al oure science makiþ noon mencioun of' a wou*n*de i*n* þe galle / 20

¶ Woundis þat' be*n* maad i*n* þe lymes aforeseid ben euermore perilous / For alle þese lymes, ouþir þei ben principal lymes as is þe lyuere, ouþir þei serueþ principal lymes, wiþoute whiche lymes þe bodi ne mai not' be susteyned / If' þe lyuere be hurt' i*n* þe depe substaunce, þa*n*ne þe lyu*e*re schal lese al hir worchinge, & al þe blood þe*r*of' wole be disturblid þat' is mat*e*re of' þe spirit', & i*n* þis maner þe spirit' of' lijf' is disturblid & þe fou*n*deme*n*t of' alle hise ve*r*tues ; 24

Only small and recent wounds of the Liver can be healed.

saue if' þe wou*n*de of' þe lyu*e*re be but' litil it' may be soudid, so þat' þe wou*n*de be freisch & not' oold hurt', forwhi a principal lyme mai not' suffre longe sijknes // ¶ þouȝ a man were hurt' i*n* þe splene, ȝitt' he miȝte be wel curid, & þouȝ þe*r*e were a gobet' þe*r*of' kutt' 28

Even severe wounds of the splene can be cured.

[5 lf. 98, bk.]

awey, so þat' it' ne were not' to myche and ou*er*[5]þwert', for þe*r*of' ofte tyme falliþ þe dropesie ; ouþir if' þe poris were kutt', it' wolde afeble þe stomac. ¶ Wou*n*dis þat' be*n* i*n* þe reynes ben not' curid,

*euelong, and is somwhat holouȝ toward þe stomak & bunchinge toward þe ribbis. In þese tweye places he is i-bounde with certeyn smale cloþinge, & me seiþ þat þe melte haþ tweye veynes, hy þe on þe*r*of he drawiþ blak colera of þe blod to þe lyuour, & by þe oþir he sendiþ what sufficeþ to þe stomak to comforte þe appetite þe*r*of."*

[1] *vena ramosa*, Vena Cava.

[2] Lat.: per venam chylim quæ a quibusdam pori uritides dicitur = Meatus Urinarii = Ureter. *Kylym*, from χυλός, juice. See also *Vicary*, p. 72, note 3.

[3] 'Hec vulva, *cunte*." Wright, *Voc.*, p. 677. 32, xvth cent. O.Fr. cunne, Lat. cunnus, *cunte* is a diminutive form like *cunetta* of *cuna*.

for þei ben norischid wiþ watri blood, for þat is *contra*rious to soudinge / & for þe reynes be*n* alwey i*n* meuynge, & also vryne þat alwei is bitynge goiþ þoruȝ þe reynes. ¶ þe bladdre ne mai not be soudid if it be kutt, for it is a lyme þat is neruous & haþ no fleisch, & is alwei meuynge, & for he is alwei resceuynge vryne & also þe vryne fretiþ & þat lettiþ þe soudi*n*g / For ypoc*ra*s seiþ / If þe bladdre be kutt, or þe bray*n*, or þe herte, þe wounde is mortal. ¶ If a leche be sent aftir, for to come to a ma*n* þat is wou*n*did i*n* ony of þese forseid / if þe leche be a man of good loos & a kunnyng man, he schal, wha*n*ne he comeþ to þe pacient, & seeþ þe pe*r*el þe*r*of, he schal telle þe pe*r*el of þe wou*n*de to þe pacie*n*tis frendis, & he schal seie to þe man þat is hurt þat he schal ascape & fare weel; and first he schal make hi*m* haue hise riȝtis[1] [2]of holy chirche, & lete hi*m* make his testament, or þat his ve*r*tu faile / þa*n*ne he schal bigynne wiþ his good worchi*n*ge, riȝt as he took no drede þe*r*of / for ofte tyme kinde worchiþ, þat þat semeþ vnpossible to þe leche, & p*r*i*n*cipali if he worche wel. Neþeles þouȝ þe leche se goode signys bi þe pacient, he schal alwei haue his owne p*r*o*n*osticacio*u*n as it is aforseid, til þe man be al hool, if he schal ascape / for ofte tyme whanne þe pacient drawiþ toward þe deeþ, his passio*u*n wole aswage; & also þe contrarie þe*r*of is seen, þouȝ þe pacient haue greet peyne & þe signes of deeþ, ȝitt he mai ascape / & þerfore for þese pe*r*els þat ben aforseid, he mot be war of vndirtakynge & of biheest // ¶ If a leche be in strau*n*ge cu*n*tre, he ne schal bi no maner wei take sich a cure. & also he schal forsake alle maner of curis þat be*n* harde to do, & also he schal forsake curis þat ben longe for to make ony pe*r*fecciou*n* þe*r*of, & he mote be war þat faire biheste, ne vey*n* glorie, ne coueitise ne bigile hi*m* not /

Wounds of the kidney and bladder are incurable, as ypoc*ra*s says. The physician shall warn the patient's friends, but cheer the patient, [2 lf. 99] and advise him to arrange his spiritual and temporal affairs. *nota.* The physician must never despair, and always remember his first prognosis. He must be cautious in a foreign country.

[3]Of woundis of þe ȝerde & of ballokis, & of þe regiou*n* of þe bladdre and anothamia.[4]

[3 lf. 99, bk.]

¶ ix. Co

GOd almyȝti þat alle þi*n*gis knewe tofore þe makyng of þe world ouþir of man, he knewe þat a man schulde be maad of moist substau*n*ce, as of spe*r*me, in which natural hete schal worche.[5] & for to resseyue þe mater of spe*r*me, it is necessarie þat

Man's generative organs.

[1] Lat.: primo tamen ipsum faciat confiteri.

[4] Comp. *Vicary's Anatomy*, p. 81.

[5] Compare *Auicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. XX., 1. 1., ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 279: "Sublimis deus creauit duos testiculos," etc.

a man haue ballokis / He made ballokis as it was necessarie, & ȝaf
It is natural to desire copulation. hem schap & complexioun for to engendre / & he ȝaf a man greet
delite for to lie bi a wo*m*man, so þat a man schulde not haue abho-
minacioun þerof, saue a man schal do it *with* greet will & wiþ 4
greet loue, so þat generacioun miȝte be multiplied wiþ greet delite[1] /
The Yard has ¶ Also god almiȝti schop in a man a ȝerde. & in þe bigynnynge
þerof ben cartilaginis & ben maad fast to þe laste boon of þe rig-
boon, & is maad of nerues, veynes & arterys, & is sumwhat holow, 8
a Glans þat he miȝte be fulfillid wiþ spirit. & in þe heed þerof is fleisch
and Prepuce. þat is felynge, & a skyn þat goiþ ouer & is clepid prepucium. &
[2 lf. 100] þe meuynge of þat skyn [2]& of þe fleisch tofore helpiþ for to putte
Erection is caused by man's passion. out þe sperme / þe risynge of a mannes ȝerde comeþ of a mannes 12
herte, & witt of þe brayn, wilnynge, & greet desier; & watri
The yard has two passages, *a.* for urine, *b.* for sperm; humour comeþ of þe lyuer. & haþ .ij. open holis; & þoruȝ þat
oon hole goiþ out vryne & comeþ fro þe bladdre, & þoruȝ þat oþir
hole comeþ sperme and comeþ fro þe ballokis. & þese .ij. holis ben 16
Auicen mentions a 3rd one. good for to knowe / And auicen seiþ: þat þere is þe .iij. hole, &
þoruȝ þat hole passiþ a maner of superfluite þat a man feliþ not,
as wha*n*ne he halsiþ a wo*m*man wiþ hise hondis; saue þis þridde
hole is not knowen of a cirurgian[3] // 20
The structure of the Testicles. þe .ij. ballokis ben maad of hard fleisch in þe maner as ben
wo*m*mans brestis, & þat oon ballok of a man is grettere þan þe
toþer & stronger, & to þe ballokis comeþ veynes & arterijs, & makiþ
They make sperm of the purest blood. hem haue lijf & norischinge. & superfluite of good blood & clene 24
comeþ þerto of alle þe lymes, & gaderiþ togidere in a mannes ballokis,
& þere it bicomeþ whiȝt & turneþ into sperme, riȝt as blood bicomeþ
[4 lf. 100, bk.] [4]mylk in a wo*m*mans brestis / And þer ben maad fast wiþ þe
The Seed passes along the excretory ducts (Vas deferens). ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward 28
þe ȝerde, & ben clepid þe vessels of sperme, & ben clepid of auicenne

[1] *De propr. rer.*, Lib. V., Cap. 48. Add. 27.944. fol. 60 *b*: "*For as Constante seiþ, to covenable getynges & gendringe of bestis god haþ ordeyned & i-made couenable membres, in þe whiche he haþ i-sette þe cause & mater of generacioun, þe whiche may not come forþ in dede wiþoute affeccioun of loue.* ¶ *In þe membres genytal god haþ send such an appetite inseperable, þat euerichе beest schulde be comfortid to multeplie beestis of his owne kynde, and þat is i-doo by schewinge of god, lest ȝif þe doynge of generacioun were abhominable, generacioun of best were i-lost.*" This passage is taken from *Constantinus Afric. De morb. cog. et. cur.*, Lib. VI., Cap. 1, ed. Basil, 1536, p. 122.

[3] *Avicenna l. c.*, "Et in virga sunt meatus tres, meatus vrinæ et meatus spermatis et meatus alguadi." *Matth. Sylv.*: "Alguedi est humor ille qui egreditur, cum aliquis tangit mulierem."

barbachi,[1] & of þese vessels comeþ sp*er*me *in*to þe ȝerde, & þoruȝ þe ȝerde is born into þe matris of wy*m*men / In þese .ij. vessels sp*er*me is fulfillid, saue þe hete þ*er*of comeþ of þe ballokis; & to þe ballokis as it is aforseid come*th* veynes & arterijs, & goiþ þoruȝ dindimo*us*, þat ben maad fast to þe siphac as it is aforseid //

Auic*en* calls them Barbachi.

¶ Þe maris *in* a wo*m*man is maad neruous & is schape as it were a ȝerde þ*at* were turned aȝenheer.[2] & þe necke of þe maris is fleischi, & brawny, & felynge, & ge*n*drin*g*, & *in* þe necke of þe maris be*n* veynes þ*at* be*n* to-broke whanne a wo*m*man lesiþ hir mayden-hode. & þe botme of þe maris is schape as it were þe case of a ma*n*nes ballokis / And þe maris haþ .ij. brode ballokis *in* þe necke, & wiþ þe ilke .ij. ballokis be*n* maad fast .ij. vessels of sp*er*me, & be*n* more schort þ*an* a ma*n*nes vessels of sp*er*me / And of þese [3] vessels, a wo*m*mans sp*er*me goiþ to þe botme of þe maris / And in þe tyme of co*n*seyuynge þe wo*m*mans sp*er*me [is] medlid wiþ a ma*n*nes / And þe maris of a wo*m*man haþ wiþi*n*ne .ij. grete concauitees / And þe maris haþ manie veynes, & þoruȝ þe ilke veynes, whanne a wo*m*man haþ co*n*seyued, comeþ blood to[4] þe lyuer for to norische þe child. And wha*n*ne a wo*m*man is not wiþ childe, þoruȝ þe same veynes come*th* blood of þe veynes menstrue & is putt out, & *in* þis maner a wo*m*man is purgid of super*f*luite of blood; & it is m*aa*d fast bitwixe þe grete gutt & þe bladdre, & is hiȝere þ*an* þe bladdre, & is maad fast to þe rigge wiþ ligaturis, & *in* tyme of child berynge þe ligaturis recchiþ, & aftir þ*at* tyme[5] *—— /

Female generative organs.

The Matrix has two ballocks (Ovaries), and two spermatic ducts (Fallopian Tubes).

[3 lf. 101]

The Embryo is nourished by blood from the liver.

Menstruation removes superfluous blood.

If þ*er*e be wou*n*dis *in* ony of alle þese placis, þei be*n* stronge p*er*ilous for her sutil complexiou*n*, & for her nobilte of worchi*n*ge.

Wounds of generative organs are dangerous.

¶ If it so be þ*at* a man be hurt *in* his ȝerde or ou*er*þwert *in* a litil quantite, þou schalt sewe þe wou*n*de, & sprynge þ*er*on poudre, & leie þerto defensiuis, & lete hi*m* blood, & diete hi*m* w*ith* þi*n*ne [6]mete, & cure hi*m* wiþ good diligence // ¶ If it so be þ*at* a mannes ȝerde be kutt al off ouerþwert, þanne it is greet drede þ*er*of / for þe veynes þ*at* comeþ þ*er*to & þe arterijs & manie nerues, for sum-tyme þe pacient mai be deed, or þe blood mowe be stau*n*chid / Saue

Treatment of a wounded yard.

[6 lf. 101, bk.]

If the yard is cut away, death from hæmorrhage may ensue.

[1] *barbachi*, Arab. *bárbah*, 'conduit of water, canal of the urine.'

[2] Galen (ed. Kuehn, vol. IV., p. 635) has originated this curious comparison, which has been copied by the Arab. authors. *Avic.*, Lib. III., Fen. XXI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, Ven. 1527, fol. 285 *b*: "Matrix est quasi conversum instrumentum virorum."

[4] *to*, mistake for *from*. Lat.: per quas sanguis ei venit ab hepate.

[5] Some words are wanting. Lat.: partusque completo tempore constringatur.

in þis cas þou schalt take hede for to do awci þe akynge wiþ oile of rosis, anoynte him aboute þe ers & þe regioun of þe ȝerde, & brenne þe ȝerde wiþ an hoot irn for to constreyne þe flux of blood; for a cauterie streyneþ blood tofore alle þingis. ¶ Woundis þat ben in þe ballokis, þei roten hem anoon, & þouȝ a man be not in perel of deeþ þoruȝ þe hurtyng of hem, ȝitt his generacioun is lore / A wounde in þis place schal be curid in þe same maner as woundis in oþere place of þe bodi, & þe cure schal not be chaungid þerof // ¶ If it so be þat a womman be hurt in her marijs wiþ a swerd, ouþir wiþ a knyf, ouþer wiþ a dart, þe wounde is mortal // ¶ If it bifalle þat colon[1] be hurt wiþ sum scharp þing ouþir wiþ hardnes of humouris, he may wel be curid þe while þe wounde is freisch, with putting [2]of vnguentum album rasis of ceruse distemprid wiþ ius of arnoglossa.[3] & if it so be þat þe wounde of þis place be olde, þanne it is for to make a mundificatif þerto, wiþ castynge yn of gotis whay ouþir watir of barly //

Wounds of the Testicles

cause Impotence.

Wounds of the Matrix are mortal.

Treatment of wounded Colon.

[2 If. 102]

Of woundis in þe haunche and of þe coxe of þe knee, and of boonis of þe feet and of anothomia.

¶ x°. c°/ The Haunch-bones

BOnys of haunchis ben maad fast wiþ þe lattere boon of þe rigboon / & riȝt as þe rigboon susteyneþ alle þe boones abouc, so alle þe boones bineþe ben maad fast to him / þese boones ben cartilaginous & sutil toward þe fore partie, & bineþe þei ben more greet; & eueri of hem haþ a box þat is clepid pixis haunche & vertebrum sit þeron.[4] & þat is þe eende of þe hipe boon. & wiþ this boon is maad fast þat boon þat goiþ ouerþwert vndir þe ars aboue þe ȝerde, & is clepid os pectinis. & as summen seien þere ben iiij. partis, saue in cirurgie it is seid al oon. & þe place of þe coniuncioun of þese boones is clepid þe scie.[5] & sumtyme þese boones goon out of þe ioynt, as þou schalt haue a perfit teching [6]herof in þe .iiij. tretis in þe chapiter of dislocacioun / þis hipe boon, as it is

have each a box (acetabulum) which contains the head of the thigh-bone.

[6 If. 102, bk.]

The thigh-bone

[1] Lat. Se si *eollo* vulnus fieri accideret. Phillips. "Collum Uteri, the Neck of the Womb."

[3] *arnoglossum.* Wr. Wü., p. 559. 27 (XIII. cent.) "*Arnoglosa*, i. plauntein," O.E. *wegbrade*, waybread.

[4] Sloane 2463, fol. 42 *b*: "*þei ben cleped ylia other ossa yliorum, and in þe vtter partie of þe mydward of hem ben concauytes other holewnesse, þe whiehe ben clepid boystes, in þe whiehe þe endes of þe bones of the þiȝes ben receyved inne.*"

[5] *seie*, Med. Lat. scia, from *ἰσχίον*, it means the hip-joint. Wr. Wü., 610. 11 (XV. cent.), "*Scia* an^ce the whyrlebon."

aforseid, is maad fast' aboue wiþ ligaturis & pannyclis & nerues, & it' is a greet' boon & miche holow wiþinne, & is ful of' marow ; & it' is hollow and is greet', for it' schulde be strong' ; & it' is holow, for it' schulde be
4 liȝt'. & þis boon is maad fast' in þe knee, & þere þe boon of' þe hipe is joined with the leg-bone in the knee. & þe boon of' þe leg' ben ioyned togidere in a box as it' is aforseid. & þese boones ben bounden togidere wiþ ligaturis & senewis, & vpon þe ioynt' of' þese boones & for to kepe þis ioynture from harm, is
8 ioyned þeron a round boon & is clepid rotula, & of' summen it' is clepid þe yȝe of' þe knee, & alle þese boones ben bounden togidere wiþ strong' ligaturis // ¶ Vndir þe round boon of' þe knee ben ordeyned .ij. boones in þe leg', & þat' oon þerof' is grettere & sittiþ tofore in
12 þe leg', & þe toþer is smaller & sittiþ bihynde in þe leg'. & in þe neþer partie þei ben maad fast' wiþ þe boon of' calcanei þat' susteyneþ alle þe boones, & with alkarad,[1] & þat' is a boon þat' fulfilliþ þe ioynture & is [2]ioyned wiþ þe boon þat' is clepid nauicula /
16 ¶ Racheta[3] of' þe foot' is maad of' iiij. boonis, & ben bounden togidere wiþ ligaturis. & wiþ þese boonys ben maad fast' þe bonys of' þe toos þat' ben .xiiij., for euerí boon haþ .iij. boones, saue þe boon of' þe grete too, & þat' haþ but' .ij. boones / to alle þese boones
20 comeþ nerues fro þe riggeboones—& wiþ þese nerues, & with þese ligaturis, & wiþ symple fleisch þese boones ben maad fast' togidere —& ȝeueþ to þese lymes meuynge & felynge. & þer ben greete brawnes in a mannes leggis & in hise hipis, & ben ful of' grete
24 veynes & arterijs & senewis, & ben departid into alle þe leggis & to þe feet' / & summe of' þese veynes comeþ fro a veyne of' þe lyuer, þat' is clepid vena ramosa as it' is aforseid in armys. & þerfore þese placis ben swiþe perilous, whanne þei ben woundid, for þe perels þat'
28 ben aforseid. & þese veynes ben departid in þe foot', & .ij. þerof' ben in þe holow of' þe foot' wiþoutforþ, & þat' oon veyne þerof' is clepid sciatica, & þat oþere is clepid renalis, [4]& þis is þus miche to seie : þat' oon veyne serueþ for þe scie, & þat' oþer for þe reynes /
32 þanne þer ben ij. oþer veynes in þe holow of' þe foot' withinne, & þat' oon is clepid sophena, & þat' oþer is clepid vena ventris, id *est* a veyne of' þe wombe. ¶ þe veyne þat' is clepid renalis scheweth it-silf' bitwixe þe lift' too & þat' oþer too next, & þe blood-letyng'
36 of' þis veyne is good for þus manye þingis : for cancrena þat' ben in

is hollow and

Rotula.

The two bones of the leg articulate with the Calcaneus and Astragalus.

[2 lf. 103]

Nauicula.

The Racheta has four bones articulating with the fourteen Phalanges.

The nerves confer movement and sensation to the leg.

The veins of the lower limbs start from the Vena Ramosa (Vena Cava), which divides into the Sciatica and the Renalis.

[4 lf. 103, bk.]

Saphena, Vena ventris.

[1] *alkarad*, Lat. alchaab, from Arab. *al kab*, a die.

[3] *Racheta*, Lat. Rasceta, from Arab. *rusgh*, which means the carpus or the tarsus. The Rasceta pedis is not exactly our tarsus, as it comprises only the three Cuneiform bones and the Cuboid bone.

þe hipis & for a mormal[1], & for varices & for vlcera þat' be*n* *in* þe hipis ouþ*er* *in* þe leggis.

Wounds of the lower extremity are dangerous.

Bi alle þese skillis þou myȝt wel se, þat' woundis þat' be m*aa*d *in* þese placis ou*er*þwert' ben swiþe p*er*ilous for þe kutti*ng*' of' n*er*ues & of' cordis & braun, & of' veynes & of' art*er*ijs, for alle þese þi*n*gis goiþ endelong' þe leggis & þe hipis, & þ*er*fo*r*e wou*n*dis þat' be*n* m*aa*d ouerþwert' *in* þis place be*n* swiþe p*er*ilo*us* as it' is aforseid //

Treatment of such wounds.

¶ Wou*n*dis þat be*n* maad in þes placis þat' be*n* curable, schule*n* be curid *in* þe same man*er* as it' is aforseid *in* curis of' armys & of' hondis / Saue of' o þi*ng*' þou schalt' take kepe, þat' wou*n*dis þat' be*n* maad iij. fyngris brede wiþi*n*ne þe knee, for þe [2]nobilte of' þe place & for þe causis þat' be*n* forseid, þe wounde is iugid mortal / þ*er*for wou*n*dis þat' be*n* in þese placis þat' be*n* forseid & be*n* curable þou must do good diligence þ*er*to, & be wel war of' wou*n*dis þat' be*n* mortal as it' is aforseid //

[2 lf. 104]

¶ The techinge of' þe .ij. tretis is fulfillid þoruȝ þe help of' god, & now schal bigynne þe techinge of' þe .iij. tretis & schal conteyne .xvij. chapitris /[3]

the þerd book con-teynes viij. c.[4]

Here bigynneþ þe þridde book.

¶ i°. c° /

Of þe engendryng of heeris //[5]

HEeris ben engendrid of' greet' fume & of' viscous mat*er*, & þe more hoot' þat' a man is, þe more heer he schal haue[6] / & þ*er* falliþ manie amendeme*n*tis of' heeris.[7] ¶ First' we wolen speke for to make heer fair, & aftirward of' o*per*e sijknessis þat' falliþ i*n* placis of' heeris.

[1] *for a mormal*, ad malum mortuum, a severe form of leprosy. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 343.

[3] Inserted by the translator; the number of the chapters is incorrect. Lat. Add. 26,106, f. 44 *b*: "Incipit tractatus tertius, et erit de curis morborum, qui non sunt vulnera, qui possunt accidere diuersis membris a capite usque ad pedes, que veniunt ad curam cyrurgici, qui continet tres doctrinas et est capitulum primum doctrine prime, tractatus tertii de ornatu capillorum."

[4] The marginal note ought to be: *þe firste doctrine of the þerd book conteynes VIII. C.*

[5] A list of passages on the same subject from works of Lat. and Arab. authors is given by Adams, *Paulus Aegineta*, vol. I., p. 339 (for "Rhases ad Mansor, VI. 1.", *ibid.*, read "Rhases ad Mansor, V. 1.").

[6] De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "*And here is i-bred and comeþ out of fumosite hoot & drie.*" Compare *Vicary*, p. 24.

[7] Lat.: quibus multa accidunt corrigenda.

¶ If þou wolt make longe heeris, ouþer if þou wolt make heeris wexe long, dissolue a litil mustard in water of decoccioun of bletarum[1] & waische þerwith ofte, & þanne anoynte with comoun oile. A wash to make the hair grow long.

4 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris ȝelow, þou schalt do in þis maner. R. mirre ℥ iiij., lupinorum amarorum ʒ vj., [2]flos salicis, fecis vini combusti ana ʒ .iiij., grinde hem wel togidere & distempere hem wiþ lie maad of askis of vinis, & herwith anoynte þe heeris aftir þe 8 tyme þat þei ben wel waissche wiþ þe forscid lye // An ointment to dye the hair yellow. R [2 lf. 104, bk.]

¶ If þou wolt make hem blac[3] R stercus irundinum, & enulam siccam, & orobum,[4] semen raphani & sulphurus, & florem capillaris[5] succus, grinde alle þese wiþ a galle of a bole ouþer of an oxe & 12 tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & herwith anoynte hise heeris, & first þou schalt fumie[6] hem wiþ sulphur, & þus þou schalt do ofte. & þou schalt anoynte him with oile of sambuci, þat is maad of whit flouris of ellern, & leid in oile rȝt as me makiþ oile of rosis. R An ointment to dye the hair white.

16 ¶ If þou wolt kepe þe eendis of þe heeris fro fretynge, kutte hem alle euene & ȝeue þe pacient good mete, & anoynte ofte his heed with oile & watir medlid togidere, & anoynte herwith ofte / & anoynte it with muscillage seminis lini & psillij[7] // A treatment to keep the ends of the hair from splitting.

20 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris crisp R farinam fenigreci, & mirre, & semen raphani gallarum, gummi arabici, calcis abluti, & wynde alle þese þingis & frote þe heeris, and þei [8]wolen bicome crisp. R An ointment to make the hair crisp. [8 lf. 105]

¶ If þou wolt kepe heeris þat þei schulen not falle awei. R 24 ladani[9] .℥ j, & resolue it in ℥ iiij of oile of mirtilles & herwiþ anoynte þe rootis of þe heeris / ¶ If þou wolt saue heeris fro hoornes so þat þei bicome not whit, þanne it is necessarie for to kepe him fro al maner þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & fro greet 28 studijnge,[10] & fro fisch þat is rotid, & fro roten wijn, & he mote ofte An ointment to keep the hair from falling off. R Feed well in order to prevent the hair from getting gray.

[1] *bleta*, Alphita, p. 22, "*Beta major*, uel *bleta* uel *bletis*, atriplex agrestis uel domestica." [3] *blac*, O.E. blâc, albus.

[4] Lat.: orobum, qui appellatur in gallico uicia.

[5] Lat. florum cappa.; *capillaris* is a mistake for *capparis*, the caper plant. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Caper 1.

[6] *fumie*, Lat. suffumigare. Compare *Macer. Engl. Translat.*, xvth cent., Sl. 2527, f. 251: "*make therof a suffumygacyon.*"

[7] *psillie*, Wr. Wü., p. 559. 6 (XIII. cent.), "*psilliun*, i. lusesed." Cooper, "psyllion, the herb called fleawort."

[9] *Ladanum*, Laudanum, Labdanum. "A gumme that runneth from the hearbe Lada, and is much used in Pomanders."—Cooper.

[10] *fro greet studijnge*, Lat. a fastidio. The correct explanation is given in De propr. rer. lib. VII. Cap. 44. Add. 27.944. fol. 91b: "*And fastidium is vnskilful abhominacioun & wlatsomnes of mete & drinke and most greueþ þe vertu of fedinge and of norischinge, for as Isidir seiþ, fastidium is i-seide as it were makinge noye & disese, for a man þat haþ abhominacioun haþ noye and disese in þing þat anothir haþ solas in & lykinge.*"

purge fleume with turbit, and vse strong wijn & a litil, & vse sutil
R sauce, & vse of þese þingis: R. mirabolanorum,[1] kebulorum indorum,
emblicorum, & bellicorum[2] ana.,[3] & grinde hem alle with oile of
almondis longe, & þanne tempere hem vp with wijn & hony, & eueri 4
morowe he schal take þerof þe quantite of a note / And þow schalt
die hise heeris if þei ben white, wiþ tincture þat ben forseid //

A hair-dye. ¶ If a man desiriþ for to haue blac heeris as doiþ greuis[4] &
R spaynardis, þanne make þis tincture. R foliorum mirti, foliorum 8
papaueris rubij, capilli, ciperi, spice, seminis bletarum, apii, ana ℥ j.,
seþe hem in iiij lī of watir, til þei come to o pound, & þanne cole[5]
[6 If. 105, bk.] hem & do þerto lī. j. of oile of violet [6]& boile hem in a double
vessel til al þe watir be waistid awey; þanne caste into þe oile ℥ ß 12
of acacie, & make aischis of pyne applis, whanne þe kirnels ben
taken out þerof, & medle hem alle togidere, & kepe þis oynement.
& herwiþ anoynte heeris þat þou wolt make blake.

Of allopucia þat is namys of fisik þat signifieþ diuers passiouns / 16

¶ ijᵒᶜ NAmys of phisice þat signifieþ diuers passiouns vndir oon name
ofte tyme bigiliþ a leche, & bringiþ him into greet errour /
The falling off of the hair called Alopecia is a sort of Leprosy. For comounli al maner lesing of heer is clepid allopucia[7]; saue for 20
to seie þe soþe, allopucia is a maner spice[8] of lepre þat comeþ of
rotid fleume / Saue in þis chapitre I wole speke of allopucia þat
falliþ oonli in þe heed. Allopix in grew, is seid a fox in latin, for
a fox in sum tyme of þe ȝeer his heer piliþ awei, & þerfore fallyng 24
The disease is called awei of heer is clepid allopucia / ¶ Tinea[9] is as miche to seie as a

[1] *Mirobolans*, a kind of Plums.—Phillips.

[2] *Chebuli*, *Embliei*, and *Bellirici* are different kinds of Mirabolans. See Tommaseo Diz. [3] Lat. ana partes equales.

[4] Greeks. [5] *cole*, Lat. colo, strain through a sieve.

[7] De propr. rer. Add. 27.944, fol. 66 b.: "*And if suche fumosite faileþ nouȝt, but is infect or i-lette by som oþir humore, þan failinge and lak of heer is nouȝt propirliche ballidenes, but a special yuel þat phisicians clepen allopieiam.* ¶ *By þat yuel þe nurtur of heer is corrupt & faileþ, & þe heer falleþ & þe ferþe partye of þe heed is bare, and þe furþer skyn of þe heed is þe foulere.* ¶ *Soche men faren as foxes, for þe heer of hem falliþ happiliche for inmoderat and passinge hete.* ¶ *Allopes in grew, vulpes in latyn, a fox in englische.*"

[8] *spice*, Lat. species. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 355, "a Spyce; species." As to the pleonastic use of *spice*, compare: *a maner kynde of sponges* (leaf 109).

[9] De propr. rer., *ibid.*, fol. 80: "*Also þe heed is ofte disesid wiþ an famuler passioun, þat children hauen ofte, and by constantin þat yuel hatte squama, skalle, & we elepiþ þat yuel tynea, moþþe, for it fretiþ & gnaweþ þe ouer partie of þe skyn of þe heed as a moþþe fretiþ cloþ & cleueþ þerto wiþoute departinge & holdinge þe skyn wel faste.*"

reremous, for þe heeris of' a reremo*us* be*n* alwey aboute þe heed, & þe*r*fore cirurgians makiþ differe*n*ce bitwixe allopuciam & tineam, for þei [1]clepid tineam þe*re* þa*t*' þe*re* is corrupciou*n* i*n* þe skyn wiþ harde
4 crustis & quytture / Saue allopucia is wh*an*ne þe heeris falliþ awei wiþoute ony wise of' þe skyn.[2]

Tinea when attended by corruption of the skin. [1 lf. 106]

¶ Allopucia þa*t*' is wiþoute comeþ of' þe skyn,[3] & sumtyme it' comeþ i*n* þe eende of' a siknes for defaute of' norischinge of' þe bodi
8 þat' schulde helpe to norische þe heeris, ouþir it' comeþ, for þe poris openeþ to myche / In þis cas it' is necessarie for to augmente norischinge of' þe bodi wiþ good metis þa*t*' engendriþ good blood, & frote wel þe heeris of' his heed wiþ þi*n* hond & anoynte it' wiþ oile
12 of' mirtillor*um* / If' þis suffise not', frote wel þe heeris of' his heed w*ith* þi*n* hond til þe skyn of' his heed bicome reed; & þa*n* frote it' wiþ ryndis of' an oynou*n* til it' bicome drie, & þa*n*ne þe*re* wole arise þe*re* vpon, as it' were, bladdris, & þa*n*ne anoynte þe place wiþ grece
16 of' a maulard. & wh*an*ne þe heeris wexen aȝen, lete schaue hem ofte, for miche schauynge is good þe*r*fore /

Alopecia arises from want of nourishment.

Treatment of this disease.

If' it' so be þa*t*' allopucia comeþ of' vijs[4] of' humouris, þa*t*' þou miȝt' knowe bi þe techi*n*g' [5]þa*t*' is aforseid i*n* allopucia þa*t*' comeþ
20 of' long' sijknes; for if' it' come of' vijs of' humouris, þa*n*ne vlcera wole be i*n* þe skyn. Þa*n* þou must' loke of' what' humour it' come, þa*t*' þ*o*u miȝt knowe bi disposiciou*n* of' al þe bodi & bi þe colour of' þe place, as if' þe pacient' be fleischi & wel colourid, & if' þe fleume
24 of' his mouþ be swete, & þe pustulis þa*t*' be*n* i*n* his heed be reed, & if' his vryne be þicke & reed, & if' he be ȝong', & if' he etiþ metis þa*t*' engendriþ miche blood, & if' vlcera be i*n* þe skyn, & if' al þe skyn be reed & ful of' quytture, alle þes ben signys of' aboundau*n*ce
28 of' blood. If' it' so be þa*t*' his bodi be leene, & þe colo*ur* of' þe place be rufus ouþ*er* ȝelow, & vlcer be drie, it' is signe þa*t*' colre is þe cause / If' his bodi be sumwhat' whijt', & if' he haþ smale veynis, & if' he haue miche moisture i*n* his mouþ, & if' his vryne be whijt' &
32 þicke, & if' he þirstiþ not', & if' þe place be whijt' & neische and miche moisture þe*r*on wiþoute*n* ony bre*n*nynge, it' is a signe of' fleume / If' þe colour of' his bodi be derk ouþ*er* blac, & if' he be leene, & if' his vryne be pale & þi*n*ne, [6]& if he haþ greet' appetit',
36 & if' his blood be blac, & if' he vsiþ miche for to ete beef' & caul, &

Signs for telling whether it is caused by superabundance of blood, by choler, by phlegm, [6 lf. 107]

[2] *withoute ony wise of þe skyn*, Lat. absque cutis vitio apparente; *of viis of humouris*, Lat. propter humorum malitiem.

[3] Mistranslated from the Lat. alopecia quæ sine cutis est vulnere.

[4] See note 2.

oþere þingis þat engendriþ malancolie, & if þe place of þe siknes be ledy & hard, þat is a signe of malancoli, saue þis passioun comeþ ful seelde of malancoli, but if it be of greet corrupcioun, & þanne it is worse þan ony oþer aforseid / 4

or by melancholy.

First remove the cause of the disease.

Wha*n*ne þou knowist of what humour it comeþ, first þou must auoide[1] þat humour, for þis is a general rule of .G., for as .G. seiþ / First, þou must do awei þe cause, & I woole teche þee to auoide þe mate*re* w*ith* fewe medicyns þat be*n* approued & be*n* 8 laxatiuis, profitable, & be*n* necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe alle þe maner of purgaciou*n*s, for ellis he schal neu*ere* wel worche i*n* sich maner causis / If it so be þat a ma*n* be ful of humouris, þou must first bigy*n*ne for to lete hi*m* blood, if he be strong & i*n* age, 12 þat is, & not to ȝong ne to oold. & þa*n* lete hi*m* blood, ou*þer* garse hi*m*, & þa*n* after*w*ard purge hi*m*, saue it is bettere to pu*r*ge hi*m* first, & þa*n*ne wiþi*n*ne a few daies lete hi*m* [2]blood / If it so be þat blood be oonli þe cause, þa*n*ne it suffisiþ ynow for to lete hi*m* 16 blood / ¶ If it so be þat þou dissoluest þe water wiþ a laxatif, & if þou letist not him blood tofore ne aftirward, þa*n*ne þou art not sure; for ofte tyme þe medicyne laxatif wole engendre a feuer, & principali if it be hoot / 20

Galion. a generalle rulle off galyen.

If the patient is full of humours, bleed and purge.

[2 lf. 107, bk.]

To purge coler

℞

¶ Colre schal be pu*r*gid i*n* þis man*er* / ℞ violar*um* ℥ j., prunor*um* ℥ j & ℔, sebesten .xv. i*n* nou*m*bre, iuiubas .xx., seþe hem in iij lī of wate*r*, til þei come to lī j, & cole hem, & resolue þe*r*on cassia fistula[3] ℥ j., thamarindo*rum*, ma*n*ne an*a* ℥ ℔., & boile hem a 24 litil togidere, & þa*n* cole hem, & aneuen do þe*r*on poudre of mirabolani citr*ini* ʒ. j., & of rubarbe, & amorowe cole he*m*, saue chaufe it a litil first, & distempe*r*e it w*ith* ℥ ℔ of sugre ros*arum*, & lete

℞

hi*m* drynke it[4] / ou*þer* wiþ þese pelottis[5] / ℞ aloes cicot*ri*ni[6] .ʒ j., 28 mirab*olani* cit*ri*ni, ros*arum* rubear*um* an*a* .ʒ ℔., scamonie q*uint*am

[1] *avoide*, Lat. evacuare. See *N. E. Dict.*, avoid, 1.

[3] *cassia fistula*, see *Alphita*, p. 35, and *Adams l. c.*, vol. III., p. 429. It is *Cassia fistula* L., the pudding-pipe tree.

[4] The following prescription is omitted in the text, but written in a different hand at the bottom of lf. 107 bk.: *pro colera* ℞ *cantaridar*um, *mane, medulle cassia fistule ana* ℥ ß, *myrbol, eytri*[*ni*] ʒ *ij, boylle in lī* ß *watir, to the halfe put therto* ℥ *j suger* & ß ʒ. *& drenk yt.*

[5] *pelottis*, Lat. pillis, Fr. pelote, a little ball. Phillips. "Pellota (in the *Forest Law*) the ball or round fleshy part of a Dog's Foot." Charta de Foresta, 1225: in *Annales de Burton. Annales Monast. Luard*, vol. I., p. 233: "Talis autem sit expeditatio [canum] per assisam comitatuum, quod tres ortilli abscidantur siue *pelota* de pede anteriori."

[6] *aloes cicotrini*, Lat. sucotrini, for socotrini, so called from the island Socotra.

p*ar*te*m* .ʒ. j., þat is to seie þe .v. p*ar*t of ʒ., & make þerof pelottis w*it*h sirupo violace*o*. & þis is good to ȝeue to a strong man / Also þese ben good pelottis for to p*ur*ge clene colre / ℞ mirab*olani* ℞
4 cit*ri*ni .ʒ j., scamonie cocte .ϑ ß, mastic*is* [1] g*ra*na iij., grinde he*m* & [1 lf. 108]
te*m*p*ere* he*m* vp wiþ ius of iouis barba,[2] & make þ*er*of pelottis & þis ius, but collig*e* on ȝest.[3] ¶ þis þou must wite þat whanne þou wolt p*ur*ge colre, first þou muste make a p*re*p*ar*atiif tofore w*it*h
8 oxisacra[4] & wiþ metis þat ben colde & moist & wiþ reste.

¶ If þou wolt p*ur*ge fleume þou schalt to þis medicyne þat **To purge Flem l. h.**
Maist*er* William of Salerne vside / ℞ turbit albi gu*m*mosi .ʒ j & **A prescription of William of Salerne**
ϑ j, diaȝinȝiberos .ʒ ij., & medle he*m* togid*er*e & make herof a gobet,
12 & medle þ*er*wiþ a litil of sirupe of ros*is*. ¶ It is good forto medle ℞
ȝinȝiberos wiþ turbit for þat wole comforte þe stomac & defie fleumatik humouris, & also it is good for to ete eu*er*y dai fastyng wiþouten ony medlynge of ony laxatif / ℞ ȝinȝib*er*is albi .ʒ j., ℞
16 liquericie rase .ʒ iij., gario*fili* cardamoni, nuc*is* muscat*i*, g*ra*nor*um* p*ar*adisi .ʒ ij., ȝuc*are* albissime .lī .ij., & make herof a letuarie not to hard soden; ouþir wiþ þese pelottis: pulu*er*is pigre,[5] turbit electi an*a* .ʒ x, pulpe coloquintide .ʒ iij & ϑ j, grynde all þese & sarce he*m*,[6]
20 & temp*er*e he*m* vp wiþ oile of almondis & make þ*er*of pelottis, & herof þou myȝt [7] ȝeue at oonys ʒ ij. ¶ þe poudre of pigre þat goiþ [7 lf. 108, bk.]
to þese pelottis is good þouȝ it were bi it-silf.[8] & it is swiþe **A powder used by Ras*is* & Auic*en***
com*oun*, & R*asis* & A. acorde*n* þ*er*on, & hali abbot & serap*ion*[9] / ℞
24 ros*arum* rubea*rum*, mastic*is*, xilob*alsami*, spice, cassie lignie, aȝari ℞
an*a*,[10] aloes þat it be good, double to alle. ¶ If fleume be medlid wiþ

[2] *iouis barba.* med. L. for Sempervivum tectorum. Add. 15,236, fol. 4: "*Iouis barba. semperuiua idem. G. Iubarbe A. siluegrene.*"

[3] *zest*, Lat. et sit dosis una. "Zest, a chip of orange . . . it is also sometimes taken for a short afternoon sleep or Nap: as to go to one's zest."—Phillips. Zest (chip of orange), Fr. zeste, Lat. schistus—zest (nap), Esp. siesta, Lat. sextus.

[4] *oxisacra*—Oxysaccharum, a Composition of Sugar and Vinegar.—Phillips.

[5] *pigre*, πικρός, η, όν, sharp, bitter. Matth. Sylv.: "Pigra Gal. in dinamidiis .i. amara, quæ amaritudine sua morbos & humores expellunt."

[6] *sarce hem*, Lat. cribellentur. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 318. "a Sarce, colum." Phillips. "Scarce or Sarce, a fine Hair Sieve." Lat. serica, Ital. sargia, Fr. sarge.

[8] *be it-silf.* The *N. E. Dict.* s. v. by 4, gives examples for the early occurrence of 'by oneself' = alone. The first reference for 'by itself' is quoted by Shaks.

[9] *hali abbot & serapion* are not named in the Latin text. Hali abbot, also called Hali þe abbot, is Ali the son of Abbas, a Persian physician (994), the author of 'al muluki' = the Royal. See *Sprengel II.*, p. 412.

[10] Lat. ana partes equales.

colre, þa*n*ne do [þerto][1] þe forseid pelottis of' turbit', of' scamonie .ʒ ij. & ſ, sticados arabici[2] .ʒ .v, & þa*n*ne þou schalt' do þe*r*to turbit' .ʒ .v—& it' was aforseid .ʒ x *in* þe resceit' tofore—& þese pelottis ben clepid cochiu*m* ras*is*, & þis is þe beste þing' þa*t*' mai be for to purge dyuers humouris þa*t*' be*n* in þe heed / I ne knewe no medicyn laxatif' þa*t*' is so good, þa*t*' is so p*ro*fitable for to p*ur*ge ij· humouris þa*t*' ben medlid togidere as þis medicyn is / For þe*re* be*n* oþe*re* medicyns as sure as þis, saue þei ben not' so myʒty. Also þe*re* ben oþe*re* medicyns more miʒty, saue þei be*n* not' so sure.

cochium Ras*is*.

¶ Þou schalt' p*ur*ge malancoli wiþ þis liʒt' medicyn þa*t*' is ofte ʒeue / ℞. epith*imi* .ʒ j., & boile it' *in* lī j. of' gotis whey, saue þou schalt' boile it' b*ut*' a while, & lete he*m* stonde so al nyʒt', & a morowe chaufe [3]it a litil & cole it', & ʒeue it' to drynke; ouþ*er* make it' wiþ a decocciou*n* of' Epith*imi* Rasis ℞ mirab*olanorum* indo*rum* .ʒ x, pollipodij ʒ .v, sene ʒ vij, turbit' ʒ iij, sticados .ʒ x, seþe alle þes i*n* iij lī of' watir, til it' come to j. lī., & þa*n*ne do þe*r*to epithi*mi* ʒ .x, & lete it' boile a litil, & þa*n* sette it' adou*n* fro þe fier; & wha*n*ne it' is cold cole it' & do þe*r*to sugre ro. ℥ j., & ʒeue it' to dry*n*k *in* diluculo / If' þou wolt' make a medicyn þa*t*' is more strenger, ʒeue first' bi iij. ho*ur*is þese pelottis. ℞ aloes ʒ j., sal*is* indi ʒ .ſ., agarici .ϑ ij., elli*bori* nigri þe .iiij. p*ar*t of' a ʒ., & make herof' pelottis wiþ hony, ouþ*er* make herof' a sirup.

To purge melancole ℞

[3 lf. 109]

℞

A stronger medicine: ℞

Wha*n*ne þou hast' wel purgid þe mater, þa*n*ne þou must go to þe cure i*n* þis maner / Loke if' frotyngis and liʒt' medicyns þ*a*t ben seid i*n* þe firste bygynyng' of' þis chapiter suffise i*n* allopucia þa*t*' ben not' vlcera, saue oonli fallyng' awei of' heeris. If' þe forseid medicyns wolen not' serue, þa*n* þou muste make stronger / ℞ spume maris, þa*t*' is a maner kynde of' sponges,[4] saue it' is more sutil & more whit', ʒ x. baurac[5] .i. [6]nitru*m*, in þe stide herof' we mou*n* do þerto sal ge*m*me, sulphuris, euforbij an*a* ʒ .ij., staphisag*ri*e, cantaridaru*m* an*a* .ʒ j, grynde alle þese togidere & make hem wiþ oile, & anoy*n*te herwiþ his heed. ¶ If' þou wolt' worche more stronglich aboute þe place þa*t*' þe heeris ben pilid awei, & p*ri*ncipaly if' he be a riche man: ℞ oliu*m* de ben[7] .℥ j., cantaridar*um* & kutte awei þe

After having purged, proceed to the local cure; use rubbing and mild medicines, if necessary—stronger ones

℞

[6 lf. 109, bk.]

℞

For rich people use an ointment of Cantharides.

[1] Wanting.

[2] *stecados* or *stickadone*, Cassidonie or French Lavender. Minsheu.—Stoechas d'Arabie. Pharmacopœa Gallica.

[4] See page 179, note 1. [5] *baurac*, Arab. = nitrum.

[7] "*Ben* or *Behn*, the Fruit of a Tree, like the Tamarisk, about the bigness of a Filberd, which the Perfumers bruise to get the Oil out of it, not so sweet smelling of it-self, but proper to receive any sort of Scent."—Philipps.

hediȝ *þe*rof' & þe wyngis an*a* .ʒ j., stampe a litil cantarides & leie he*m* *in* oile of' violet',[1] & sette þe viol[2] vpon soft' colis & lete hem boile, & putte *in* a smal sticke, and alwei meue he*m* & it' wole
4 bicome al *in*to an oynement', & make it' haue a sote smel wiþ musco, & herwiþ anoynte his heed; & þis wole make bladdris arise *þe*ron, & it' wole make heeris to growe. Saf' þou must' take hede, *þat'* in medicyns *þat'* ben cantarides y*n*ne, þei wolen make a greet
8 bre*n*nyng', and *þat'* bre*n*nyng' wole be yuel to take awei. & su*m*tyme it' falliþ *þat'* þoruȝ *þat'* bre*n*nyng' comeþ a feuer. First, þou schalt' helpe þis caas[3] *in* þis maner: þou schalt' anoynte þe place w*ith* vng*uentum* [4]alb*um* *þat'* schal be seid *in* þe antidotarie / [[4] lf. 110]

Inflammatory symptoms, such as fever, to be treated with unguentum album.

12 ¶ Vlcera *þat'* ben *in* allopucia ou*þer* tinear*um*[5] su*m*me ben curable & su*m*me be*n* *in*curable; if' it' be so *þat'* þe substau*n*ce of' þe skyn be not' to hard, þa*n*ne þou schalt' *tra*ueile *þe*reaboute. Also if' þe skyn be hard & calose,[6] þanne it' is seid *in*curable // ¶ If' *þe*re ben
16 pustulis *þat'* be*n* hote & ful of' blood, & þe skyn be ful of' humouris & neische, þa*n*ne it' is good for to garce *þat'* skyn, & þa*n*ne waische al his heed w*ith* *þat'* blood hoot', & þa*n*ne hile[7] his heed wiþ caule leuis. & þa*m*ne aftirward anoynte al his heed wiþ oile of' notis
20 ou*þer* of' camomil hoot', til al þe scabbis *þe*rof' be wel tobroke. & þa*n*ne bigynne for to drie w*ith* þese driynge medicyns / ℞, argilla*m* rubea*m* *þat* it' be neische & clene wiþouten *gra*uel & wiþoute*n* stoonys, & distemp*e*re it' w*ith* stro*n*g' vinegre, & make it' as it' were
24 an oynement', & *þe*rwiþ anoynte his heed // ¶ Item, argilla*m* p*a*rtes ij., sulphur*is* viui, cin*e*res corticis, cucurbite siccos[8] pulpe colloq*ui*ntide an*a* p*a*rte*m* j., distemp*e*re hem w*ith* vinegre [9]& anoynte herwiþ. þis is good *þin*g' *þe*rfore & drieþ swiþe vlcera *þat'* ben
28 hoot', & alle pustulas *þat'* ben *in* þe heed & *in* þe face; þis drieþ & soudiþ // ¶ If' þe mat*e*re be corrupt' & swiþe hoot' & bre*n*nynge, first' þou schalt aswage þe heete wiþ vng*uentum* alb*um* rasis *þat'* schal be seid *in* þe antidotarie, & anoynte *þe*rwiþ al his heed, &
32 þa*n*ne leie *þe*revpon a ly*n*nen cloop wet' *in* þe iuys of' stooncroppe,[10]

℞

[9 lf. 110, bk.]

Ulcers accompanying Alopecia or Tinea are sometimes incurable.

Treatment, if there are blood-pustules, and if the skin is full of humours.

Cool with unguentum album and a lotion.

[1] *in oile of violet*, Lat. in oleo in fiala.

[2] *viol*, Lat. fiala. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 129, s. v. fialle.

[3] Lat.: Primo casu succurre cum unctione . . . . in secundo casu ponas egrum in balneo.

[5] Lat.: Vlcerosarum autem allopiciarum seu tinearum.

[6] *calose*, Lat. callosus. The references in *N. E. Dict.* are later.

[7] *hile*, O.E. helan. [8] MS. *siccage*.

[10] *stooncroppe*, Wright W., 712. 35. "Hec vermicularis, stoncroppe." Lat.: crassula minor Add. 15,236, fol. 175 b.: "*Cassula minor frigid. sicc. teste de soriz. stoncroppe.*"

& lete þis lye þe*r*on til al þe bre*n*nynge be aweie, & þanne aftir þis anoynte his heed wiþ oile of violet. & þa*n*ne hele his heed wiþ leuys of bleta*rum* til al þe sky*n* bicome moist & neische & wiþoute brennyng, & þanne drie it vp & soude it wiþ þi*n*gis þat ben afor- 4
seid // ¶ Item, if tinea be[1] newe, þou schalt do þe*r*to anoþe*r* man*er* cure / ℞, abrotani agrestis,[2] fumiterre, lappacij acuti,[3] artemesie[4] an*a* .m. j. boile alle þese i*n* oile til þei bicome al drie þe*r*on, & wiþ þis oile anoynte his heed manye daies, & þa*n*ne sprynge þeron 8
poudre of staphisag*re* & of ell*eboro*; wiþ anoynti*ng* of þis oile þe mat*er*e schal be [5] taken out of þe skyn, & wiþ frotyng of þis poudre it schal be dried // ¶ If þe mat*er* be fleumatik þat is i*n* þe skyn, & if þe*r*e be[6] myche corrupciou*n* þe*r*on & if þe skyn be 12
crusty,[7] þa*n*ne waische his heed wiþ a decocciou*n* of malowis i*n* watir, & þa*n*ne anoy*n*te his heed wiþ oile of camomille & oile of notis medlid togidere; & wha*n*ne it is anoy*n*tid, hile his heed wiþ caule leuis, & þus þou schalt do manie daies til þe skyn be more 16
scabbid[8] þan it was. & þa*n* frote it wel wiþ an oynou*n* til þe skyn bicome hoot & reed, & þa*n* þou schalt waische his heed wiþ lye maad wiþ aschis of a vine, & þe*r*on schule*n* be dissolued wijndrastis brent.[9] & wh*an*ne þou hast waische his heed herwiþ, þa*n* 20
þou schalt anoynte his heed wiþ þe oynement þat wole pile awei þe heeris / ℞, calcis vif .ʒ iij., arsenec ʒ j., aloes ʒ .iij., & make herof a poudre & temp*er*e he*m* togidere wiþ seþing hoot wat*er*, & herwiþ take awei hise heeris, & þa*n* waische his heed aʒen wiþ þe lye þat 24
is aforseid til þe mat*er*e be wel dried / þa*n* for to make þe heeris [10] wexe & for to regendre skyn & soude it, þou schalt anoynte þe place wi*th* an oynem*en*t þat is maad þus / Take aischis maad of a mannes heer ʒ j, fecis of oile, lynseed an*a*. ℥ iiij, mirre ʒ j & ℈, 28
staphisag*r*e .ʒ .ij., euforbij .ʒ j., make þe*r*of an oynem*en*t // ¶ If þe mat*er*e come of malancoli, þou must take hede to make þe mat*er*e neische and moist wiþ waisching of a decocciou*n* of violet & fumiterre i*n* wat*er*, & anoynte it wiþ oile of violet til þe mat*er*e be 32
resolued & þe skyn bicome neische, & þe pacient schal ete moist

Treatment of Tinea in an early stage. ℞

[5 lf. 111]

Treatment, if there is much phlegmatic (liquid) matter in the skin.

An ointment for removing the hair. ℞

Another for restoring the hair and skin. [10 lf. 111, bk.] to mak heres grow ℞

Treatment, if the matter is melancholic (cold and dry).

[1] *not*, erroneously inserted. Lat. Item fit aliter cura tineæ novæ.

[2] *abrotani agrestis*, Wr. Wü., p. 544. 20, *suþerwude*. Add. 15,236, f. 14 bk.: "*Abrotanum. gallice aueroyn. anglice suthernewode.*" See *Alphita*, p. 1.

[3] Add. 15,236, f. 17 bk.: "*Lapacinm acutum. anglice reddoke.*"

[4] *Ibid.*, fol. 12: "*Artemisia. A. mugwort.*"

[6] *be*, in margin. [7] *crusty*, Lat. crustosus.

[8] *scabbid*, Lat. ulceratus. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 320.

[9] Lat.: in quo dissoluta sit fex vini combusta.

metis, & þou schalt' baþe hi*m* in swete watir, & þa*n* þou must' drie it' vp wiþ medicyns þat' drien þat' be*n* aforseid /

þis is a medicyn þat' is approued of' G. & is good for tinea*m* & vlcera þat' be*n* harde i*n* þe heed, & for pustulis þat' ben clepid saphati,[1] & for impetigine*m* & morphea*m*,[2] & for fallyng' awei of' heeris, & for al maner scabbe. ℞, galla*rum* .ʒ iij., se*min*is secute ʒ .ij., baurac .ʒ j. & þe iiij pa*rt*' of' [ʒ i],[3] sulphuris vif' ʒ ij. & ß., arsenec rubij, aristolo*gie* ro*tunde* an*a* ℈ ij, salis armoniaci, fulliginis, amigdalar*um* [4] amar*um*, colloquntide, eris vsti, venar*um* cit*r*i*n*ar*um*, & in stide þe*r*of' þou miʒt take lu*m*bricos terestres brent', litargirij, capparum foliorum, fice sicce,[5] radices ca*n*ne siccar*um*, flos eris, alum*n*is sicci, ro*sarum*, mirre, aloes, olibani an*a* ʒ ß., picis liquide, folio*rum* oliue, vellis vaccini, an*a* .ʒ j., grinde he*m* sutilly & temp*e*re he*m* wiþ eysel, & sette he*m* i*n* þe su*n*ne i*n* a vessel of' glas, ouþ*er* in a vessel of' erþe glasid[6] wiþi*n*ne, & mene he*m* wel i*n* þe su*n*ne, til it' bicome al an oynement, & herwiþ anoynte his heed, til it' be p*er*fitly hool, saue þou muste take kepe of' þingis þat' ben aforseid þat' þe humouris be purgid /

A general prescription of *Galion* for skin-diseases.

℞

[4 lf. 112]

Of þe fallyng*e* of heeris //

7 Baldness is caused by old age, by sickness, by a corruption of the humours.

[9 lf. 112, bk.]

¶ Aluiciem is a fallyng' awey of' a ma*n*nis heeris tofore, & is as miche to seie as ballid. & oon cause herof' [is][8] kindely as wha*n*ne a ma*n* is oold for to be ballid, & oon þe*r*of' is vnkyndly, as wha*n*ne a ma*n*nis heeris falliþ awei for sijknes as it' is aforseid & remedijs þe*r*fore i*n* þe nexte chapit*er* here tofore. & if' þis cause come for elde þa*n*ne it' is incurable // ¶ Also ballidnesse [9] comeþ of' humouris rotid þat' ben vndir þe skyn as it' is in allopucia & tinea, & þe cure herof' is bi avoidyng' of' humo*ur*is as it' is aforseid.[10] ¶ þe

[1] *Saphati*, Hebr. Sapahath.—Philipps. "Saphatum, a dry Scurf in the head."

[2] *morphea*, a skin-disease. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 243, s. v. Morfew.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 46 b.: et quartam partem ʒ i^us^.

[5] *fice sicce*, Lat. fisti sicce. Halle Table, p. 87: "Fistakia so named bothe in Greeke and Latine, and vulgarly Fistici, are the frutes of a tree." Fisti-nut, from fistick-nut. [6] *glasid*, vitreatus.

[7] This paragraph is omitted in the printed editions of Lanfranc's Surgery and in Add. 26,106. It is preserved in Roy. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32, where it forms part of cap. II, but with a separate heading. The translator took it for cap. III, but did not alter the following chapter-numbers. [8] *is*, wanting.

[10] De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 66, Add. 27,944, fol. 67: "*Ballidnes is priuacioun and defaute of heer, and comeþ of defaute of moist fumosite in þe formere partye of þe heed; so seiþ constantyn. . . . Ofte þe heer of men*

cause whi *þat*ᵗ makiþ a man ballid ben þese / as whanne þe skyn recchiþ alongᵗ, & ifᵗ his bodi be drie & *þinne* & his skyn hootᵗ, *þan* ℞ *þou* mustᵗ do þis cure / Take olin*m* mirtinu*m* & oliu*m* de mast*ice* ou*þer* oliu*m* ladani, & anoi*n*te *þerwith* his heed. & ifᵗ þe tyme ofᵗ 4
þe ȝeer be coold, *þou* muste anoi*n*te hi*m* wiþ oliu*m* de spica //

Treatment, if the patient is young,

¶ Wh*an*ne a ma*n*nes heeris falliþ awei so i*n* vnky*n*deli tyme, as þe
while he is ȝongᵗ, *þan* make hi*m* a baþ & anoynte hi*m* wiþ camo-
mille & wiþ bittir[1] almondis & wiþ oile maad *þer*ofᵗ // If a man 8

if the skin is tender.

bicome ballid for cause *þat*ᵗ his skyn is to neische, þese be*n* þe
signys *þer*ofᵗ as wha*n*ne a man haþ fewe heeris & sotil / *þan*ne take
oliu*m* mirtinu*m* & oliu*m* mast*icis* wiþ oilio laurino, & herw*ith* anoi*n*te
his heed, wh*an*ne hise heeris ben schaue*n* awei // ¶ Item, take 12
capilli vene*r*is, ladani an*a*, grinde hem & medle he*m* w*ith* wijn &
[2 lf. 113] w*ith* olio mirtino / Ifᵗ a ma*n*nes heed be waische*n* [2]herwiþ, itᵗ wole
make hise heeris longe & make he*m* sitte faste / Also take wate*r*
*þat*ᵗ bletis ben soden yn & a litil mustard, & *þer*wiþ waische hise 16

An ointment for preserving the hair from falling off.

heeris & afte*r* anointe hi*m* wiþ oile // ¶ Also to make heeris *þat*ᵗ þe
falle notᵗ / take leuys ofᵗ mirte & sette he*m* i*n* wate*r* til þe watir
*þer*ofᵗ bicome al troubly *þan* take li .j ofᵗ þe wate*r* & oliu*m* enfantini
or ofᵗ oile *þat*ᵗ is vnripe & medle he*m* togidere. & *þan* seþe he*m* til 20
þe wate*r* waaste awei, & *þan*ne caste *þer*to canel & ladanu*m* grou*n*de*n*
& resolued i*n* wijn, & make herofᵗ an oynem*en*tᵗ & anoi*n*te herwiþ þe
rotis ofᵗ þe heeris /

Of litil pustulis *þat* wexiþ *in* a ma*n*nes face or *in* children hedis /[3] 24

¶ iij°. c°/

Saphati, a scab on the head and face.

SAphati be*n* litil pustule *þat*ᵗ wexiþ i*n* a mannes heed & i*n*
childre*n* forhedis & her face, & principali i*n* wo*m*me*n*s facis, &
also i*n* me*n*nys facis *þat*ᵗ be*n* moistᵗ, & makiþ su*m*tyme crustis / For 28

Treatment of Galion.

to cure þis passiou*n*, here *þou* schaltᵗ haue a good medicyn ofᵗ .G.
*þat*ᵗ is aforseid ofᵗ aischis ofᵗ cucurbite & argilla // ¶ Childre*n* mou*n*
be holpen *þer*ofᵗ ifᵗ her norice absteyne hir fro saltᵗ metis & scharpe
& fro strongᵗ wijn[4], & þe child schal be baþid i*n* a decocciou*n* of 32

*þat ofte serueu venus falliþ and bredi*þ *ballidnes litil & litil. . . . And if a man is withoute hed-her, he is i-holde þe more vnhonest.*"

[1] MS. *butir*. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32 bk.: cum amigdalis amaris.

[3] Lat., Add. 26,106, fol. 47: "pustule parue que nascuntur in capite fronte et facie puerorum."

[4] Gul. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 2, Sl. 6, fol. 55 b.: "*This seknesse is not bred but in children, when þei sonken, and it ys clepid a crost, and it ys mad in hem in þe forhed and in þe hede. . . . The cure of it ys* þat *euery*

camomile [1] & rosis & fenigreci, & þou schalt anointe þe place wiþ [1 lf. 113, bk.]
oile of camomille hoot // ¶ Furfurea ben a maner of squamis .i. Furfures (dandriff).
schellis þat comeþ of brennyng þat is in þe skyn ; if þei be frotid
4 wel wiþ a manys nailis, þei wolen falle awei, & sumtyme þei ben liȝt
& wolen falle awei wiþ þe heeris, wханne þei ben schaue & wiþ
waischingis of hoot water / If þis suffise not þerfore, anoynte his Ointment.
heed with an oynement maad of farina ciceris & þe seed of malowe
8 uisci temperid with vinegre / If it be not remeued herwiþ, anoynte
him wiþ þis oynement // Take farine ciceris .℥ iij, farine fenigreci, ℞
sulphuris viui, nitri croci,[2] sinapis ana .ʒ .iiij., tempere hem wiþ
vinegre and watir /

12 Of clooþ[3] þat is clepid fraclis or goute roset.

PAnnus is a superfluite þat falliþ in a wommans face, & comeþ iiijo. co.
ofte in childberyng, & also wханne hir menstrue is wiþholde, Pannus, a skin-disease on the face, which affects women, when they are with child.
& is as it were a maner ledi[4] colour or purpur, & sumtyme it is
16 medlid myche wiþ blak, & it comeþ alwei of malancolious matere.
& þou schalt first purge þe matere with a decoccioun of epithimi & Apply a purging medicine,
gotis whey, & þou schalt make þat [5]he leue metis þat engendriþ
malancoly, & þanne take seed of raphani in a newe lynnen clooþ, [5 lf. 114]
20 bittir almoundis, mele of benis, seed of melonum & curcurbite,
stampe hem alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ water & dissolue a litil
safron & hony & make þerof an oynement, & herwiþ þou schalt an ointment,
anoynte hir face at euen late, & amorowe þou schalt waische hir
24 face with a colature of bran // ¶ If it so be þat þis passioun be
oold, þanne þow schalt make a stronger oynement wiþ þe same
oynement, & do þerto eruca þe seed þerof, & argentum viuum
slayn[6] wiþ spotil, & pepir & mirre,[7] & tempere hem wiþ oximel, &
28 sumtyme it is nede to sette vpon þe place watir lechis. & after and leeches.
þat anoynte it wiþ þe poudre of catapucie[8] & staphisagre temperid

day þe place most be anointed with oyle of camomille hoot. And þe noryse absteine hyre fro flesses, and fro chese, and fro scharp metis."

[2] *croci*, for *crossi*.

[3] *clooþ*, translated from Pannus. Lat.: De pannis, cossis et gutta rosacea et de lentiginibus et cicatricibus vulnerum.

[4] *ledi*, from "lead." Lat. lividus.

[6] *slay*, Lat. extinguere, precipitate. Comp. H. G. Niederschlag.

[7] *mirre*, mistaken from Lat. *nitro*.

[8] catapucie. Add. 15,236, fol. 74 bk.: "*Catapucia, semen spurge, catapuste, spurge sed.*" The original meaning "a medicinal preparation" is shown in Aelfr. Gloss.: "*Catapodia, a swylfende drenc.*" Compare *N. E. D.* s. v. catapuce.

Auicen. ℞ vnguntum amegdalarum.

with hony // ¶ Also a medicyn of A. for þis passioun / Take argenti viui .ʒ j. gm̄ amigdalarum ʒ ij. medle hem togidere & stampe hem til þou se noþing of þe quik siluer, & do þerto seed of melonis maad clene .ʒ iij., stampe alle þese togidere & anoynte herwiþ hir face aneue & amorowe; waische hir face wiþ watir [1] þat violet haþ leye þeron / Lentigines[2] ben purgid wiþ a strong purgacioun & wiþ a strong medicyn þat ben forseid for pannum //

[1 lf. 114, bk.]

Cossi are small pustules on the face.

¶ Cossi[3] ben litil pustulis & harde þat ben engendrid in þe face, & principali aboute þe [nose],[4] & þei makiþ þe place reed, & herfore þis medicyn is good. ℞, sulphuris viui .ʒ j, & make it to sutil poudre, & leie it in a pound of watir of ro. in a glasen vessel, & stoppe wel the mouþ þerof, & hange it in þe sunne in þe monþe of Iulij & august bi xv. daies, & euery dai þou schalt meue þe vessel, & with þis watir þou schalt anoynte his face here þat þe passioun is //

dubium ℞

Gutta rosacea changes the colour of a man's face.

¶ Gutta rosacea,[5] þat is a passioun þat turneþ þe skyn of a mannys face out of his propur colour & makiþ þe face reed. & þis passioun comeþ of humouris brent & abidiþ in þe skyn, & herfore is a good purgacioun þat purgiþ salt humouris. & þis is þe medicyn / ℞, litargiri, auripigmenti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris ana[6] & poudre of litil meis[7] brent, & of þis poudre half so miche as of alle þe opere. & þis schal be poudrid wiþ .ij. partis of trifolij [8] & þe .iiij. part of swynys grese freisch, & make of alle þese an oynement. & on euen anoynte herwiþ his face, & amorowe waische his face wiþ a decoccioun of semina frigidorum[9] & wiþ a litil campher, & þan make his face clene, & þan anoynte his face wiþ olio tartarino,[10] & al þe

A purging medicine.

[8 lf. 115]

[2] "*Lentigo*, a Pimple, or Freckle; a small red Spot in the Face, or other Part, resembling a Lentil."—Phillips.

[3] Gulielm. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 63, Sl. 277, fol. 12, mentions as skin-diseases: *þe ampte, þe teter* and *þe ryugworm.* Dunglison identifies the ringworm with *cossi*, deriving it from Lat. cossis, or cossus, *m.*, a worm that breeds in wood. The description given by Gul. de Sal. differs entirely from Lanfranc's description of *cossi.*

[4] *nose*, omitted in MS., but space left free. *Dubium* in margin refers to it. Lat. circa nasum.

[5] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 65, Add. 27,944, fol. 100 b.: "*And nuvphea is al in þe skynne, & lepra in þe fleische & in þe skynne; þis infectioun is but litil diuers from infeccioun þat hatte gutta rosea, þat infectiþ þe face wiþ smale pymples, and comeþ of a gleymy & a MS. & bloody & colerik humours, þat ben bytweene felle and fleische.*" Sl. 563, fol. 17 b.: "*þo rose goute.*" Gutta rosacea vel rosea, Rosy Drop or Whelk. (Dunglison.)

[6] The dose is omitted, so it is in Add. 16,106, fol. 47 b. Prints: unc. 1.

[7] *meis*, "mice." Lat. pulveris parvorum suricum. *meis* is probably an error for *miis.*

[9] MS. fin.

[10] The translator has omitted the prescription of oleum tartarinum, given

remenaun*t*ᵗ herofᵗ þou schaltᵗ do ofᵗ þis cure & fulfille wiþ medicyns as itᵗ is aforseid / ad pa*n*nu*m* /

¶ Cicatrices vulneru*m* ben remeued wiþ litargiru*m* nutricu*m*, & is good for manie maner þi*n*gis, for itᵗ doiþ awei we*n*nys, and itᵗ doiþ awei scharpnes ofᵗ þe browis & gendriþ good fleisch i*n* wou*n*dis & fretiþ awei wickid fleisch, & is m*aa*d i*n* þis maner / Take litarge & grinde itᵗ sotilli in a mort*er* & caste þ*er*to a litil vinegre & þa*n*ne a litil oile ofᵗ ro., & þus þou schaltᵗ do til itᵗ come to a p*er*fitᵗ oynementᵗ /[1]

To remove the scars of wounds.

℞

Of icchinge & smertynge[2] and scabbe.

¶ Capo. vo. pruritus

Icchinge & scabbe comeþ ofᵗ saltᵗ humo*ur*is, & a ma*n*nys kynde haþ abhominacioun þ*er*ofᵗ, & putteþ[3] he*m* outᵗ ofᵗ þe skyn,[4] & þis falliþ ofte of saltᵗ metis & scharpe metis & ofᵗ [5]wijn þ*at*ᵗ is strongᵗ; & itᵗ falliþ ofte to he*m* þ*at*ᵗ wakiþ & traueiliþ & vsiþ no baþi*n*gᵗ & weriþ no ly*n*nen cloþis, & þis is oon ofᵗ þe siknes þ*at*ᵗ is contagious, for o man mai take itᵗ ofᵗ anoþ*er* / þis maner sijknesse comeþ sumtyme ofᵗ blood, su*m*tyme ofᵗ fleume, su*m*tyme ofᵗ colre, su*m*tyme ofᵗ malancolie / Also scabbe, sum is drie & su*m*me is wetᵗ / Ifᵗ itᵗ be drie, itᵗ schal p*r*opirli be clepid icche / And ifᵗ it be moistᵗ, itᵗ schal be clepid scabbe / To þe cure herofᵗ þou schaltᵗ avoide saltᵗ fleume, þou schaltᵗ defie þe mat*er*e wiþ þis sirup / ℞, abstinthij, ℞

Itch and scabs arise from acid humours, [5 lf. 115, bk.] and are caused by salt meat, strong wine, and filth.

They are contagious.

Dry scab is called itch.

Treatment of scabs.

in the Lat. Original. It is written by a later hand on the margin of lf. 114, bk.: "*oylle off tarter.* ℞, *tarter off whyt wyn made in pouder temperd wᵗ renygre as past, bynde yt in a clothe & put yt under embers, to yt be welle brent; þan put yt in a ston pot with an holle benethe. & þis ys oylle off tarter.*"

Two prescriptions, which are not in the Lat. Original, are added on the same place:

"*aqua* pro *guta rosacha:* ℞, *lytargiri, argenty viui ana* ℥ *iiij, acety alby li. i, boyll yt to couschoun*[a] *in an erthen veselle, let stande & clere & keep yt.*"

"℞. *salt ar.* ʒ *i, saltpeter* ʒ *i, salt comun* ʒ *i, clere water* ℥ *iiij, mixte togeder with yᵉ sexte part off a* ʒ *off camffer, let colle, put thes ij waters togeder.*"

[1] The following prescription, translated from the Lat. Original, is written by a later hand on the margin of leaf 115: "*Item gos gres & dow & diaculum, alle sycatryues it reetyfyes.*"

[2] *smertyng*, Lat. pruritus.—Prurigo, emertung, Wr. W., 114. 3.—*emertung*, is probably a mistake for *smertung*, to O.E. *smeortan*. [3] MS. *putte*.

[4] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 62, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "*Schabbe is corrupcioun of þe skynne, & comeþ of corrupt humours þat beþ bytwene felle and fleissche, & hurtiþ & greueþ & defouliþ þe body. For as Constantine seiþ, kynde puttiþ out euel humours to þe vttir parties of þe body to clense and to purge þe inner parties.*"

[a] consumption.

abrotani, cuscute, fum*us* terre, an*a* ℳ .j., & take xx. damascenes &
xij. figis, & vj. datis, sene ℥ j, thimi, epithi*mi* .℥ ß., seþe he*m* wel
i*n* lī iij of' wate*r* & lī j. of vinegre til þei come to lī j. & dī. cole
he*m* & do þe*r*to iuys of' fumi terre & sug*ur* lī .j. & ß, & make þe*r*of' 4
a sirup & herwiþ defie þe mate*re* / & þa*n* þou schalt purge hi*m* wiþ
R þese pelott*es*, ℞, aloes optimi, cortices mirab*olani*, cit*rini*, an*a* .℥ j
stampe he*m* & tempe*re* he*m* w*ith* iuys m*aad* of' fumi terre, til þei
be þicke as it' were hony, & lete it' drie til þer mai be m*aad* gobetis 8
[1 lf. 116] þe*r*of' & m*aad* þe*r*of' pelottis, & herof' þou schalt' ȝeue þe [1] weiȝte of'
ij. ʒ. at' oonys, & þis medicyne mai be rehersid ofte. ¶ Also blood
leti*ng*' is good þe*r*fore, if' o*þe*re p*ar*ticlis acordiþ þe*r*fore // ¶ Also gotis
whey is good þe*r*fore, i*n* which be leid mirab*olani* wiþ sugre, & ofte 12
R take, for þat' clensiþ miche, & is maad i*n* þis man*er* / In lī .j of' gotis
whey leie ℥ j. of' mirab*olani* citri*ni* powdrid an eue, on þe morowe
heete he*m* & cole he*m* & do þe*r*to ℥ .j of' sugre ro. // ¶ If' it' be drie
Treatment of dry scab. scabbe, hoot' watir is good for to baþe hi*m* y*n*ne, in which is soden 16
fumi terre & enula, lappacij acuti, & in þe baþ anoynte hi*m* w*ith*
oile of' ro. & iuys of' ache & vinegre, & herw*ith* his bodi schal be
An ointment made by Rasis. wel frotid i*n* þe baþ ou*þe*r i*n* a stewe // ¶ Also an oyment' þat' rasis
made for þe scabbe þat' is drie / ℞ salis co*mmun*is, salis gemme, 20
R elle*bori*, nigri costi, ʒ .j., picis liquide ℥ vj., olium violaru*m* & aceti,
& herof' make an oynement' / & anoynte herwiþ i*n* his stewe & frote
him wel, & aftir lete hi*m* be þe*rin*ne by an hour, & aftir baþe hi*m*
i*n* a decocciou*n* of' bra*n* & lappacij acuti, enule campane[2] & arthe- 24
de scabi humida. *misie* // ¶ If' þe scabbe be moist' / þan make an oynement' of' rasis /
R ℞, argenti viui extincti, [3]& i*n* þis maner þou schalt' sle[4] it': leie it'
[3 lf. 116, bk.] in a peute*r* disch & spete þe*r*on, & frote it' wiþ mannes heeris, & do
eleborus nygr. þe*r*to: whit' litarge, elle*bor*um nigru*m*, alumen[5] vetus, oleandru*m* an*a*, 28
grynde alle þese togidere & tempe*re* he*m* w*ith* vinegre,[6] & herwiþ al
his bodi schal be anoyntid at' euen, & at' morowe he schal be stewid,[7]
and wha*n*ne he swetiþ his bodi schal be frotid wiþ vinegre // ¶ Also

[2] MS. *compare.* [4] *sle* = slay. See p. 189, Note 6.

[5] *alumen*, on margin.

[6] The following passage omitted by the translator is written on the bottom of lf. 116, bk., by a later hand: "*& olio* communi *miscantur de quo totum corpus unguatur in cero, mane intret stupyam et cum sudaueret ffricet corpus cum usne et aceto. vsne .i. mosse off the oke.*"

usne, Arab ouchna. See *Littre-Devic.*—"Usnea, a kind of green Moss which grows upon Humane Sculls that have been lying in the open Air for some years, and which is used in Physick."—Phillips.

[7] *he schal be stewid*, Lat. intret stupham. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, s. v. stew.

ȝen scabbe & icching', first' lete þe pacient' blood, & make hi*m* þis
oynement' / ℞, sulphuris viui & tm̄[1] de sale & tartaro, grinde he*m* ℞
wel togid*e*re til it' bicome i*n* þe maner of' an oynem*e*nt', & wiþ þis
4 oynement' anoynte þe pacient', & þis wole delyuere hi*m* fro icching' //
¶ Also if' þe pacient' haue greet' bre*n*nyng' & greet' icchi*n*g', þa*n*ne
anoynte al his bodi wiþ oile of' ro. þa*t*' be*n* good, & lete hi*m* reste
so .vij. daies // ¶ Also for þe same cause / ℞ succ*us* affodillor*um* & ℞
8 dist*em*p*e*re it' wiþ whit' hony & anoynte hi*m* herw*ith*, wha*n*ne he
goiþ out' of' his stewe; for þis oynement' doiþ awey filþe of' þe skyn
and clensiþ myche /

Of morphue[2] and impetigine[3] //

12 [4]NOw we han medycyns d*ra*we*n* of' .ij. wellis & of' manie [4 lf. 117]
maist*ris*, þa*t*' is to wite: of' Salerne, & of' Costa*n*tyn, & ¶ vj°. c°
Platearij, & of' Ioha*nn*es de s*ancto* Paulo & of' oþ*er*e manie auctouris, The school of Salerno
as of' Ipoc*ra*s, Galien, & Serapion, & Isaac, & Ioha*nne*[s] Mesue, and the Arab physicians
16 Auicen / Hali þe abbot', & Rasis, & of' oþ*er*e manie auctouris / Alle differ as to the names of the diseases.
þese auctouris speciali ȝeue it' us, saue þei acorden not' i*n* names /
[5]Forwhi impetigo, serpigo & morphea ben seid i*n* salerne diuers
names, for þa*t*' men of' salerne clepen albam & arabes clepe*n* im-
20 petigo morphea / & men of' salerne clepen morpheam / men in
arabie clepen it' albarec /[5] & þe*r*fore I wole i*n* þis book teche þe

[1] MS. *tm̄*, tantum. This prescription is neither in the prints nor in Add. 26,106, but preserved in Roy. MS. 12 C XIV, fol. 33 b.

[2] *morphue.* See p. 187, Note 2. N.E. morphew, Med. L. morphea, Fr. morphée, Ital. morfea, is probably the Latinized form of an Arab. past part. marfu, connected with marf, 'thin.' See *Lane Lex.*, p. 1132.

The derivation given by Tommas: μορφή, is unsatisfactory. Phillips: "Morphew, a kind of white Scurf upon the Body, from the French Word *Mort-feu*, i. e. dead Fire; because it looks like the white Sparks that fall from a Brand extinguished."

[3] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 63, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "*And þis euel hatte impetigo, for it lettiþ and greueþ þe skyn and þe fleissch, namliche with tikelinge and icchinge. Also þis euel hatte serpigo, as it were a crepinge euel, for it crepiþ into þe skynne al aboute as it were a serpent oþir an addre, & infectiþ þe skynne and defouleþ it wiþ smale skales aftir cracchinge and clawinge.*"

Lib. VII., cap. 65, fol. 100: "*Morphea is speckes in þe skynne, and comeþ of corrupcioun of mete and drinke, and what is lepre in þe fleische is morphea in þe skynne. Also som morphea is white & comeþ of fleume, & som is blak & comeþ of malencolia, & som is red & comeþ of colera oþir of blood.*"

[5—5] The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam serpigo, impetigo, morphea sumuntur aliter apud salernitanos aliter apud arabes. Quod enim salernitani vocant

Serpigo is an acidity of the skin.

difference of eu*er*y of he*m*, & aft*er* þat þe curis of hem / & I seie þat serpigo is a scharpnes of a mannes skyn, & it is clepid serpigo, for it passiþ fro place to place.

Treatment:

þou schalt cure it wiþ gu*m*me of cheritrees distemp*er*id wiþ vinegre, ouþ*er* gu*m*me of [1 lf. 117, bk.] plu*m*tre & anoynte wiþ buttir & turbentyne. & þis oynement is R good þ*er*fore / Take gres [1] of a doke clene purid, ysopi humide, oliu*m* ro., ȝelow wex, terbentyne, mussilaginis se*min*is citonior*um*[2] an*a*, make of alle þese an oynement, & anoynte him þ*er*w*ith* amorowe, & þanne waische him i*n* watir þat þer haþ leie þ*er*on semen melonu*m* & violet. & be he ofte baþid wiþ sich swete wat*er*. & good swete mete is good for he*m* þat engendriþ good humouris //

Impetigo, a disease, where the skin gets white.

¶ Impetigo is anoþ*er* maner passiou*n*, as wha*n*ne a ma*n*nys skyn chau*n*giþ i*n* oþ*er* colour þan it schulde, & p*r*opirli i*n*to whit colour & wiþoute*n* ony harmyng of þe skyn. & þ*er* is no þi*n*g þ*er*on þat harmeþ a man, saue oonly þe colo*ur* of þe skyn chaungiþ oþir þan it schulde be //[3]

Morphea, a kind of leprosy confined to the skin.

¶ Morphea is a passiou*n* þ*a*t þe skyn is out of his p*r*opir colour & þe skyn is harmed þ*er*bi. & morphea is a spice of lepre þat sitt i*n* þe skyn; for riȝt as lepre sittiþ in þe fleisch, i*n* þe same maner riȝt so morphea sittiþ in þe skyn.[4]

Albaras.

¶ Albaras.[5] Not oonly þe skyn, saue þe fleisch is harmed þ*er*bi / þis is þe difference of albaras & morphea / In morphea þe v*er*tu of

Nota

[7 lf. 118] expulcio*n*[6] is strong / & þe mater [7] þ*er*of is but litil, & þ*er*fore it is al putt i*n*to þe skyn / In albaras þe v*er*tu of expulcio*n* is but feble & þe mat*er*e is corrupt, & þ*er*for it is boþe i*n* þe fleisch & in þe skyn, & þ*er* is but litil difference bitwixe albaras & lepre, saue albaras abidiþ alwei i*n* oon place, & lepre goiþ i*n*to al þe bodi / In boþe þese causis it is nede for to avoide humou*r*is þat be*n* i*n* þe cause[8],

Albaras is a local disease of the flesh and the skin.

serpiginem, arabes vocant alunda. Et impetigo apud arabes est morphea, et apud salernitanos aliter et aliter apud nos. Quod autem Salernitani vocant morpheam, arabes vocant albaras.

[2] *Citonia* = Cydonia, quince.

[3] Lat. Add. 16,106, fol. 48 bk.: et non peccat ibi nisi color.

[4] Not in the Lat. Origin.

[5] *Albaras*, Arab. al-baras, leprosy. Compare *Avicenna*, lib. 4, fen. 7, tract. 3, cap. 9, and ff.

[6] MS. *expulsif*. Lat.: virtus expulsiua.

[8] *humouris* þ*a*t *be*n *in* þ*e cause*. Lat.: Conveniunt in hoc quod omnis humoris indigent euacuatione peccantis. *N. E. Dict.* s. v. cause, q. b. gives references for *to be in cause:* to be to blame.—*Littré Dict.* (14th cent.) ils en sont en cause.—Dufr. gives several references for *in causa esse:* to be ill, from *Causa*, morbus.

saue þat' oon mote haue stronger medicyns þan þat' oþer. ¶ Impetigo muste haue abstynence fro þingis þat' engendriþ fleume, & he muste haue a purgaciou*n* for to purge fleume / Anoynte þe place wiþ oile of' whete þat' is m*aa*d *in* þis maner / Take whete & leie bitwixe two platis of' iren hoot' / & p*re*sse he*m* togidere & þ*er*of wole bicome oile // ¶ Also *in* anoþ*er* maner / Take .ij. vessels of' erþe, so þat' þe mouþ of' þe oon vessel go to þe mouþ of' þe toþ*er* vessel, & þat' oon vessel schal sto*n*de *in* þe erþe, & in þe vessel aboue þ*o*u schalt' do þi whete, & þou schalt' stoppe þe mouþ of' þe vessel þat' is aboue þat' þe whete is y*n*ne w*ith* a plate of' bras ouþ*er* of' iren þat' is bett*er*e, [1]& þe plate schal be ful of' smale holis. & þa*n* þe mouþ of' þis pott' schal be ioyned to þe mouþ of' þe pott' þat' is in þe erþe w*ith* good lute, þat' þ*er*e mowe noon eir out' þ*er*of'. & þa*n* make a fier aboute þe pott' þat is aboue þe erþe, & þ*er*e wole distille oile into þe pott' þat' is bineþe in þe erþe, & wiþ þis oile þou schalt' anoynte þe place ofte, & frote harde. & if' þis suffise not', þa*n*ne þou schalt' sette vpon þe place watir lechis ofte, for to do awey þe fleumatik blood / If' þis suffise n*o*t', leie þ*er*vpon a mundificatif' of' cantarides stampid wiþ whete, til þe place schyne[2], & þa*n* cure it' vp wiþ an oy*n*ment' of' ceruce / Frote hi*m* wiþ an oynem*en*t' m*aa*d of' ar*mon*iac & w*ith* þe sournes of' cit*ri*, & nitro is good þ*er*fore //

Treatment of Impetigo.

Purge and use an ointment.

R

R

Oil of wheat obtained by distillation.

[1 lf. 118, bk.]

¶ Þe white morphu is curid wiþ p*ur*gaciou*n* þat' purgiþ roten fleume, & wiþ þis special medicyn / ℞, trifer*e* minor*um* .ʒ .iiij., t*ur*bit', pulu*er*is pigre .ʒ .ij., colloq*ui*ntide .ʒ ij., make herof' pelottis wiþ hony, & he schal take þ*er*of' .iij pelottis euery wike, & eueri dai bitwixe he schal take .ʒ ij. of' trifer*e* minor*um*, & he mote absteyne hi*m* fro metis þat' e*n*ge*n*driþ [3]fleume; & þe place shal be frotid i*n* þe su*n*ne wiþ an oynement' of tapsia, & þe seed of' raphani, rubie maioris / ell*ebor*o nigro & mustard, & diste*mpe*re he*m* wiþ vinegre / Also froting' wiþ squillis is good þ*er*fore //

Treatment of the whyt Morphea.

R

[3 lf. 119]

¶ Þe blac morphe is curid wiþ ofte p*ur*gi*n*g' of' malancoli, wiþ gotis whei, & wiþ epith*im*o, & oþ*er*e medicyns þat' purgiþ malancolie, þat' be forseid *in* allopucia; & his dietyng' schal be moist', & he schal absteyne hi*m* fro metis þat' engendriþ malancolie, & he schal be baþid ofte i*n* swete watir, & he schal be anoyntid & frotid as it' is aforseid //

Treatment of the black morffue.

¶ Albaras þat' is whit' is curid wiþ þe same þi*n*gis & w*ith*

[2] *til þe place schyne*, donec locus excorietur.

Treatment of white Albaras

stronger medicyns *þat*' ben aforseid i*n* þe cure of' þe white morphu, & miche castyng' is good for he*m*, & þou schalt' frote wel þe place wi*th* squillis i*n* a stewe, & after *þat*' sprynge þeron poudre m*aa*d of' tapsia, & staphisag*re*, & þe wombis of' cantarides, & seed of' eruce, 4 & tordis of' a culu*er*e, & þou schalt' anoynte hi*m* wiþ blood of' a blac serpent', for *þat*' is bi p*ro*p'rte good þerfore /

Black Albaras is incurable, [1 lf. 119, bk.] the attendant discoloration of the skin may be cured.

Albaras *þat*' is blak is incurable, for it' is a p*ar*ticuler lepre, & but' [1]if' it' be so *þat*' it' mowe be take awei wiþ alle rootis, it' schal 8 neuere be curid; saue þe colour of' his skyn mai be amendid / Ꝗ, aloxanti, *þat*' is þe flour of' þe wiþi,[2] mirra*m*, fec*es* of' wijn brent', reed cley, & alyme, poudre alle þese, & herwiþ frote þe place til þe pacient' fele prickyng' & bre*n*nyng'. þis wole deye þe skyn for 12 manie daies, & wha*n*ne þis failiþ reherse it' aȝen.

// Of lepre and of þe domys of lepre[3] //

¶ vij°. e° Leprosy arises from the corruption of the melancholic humours and affects the whole body.

LEpra[4] is a foul sijknes *þat*' comeþ of' malancolie corrupt', ouþir of' humouris *þat*' ben brouȝt' to þe forme of' malancolye[5] 16 corrupt. & it' goiþ into al þe bodi, riȝt' as a cancre is i*n* oon lyme of' a ma*n*nes bodi / For wha*n*ne malancolie multiplieþ[6], & a ma*n*nes guttis ben not' strong' for to putte it' out', & þe weies bitwixe þe splene be*n* stoppid & þe poris of' þe skyn closid, þa*n* malancolio*us* 20 blood wole rote wiþi*n*ne, & rotiþ complexiou*n*s of' þe lymes. & þe bigy*n*nying' of' þe mat*er* myȝte be of' blood ouþir of' fleume, colre, [7 lf. 120] ouþ*er* of' malancolie, neþeles wha*n*ne þe mat*er* is fulfild [7]it' is malancolie corrupt'. & þis is oon of' the syknessis *þat*' ben contagious / 24 ¶ In þis place I wole sette curis of' lepre *þat*' ben p*ro*fitable for a cirurgian to ku*n*ne, & also curis *þat*' comeþ ofte to a cirurgian handis /

[2] Lat. aloxantum, quod est flos salis. The translator read *salicis* for *salis*. ἀλόσαντον, τό, brine. Matth. Sylv.: "Alosantus i. flos salis et invenitur super petras nili fluminis."

[3] Lat. de lepra et indiciis leprosi The translator read *iudiciis*.

[4] Add. 27,944, fol. 99 b.: "*Lepra meselrye is an universal eorrupeioun of membres & of humours.*" Four different kinds of Leprosy are distinguished, "1. the *Élaphantia;* 2. the *Tiria or Serpentyna, and haþ* þ*at name of an addre* þ*at hatte tyrus, for as an addre leneth liȝtliche his skynne and is skaly, so he* þ*at hath* þ*is maner lepra is ofte i-strept and i-hulde, & ful of skales;* 3. *alopicia & vulpina foxissch;* 4. *leonina, it fretiþ as a lyon & destroyeþ all* þ*e membres.*"

[5] *&* inserted.

[6] *multiplieþ*, Lat. multiplicatur.—Multiplye, fructificare, multiplicare. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 246.

Men þat ben leprous,[1] in þe bigynnyng her heeris of her heed fallip awei, & þe heeris of her browis, & þe heeris of her berd; & her forheed bicomeþ reed & as it were schynyng. ¶ Also in summe þe face wexiþ reed & swelliþ & is sumwhat ledi, & principali aboute [þe nose][2] // ¶ Also her vois is rowȝ ouþer sumtyme it is wondirly scharp, & þe whit of her iȝen bicomeþ al derk, & þe heeris goon awei of her browis / Her noseþrillis bicomeþ smal, ouþer wondirly greet, & her noseþrillis ben streit for to drawe yn wijnd, & her nailis bicomeþ ledi / Also her breeþ wole stynke & her sotes / Also her pisce wole be streit[3] & þei schulen haue greet snesyng / Also þei wilneþ myche to comne[4] wiþ wommen / Also þei schulen be heuy, & if her skyn be in þe coold eir, it wole bicome as it were þe skyn of a gandir [5]þat þat hise feþeris weren pilid awey / Also þese ben priuy þingis: if þou prickist his leg bihynde, he ne schal not fele it / & if þou waisschist hise lymes in watir, anoon riȝt it wole drie yn // Also þese signes ben comoun: his yȝen wolen bicome rounde, & þer wolen wexe pustulis in his tunge, & her nailis wolen bicome greet, & þer wolen wexe scabbis aboute-forþ. And þe fleisch þat schulde be bitwixe þe þombe & þe nexte fyngir þerto schal be wastid awey, & if þou prickist him in þe hele he schal not fele it, & if he be lete blood, her blood wole be scharpe & as it were ful of grauel. & if þou waischist her blood, in þe botme þerof wole leue as it were grauel. & þis sijknes aftir þe tyme þat it is confermed is incurable, saue in þe firste bigynnyng it mai be curid wel //

Signs of Leprosy: the hair falls off, the face gets red and swollen, the voice gets hoarse, the nostrils are disfigured, the breath is foetid, [5 lf. 120, bk.] the legs lose their feeling, pustules grow on the tongue, the blood is sharp and leaves a sediment like sand.

¶ Þe cure of lepre is not sett in þis book, for þis book is of cirurgie, saf þer ben in þis solempne medicyns & apreued for to kepe a man, þat þei schulen not wexe, & for to make it priuy, & cauterijs þerfore / For alle þese þingis falliþ for a cirurgian / Þis [6]þou schalt knowe: if þe siknes be strong, it is hard for to do ony medicyne þerto; fforwhi, if þe sijknes be strong, þanne he muste haue stronge medicyns, & þat were greet perel, & also þe medicyn muste be ofte rehersid.[7] Saue þou schalt chese a liȝt medicyn þat

Treatment of Leprosy. [6 lf. 121] Strong medicines are dangerous.

[1] The symptoms of leprosy are similarly described by Avicenna, lib. IV., fen. 3, tract. 2, cap. 2. [2] *þe nose*, wanting.

[3] *her pisce wole be streit*, Lat. item accidit eis strictura pectoris.

[4] *comne* for *comune*.

[7] Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b.: Scias quod in egritudinibus fortibus si fuerint cronice fortes non competunt medicine, nam licet propter egritudinis fortitudinem medicina sit nocciua tamen dari non debet, quia medicinam oportet sepius iterari.

Light purging medicines.

wole falle for to purge þe humour liȝtli // A medicyn maad of' gotis whey wiþ epith*i*mo, þis medicyn is riȝt' & good, for it' purgiþ malancolie litil & litil, & also a man schal not' be greued þ*e*rebi // Pelottis þ*at*' be m*aa*d of' epithimo þ*at*' ben aforseid i*n* þe tretijs of' allopucia ben good herfore, for þin entent' schal be oo*n*ly for to purge malancolie þ*at*' is corrupt', & amende his complexiou*n* wiþ good dietyng'. Blood letyng' is not' good þ*er*fore, but' if' þe cauce come miche of' blood / If' his breeþ be streit', þ*an*ne it' comeþ of' þe veyne þat' goiþ to þe herte / Su*m*tyme it' is in þe veyne of' þe nose[1] / þou schalt' ȝeue to men þat' ben drie lepre & comeþ myche of' colre, þou schalt' ȝeue hi*m* gotis whey ofte for to drynke, & [2]þou schalt', i*n* as miche as þou miȝt', make his complexiou*n* moist' & baþe hi*m* i*n* temp*e*re baþ & lete hi*m* swete þ*er*inne; & þ*an* þou schalt' anoynte hi*m* wiþ oile of' violet' & oile of' cucurbita, & þou schalt' ȝeue hi*m* good metis þ*at*' engendriþ good blood, & hese metis & hise drinkis schule*n* be i*n* temp*e*re heete, not' to hoot' ne to coold // ¶ Su*m*me*n* curiþ he*m* wiþ þe fleisch of' a blac eddre[3] þ*at*' be*n* i*n* drie lo*n*d & among' stones, & þ*an* þei kutten awey þe heed & þe tail of' þe eddre & doiþ awei þe guttis wiþi*n*ne / & þ*an* þei doon he*m* i*n*[4] a vessel of' erþe wiþ a litil pep*er* & galyngale & salt' & vinegre & watir & oile, & so þei seþe þe eddre til al þe fleisch þ*er*of' be dissolued. Þ*an*ne þe broþ herof' is ȝeue*n* to drynke, & þe fleisch for to ete til þe pacient' haue scotomia*m*[5] & al his bodi to-swolle / Wha*n*ne his bodi is to-swolle & he haþ had scotomia*m*, þ*an* leie hi*m* in a bed & lete hi*m* ligge; & if' þ*er*e falle ony þi*n*g' to hi*m* as syncopis, ouþ*er* greet' cooldnes of' hise lymes wiþoutforþ, or if' his herte quake, þ*an* ȝeue

Give the patient nourishing food.

A preparation made from the flesh of a black snake

is given, until the patient becomes giddy.

Then let him lie down and give a reviving medicine in case of collapse.

[2 lf. 121, bk.]

1 Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b: "Flebotomia namque non convenit nisi quum scis lepram esse valde sanguineam cum hanelitus strictura tunc fit de uena cordis et de duabus guides timendo suffocationem: alia fit de venis nasi propter palliandum faciei colorem."

3 De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 100: "*To hele oþir to hide lepra as plato seiþ, best is a rede adder wiþ a white wombe; ȝif þe venym is awaye & þe tail & þe heed i-smyte of, þanne þe body i-sode in leke, ȝif it is ofte i-take & i-ete; in þe same wise wyne in þe whiche it rotieþ, ȝif þe patient drinke ofte* þer*of, and þis helpiþ in many iueles, as he telleþ of a blind mannes wif þat wolde slee here housbonde, and ȝaf him an addre with garlek in stede of an ele, þat it myȝte slee hym, & he eet it, and aftir þat by moche swete he recouered & had his siȝt goode & elere.*" The flesh of vipers is commended by Galen for the treatment of elephantiasis. Lib. II., Simpl. de carne viperæ.

4 *in*, in margin.

5 *scotomia*, σκότωμα, ατος, τό, dizziness. Vigo Interpret.: "They shoulde saye Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth before the eyes, and when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

hi*m* tiriaca maior wiþ a litil musco ouþ*er* hoot' wijn // In þis man*er* al his [1]fleisch wole pile & alle hise heeris wole*n* falle awei & newe heeris wolen come vp a3e*n* / & þis medicyne schal be rehersid so
4 ofte, & kepid wiþ dietyng' til he be p*er*fitli hool / Forwhi manie men mou*n* be delyuerid of' manye greet' sijknessis, if' her leche is ku*m*nynge & diligent' aboute he*m*, & bi necligen*c*e & defaute of' help manie men be*n* p*er*ischid / Cauterijs herfore þou schalt' fynde
8 ynowe i*n* þe chapiter of' cauterijs, & oynementis þat' makiþ clene & soudiþ, all þese þingis þou schalt' fynde in þe antidotarie.

[1 lf. 122]

A skilful physician often cures, where a negligent one fails.

¶ Of waastynge off membris and bicomen smal /

¶ viijo. c°/ Limbs become swollen after a streight ligature, they become larger by congestion.

A Mannes lyme bicomeþ smal wiþ greet' streynyng' of' ligaturis
12 þat' takiþ awei þe norisching' of' þe lyme, or of' long' akyng' of' ioynt' þat' enfebliþ al þe lyme / þese þi*n*gis makiþ a ma*n*nes lymes to bicome smal // ¶ Also a ma*n*nes lymes bicomeþ greet' oþ*er* þa*n* þei schulde be,[2] whanne veynes ben feble & mate*r*e falliþ þ*er*to &
16 þe v*er*tu of' souding' failiþ, & i*n* þis maner þe lyme swelliþ, & þe mater is fleumatik, & for defaute of' heete it turneþ not' i*n*to quitture [3]saue it' abidiþ i*n* þe lyme & swelliþ þe lyme /

[3 lf. 122, bk.]

¶ A lyme þ*at* is bicome smal, i*n* þis maner þou schalt' make it'
20 greet': if' þ*er*e be ony þi*n*g' to take awei þ*er*of' as akynge ouþ*er* ony strictt*ur*e, ouþ*er* ony byndyng', þa*n* remeue awey þ*at* first' i*n* þe man*er*e as it' schal be seid i*n* þe chapit*er* of' ioyntis. Wha*n*ne þe akynge is doon awei, þanne waische þe lyme wiþ a decocciou*n* of'
24 malowis & violet' & rotis of' bismalue i*n* watir, saue his lyme schal be i*n* þe wat*er* no leng*er* þa*n* it' bigy*n*neþ for to bicome reed & su*m*-wha*t*' to swelle, & be war þ*at*' his lyme be not' so longe i*n* þe wat*er* til þ*at*' he swete, & þan drie his lyme wiþ a ly*n*nen clooþ & frote it'
28 a litil wiþ þi*n* hond, & þa*n*ne take a litil smal 3erde & bete þe lyme þ*er*wiþ til þou drawe blood þ*er*to, & make a plastre þ*er*to i*n* þis man*er*. ℞, picis nauali*s*, picis grece, re*s*ine albe an*a*, & melte alle þese i*n* a pa*n*ne. & wha*n*ne þei ben molte*n* cole he*m* þoru3 a clooþ
32 into coold wat*er*, & þa*n*ne anoynte þi*n* hondis w*i*th oile & þa*n* take it' vp of' þe watir & temp*er*e it' togidere & make þ*er*of' gobetis & kepe he*m* for þi*n* vss[4], herof' þou schalt' plane vpo*n* [5]a leþ*er*, & leie it' to þe lyme þ*at*' is forseid, & so lete it' ligge adai, & aneue*n*

[5 lf. 123]

To restore a wasting limb remove the cause of the disease, apply a wash and an adhesive plaster. ℞

[2] Lat. ingrossatur etiam membrum aliquod ultra debitum. Compare *þe colour . . . chaungiþ oþir þan it schulde be*, p. 194, Note 3.

[4] *vse.*

drawe it' awey, & so lete þe lyme be til amorowe, & þanne reherse
þe waischinge þat' is forseid & þe frotin*g*' & þe betin*g*'. Þis wiþouten
ony drede wole bri*n*ge [þe lyme] aȝe*n* to his greetnes as it' schulde
be, *but*' if' þe lyme be out' of' ioynct' & haue be longe tyme, þan it' 4
wole be hard, þa*n* it' is yuel to make þe lyme greet' aȝen as it'
schulde. & þouȝ it' mowe not' be maad greet' as it' schulde be,
neþeles bi þis maner it' may be myche amendid //

There is no perfect cure in case of an old dislocation.

¶ If' a ma*n*nes lyme is gretter þan it' schulde be, if' þe cause 8
þ*er*of' be of' fleume þat' þou miȝt' knowe bi neischenes of' þe lyme,
for if' þou þriste yn þi fyngir, þ*er* wol leue a pitt' þ*er*after, it' may be
brouȝt aȝen to greetnes þat' it' schulde be, if' it' be p*ur*gid ofte wiþ a
medicyn þat' is clepid trocisc*us* de turbit' þat' is aforseid, & þe pacient' 12
schal kepe hi*m* fro alle metis þat' engendriþ fleume, & he schal be
war of' greet' replecio*u*n of' metis & drinkis, & þa*n* þou schalt' cure
hi*m* wiþ medicyns þat' schulen be seid i*n* þe ch*a*piter of' apostemes
of' fleume / Take lye maad [1] of' aischis of' wijn or of' an ook, & leie 16
þ*er*on a double ly*n*nen cloop & wete it' wel, & þ*er*wiþ folde þe lyme,
& þa*n* streyne þe lyme wiþ a boond, & eu*er*y dai þou schalt' wete it'
.ij. siþis i*n* þat' lie & bynde so his lyme, & i*n* þis maner his lyme
schal drie. Ouþ*er* i*n* þis maner / Take sal nitre & distemp*er*e it' 20
wiþ watir, & þa*n*ne take a sponge þat' it' be so myche þat' it' mowe
hile al þe lyme & þa*n* lete þe sponge drie so þ*er*vpon, & þa*n* wete
þe spong*e* aȝen & leie it' on þe lyme aȝen, & lete it' drie aȝen &
alwei bynde wel þe lyme; & þis þou must' do manye siþis. Or take 24
þe leues of' lilie celestie & grynde he*m* wel and þanne leye it' vpon
þe lyme, & þa*n*ne by*n*de wel þe lyme, & i*n* þis maner þe mat*er*e
wole waaste awey & þe lyme wole bicome smal as it' schulde / If' it'
so be þat' þis greetnes come of' malancolious blood or of' greet' 28
fleume, make hi*m* a p*ur*gaciou*n* w*ith* gotis whey & epithi*m*o, or
anoþir competen*t* medicyn. & first' þou schalt' make þe lyme neische
wiþ oile of' lilie, or wiþ oon of' þe oynementis þat' be*n* mollificatiuis
þat' [2] schule*n* be seid i*n* þe antidotarie, þa*n*ne go to þe cure þat' is 32
forseid. Wh*a*nne þe swelly*n*g' of' þe lyme is doon aweie, if' it' be i*n*
hond or i*n* arme, þat' falliþ ofte tyme, or i*n* þe foot' & i*n* þe leggis &
i*n* þe knee, þa*n*ne þou schalt' make bitwixe þe fyngris cauterijs þat'
be*n* clepid caute*r*iu*m* cultellare, as þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe chapitre of' 36
cauterijs // þe greetnes of' a ma*n*nes foot' þou schalt' cure as it' schal
be seid i*n* elephancia as it' is conteyned i*n* his pr*o*pre chapitre /

If the swelling of a limb is caused by the phlegm,

use a purging medicine,

a bandage and compresses, soaked in lye,

℞

[1 lf. 123, bk.]

or in a solution of saltpetre,

℞

or bruise lily-leaves, and apply them.

If the swelling arises from melancholic blood, purge and use a softening ointment.

[2 lf. 124]

Þe firste chapiter of engendering of humours & þe kindis of hem, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapiters /

Þe .2. doctrine.

¶ 1°. c°. Impostems ingendred off þe iiij humors.

EVeri enpostym is engendrid of iiij. humouris, ouþir of wat*er*, or of wijnd. & it is impossible for a cirurgian for to kune a cure, but if he knowe þe cause þ*er*of, & þ*er*fore me þouȝte þ*at* it was necessarie for to make a p*ro*pre chapitre of þe generacioun of humouris[1] & alle þe p*ro*purtees þ*er*of, þ*at* þe redere of þis book mai knowe þe causis of apostyms & þe curis þ*er*of & metis & drinkis þ*at* ben necessarie in þis cause for norisching & augmenting[2] of þe lymes & for to engendre natural heete / // Wh*a*nne þe mete falliþ into a m*a*nnes stomac & þou haddist anothamie þ*er*of, þ*a*n in þe stomak þe mete is sod*en*, & þ*a*n fro þe stomak it goiþ into þe guttis, & þerof þou haddist anothamia*m*, & þ*a*n þe mete goiþ anoon to þe gutt þ*at* is clepid orobu*m* or þe sak. Veynes þ*at* be*n* clepid miseraice & þ*er*e be*n* manie man*er*s þ*er*of as it is forseid, & þei be*n* maad fast wiþ þe botme of þe stomac & wiþ þe gutt þ*at* is clepid duodeno, & wiþ þe smal gutt, & wiþ þe gutt þ*at* is clepid ieiu*n*iu*m* as it is forseid, & wiþ þese veynes bigy*n*neþ þe .ij. digestiou*n* & beriþ a veyne þat is clepid kilus[3] to þe lyuer, & þ*at* veyne goiþ to þe stomac fro þe lyuer. & þe .iiij. humo*ur*is of iiij. substau*n*cis ben engendrid i*n* þis place of digestiou*n*[4] / For þ*er*e is engendrid þ*er*e a maner spumous substau*n*ce wh*a*nne þe digestiou*n* failiþ heete; & þ*er*e engendriþ anoþ*er* p*a*rtie þ*at* is sutil as it were wijn; & þe greet substau*n*ce goiþ adou*n* & sty*n*kiþ. If þ*er*e be engendrid greet fleume [5]& miche, þ*at* is cause for it que*n*chiþ þe hete of þe stomac / Also i*n* þe same placis is engendrid a subtil substau*n*ce, & scharp hete worchiþ þ*er*on & gaderiþ hi*m* hete & scharpnes, & þis is clepid collera rubea; & if humo*ur*is wexiþ to miche, it wole achaufe þe lyuer / & causis of enge*n*drin*g* of colre ben hote metis & dri*n*kis &

[2 lf. 124, bk.]

The first digestion.

The food is sodden in the stomach, and passes through the guts.

Incipit ij dyg°

The mesaraic veins carry the chyle to the liver.

nota

The four humours are produced in the liver.

1. Phlegm,

[5 lf. 125]

2. the Choleric humour,

[1] De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 6, Add. 27,944, fol. 33: "*Þise foure humores beþ i-bred in þis manere: whan mete is i-fonge in þe place of seeþinge, þat is þe stomak, first þe more sotil partie & fletinge* þerof, *þat phisicians clepiþ pthismaria, þat is i-drawe be certeyn veynes to þe lyuore, & þerby þe worchinge of kinde hete it is i-chaungid into þe foure humoures; þe bredinge of hem bigynneþ in þe lyuer, but it endiþ* þere *atte fulle.*"

[3] The translator mistook *kilus* for the name of the Vein, perhaps in reference to the *Vena cava*, called *Vena chillis* by the translators of Arab. medical works, from κοιλη.

[4] Lat.: Ita in hepate ex chylo veniente a stomacho quatuor humorales substantiæ generantur.

3. Blood,

traueile & fastyng' & stronge saucis // ¶ Also þe*r* is a clene substau*n*ce engendrid þat' ky*n*deli hete worchiþ þe*r*on, & þat' is blood. & þe mat*er*e herof' is good metis & drynkis þat' ben swete // ¶ Also

4. the Melancholic humour.

þe*r* is engendrid anoþe*r* substau*n*ce þat' is su*m*what' stynkyng' & is 4 clepid malancoli & is engendrid i*n* .ij. maners: oon man*er* is þis of' greet' hete þat' is bre*n*nyng' & of' greet' cooldnes þat' wexiþ hard[1]; & þe cause herof' be*n* grete metis,[2] & metis þat' engendriþ malancoli /

These four humours have different qualities.

And þes iiij. humo*ur*is Sanguis, Colera, fleumtica & Malancolia, & 8 eu*er*y of' he*m* haþ diu*er*s qualitees, for blood is hoot' & moist', ffleume coold & moost', Colre hoot' & drie, Malancoli coold & drie // ¶ Also

[3 lf. 125, bk.]

of' þese humo*ur*is [3]su*m*me ben kindeli & su*m*me be*n* vnkyndely, & þe*r*fore i*n* þis chapitre we wole*n* make me*n*cio*u*n of' alle, ffor bi 12 gendring' of' þese humo*ur*is enpostyms be*n* engendrid //

Phlegm is either natural or unnatural.

¶ Of' fleume þe*r*e be*n* ij. kyndis, oon is nat*ur*al & þe toþe*r* i*n*nat*ur*al / Nat*ur*al fleume is coold & moist' & whit', & goiþ sum-

The natural Phlegm quiets a man's nerves.

what' to swetnes,[4] of' which lordschipe[5] þer folowiþ a litil wilnyng' 16 for to comou*n* wiþ wy*m*men, & þe palesie, & [he is][6] pesible, & loueþ wel for to haue reste[7] / Saue þe moost' p*ar*t' of' fleume is i*n* a ma*n*nes brayn, & i*n* hise lu*n*gis, & in his stomac, & i*n* hise guttis,

It is chiefly in the back of the head and in the spine.

& i*n* hise ioynct*es*. And þe lordschip of' fleume is i*n* þe hynde*r* 20 p*ar*t' of' a ma*n*nes heed, & i*n* þe rigbonys. & fleume doiþ þre pro-fitis, þe .j. is þis: su*m*tyme a ma*n*nes kynde failiþ blood, & þan kinde worchiþ vpon fleume & makiþ blood, & of' oþe*r*e humouris þis mai not' be do / þe ij. profit' of' fleume is þis: for fleume goiþ wiþ 24 blood for to norische diuers lymes / þe .iij. profit' of' fleume is þis, þat' it' acoldiþ þe ioynctis & makiþ he*m* moist', for ellis in greet' meuyng' þei schulde*n* wexe drie / Of' fleume þat' is innat*ur*al ben

[8 lf. 126]

.iiij. maners [8]as: fleume dulce, fleu*ma* acetosu*m*, fleu*ma* ponticu*m*, 28

fleuma dulce.

fleu*ma* salsu*m* // ¶ **ffleuma dulce** is in .ij. maners. þe firste man*er*

[1] *of greet cooldness þat wexiþ hard.* Lat. ex frigiditate ingrossante.

[2] *grete metis,* Lat. cibi grossi.

[4] *swetnes,* a mistake for *whitnes.* Lat. ad paucam tendens albedinem. De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 9, *ibid.* fol. 35: "*Kyndeliche fleume is coolde & moist, & white in colour, and fletinge in substaunce, a litwhat swete in sauour, oþir al werisch & vnsauoury.*"

[5] *of which lordshipe,* Lat. de cuius dominio.

[6] *he is,* wanting.

[7] *Ibid.*, fol. 35 bk.: "*a verray fleumatik man is in þe body lustles, heuy & slowȝ, dul of wit & of þouȝt forȝetteful, neissche of fleissche and quauy, bloo*[a] *of colour, whitliche in face, ferdeful of herte, ful of spittinge snynel & rokeinge, ful of slouthe & of slepinge, & of a litil appetite & of litil þurst.*"

[a] bloo, MS. bood.

is þis: as wh*an*ne fleume is medlid wiþ blood, or as wh*an*ne hete worchiþ wiþ fleume to t*ur*ne it' i*n*to blood // ¶ **ffleuma acetosum** is seid i*n* .ij. maners / as whanne ebullitiu*n*[1] comeþ to fleume dulce & makiþ him to rote, & it' [is] herto as it' bifalliþ in oþ*er*e þingis þ*at*' be*n* swete, as to swete winis whanne sournes comeþ þ*er*on it' bicomeþ coold, & i*n* þe same man*er*e fleuma acetosu*m* makiþ fleuma dulce coold // ¶ **ffleuma salsum** is moost' drie of' alle, & þis is whanne þ*er* is ony p*ar*t' of' colre medlid wiþ fleume, þ*an* it' is clepid fleuma salsu*m*, for þe hete of' þe colre makiþ it' salt' / ¶ **ffleuma vitreum** was liquide fleu*ma*, & wiþ cooldnes it' is congilid, or su*m* p*ar*tie of' malancolie is medlid & congiliþ it' hard // ¶ **Colre** su*m* is nat*ur*al & su*m* is i*n*nat*ur*al / Nat*ur*al is liȝt & scharp & reed i*n* col*our* &[2] i*n* substau*n*ce, & þe more hoot' þ*at* it' is þe more reednes it' makiþ / þ*an*ne vertues of' colre be*n* þese / A colerik man schal haue hasti entendement' & sotil [3]of' witt', & hardi & hasti þouȝt', & hasti answere, & liȝtly meued to wraþþe[4] / Of' colre i*n*nat*ur*al be*n* .v. man*er*s, as cit*r*i*n*a, [vitellina][5], adusta, p*r*assina & eruginosa / **Colera cit*r*i*n*a** is medlid wiþ subtil fleume / **Colera vitellina**[6] is medlid wiþ greet' fleume / **Colera adusta** is i*n* .ij. maners; oon is þis, þ*at*' it' is to miche brent' in[7] þe lyuer; þan wiþ þis bre*n*nyng' þe subtil p*ar*tie dep*ar*tiþ fro þe grete p*ar*ties, & i*n* þis maner it' takiþ a spice of' malancoly // ¶ In anoþ*er* man*er*e, p*ar*tijs of' malancoli þ*at*' be*n* brent, [ben][8] medlid þ*er*wiþ // ¶ And þ*er* is iij. maner of' colre adust', & is wh*an*ne his blood is adust' *id est* brent' as it' schal be seid here aft*er* // ¶ þer is anoþ*er* man*er* of' colre þ*at*' is clepid **p*r*assina**,[9] þ*at*' is swiþe bittir // ¶ Eruginosa is lijk þe rust' of' cop*ur*, & þis maner of' colre is miche fret*in*g' & scharp, & G. seiþ þ*at*' þis maner colre is engendrid of' hoot' metis & scharpe as oynou*n*s, garlek, mustard, & oþ*er*e mo // ¶ Of' mala*n*coli þer ben .ij. man*er*s—as mala*n*coli nat*ur*al & malancoli i*n*nat*ur*al / Malancoly þ*at*' is nat*ur*al

fleu*ma* acetosu*m*.

fleuma salsu*m*.

fleu*ma* vit*r*eu*m*.

[3 lf. 126, bk.]

Colera i*n*nat*ur*al*is*.

Colera cit*r*i*n*a.

Colera vitellin*a*.

Colera adusta.

Collera p*r*assina.

Colera erug*in*osa.

G*a*lion.

Malanco*li*.

The natural Melancholy.

[1] *ebullitiun*, Lat. ebullitio.

[2] MS. *colour*, erroneously inserted.

[4] De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 10, Add. 27,944, fol. 36: "*And so eolerik men beþ generalliehe wraþeful, hardy, vnmeke, liȝt, vnstable, inpetuous; in body long, sklendre & lene; in eolour broun, in eer blak and erips, hard and stif; in touche hoot, in puls strong & swift.*"

[5] *vitellina*, wanting.

[6] *eolera vitellina*, called *ȝellowȝ eolera*, in De propr. rer. ibid.

[7] MS. *&* for *in*. [8] *ben*, wanting.

[9] De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 35 b.: "*Þe þridde maner of eolera hatte prassina, & is grene of eolour and bittir seharp as an herbe þat hatte prassium, & marubium, & porrus in latyn.*"

[2 lf. 127] haþ þese signis / þe .j. is as it were fecis of blood,[1] [2]& her colour is as it were ledi & blac, & her bodi schal be leene & drie, & þei schulen haue good appetit for to ete, & þei schulen haue good mynde for to kepe þingis in her þouȝt, & þei schulen be dredeful & 4 ful of enuye & gile & sorowe & coueitous / Malancolie innatural comeþ of humours brent & corrupt. Of euery of þese humours ben engendrid diuers maners of enpostyms / & euery maner postyme haþ diuers cure as it schal be seid here-after. 8

The unnatural Melancholy.

A general word of empostyms /

¶ ij. c°. A Postyme haþ manie diuers names of diuers men, for lewid cirurgians[3] seien, þat þer is noon apostym but þat, þat makiþ quytture / Saue I seie, & alle auctouris seien þat eueri swellyng in 12 a lyme, wheþir it be greet or smal, it schal be clepid apostym / For .A. seiþ: litil swellyngis schule be clepid litil apostyms, & grete swellyngis schulen be clepid grete apostyms / þerfore apostym is seid swellyng in lymes, ouþir inflatioun[4] þat chaungiþ þe lyme oþer 16 þan it schulde be; & þe mater herof comeþ of manie diuers þingis; ouþer it comeþ of humouris, or of watir, [5]or of wijnd / If it comeþ of humouris, þan it comeþ of blood, ouþer of fleume, or of colre, or of malancolie // Also enpostyms þat cometh of humours: summe 20 comeþ of natural humours, & summe of innatural; & summe of sengle humours, & summe of humouris medlid togidere / And summe enpostyms cometh of causis wiþinneforþ, & summe of causis withoutforth / þe causis wiþoutforþ is falling ouþer smiting, or of a 24 wounde, or chaunging of eir / Of þe causis wiþinneforþ: as of wickidnes of humours, or to ful of humouris, or to ful of water, or of wijnd / or whanne a man is hurt wiþoutforþ: or wiþ greet hete þat brenneþ, or wiþ greet cooldnes of eir þat constreyneþ, or of 28 greet drienes þat constreineþ, for alle þese causis humouris gaderiþ togidere & makiþ enpostyms // Also if a man falle vpon a stoon or vpon an hard þing, or if a man be smite wiþ a stoon or wiþ a staf, or þoruȝ prickyng of a venimous beest: alle þese þingis moun 32 [7 lf. 128] engendre venimous[6] enpostyms / In þis maner þou [7]schalt knowe

Any swelling in a limb is called Apostema.

Auicen.

It arises from the humours, [5 lf. 127, bk.] or from water or wind in the body.

The exciting cause is either external or internal.

[1] De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 36: "*þe kyndeliche malencolie is coole and drye, þat is i-bred in blood as drastes in wyne.*"

[3] *lewid cirurgians*, Lat. rurales cyrurgici.

[4] *inflatioun*, Lat. inflatio, O.Fr. inflacion. *Viyo* l. c. "*Inflatus*, Puffed vp, swellyng."

[6] *a venimous*, cancelled.

diuers enpostyms of wh*at* humo*ur*is þei comeþ / If superfluite of blood drawe to a lyme, as is clepid flegmon,[1] & þes ben þe signes þ*er*of: þe place wole be reed for lijknes of blood, akynge for þe greet repleciou*n* þ*er*of, beting[2] for þe greet depnes of mater, or for greet akynge / He may haue greuau*n*ce of a feuer[3] / If þe blood be þi*n*ne in substaunce & hoot i*n* qualite, þa*n* it makiþ herisipulam. & þis is þe signe þ*er*of, þat i*n* þe hiȝest place þ*er*of, it wole be moost reed and hoot; & if þou leist þi fyngir þ*er*on, & wh*an*ne þou remeuyst þi fyngir, þe skyn wole be whit þ*er*e þi fyngir was, & anoon it wole bicome reed aȝen, for þe mat*er* þ*er*of is subtil, & þe pacient haþ greet bre*n*nyng þ*er*of & akynge // Blood i*n* his owne substau*n*ce is more gretter & makiþ more hete, & makiþ apostym, þat is clepid carbu*n*culus / þis enpostym comeþ to a ma*n* wh*an*ne he haþ habou*n*dance of greet blood, & þ*er*for wh*an*ne he is replete of mete, he schulde baþe hi*m* or traueile hi*m*-silf, þat þe blood miȝte falle out, & for his greetnes & hardnes it mai not be [4]resolued [4 lf. 128, bk.] w*ith* hete, & þa*n*ne it leueþ i*n* þe skyn & makiþ apostym.[5] þe signes h*er*of be*n* þes: þe enpostym is hard for þe þiknes of blood, & þe colour þ*er*of is swart reed for þe greet hete, & þe greet heete[6] herof makiþ a man su*m*time to haue a feuer þ*er*wiþ; & su*m*tyme it makiþ a man to haue sincopin,[7] & þis is speciali wh*an*ne þe mat*er*e is brent, & in þis maner þe mat*er*e þ*er*of is turned i*n*to veny*m* /

Superfluity of blood causes **flegmon.**

Symptoms.

Poverty of blood causes **herisipula*m*.**

Symptoms.

Fullness of blood causes **carbuncul*us*.**

Symptoms.

[1] *Halle. Table*, p. 84. "φλεγμονή, id est inflammatio uel collectio, απο του φλεγμου, hoc est a sanguine dicta, written moste commonly hither vnto (with muche rudenes) *Flegmon*, is properly a symple tumore (as Galen sayeth) and an affecte of the fleshie partes, comming of a greater fluxe of bloude then they nede or can naturally susteyne."

[2] *beting*, Lat. pulsatio. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. beat, 13.

[3] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 97 b.: "*And somtyme it comeþ of ventosite & of wind, & hatte bubo; somtyme of a symple humour, as of blood, and hatte flegmon; þe tokenes* þer*of beþ*[a]*: rede rednes comeþ of þe colour of blood, hardenesse comeþ of multitude of matiere & of hete þat wastiþ watry matiere, quappinge & lepinge*[b] *of ventosite & fumosite, schuftynge & puttinge, sore ache of þe*[c] *streechinge of þe place; hete comeþ of hote matiere, & swellinge comeþ of multitude of matiere.*"

[5] 26,106, fol. 52 b.: hoc apostema fit cum homo habundat sanguine grosso, et balneatur post ciborum repletionem aut laborat, ita quod sanguis ad extrema movetur et propter suam grossitiem et duritiem non potest a calore resolui remanens in cuti facit apostema. [6] *heete*, in margin.

[7] *Halle. Table*, p. 122. "Syncope. Συγκοπή, id est animi deliquium, uel præseps uirium lapsus, that is the defecte of the mynde, or a sodeine slyding away of the strengthe of the body, and commonly called swoundynge."

[a] MS. *by*. [b] Lat. pulsus i. saltus. [c] MS. *ofte*.

Natural colre causes Erysipelas.

Natural colre makiþ herisipulam,[1] & þe signe þerof is hardnes for þe greet drienes of colre. & þe heed of þe enpostym is schape as it were a pyne, for þe grece þat it haþ.[2] & þe colour þerof is reed medlid wiþ ȝelow // 4

Phlegm causes vdimia. (oedema).

An enpostym þat comeþ of fleume, is clepid vdimia[3] or ȝima,[4] & is a neisch enpostym, & þe colour þerof is sumwhat whiȝt. & if þou pressist in þi fyngir, þer wole leue þere a pitt for þe gret neischenes; & whanne þi fyngir is aweie, it wole arise vp aȝen. 8 þis enpostym is wiþout akynge, saue it makiþ a greuaunce /

Natural malancoli causes Sclirosis. [6 lf. 129]

¶ Natural malancoli makiþ an hard enpostym, & is clepid Sclirosis.[5] & þe signe þerof is hardnes, & þe colour þerof is as þe colour [6]of malancolie ledi or blac / 12

A watery apostema.

Enpostym þat comeþ of blood & watir medlid togidere. þis is þe signe þerof: if þou settist þeron þi .ij. fyngris of þi .ij. hondis, & first pressist þat oon fyngir & panne þat oþer, þou schalt fele þe watri mater remeue fro þat oon fyngir to þat oþer // 16

These are the simple Apostemas.

¶ þese ben þe differencis of apostyms þat ben symple, þat comeþ of oon matere at oonis; & þese ensaumplis ben schewid tofor, for þou schalt þe bettir knowe enpostyms þat comeþ of double matere // 20

Apostemas arising from more than one cause: Apostema flegmonides and herisipilades

¶ þer comeþ an empostym of blood & colre; & if þe more partie be of blood, þan þe enpostym schal be clepid **flegmonides**; & if þe more partie þerof be of colre, þanne he schal be clepid herisipilades. & þe signes herof þou schalt knowe bi þe signes of 24

[1] De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*herisipila, þat is holy fure per antifrasim, þat is contrarie spekinge.*"

[2] Lat. propter igneitatem ipsius.

[3] *vdimia, οἴδημα*, tumour.—Vigo, Chirurgery. The Interpretation: "Undimia is a barbarouse terme, in greke it is called oedema, in latin tumor. For it is softe swellynge wythout payne."

[4] *Zima.* Sinonoma Barth, "*Zima* est apostema flancorum molle sine dolore." From *ζέμα*, that which is boiled, decoction. De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*In þe same manere aposteme comeþ of fleume, and hatte zimia oþur palus; for riȝt as in mures and in mareys is moche superfluyte of slyme & of wose, so in þis posteme is moche superfluyte; and if þou þurstist þy fyngre þer vppon, hit dyueþ inne, for þe rennynge matiere wiþdrawiþ & lettiþ þe vingre entre, & þanne in þe myddel is a putte as hit were þe bore of an hole; & whanne þe fingre is aweye, þe matiere comeþ aȝen & filliþ al þe place.*"

[5] Add. 16,106, fol. 53: apostema quod vocatur scliros ab aliis sephiros vel sclirosis. *Halle. Table*, p. 114. "*Scirrhus* Σκίῤῥος *και* σκληρότης, id est durities, writen of old *Selirosis*, is (as I gat her of Galen in diuers places) a tumore against nature, and an affecte of harde and thicke partes."

þe symple apostyms // ¶ Also blood & fleume nat*ur*al [ben][1] medlid togid*er*e, & makiþ an enpostym þat' is vdimia. & þe signe herof' [is][2] þat' þe heed of' þis enpostym is reed, & þat' oþ*er*e wole be
4 whit'[3] / ¶ Also blood is medlid wiþ greet' fleume & malancolie, & engendriþ glandulas & Scrophulas.[4] ¶ Colre medlid w*ith* fleume [5]makiþ fleume re*n*nyng', & makiþ þat' fleume goiþ wiþ hi*m* i*n*to ioynctis. & herof' þou schalt' haue a pleyner techi*n*g' i*n* þe chapit*re* [5 lf. 129, bk.]
8 of' ioinct*es*. ¶ Also greet' fleume is medlid w*ith* mala*n*coli, & þ*er*of' come þ glandula & Scrophule / Also malancolie & blood, colre & fleume ben medlid alle togid*er*e & makiþ an enpostym þat' is clepid antrax; & þe malice þ*er*of' is diu*er*s aft*er* eu*er*y humo*ur*. Saue if'
12 blood & colre be feruent' togidere & malancolie be malicio*us*, þa*n* þ*er*e falliþ manie harde þi*n*gis þ*er*to, as quaking' of' þe herte, & sincopis, & out' of' hise wittis, & sumtyme deeþ. & þe signes herof' ben greet' hardnes of' þe enpostym, & þe schap þ*er*of' as it' were a
16 pyn, & greet' akynge, & sumtyme he schal not' fele it'. And þ*er*fore .G. seiþ: hote apostyms, if' þei be not' felid, ben incurable. & veynes þat' ben þ*er*on wole*n* be of' diu*er*s colouris, & vpon þe enpostym þ*er*e wole be as it' were a litil bladdre,[6] & þe colo*ur* þ*er*of'
20 wole be as aischis, & it' semeþ þat' it' is drawe ynward wiþ a þreed.[7] & þis enpostym is seid co*n*tagio*us*.

Of' humouris þat' be*n* [in][8]nat*ur*al, þese þingis [9]folowiþ þ*er*of' / Of' fleume þat' is corrupt' come*th* Bocia & testudines / Of' malancolie
24 comeþ scrophule & glandule, as it' is aforseid. & of' alle þese þou schalt' haue p*r*opre chapit*ris* / Of' colre þat' is brent' & of' oþ*er*e humouris þat' be*n* brent' & corrupt' þ*er*e comeþ manie pustulis, & su*m*me þ*er*of' ben ful malicious aft*er* þe malice of' þe mat*er*e / Herof'
28 comeþ ignis p*er*sicus, miliaris, formica, h*er*pes, herpes estiomenus.

are caused by the blood and choler.

Glandula & Scrophule.

Antrax is caused by Melancholy, Blood Choler and Phlegm.

Symptoms of Anthrax.

Galion.

Anthrax is contagious.

[9 lf. 130]

Bocia & testudines caused by corrupt Phlegm.

Diseases arising from corruption of the humours:

[1] *ben*, wanting. [2] *is*, wanting.

[3] Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 53: facit apostema quod videtur vdimia, nisi quia in superficie magis rubet.

[4] *Halle. Table*, p. 115. "*Scrophula* (so called by Auicenna, Guidone de Cauliaco, Bruno, Theodorico, Lanfranco, and others a *Seropha*, a pregnante soowe: because it or the lyke, is a disease co*m*mon to hogs) is a harde Scirrhous tumore, in the glandules of the share or arme holes, but chiefly in the necke."

[6] Compare *Guilelm. de Salic.*, I. 59. Sl. 277, fol. 11: "*In þe antrax . . . . þer been smale bladdres aboute þe copp of it, as þouȝ fier hadde touehed þe place.*"

[7] De propr. rer., lib. 7, cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 93: "*And also it semeþ þat hit is i-drawe to þe ground þerof wiþ a maner þrede, i-fastned to þe vttir partye of þe bladder in þe myddel.*" Not in *Gulielm. de Salic.*

[8] *in*, wanting. Lat. De humoribus autem non naturalibus.

ignis persicus. Ignis persicus is a signe[1] þat þere ben manie pustule þeron & venymous water. & þe pustule ben reed al aboute & ȝelow, & occupieþ al þe lyme. & it is wiþ greet brennyng. & þis comeþ of
Miliaris. colre brent and þinne / Miliaris haþ litil pustulis, & haþ not so 4
greet brennyng, ne þe place þerof is not so reed. & þis comeþ ofte
fformica. of fleume medlid wiþ a litil colre // ¶ fformica is a pustula þat is swiþe feruent, & haþ a cruste aboue, & it comeþ of colre brent. & þis is goynge & fretiþ þe lyme aboue, & it hath greet brennyng // 8
Pruna. ¶ Þe firste[2] is a pustula þat comeþ of malancolie & is blac or
[3 lf. 130, bk.] ledi, & it comeþ of þe venemous mater of malancoli / [3]Herpes
Herpes esthiomenus. estiomenus is as miche to seie as fretyng him-silf, & þis comeþ in manie maners / It comeþ in medlyng of colre þat is brent & 12
malancolie innatural & brent & sutil. & wh*an*ne þis falliþ into a lyme, it fretiþ þe lyme for þe greet malice þat it haþ // ¶ Also þer is anoþer maner passioun þat haþ manie diuers names, for summen
Cancrum & lupum. clepen it cancrum, & summen lupum. & men of fraunce clepen it 16
malum nostre domine[4] / And lumbardis clepen it fier of seint antony, & summen clepen it herisipulam. Of alle þese diuers names is no charge of, saue þe signes of þis sijknes ben þese: fretiⁿg & brennyng & blac colour & stynkynge, & þat riȝt foul 20
stynkyng. & or þe skyn þerof be to-broke, it wole not stynke, saue þe place þerof wole be ledi. & if þou felist þe place wiþ þi
Cancer vlceratus fyngir, þou schalt fynde þe fleisch þerof al corrupt // ¶ Cancer is
a postym þat is swiþe corrupt. & is in .ij. maners: as cancer 24
vlceratus, & cancer þat is not vlceratus. ¶ A cankre þat is not

[1] *signe*, probably mistaken for *siknesse*. Lat. ignis persicus est egritudo in qua sunt multe pustule.

[2] Lat. Pruna similiter est pustula. The translator read: prima.—Phillips. "*Pruna*, a burning or live Coal; also a Carbuncle, Plague-sore, or fiery Botch."

[4] *malum nostre domine;* This name, given to *Erisipelas*, is due to the miraculous cures of this disease by intercession of the Holy Virgin. They are first reported by *Hugo Farsitus*, a canon of Saint Jean des Vignes, in Soissons. In his book, *De Miraculis Maria Suessionensis*, he relates the miracles, as seen by himself in the year 1128, and mentions several instances where women suffering from a severe skin-disease have been cured by the help of the Holy Virgin. Further account of a plague known under the name "mal des ardents" and of cures by the help of the Holy Virgin, is given by *Gautier de Coincy*. See G. d. C., ed. *Foquet*, p. 138.

The same disease is also called *fuoco di Sant Antonio*. See Tomm. Dict., *Maladie S. Antoine* (Godefr. Dict.). The Saints Germain, Main, Othoine and Verain, have likewise given their names to the *erisipelas*. *Quinte Ess.*, 8. 23: "fire of St. Antony, a brennynge sijknes clepid þe fier of helle."

vlceratus is *in* .ij. maners: oon comeþ of' malan*c*olie rotid, & bigy*n*neþ for to wexe *in* þe mychilnes of' a fecche or of' a pese. & þ*an*ne it' [1]wole wexe alwei *in* a man*er* bre*n*ny*n*ge; & eu*er*e as þe mat*er*e wexiþ, so wole þe brennyng' wexe forþ. & it' wole haue veynes of' diu*er*s colour. & sum colour þ*er*of' wole be ledi, & sum wole be p*ur*pur, su*m*me þ*er*of' wole be grene. & þ*an* þis is ful of' colerik mat*er*e corrupt'. & it' haþ greet' akynge, & if' þou p*r*essist' it' w*ith* þi fyngir, þe malice þ*er*of' wole be miche more / þis passiou*n* comou*n*ly wole wexe *in* placis þ*at*' ben glandule / þis maner enpostym comeþ ofte *in* a ma*n*nes þies & *in* a wo*m*ma*n*s brest' & *in* oþ*er*e placis / Cancer vlceratus. Alle þe signes þ*er*of' ben tofore seid *in* his pr*o*pre chapitre /

Cancer non vlceratus

[1 lf. 131]

It has variously coloured veins,

and chiefly affects glandulous parts.

Now alle þe signes of enpostyms be*n* seid, go we to þe curis / þou must' take kepe, whe*þ*er þe enpostym come of' causis wiþoutforþ or wiþi*n*ne / If' þe enpostym comeþ of' causis wiþi*n*neforþ, þ*an*ne þou must' p*ur*ge þe mat*er*e or þou leie þ*er*to ony rep*er*cussijf' or ony maturatif' or ony resoluyng' þi*n*g' / forwhi a repercussijf'[2] mai not' do awei al þe mat*er*e, þou3 it' su*m*what' aswage þe akynge *in* þe firste bigy*n*nyng' / neþeles itt' makiþ þe mat*er*e hard, & aftirward þe pa*tient* [3]schulde haue þe more penau*n*ce / A resoluy*n*g' *in* an vnclene bodi drawiþ more mat*er*e þ*er*to þ*an* it' resolueþ. ¶ A maturatif' makiþ þe enpostym to wexe more, if' his bodi be vnpurgid, & makiþ þe mat*er*e of' þe enpostym feruent / In what' maner þou schalt' p*ur*ge diu*er*s maters, *in* þe chapitre of' allopucia þ*o*u schalt' fynde it', & *in* þe chapitre de doloribus iu*n*cturarum, þ*at*' schal be seid here aftir / þou schalt' worche *in* enpostyms þ*at*' falliþ *in* a ma*n*nes bodi wiþoutforþ. If' þou wost' wel þ*at*' his bodi is replet', þis schal alwei be þ*in* ente*n*ciou*n*, for to dr*a*we þe mat*er*e awei *in* þis man*er*: / If' þe enpostym be *in* a ma*n*nes mouþ, þ*an* þou schalt' make hi*m* no gargarisme;[4] & if' it' be in his ers, þ*an* þou schalt' make hi*m* no laxatif' medicyn / & if' it' be *in* a wo*m*mans maris,[5] þ*an* þou schalt' ȝeue hir no medicyn for to make menstrue; saue þou schalt' alwei go to þe contrarie herof': as if' enpostyms be *in* p*ar*tijs aboue, þ*an* þou schalt' ȝeue catartic*um* / If' þe enpostym be bineþe, þ*an* ȝeue

Treatment of apostema.

Nota.

When the causes are internal, purge before using medicines.

[3 lf. 131, bk.]

When the causes are external use a contrarious medicine, i. e.

Nota.

a purgative, when the apostema is in higher parts,

[2] MS. repercussist.

[4] *gargarisme*, a gargle. Vigo, Chirurgery, Interpretation: "A gargarisme is when we cause water to bubble in our throtes, not sufferynge it to go downe."

[5] *maris*, Lat. matrix, O.Fr. marris. Sloane 2463, fol. 194 bk.: "*The moder is a skyn, þat þe childe is enclosed in his moder-wombe. And manye of þe sekenesses that women hauen, comen of greuaunces of this moder, that we clepen þe marice.*"

an emetic, when it is in lower parts.

him medicyns for to caste. ¶ Wh*an*ne þe mat*er*e is p*ur*gid, þ*an* bigy*n*ne we curis of' hoot' enpostyms / þou must' [1]be war of' rep*er*cussiuis in ten maners. ¶ þe j. cause is þis, if' his bodi be replet' / as it' is aforseid. ¶ þe .ij. is, greet' fume of' humours & venymous. ¶ þe .iij. is gretnes[2] of' humours rotid. ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, if' apostym wexe i*n* a noble lyme as i*n* a ma*n*nes eere, or i*n* a wo*m*mans tetis, or i*n* þe rigge abouteforþ. ¶ þe .v. cause is: if' þe enposty*m* be i*n* þe þrote, or nyȝ þe brayn, or in ony place nyȝ þe herte, or nyȝ ony lyme þ*at*' norischet*h* / ¶ þe .vj. cause is i*n* a child. ¶ þe .vij. cause is, if' it' be i*n* an oold ma*n*. ¶ þe .viij. cause is if' it' be i*n* a ma*n* þ*at*' risiþ vp of' sijknes. ¶ þe .ix. cause is if' it' be apostema creticu*m*.[3] ¶ þe .x. cause is, if' an enpostyme be i*n* a noble membre, & be putt' fro þ*at*' place to anoþ*er*. ¶ In noon of' þese .x. causis, þou schalt' make noon rep*er*cussif' i*n* hote enpostyms as þou schalt' fy*n*de þe maner i*n* þe antidotarie of' rep*er*cussifs / ¶ To enpostyms of' blood, þou miȝt' do medicyns rep*er*cussifs & dis-soluti*ui*s sotilly, so þ*at*' þe firste bigy*n*nyng'[4] rep*er*cussifs ou*er*come þe mater of' enpostym myche, & i*n* þe stat'[5] of' þe enpostym lasse, & i*n* þe ende þ*er*of' þou schalt' [6]vse clene resoluy*ng*' þi*n*gis / If' þou miȝt' not' wiþ rep*er*cussiuis do awei þe enposty*m* ne resolue hi*m*, saue he bigy*n*neþ to quytture, þ*an* þou schalt' do þ*er*to medicyns maturati*ui*s, til it' be wel quitturid. ¶ Of rep*er*cussi*ui*s resolutiuis maturat*iu*is & þe man*er*e of' worching' þ*er*of' þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe antidotarie. ¶ Wh*an*ne þe enpostym is quitturid & sufficiently rotid, þis þou miȝt' knowe whanne þe akynge is al aweie, & wh*an*ne þe mat*er*e is neische þ*er*of', & þ*an* opene þe enpostym, þ*at*' þou seest' moost' competent' // Saue or þou opene ony enpostyms, þou must' be war of' þus manie þi*n*ges: ¶ þe j. is, þou schalt' opene noon enpostym or he be p*er*fitli rotid, but' if' þe enposty*m* rotid ony oþir lyme, or þ*at*' he were nyȝ ony noble lyme, or nyȝ ony ioynct' // In oþ*er*e causis þou schalt' abide til he be p*er*fitli rotid. & i*n* þe kuttyng' þou schalt' loke where þe skyn is most' þi*n*ne and moost' hangyng', & þ*er*e þou schalt' opene þe enpostym.[7] ¶ þe .ij. enten-

[1 lf. 132] Repelling medicines must not be used in the following cases:
.1. .2. .3. .4. .5. .6. .7. .8. .9. .10.

In case of a blood-apostema use a repelling followed by a solvent medicine.

[6 lf. 132, bk.]

In case of suppuration apply a maturing medicine.

Open the abscess when it is ripe.

.1. Take care not to cut, if the abscess is near a joint,

looke well apon thes Rulles

[2] *gretnes*, grossities. [3] *creticum*, Lat. criticum.

[4] *þe firste bigynnyng*, determination of time denoted by accusative. Add. 10,440, fol. 20: "*and be war, þat þe tyme of chaungynge of þis medycyn* þou *take it not awey with violence.*"

[5] *in þe stat*, Lat. in statu. Add. 27,944, fol. 98: "*whan þe posteme is in state.*"

[7] Lat.: facias apertionem ubi materia magis dependet, et ubi pellis est magis tenuis.

ciou*n* is þis, þat þou schalt be war, wha*n*ne þou openest [1]an [1 lf. 133]
enpostym, þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine ne noon arterie. .2. not to injure a blood vessel.
¶ þe .iij. cause is, þat þou schalt not avoide al þe mater at oon
4 tyme, & pr*i*ncipali wha*n*ne þe*r* is myche mate*r*e, & þe enpostym is .3. to evacuate the pus slowly.
greet // ¶ þe .iiij. is þis, þou schalt alwei opene þe enpostym in
endelong þe lyme & not ouerþwert. Wha*n*ne þou hast opened þe .4. to cut in the direction of the limb.
e*n*postym, þa*n* þou schalt cure hi*m* vp[2] as it is aforseid in þe cure of
8 vlcus virulentu*m*. Þa*n* þou schalt fille þe wou*n*de þe*r*of wi*th* oold
ly*n*nen cloop þat is whiȝt, anoon to .iij. daies [wiþ] mundificati*u*is of ℞
ȝelkis of eiren & mele, aftir .iij. daies wiþ vngu*ent*um apo*st*olo*r*um[3]
& oon of þe mundificati*u*is þat schulen be seid i*n* þe antidotarie, &
12 wiþ regendring þi*n*gis & drijng þi*n*gis. ¶ A colerik e*n*postym Choleric apostemas
comeþ late to rotyng, but if it be rotid wiþ ony mater leid wiþout- ripen slowly.
forþ; þo*u* shalt cure þis enpostym i*n* þe same maner as þou schalt
enpostyms of blood, saue þis mote haue coldere medicyns / Car- Nota.
16 bunculis schule*n* be curid as antrax, & þe cure herof schal be seid Carbunclés
herafte*r*. [4]**Vdimia** schal not be smiten yn wiþ repe*r*cussi*u*is[5] saue [4 lf. 133, bk.]
it schal be waastid awei i*n* þe firste bigy*n*nyng i*n* þis maner. Þou Udimia (Oedema) shall be treated with purging medicines.
schalt purge hi*m* wi*th* trocis[6] de turbit, or wiþ anoþe*r* medicyn þat
20 purgiþ fleume. Þa*n* stewe[7] þat lyme wiþ a decoccioun of absinthij,
abrotanc, sticados, & squinanti. & take aischis of a vyne or of an
ook, & make þe*r*of lie & wete þe*r*i*n*ne ly*n*ne*n* cloþis & leie he*m* Apply compresses.
vpon þe place hoot, & binde he*m* streite þe*r*to þat it hile al þe
24 enpostym, & in þis maner þe mate*r*e þe*r*of schal be drawen awei //
If it so be þat þe*r*e be ony blood medlid þe*r*wiþ, or if þe*r* haþ be
leid þe*r*to ony maturatif so þat þe mater þe*r*of be rotid, þa*n* opene
it. Whanne it is opened, it mote haue stro*nger* mundificati*u*is þa*n* A softening plaster used by Rasis Auicen.
28 ony oþe*r* for þe hardnes of þe quitture & þe greetnes þe*r*of / þis is
a mollificatif þat rasis made & A. ℞. bdellij, galbani,[8] opoponac

[2] *cure him vp.* Compare Sloane 277, fol. 1 b.: "*be it flesched vp wiþ powdres & oynementes incarnatifes.*"

[3] Phillips. "*Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelue Drugs, according to the Number of the Apostles."

[5] Lat. vdimia proprie non repercutitur.

[6] *trocisce*, Lat. trociscus. Sloane 277, fol. 1 b. (xvth cent.), "*a trosce of þe trosces maad aȝens scrophules.*" Vigo l. c. "*Trochiscos* in Greke is a lyttle whele. Amonge the apothecaries, it is a confection made of sondrye pouders and spices, by the meane of some lyquoure. In latine they call it Pastillum."

[7] *stewe*, Lat. evapora.

[8] "*Galbanum*, a kind of strong scented Gum issuing out of a Plant call'd Fennel-Giant, which grows in Syria." Phillips.

ana, & make hem neische with oile of lilie in a morter, & grinde hem wel togidere. & þan do þerto fenigrecum & lynseed as myche as alle þe oþere & medle hem wel togidere, & herof leie an enplastre
[1 lf. 134] vpon an hard enpostym wiþ þis oonly, or medle þerwiþ fatte [1]figis 4
& leie þis enplastre þerto til it be resolued & maad neische / þis medicyn makiþ an hard enpostym to bicome neische & resolueþ him wiþout ony swellyng / þer ben oþere manye medicyns þat ben mollificatif & resoluyng þat þou schalt finde in þe antidotarie // 8

a watri empostym must be treated like oedema.

A watri apostym schal be curid as vdimia, saue it schal haue drier medicyns, & þou schalt cure him in þe same maner as it is seid in þe chapitre, wh*a*nne a ma*n*nes lyme is to gret, for to make it smal //

a windi empostym

Ventosum apostema, þat is apostym þat is ful of wijnd. þou 12
schalt cure it wiþ medicyns þat consumeþ wijnd wiþinne & wiþoute / wiþinneforþ as of vsyng of comyn & carui, & he mote be war of growel[2] & metis þat swelliþ; wiþoutforþ wiþ oilis þat consumeþ wijnd, or with þis oile, ℞. rue, cimini, seminis fenicli, anisi, carui, 16
ameos[3], apij, ana .ʒ ß., cold oile lĩ. ß., do alle þes in a viol of glas, & do þat glas in a vessel wiþ water, & make þe water seþe & kepe
[4 lf. 134, bk.] wel þe glas þeron þat it breke not, & wiþ þis oile anoynte þe place
℞ hoot / Item .℞. calcem and [4]distempere it wiþ swete wijn, & make 20
℞ þerof as it were an emplastre & leie þervpon / ℞. olii anetini[5] .ʒ ij., cere. ʒ ß., ysope þat it be drie & poudrid. ʒ j., & make herof a plastre. ¶ Herisipilades[6] or flegmonides schulen be curid in þe same maner þat ben herisipulam & flegmon / Of glandulis & scrophulis, 24
we wolen speke in her propre chapitre //

Internal treatment; external treatment.

Treatment of Anthrax.

First remove the evil matter by bleeding and purging,

¶ Antrax schal be curid wiþ avoiding of noious matere, & wiþ
þinges þat comfortiþ þe herte & þe vertu. Neþeles at þe firste
bigynnyng her vertu failiþ, & summe þat ben late blood or purgid 28
ben lost / þerfore manie men ben agast for to lete hem blood or ȝeue

if the patient is strong,

hem ony medicyn laxatif / Ech mesel[7] if þe pacient be strong, I
wole lete him blood adai, & in þe same nyȝt I wole ȝeue him a
medicyn laxatif // Saue herof þou schalt take kepe if he be feble, 32
& his herte quake, & his pous falle, þan it is folie for to lete him

[2] *growel*, Lat. legumina. See *Prompt. Parv.*, "Growelle or grewelle, Ligumen."

[3] *ameos*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. ammeos.

[5] *oleum anetinum*, oil of Fennel.

[6] Phillips. "Erysipelatodes, a Swelling like the former [Erysipelas], the Skin being of a darker Colour, and the Symptoms more gentle: a Bastard Erysipelas."

[7] *ech mesel*, Lat. ego vero. Compare *selwylly*, Prompt. Parv.

blood or ȝeue hi*m* ony medicyn laxatif', saue take þe cure oonly i*n* goddis hand // ¶ I wole telle an ensample þat' bifel i*n* þe citee of' mediolane*nsis* þat' it' mowe be ensample to þee & lernyng' / þer was a ma*n* of' xxx. wy*nter* oold, [1]& an antrax come vpon hi*m* i*n* þe riȝt-side of' his necke, & he was so greet' woxe aboute his necke & his þrote, & he was so swolle*n*, þat' þ*e*re was but' litil diffcrence bitwixe þe gretnes of' hise schuldris & his necke. & neþeles I fo*n*d his v*er*tu strong'. & I wiste wh*a*t' sijknes it' w*a*s bi a bladdre þ*a*t' satt' þ*er* vpon, & w*a*s i*n* þe riȝtside of' his necke, & þ*a*t' was þe firste bigy*n*-nyng' of' his sijknes / & neþeles þ*er* is manye lechis of' greet' name þ*a*t' cowde not' knowe þat' passiou*n* / Also I letc hi*m* blood i*n* boþe his armis, & drowe out' blood ynowȝ. & þo I dietide hi*m* as a ma*n* þ*a*t' hadde a feuer agu. & amorowe I ȝaf' þe colature of' fruit' of' mirab*olani* cit*rini*,[2] þe which þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe chapitre of' allopucia / Vpon þe enpostym þ*e*re þe bladdre was, I leide scabiose grou*n*d*e*n wiþ grese. I foond neu*e*re bett*e*re medicyns i*n* þis caas þ*a*n þese be*n* / For þe ma*n* was al dissolued of' his sijknes of' þe bren-nyng' & of' þe akynge, saue þe place þ*a*t' was to-swoollen, was not' þe lasse, & þe ma*n* was not' þe more feblid for his laxatif', ne for no medicyn þ*a*t' he hadde / & on þe morowe I lete hi*m* blood i*n* his oon arm, [3]& ȝaue hi*m* a medicyn laxatif i*n* lasse qu*a*ntite þ*a*n I dide raþ*e*re, & þ*a*n þe swellynge aswagide miche, & i*n* þe place þ*e*re þe bl[a]ddre w*a*s I fond a maner cruste as it' were a þ*in*g' þ*a*t were bre*n*t' w*i*th fier & w*a*s of' þe brede of' iij. ynchis. & wiþ*in*ne a fewe daies þe cruste was arerid vp, & þe pacient' felide no greet' greu-au*n*ce. & i*n* þe same place þ*e*re þe bladdre w*a*s, þ*e*re w*a*s a deep vlcus. & þoruȝ þe greet' hole I siȝ þe þrote & þe gret' veines, & I putte yn myn hond / & I ȝaf' þe pacient' good norisch*in*g' metis, & I made hool vlcus wiþ mundificati*u*is, til he w*a*s al hool bi þe help of' god //

¶ Pustule þ*a*t' come þ of' humours corrupt' as ignis p*er*sicus[4] & miliaris,[5] &[6] fformica[7] schal be purgid wiþ medicyns þ*a*t' purgiþ colre

and leave the cure of a feeble patient in the hands of God.

The author relates how [1 lf. 135] he cured a man, who had a big anthrax on his neck;

first he bled him,

then he used several medicines.

Nota

[3 lf. 135, bk.]

A scab appeared on the part,

and underneath a deeply-rooted ulcer, which he cured with cleansing medicines.

Ignis persicus, Miliaris and Formica

[2] MS. inserts *hinc*, referring to another chapter.

[4] *ignis persicus*, Herpes zoster (Dunglison). Phillips: "a Gangrene, it is also taken for a Carbuncle or a fiery Plague Sore."

[5] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 61, Add. 27,944: "*amonge auctoures þis euel is i-clepid herpes milii oþer graunlesus, an euel ful of graynes. But swiche bleynes beþ litil and smale as greynes of mylie.*" Phillips: "*Herpes Miliaris*, or *Pustularis*, a sort of yellow Bladders or Wheals, like Millet-Seed, that seize the Skin, cause much itching, and turn to eating Ulcers."

[6] MS. ¶ instead of *&*.

[7] MS. *ffornica*. Vigo Interpret. "Formica is a little excrescence, or

are treated with purging medicines.

& malancolie. & þat same medieyn schal purge humours þat be brent, as fumus terre, euseute, lappaeium acutum, eene,[1] absinthium & oþere mo / Also þou schalt voide þe matere wiþ medieyns þat comforten þe herte, & kepiþ þat þe venym ne smite not to þe 4 herte; þan þou schalt eure þe place with þingis þat makiþ cold vpon þe place. & whanne vleus is þeron þan it is no nede, saue drie it

[2 lf. 136]

vp as it is aforseid in þe eure [2]of vlcera. Saue abouteforþ þou schalt leie colde þingis til þe eure be perfitli do / & þere come ony 8

Strengthen the patient's heart.

bifalling þerto,[3] þan alwei ȝeue him medicyns for to comforte þe herte, þat ben forseid in antraee // Sumtyme tofore alle þinges pruna[4] ben good / And formieam þou schalt brenne / fforwhi a cauterie drawiþ out al þe matere þat is corrupt & waastiþ it awei. 12

herpes estiomenes cura

¶ Herpes estiomenus[5] is curid after þe purgaeioun of þe matere, þat þou schalt algatis take hede for to do / if his vertu be strong. & þou schalt algate aboute þe sijknes[6] leie a defensif of bole & 16

Auicen

terra sigillata & oile of ro. & vinegre / þis defensif, as seiþ .A., & I

Apply a medicine which protects the limb from corruption,

haue ofte preued it, þis defendiþ eueri lyme fro eorrupcioun, & þis wole not suffre þat þe matere schal make noon vleeracioun ne no fretyng. & vpon þe place þat is corrupt & deed, þou schalt leie an

and cauterize the slough.

hoot iren, & do awei alle þe partis þat ben corrupt. & þis þou myȝt 20 do with a medieyne corosif, saue an hoot iren is bettere / Whanne þe rotid matere is aweie, þanne make elene þe place wiþ a mundificatif of iuys of ache, & do þerto a litil mirre. & whanne þe place

[7 lf. 136, bk.]

is wel elensid, þan do þerto a medicin [7]for to regendre fleisch, & 24 þanne drie it vp /

Of empostyms of þe heed //

¶ iij° c°

THowȝ we han maad a general tale of enpostyms, neþeles apostym in eueri lyme haþ diuers euris / þerfore I wole make to euery 28

---

outgrowynge in the Skynne, somewhat brode aboute the botome, which when it is scratched causeth as it were the styngynge of an ante, or pismare, and therfore it is also called in greke myrmecia."

[1] *eene* for *sene.*

[3] Lat. si praua superveniunt accidentia. . .

[4] Lat.: Aliquando super omnia adiuvat prunam et formicam urere. The translator misunderstood *pruna* (name of the disease) for *pruna* (plums). Compare page 208, note 2.

[5] Vigo Interpret. "If the substaunce be grosse, and aygre it vlcereth the skynne vnto the fleshe, & is called herpes esthiomenos, that is eatynge or gnawynge herpes."

[6] Lat.: sed ponendo supra locum sanum iuxta *ægritudinem* defensiuum. . .

enpostym a diuers chapiter // ¶ I seie þat in þe skyn of a mannes heed ben diuers enpostyms / If þere be[1] enpostym þerof sutil fleume, ful of fleume as it schal be seid heraftir in þe chapitre of
4 bocium[2] / þis maner sijknes is engendrid bitwene þe skyn & the fleisch, & it is su[m]what holowȝ, & ben clepid testudines for þe lijknes of a beest þat is clepid so, & ben engendrid of hard fleume, & ben, as it were, hard knottis þat were maad fast to þe scolle, as it
8 were hornis / For I seie a man came to me, & he hadde in his heed vij. suche maner þingis in diuers placis, & summe þerof weren as longe & as scharp as it were a gotis horn or þe lenkþe of a mannes þombe, & þei weren greuous to þe man, & I hadde miche wondre
12 þat þer were noon vlcera in þe skyn / Wханne I siȝ wel þat þei hadden her bigynnynge of þe scolle boon, I [4]wolde not entermcte þerwith of þe cure, & I counseilide him þat he schulde putte him into no mannes cure for to cure him, for it þouȝte to me impossible.
16 ¶ þe curis of al þe enpostyms in þe heed, ben þese / If it be of neische materе or of rotid materе, þan þou schalt not take hede for to drie it wiþ mollificatiuis, þouȝ I seide so in enpostyms of fleume in þe general chapitre; for þat myȝte schende[5] þe scolle wiþ
20 liquid mater or corrupt materе. & if þe materе þerof is hard, make it neische wiþ maturatiuis, saue lete þou not it rotie to myche. & or it be rotid to miche, opene it in þe maner of a triangle þus; for þis empostym of þe heed for þe gretnes of þe skyn, and for it is ful
24 of pooris, it mai not wel be clensid, but if þe woundis were so miche þat þe mundificatif myȝte come to þe botme. Wханne þe enpostym is kutt in þe forseid maner, þanne avoide þe mater & fille þe place al wiþ pecis wet in oil of rosis, & sugre molten þeron, &
28 alym & leie þis in þe botme þerof til [6]þe place be wel maad clene. Aftirward wiþ vnguentum apostolorum & oþere þingis þat engendriþ fleisch, cure him as it is forseid in þe cure of vlcers þat ben olde // ¶ Nodus is curid wiþ kuttyng of þe skyn endelongis vpon
32 þe place & drawe him out wiþ alle hise rotis. & if þer leueþ ony rote of him, þan leie þeron þe poudre of affadillorum, or of sum

The Testudines are between the skin and the flesh, and are like hard knots.

[3]reta mirabilis

A man came to Lanfranc, with seven such knots situated on his skull.

[4] lf. 137]

Lanfranc thought the cure impossible.

Treatment of Apostemas on the head.

If the swelling is hard, soften it with maturatives, open it, ◁ and cleanse the wound.

[6] lf. 137, bk.]

Nodus. must be removed by cutting and by the use of a Corrosive.

[1] *be*, above line.

[2] This passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam fiunt ibi apostemata a subtili phlegmate vel ab alia phlegmatis specie ut mucilaginosi et pulmosi et est sicut cancerosi bocii erit dictum.

[3] Vigo Chirurgery transl. Traheron, fol. 5: "The sayde Rhete mirabile is like a nette, and is therfore called Rhete, for thys pannicle is compouned onely wyth Arteries, as Guido hath declared."

[5] *schende.* Lat.: quia sic posset cranium inficere liquida materia.

Water in a child's head is fatal, when within the skull;

when outside the skull, it may be cured, with ointments, and caustics.

This affection occurs owing to the particular position of the child in the mother's womb.

[3 lf. 138]

liȝt' corosif' or vng*uentum* viride, þat' þe rotis þe*r*of' mowe frete awei þe*r*wiþ; & þa*n* rege*n*dre & þa*n* drie it' vp // Watir þat' is gaderid i*n* children hedis,[1] ouþ*er* it' is wiþi*n*ne þe scolle or wiþoute þe scolle / If' it' be wi*th*ynne þe scole, it semeþ to me so pe*r*ilous, 4 þat I wole bitake þe cure to god / If' þe watir be wi*th*outforþ, it' mai be curid wiþ anoi*nting*' of' oile of' camomille & solfre grou*nden* togidere; & þa*n*ne make hi*m* .iij. cauterijs: oo*n* a litil aboue þe forheed, & oon bihinde þe nolle i*n* þe welle[2] þe*r*of', & oon aboue þe 8 hindere celle. Þese cauterijs wiþ þe forseid anoynti*n*gis drieþ & waastiþ þe mate*r*e of' þe watir // ¶ Þe wat*er* þat' comeþ i*n* children hedis, is engendrid i*n* þis mane*r*e / wha*n*ne [3]þe maris of' a wo*m*man is wat*ri*, & þe child þat' lijþ þe*r*ine lijþ foldyng' adou*n*ward his heed 12 vpon hise knees. & þa*n* þe moist*ur*e falliþ adou*n* & fyndiþ a void place i*n* þe childis heed & entriþ þe*r*i*n*ne / & þis passio*n* makiþ a child deed ofte, or he haue ony age for to be holpen /

/ Of enpostyms of þe rootis of a mannes eeris // 16

¶ iiij .c°

An apostema on the roots of the ear occurs sometimes, when the patient is feeble.

It is often fatal.

[4 lf. 138, bk.]

Begin the cure with mitigatives,

apply oil of bitter almonds.

A Postyme þat comeþ i*n* a mannes eere or i*n* þe rotis of' a ma*n*nis eere*n*. & þis comeþ sumtyme in dic cretico, whanne þat' a ma*n*nes kynde is not' so miȝti for to putte out' þe gretnes of' þe mater bi sote ne bi noon oþ*er* avoidi*ng*', & þa*n* kynde worchiþ 20 what' it' mai, & driueþ þe mate*r*e an hiȝ to þe heed & abidiþ i*n* þe rotis of' þe eeren, & þe*r*e it' engendriþ apostym. & i*n* þis place it' is pe*r*ilo*us*, for it' is so nyȝ þe heed & veynes & arterijs & neruys / þis mane*r*e enpostym ofte sleeþ a ma*n* wha*n*ne þe mate*r*e comeþ 24 violently // þe mate*r*e of' þis enpostym, ouþ*er* it' is colre, or blood, or fleume, or malancoli; & alle þe signes herof' ben aforseid / þe curc of' [4]þis enpostym mai not' bigy*n*ne wi*th* repe*r*cussiuis, saue it' mote bigynne wiþ mitigatiuis, & wi*th* þi*n*gis þat' puttiþ out' þe 28 mate*r*e / Waische þe place wiþ a decocciou*n* of' camomille sode*n* þe*r*i*n*ne / & þa*n*ne aftir þat' anoynte þe same place wi*th* oile of' camomille, & þa*n* wete wolle in þe same oile & leie þe*r*vpon, & bi no mane*r* leue þou not' þat þou leie i*n* his eere oile of' bittir almaundis, 32 for it' is a greet' help // ¶ If' þe mater be decp & it' be hard for to drawe it' out', þa*n* it' were good to sette vpon þe place a drie ventose

[1] Hydrocephalus and its cure is treated at some length by most of the ancient physicians. See *Paul. Aegineta*, ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 250. Our author's description is abridged from *Gulielm. de Salic.*, lib. I., cap. 1.

[2] *welle*, Lat. fontinella.

for to helpe to drawe out[t] þe mat*e*re, & aftir resolue þe mat*e*re & leie þ*er*to mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akynge / ¶ If[f] þe mat*e*re wole not[t] be resolued *in* þis maner, saue it[t] bigynneþ to be quitt*ur*e þ*er*on, 4 þ*an* wiþ temp*e*re maturati*ui*s þ*at*[t] be*n* not to hote, make þe enpostym quitture / Wh*an*ne þe place is wel rotid abide þou no brekyng[g] of[f] þe enpostym, saue opene þe place sotilly wiþ an i*n*strume*n*t[t] þ*at* is competent[t] þ*er*to / & þou muste be wel war þ*at* þou touche no veyne, ne 8 noon arterie, ne no senewe, for þ*er*of[f] miȝt come [1]myche p*er*el, for þ*er*e be*n* ne*r*ues *in* þe same place, if[f] þei were kutt[t] or p*r*ickid, þe pacient[t] miȝte lese his vois for eu*er*e / & if[f] þ*er*e were ony veyne kutt[t] þ*er*of[f], þ*er* miȝt[t] come greet[t] p*er*el þ*er*of[f]. & wh*an*ne þe place is 12 opened, þ*an* make þe place clene wiþ mundificati*ui*s, þ*at*[t] schulen be seid *in* þe antidotarie / & wh*an*ne þe place is p*er*fitli clene, þ*an*ne make þe fleisch wexe & do þe cure p*er*fitli / For bi yuel cury*n*g[g] *in* þis place miȝt[t] engendre a festre, þ*at*[t] ofte tyme comeþ of[f] an 16 enpostym /

If pus is formed, open the apostema, taking care not to injure a blood-vessel or a nerve.

[1 lf. 139]

Apostyms of þe necke and of þe þrote /

¶ v°. c°.

APostyms þ*at* ben *in* þis place, or it[t] is wiþoutforþ *in* þe senewis, or in þe braun, or it[t] is wiþi*n*neforþ bi þe place þ*at*[t] 20 a man*n*es mete goiþ dou*n*, or bi þe þrote, or it[t] is bitwixe þe .ij. placis *in* a place þ*at*[t] is clepid ismon.[2] & comou*n*li þe enpostyms þ*at*[t] ben *in* þis place, comeþ of[f] blood, or of[f] fleume, & ful seelden it[t] comeþ of[f] colre, & more latt*er*e of[f] malancoli. þe humours þ*at*[t] be*n* 24 *in* þe cause,[3] þou schalt[t] knowe bi signes aforseid / If[f] þe mat*e*re be *in* þe braun of[f] the necke wiþoutforþ, þ*at* þou miȝt knowe [4]bi schewing[g] of[f] þe enpostym wiþoutforþ. & bi þese signes þou schalt[t] knowe wh*an*ne þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, if[f] þ*er* is no lett*in*g[g] *in* ysophag*us* 28 þ*er*e þe mete schulde go adou*n*, & if[f] wijnd be not[t] stoppid, þ*an* þou miȝt[t] wite wel þ*at* þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, & also bi þe schewing[g] þ*at*[t] is outward / And if[f] þe enpostym is wiþi*n*ne, þ*an* þe pacient[t] schal not[t] swolowe adou*n* his mete, ne drawe wel his breeþ / 32 If[f] þe enpostym þ*at*[t] is wiþi*n*ne swelle greetly, his iȝen wolen swelle þ*er*wiþ, & he schal not[t] suffre his tu*n*ge *in* his mouþ, & he ne schal

Apostemas of the neck or the throat, are either external or internal.

In the former case, an outward swelling will be seen, but the swallowing and breathing will not be affected.

[4 lf. 139, bk.]

If the apostema is internal, swallowing and breathing will be difficult.

[2] *ismon. Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 26, "*Ysinon* est inter ysofagum et tracheam arteriam." Read *Ysmon.* From ἰσθμός, neck, narrow passage. See ἰσμός in *Stephanus Thesaur.* De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 24, Add. 27,944, fol. 49 bk.: "*& it happiþ þat þis euel matere is somtyme al i-gedred wiþinne þe skynne þat departiþ þe weye of þe breeþ from þe weye of þe mete & drynke, þat hatte isophagus & bredeþ squynancye, þat sleeþ in on day.*"

[3] See page 194, note 8.

Some physicians 'break' this apostema with a piece of wood, but that is dangerous.

not' speke, & *þer* wole go out' miche spume of' his mouþ / *þanne* su*mme* lechis *þat'* ben hardi wolen putte a smal tree i*n* his *þ*rote & breke *þe* enpostym, & i*n* *þat'* man*er* *þe* pacient' mai be delyuered; saue *þis* man*er* worching' is not' sure, for i*n* *þis* man*er* manie me*n* 4 dieþ, & *þe* deeþ comeþ not' of' *þe* sijknes, saue it' is defaute i*n* *þe* leche[1] / *þis* man*er* sijknes *þat'* is so hid wi*þ*i*n*neforþ, it' mai be helid wel i*n* *þe* bigy*n*nyng' i*n* *þis* man*er*[2] / If' *þe* enposty*m* be hoot', *þ*ou schalt' lete hi*m* blood i*n* *þe* veine *þat'* is clepid basilica, & if *þe* 8 pa*tient* haþ had *þe* [3]sijknes longe or *þ*ou come to hi*m*, *þan* *þ*ou schalt' lete hi*m* blood i*n* *þe* middil veyne of' *þe* arm *þat'* is clepid mediana, & he schal blede so longe til he swoune almoost', & pr*in*cipali if' he be strong' & ful of' fleisch / In *þe* .ij. dai *þ*ou schalt' 12 lete hi*m* blood i*n* *þe* veines vndir *þe* tu*n*ge / & loke *þat'* *þ*ou do no *þ*i*n*g' aftir her cou*n*seil *þat'* seie*n* *þat'* i*n* *þe* firste bigynnyng' *þ*ou schalt' lete hi*m* blood i*n* veines vndir *þe* tu*n*ge, & afte*r* *þat'* in *þe* heed veine or i*n* su*m* o*þe*re place. For i*n* *þis* man*er*e leti*n*g' blood, 16 if' his bodi were replet', he mi3t' li3tli be achekid// ¶ Wh*an*ne *þ*ou hast' lete him blood as it' is aforseid, *þa*n make hi*m* a gargarisme wi*þ* a decocciou*n* of' ro., sumac,[4] balaustiar*um*, lentiu*m*, & galla-r*um* wi*þ* *þe* which be diste*mper*id *þer*wi*þ* diameron,[5] or tordis of' 20 a sparow, or of' an hen, or *þe* tord of' an hou*n*d *þat'* eti*þ* manie boonys & noon o*þer* mete,[6] or a childis tord dried while it' is souk-yng'. ¶ Also take an hou*n*dis tord *þat'* eti*þ* oonly boonis & of' he*n*nis, satureye[7] an*a*, & make *þer*of' poudre & diste*mper*e it' wi*þ* 24 wat*er* & hony, & make *þer*of' a gargarisme, & he schal drinke wat*er* of' barley, & he schal no *þ*i*n*g' ete, saue a *þ*i*n*g' m*aa*d of' wheete-[8]bran i*n* *þis* maner[9] / Take newe bran of' whete & caste *þer*on hoot' wat*er* & hele it' & lete it' sto*n*de so an hour, & *þa*nne gri*n*de it' i*n* a mort*er* 28 wi*þ* a pestel & cole it', & *þa*nne se*þe* it' wi*þ* a litil salt' & 3eue it' *þe*

First, bleed the patient either from the Vena [3 lf. 140]

Basilica or Mediana,

on the next day from a vein under the tongue,

then give a gargarisme, mixed with the excrements of a sparrow, hen, dog, or a child.

The patient shall drink barley-water [8 lf. 140, bk.]

℞

and eat a preparation of wheat-bran.

[1] *it is defaute in þe leche*, Lat. medico imputatur.

[2] Much of our author's treatment is borrowed from *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. 19, Cap. 11, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 188.

[4] *sumac*, Fr. Sumac; Arab. Summāq. "*Sumach* or *Sumack*, a kind of rank-smelling Shrub that bears a black Berry, made use of by Curriers to dress their Leather." Phillips.

[5] *diameron*, διαμώρων. *Vigo* Interpretation, "*Diamoron*, a confection made of mulberries."

[6] By this kind of food the *album græcum*, the white dung of a dog is produced.

[7] *satureye*, savory. Wr. Wül. 609, 30 (xv), sauereye.

[9] Lat.: nihilque comedat nisi candarusium factum de furfure in hunc modum. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Candaros vel candarusium—est ordeum cui non est cortex," from χόνδρος, grain, groat.

pacient / & do þeron penidis.[1] & if he mai not swolowe it adoun, þanne sette a litil ventuse in þe welle of his necke[2] with fier & þan he schal swolowe, & anoynte al his necke tofore & bihinde wiþ oile of camomille. & vpon þe anoyntyng leie wolle vnwaischen,[3] & make a sutil plastre of a nest of irundinis, & is good for þe squinacie,[4] & is maad in þis maner / Take a nest of irundinis & boile it longe in watir, & þanne cole it þoruȝ a seue þat þe grete gobetis moun be cast awei / þan take þe rotis of lilie & seþe hem in oþer water & rotis of bismalue, & þe rote of brionie & leues of malue & bismalue, & violet, & peritorie.[5] & wханne þei ben boilid, grinde hem wel, & medle hem wiþ water of irundinum þat is forseid, & do þerto leucyne & mele of fenigreci, & þan do þerto oile or grese, & make herof an enplastre / þis enplastre is good to resolue enpostym & make it quitture, wheþer [6]it be wiþinne or wiþoute, & make it abrood upon a clooþ & leie it vpon hoot. & anointing is good wiþ oile of camomille medlid wiþ butter þat it be oold & not salt, & after þe anoyntyng leie þervpon wolle vnwaische // ¶ [7]If þe enpostym be wiþinne, it is good þat me leie þerto no repercussiuis, saue vse gargarismis maad in þis manere / ℞, ficus siccas, semen malue, semen lini, seþe þese in water & þan cole hem, & make þerof a gargarisme; or water of figis medlid wiþ butter, þat makiþ maturatif euerí maner enpostym.

Anoint his neck,

and apply a plaster made from a swallow's nest.

℞

Irundines *id est* swalowes.

How to prepare this plaster.

[6 lf. 141]

In case of an inward apostema use a gargle.

℞

[1] *penidis*, Vigo Interpr. "*Penidie* are made of the Apothecaries wyth suggre wrethen lyke ropes." Fr. penide; Lat. penidium, from πενίον: spool on which the woof is wound.—Compare *diapenidion* in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, 1886, II. p. 77, note.

[2] MS. *tofore* inserted but deleted.

[3] *wolle vnwaischen, vn*, in margin. Lat. lana succida. Lewis, *Latin Dict.*, gives a reference from *App. Apologia:* recens lana tonsa succida appellata est.

[4] *squinacie*, Lat. squinatia, quinsy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 357, note.

[5] *peritorie*, Lat. parietaria; wall-pellitory.

[7] The passage from lf. 141, l. 5 till lf. 141, bk., l. 8 (p. 220, l. 15), is repeated in lf. 143, with some alterations. The corresponding words from the Latin are quoted to show the independent character of the two versions. l. 18, 19. If þe — — manere] It is good if þe enpostym be wiþinne or þe more partie be withynne, & if it mai not be resolued ne do awei wiþ repercussiuis, þan it is good to vse gargarisms, þat ben maturatifs, maad in þis maner. (*Bonum est etiam si apostema fuerit interius, aut maior eius pars, cum tempus prolongatur quod non reperentitur nec resoluitur: vti maturatiuis gargarismatibus ut hoc.*) 20, 21. seþe — — cole hem] putte hem in water & seþe hem in water (*eoque in aqua*). 21. or] & medle þerwiþ. 21, 22. medled wiþ butter] & butter & wijn. þat makiþ — — enpostym] þis wole make enpostym þat is withynne in þe þrote maturatif (*maturat omne intrinsecum apostema siue in gutture siue in stomacho siue in intestinis fuerit generatum*).

If this apostema shows itself outwardly, it must be carefully opened and cleansed.

Wh*an*ne þe enpostym is rotid; þat þou schalt knowe bi þe aswag*ing* of þe akynge, & if þe enpostym schewe wiþoutforþ, þ*an*ne opene it wiþ an instrument, & be war þ*a*t þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine, ne noon arterie. & wh*an*ne it is opened, make it clene 4 wiþ mundificat*iu*is þat schule*n* be seid i*n* þe antidotarie / And if þe enpostym be wiþi*n*neforþ, þ*an* þou schalt not breke it wiþ þis gargarisme þat is aforseid, saue þou schalt make a garg*arism* þat haly vside / Take galle, acacie, psidiar*um*, balaust*ie*, alum*in*is 8 iamini[1] & seþe he*m* i*n* wat*er* & cole it & make [2]þ*er*of a garg*arism*, for þis garg*arism* wole breke enpostym / Wh*an*ne þe enpostym is broke, þ*an* þou schalt bringe out þe mater wiþ hoot wat*er*, & dissolue þ*er*i*n*ne butt*er* & oile of viol*ets*, & make þ*er*of a garg*arism*, & 12 lete hi*m* vse þis garg*arism* til al þe mat*er*e be drawe out, & þ*an* aft*er* þat make hi*m* a garg*arism* of liquiricie,[3] yreos & tamarisci / If þe mat*er*e be coold, þ*an* þou muste vse hott*er*e garg*arism*, & þ*an* þou muste vse mundificat*iu*is þat p*er* be þ*er*i*n*ne mirre, sarcocolle,[4] 16 þat schulen be seid i*n* þe antidotarie i*n* þe chap*iter* of mundificat*iu*is. ¶ It fallip sumtyme þat for reume þat fallip adou*n* of a ma*n*nis heed, þ*er* wexiþ i*n* þe rote of þe tu*n*ge a man*er* rou*n*d þi*ng* in þe gretnes of an almaunde, & lettiþ a man þat he mai not wel 20 drawe his breeþ ne ete his mete / & i*n* þis man*er* þou schalt cure hi*m* as it is forseid wiþ þi*n*gis þat voidiþ þe mat*er*e & wiþ resoluynge þi*n*gis. ¶ I wole sette i*n* þis place a cure þat bifel i*n* þe citee of mediolane*nsis* of a ladi þat was .L. wynt*er* oold, & hadde a squi- 24 nacie of fleume þat occupiede al hir necke tofore wiþi*n*ne & wiþoute,

Ranula vndr the toung

an apostema that affects the breathing and swallowing.

A Lady had an internal and external swelling on her neck,

[2 lf. 141, bk.]

1, 2. þe aswaging] cesi*ng*. and if] if. 2. schewe] be seen. 3, 4. be — — arterie] be wel war of veynes & arterijs. 4. whanne it is opened] þ*an*. 5. and] *om*. 6, 8. wiþi*n*neforþ — — galle] al wiþi*n*ne & wole not breke wiþ þe garg*arism* þat is aforseid of butt*er* & figis & wat*er* & wijn, þ*an* þou schalt breke hi*m* wiþ a medicyn þat haly þe abbot vside as wiþ a garg*arism* of gallar*um*. (*Si fuerit intra, nec rumpatur: cum gargarismate prædicto de butyro, ficuum aqua et vino rumpatur cum ingenio subtili Haly ab. scilicet cum gargarismate stypticorum sicut decoctionis gallarum.*) 9. & seþe — — þerof a gargarism] *om*. 10. wole breke] brekiþ þe. 11. þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater] drawe out þe quitture. 11, 12. & — butter] & a litil butt*er* þerinne. 12. & make þ*er*of] & herof he schal make. 12, 13. & lete him vse þis gargarism] *om*. mat*er*e be drawe out & þan] quitture be draw*en* awei aft*er* þat. 14. of liquorice — tamarisci] wiþ liquoris & thamarisci soden in watir.

[1] *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 1, "*Alumen iamem, A. scissum, Alimen de pluma*, idem."—*Matth. Sylv.* "Iamen est prouincia Iameni uel Aliamen."

[3] *liquiricie*, lycoryce, *Pr. Parv.*, p. 303. See *lyquoris* in 2nd version.

[4] *Sarcocolla* "Is the Gumme or liquore of a tree growyng in Persia." *Halle. Table*, p. 109.

[1]saue wiþoutforþ þe swelling was moost, & þe womman miȝte not [1 lf. 142]
speke, ne swolowe in no mete. & þis womman was vndir þe curc of she could neither speak nor eat,
a ȝong man þat was my scoler, and he cowde not wel fare þerwiþ,
4 & þo he was in dispeir of hir lijf, I was sent after & foond hir in
wickide staat,[2] for sche eet no mete in manye daies tofore, & sche nor sleep for fear of choking.
durste not slepe for drede, lest sche schulde be achekid. Þan I
tastide hir pous, & it was wondir feble, & I tastide þe place of þe
8 enpostym, & I knewe wel þat sche schulde be raþere achekid þan
þe enpostym wolde breke wiþoute or withynne, for þe matere was
so greet / & þan I took a rasour, & lokide where þe matere was Lanfranc opened the apostema with a razor, where it was most ripe.
moost gaderid for to engendre quitture, & it was moost able vndir
12 þe chyn, & I felide þe place wiþ myn hond & tastide it aboute þat
I miȝte be war of nerues & arterijs, & þere I made a wounde, &
þere I drowe out matere þat was corrupt, & it was foul stynkynge
matere, & al miȝte I not avoide anoon. & þo þe pacient haddc The patient could breathe,
16 bettere hir breeþ, & hir pous was confortid, [3]for þe lungis miȝte take [3 lf. 142, bk.]
yn eir, & þerwiþ þe herte was comfortid, & þan I ȝaf hir broþ, & but her food went through the open wound;
þat ȝede out þoruȝ þe wounde þe moost part. Þo I studiede how
I miȝte best do, & I lete make a pipe of siluir, and putte it in at Lanfranc introduced a silver tube,
20 hir mouþ & passide forþere þan þe wounde was, þat it miȝte fulfille
þe place of þe þrote. & þan I leide al aboute hir necke mundificatiuis & maturatiuis for to quitture þe toþer deel of þe matere, & and the gangrenous parts were removed by suppuration.
so I kepte it til þer come out of þe wounde a greet gobet of
24 viscous matere & stynkyng, & was schape as it were a greet gutt.
& þerinne þe firste matere was engendrid, & whanne þis was oute,
þe stynking wente awei þerwiþ, & þe womman bigan to be stronger,
& whanne þe wounde was maad clene I driede it vp & soudide it;
28 & in þis maner þe pacient was maad hool. ¶ Whanne þou fyndist When cold matter suppurates, open the apostema, before it breaks by itself.
coold matere rotid in þe forseid placis, þou schalt not abide til þe
enpostym breke him-silf, saue þou schalt opene it as it is aforseid /
& if it be not rotid, þan make it more maturatif, & opene it as it
32 is aforseid / And þis þou muste wite þat þou miȝte [4]not abide to [4 lf. 143]
longe wiþ þe openyng: for þe herte & þe spiritual lymes ne mowe
not longe endure wiþouten eir.

[2] *in wickide staat*, in statu pessimo.

/ Of enpostym of subcilio /[1]

¶ vj°. c°. If there is a hot apostema in the arm-pit, bleed from the Vena nigra or basilica.

If the apostema is cold, use mild medicines,

THis maner of enpostym haþ no nede of repercussiuis for causis þat ben aforseid, saue it is[2] greet nede þat he be avoidid wel wiþ purgaciouns / And if þe enpostym be hoot, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid vena nigra,[3] or in þe veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe arm. & if þe matere be coold, þan avoide þe matere wiþ medicyns maad of turbit or sum oper medicyn þat fallip perfore. & as myche as þou miȝt þou schalt take perto wiþ medicyns þat hane not to greet drawyng / For if þou leiest perto þingis þat ben to strong drawing, þan þe enpostym wole wexe þe more / perfore þou schalt anoynte him wiþ oile of camomille, & leie pervpon wolle vnwaischen. & his dieting schal be sotil. & if

and open it, when it is ripe.

[4 lf. 144]

þis suffise not, þan leie vpon a maturatif / & wh*an*ne it is rotid þou schalt opene [4]it, & principali if it be of coold matere. Saue if[5] þere be glandule peron, as it fallip ofte, & it be not ouir al rotid, as in oon place hard anoþir place neische, þan þou schalt hane þis in certein, þat þis passioun schal be clepid bubo, & þe cure perof is hard.[6] For if þou drawist out þe matere þat is neische,[7] þe matere þat is hard is yuel to defie. & ofte per comeþ perof sclirosis or a festre, & it wole make a man yuel dispcsid & feuerous, as G. seiþ.[8] & perfore aswage þe akynge & þan make rotyng wiþ maturatiuis; for þe matere þat is rotid wole helpe to rotie þe matere þat is hard. & wh*an*ne it is al neische þanne opene it / If it so be þat it breke bi it-silf or it be ful rotid, þan do perto mundificatiuis, & vpon þe place þat is hard leie maturatiuis, & kepe wel þe place þat is open fro festrynge. Mundificatiuis & maturatiuis þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie pleynlier.

bubo. is difficult to heal.

Galion.

[1] Lat.: De apostemate sub titillico, id est sub ascellis. The translator made *subcilio* out of *sub ascellis; titillicum*, arm-pit, from *titillo*, tickle.

[2] *is*, above line.

[3] Matth. Sylv.: "Nigra uena, purpurea, media communis." V. media = V. mediana.

[5] *saue if*, Lat. hoc saluo, si esset . . .

[6] Lat.: tunc nullam habes viam tutam, quum tunc est bubo, cuius cura est difficilis. [7] MS. inserts &.

[8] Lat.: "totum corpus in mala tenet dispositione febris et doloris; tamquam qui ad suam salutem, si nisi unam habuerit viam, ut dicit Galienus velit nolit, per eam, etsi mala fuerit, pertransibit." A more accurate translation of this passage is given in Sl. 2463 (xv. cent.) in a treatise on Surgery compiled from various authors, in which several chapters of Lanfranc's work are embodied. Ib. fol. 110 b.: "*And as Galyene seith, he that hath but oone weye to his hele allthouȝe þat weye be nat good, he muste holde hit wille he nylle he.*"

An enpostyme of þe helpers /[1]

THis enpostym if' it' be hoot', þa*n* lete hi*m* blood i*n* þe arm aforȝens, & not' i*n* þe same side i*n* þe veyne þat' is clepid
4 basilica, & þa*n* þou muste surely leie þe*r*to repe*r*cussi*u*is,[2] & if' repe*r*cussiuis suffisen not', þa*n* resolue it' & leie maturatiuis þe*r*to, & þa*n* abide til it' be pe*r*fitli[3] quitturid, but' if' þe mate*r*e be so violent' þat' it' were i*n* poynt[4] to schende þe lyme, þa*n* opene it' & be wel
8 war of' the braun þat' is i*n* þat' place / Manie me*n* þat' ben vnkunnyng' & supposen þat' place to be fer fro ony noble lyme,[5] makiþ þe*r*on a deep kuttyng', & supposiþ to haue gret' worschip þe*r*of'; & manie idiotis wole*n* pr*e*ise hem[6] wel þe*r*fore. & þa*n* þe lacertis þe*r*of'
12 be*n* hurt'; & wha*n*ne þe lacertis be*n* soudid aȝe*n*, þan þe lyme þat' it' seruede fore schal be contract', wherfore þe ma*n*nes arm mai be lost' i*n* su*m* pa*r*tie or i*n* al / þe*r*fore wha*n*ne þou wolt' kutte þis enpostym, þou schalt' but' kutte abouteforþ i*n* þe skyn, & not' to depe
16 bi no mane*r* wei for drede of' þe braun, & of' senewis, & of' veynes & arterijs, & wha*n*ne þe place is opened, þa*n* leie þe*r*to mundificati*u*is. If' þe openyng' be nyȝ þe elbowe, & þouȝ þe enpostym be moost' quitturid, þe*r*e be wel war þat' þou opene not' þe enpostym
20 aboue þe elbowe .iij. fyngris brede, neiþe*r* [7] wiþi*n*ne ne wiþoute. & also nyȝ þe poy*n*t' of' þe elbowe it' is pe*r*ilous, for it' is gret' hap if' it' be eue*r*e soudid. & þouȝ it' be soudid, þe mouynge of' his arme schal be lost'. If' þe*r* falle ony enpostym i*n* þis place, & it' come of'
24 gret' mate*r*e so þat' his bodi be replet', þa*n* he mote haue gret' avoidyng' wiþ laxatiuis, & þa*n* resolue þe mate*r*e, and worche as it' is aforseid i*n* þe gene*r*al chapi*t*e*r*. I*n* þe same mane*r* þou schalt' cure þe enpostym of' his armis & of' hise hondis.

28 ¶ Panaricium[8] is an enpostym þat' is i*n* þe heed of' a ma*n*nes fyngir aboute þe nail / & is swiþe hoot', & greuous, & reed, & ful of' fier, & su*m*tyme it' makiþ a man to haue þe feue*r*e, & sumtyme it' fretiþ awei al þe poynt' of' a ma*n*nes fyngir / þe firste cure of' þis
32 enpostym is, þat' first' þou schalt' lete hi*m* blood, so þat' alle þi*n*gis

¶ vijº. cº/ In case of an apostema on the arm, bleed the Basilic Vein, [2 lf. 144, bk.]

and open the apostema when it is ripe.

Unskillful physicians, in cutting too deep, hurt the muscles, and so the patient may lose his arm.

[7 lf. 145]

panaricium, an apostema of the fingers, near the nails.

Treatment: First bleed the patient,

[1] Lat. De apostematibus adiutorii. [3] *curid*, erased.

[4] *in poynt*, Lat.: nisi materia esset adeo violenta quod esset ad corruptionem membri parata. "*And in such poynt the body bileueth.*" Wright, *Popular Treatise*, p. 140.—"*Engeloud & normandie . in god point he broȝte.*" *Rob. of Gloue.*, 8868. Compare Fr. embonpoint. [5] MS. inserts &.

[6] *silf*, erased. Lat.: & inde laudantur ab aliquibus idiotis.

[8] Vigo Interpret.: "Panaritium is an aposteme about the rootes of the nayles, and it is called in Greke Paronichia; in latyn reduuia." See Dufr. s. v. redubiæ.

if his condition allows, then apply a plaster, compresses or an ointment.

falle þ*er*fore as elde & stre*n*kþe & custu*m*. & þa*n* þou schalt' make hi*m* an enplastre of' vinegre & opiu*m*, & vpon þe plastre þou schalt' leie a ly*n*nen cloo*þ* wet i*n* a decocciou*n* of' psillij, or anoynte it' wiþ an oynement' þa*t*' is coold. & in[1] al maner þou schalt' [2]take hede to do awei þe greet' hete & saue his fyngir fro corrupciou*n* / If' þe aki*n*ge & þe bre*n*nynge go not' awei i*n* þis mane*r*, & it' be i*n* wei for to quitture,[3] þa*n* leie þ*er*vpon scabiose grounden wiþ grese & do þe cure þ*er*to, as þou schalt' fynde in þe cure of' antrax & carbunculis. & enpostyms þa*t*' comeþ i*n* ioynctis þou schalt' fy*n*de i*n* her p*ro*pre place of' akynge of' ioy*n*ctes /

[[2] lf. 145, bk.]

Apostym wiþoutforþ aboute þe spa*u*dis and þe gibbositees[4] //

¶ viij°. c°. If there is an apostema on the shoulders, purge the patient, and open it when it is ripe.

A Postym þa*t*' comeþ aboute the spa*u*dlis wiþoutforþ, leie þou noo*n* repe*r*cussif' þ*er*to, saue it' is bett*er* to drawe þe mat*er*e outward. First' þou schalt' p*ur*ge hi*m*, for it' is greet' nede i*n* þis place, & þa*n* þou schalt' leie þ*er*to resoluinge þi*n*gis & maturatiuis; & wh*an*ne þe enpostym is rotid þou schalt' not' abide, to it' breke it'-silf',[5] & p*ri*ncipali i*n* a coold cause, saue þou schalt' opene þe enpostym & drawe out þe quitture, & þan þou schalt' leie þerto mundificatiuis, & fulfille þe cure as it' is aforseid / In þis place þou schalt' take [6]hede þa*t*' ofte tyme wh*an*ne þe enpostym is quitturid & is not' opened wiþoutforþ, þa*n* it' brekiþ i*n*ward bitwene þe .ij. ribbis, & wh*an*ne it' is to-broke, þe paci*en*t' feliþ but' litil greuau*n*ce þerof', & þan þe quitture leueþ wiþi*n*ne, & i*n* long' tyme herof' comeþ a festre. þ*er*fore þou schalt' no*t*' abide til it' breke it'-silf' outward, saue þou schalt' opene it' wh*an*ne it' is quitturid, & þa*n* leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis & cure it' vp, as it' is aforseid i*n* o*þ*e*re* enpostyms /

[[6] lf. 146] If a ripe apostema breaks by itself, a fistula will arise.

Treat this fistula with mundificatives by means of a syringe, after having widened the hole of the fistula by a tent.

¶ If' it' so be þa*t*' þe*re* engendre a festre þe*r*on, or it' be maad clene & entre i*n*ward, þa*n* he mote vse waischingis þa*t*' be*n* mu*n*dificatif', & caste it' in wiþ an instrument' m*aa*d in þe maner of' a clisterie. & if' þe hole þ*er*of' be streit' wiþoutforþ, þa*n* þou schalt' putt' yn a tente of' þe piþ of' eldre, or of' a sponge, or of' malu*m* terre,[7] or

[1] *in*, above line.

[3] *in wei for to quitture*, Lat. in via maturationis.

[4] *Gibbositas*, tumour. *Dufr. Gloss.*—"Gibbosity, a bunching or standing out of any part, especially of the Back."—Phillips.

[5] Lat.: non expecta crepationem per se.

[7] "*Malum terre*, ciclamen, panis porcinus id. g^e^ dilnote and erthenote." *Alphita*, p. 107. mal. t. = galluc. Wr. Wü., 133. 20.

brionie, or gencian, & putte *in*to þe hole of' þe festre. & þis wole make þe hole of' þe festre to wexe more wide þan it' was, þ*a*t' þe ende of' þe instrument' mowe be putt' þ*a*t' schal be schape in þe
4 maner of' [1]a clisterie. & þanne þou schalt' seþe hony & mirre i*n* watir, so þ*a*t' þ*er* be .x. p*ar*tis of' wat*er*, & of' hony .ij. p*ar*tis, & of' mirre .ij. p*ar*tis, & if' þ*o*u doist' þ*er*to ysope & sauge, it' wole be þe bettir / Sumtyme it' is good for to do wijn *in* þe stide of' watir, &
8 principali if' þe place be wiþouten ony hete. & þis decoccio*un* þou schalt' caste i*n*to þe festre wiþ an instrument' as it' is aforseid, & make þ*a*t' þe pacient' turne hidir & þidir, vpward & dou*n*ward, þ*a*t' it' mowe waische wel þe place þ*e*re þe quitture is. & þ*a*n make þe
12 pa*tient* turne & ligge vpon þe hole of' þe festre, & make hi*m* cowȝe þ*a*t' al þe quitture mai goon out' wiþ þe decoccio*un*. & wh*a*nne it' is al oute, þ*a*n þou schalt' make hi*m* a tent' & anoynte it' *in* oile þ*a*t' þe wou*n*de close no*t*' tegidere. & þ*us* þou schalt' worche, til þ*o*u se þe
16 waisching' come out' of' þe festre w*ith*oute ony quitture. & wh*a*nne þe festre is al clene, þ*a*n þou schalt' fulfille þe cure w*ith* oynementis þ*a*t' wolen regendre fleisch & fulfille þe cure as it' is aforseid / If' it' so be þ*a*t' þe wei of' þe festre þ*a*t' goiþ in & out' [2]be bicome hard &
20 callous so þ*a*t' it' be a verri festre, þ*a*n þou muste hete an hoot' yren þ*a*t' it' be as greet' as þe hole of' þe festre & bre*n*ne al þe hardnes þ*er*of', & aftirward make þe cruste falle awei w*ith* buttir & o*pe*re þi*n*gis, & þ*a*nne make it' clene, & þ*a*n drie it' & soude it'.

[1 lf. 146, bk.]

Keep the wound dilated until it is perfectly cleansed.

When the passage of [2 lf. 147] the fistula is callous, use the hot iron.

24 ¶ Also it' bifalliþ þ*a*t' children han grete bocchis *in* her brest', & þ*a*t' come*þ* of' cowȝinge þ*a*t' puttiþ out' þe mat*er*e, & also it' come*þ* of' greet' wynd þ*a*t' puttiþ out' þe mat*er*e / þe cure herof' in þe firste bigynnyng' is i*n* þis man*er* for to aswage cowȝing', as almaundis
28 grou*n*den wiþ penidis & temp*er*id w*ith* a decoccio*un* of' fenel, & þis he schal vse / Also take swete almaundis .ij. p*ar*tis, dragag*anti*,[4] semen citonior*um*[5] an*a*, oon p*ar*ti, Iulip q*uod* sufficit'. & make herof' a souping' medicyn,[6] þ*a*t' it' be as þicke as hony. & wh*a*nne
32 þe cowȝinge is aswagid, þ*a*n make hi*m* a baþ wiþ rotis of altea, &

Mitigatio[3] Tussis

Children have apostemas in their chest in consequence of coughing and of wind in their body. Allay the cough, and apply a lotion.

[3] MS. *Metegacho.*

[4] Vigo Interpr.: "*Dragagantum.* Tragaca*n*tha is a brode, & a woddy rote appearyng about the earth, wher-oute manye lowe braunches sprynge, spreading the*m*selues al about. There cleaueth to thys rote, a gu*m*my liquour of a bright colour, & somwhat swete in tast, which they cal commenly dragagantum."

[5] *citonium* = Cotonea malus, Cydonea, "Quince." Wr. Wü., 13, 19. "*Citonium*, goodaepel."

[6] *a souping medicyn*, Lat. medicina sorbilis.

leues of' malue, & fenigrec, & lyne seed soden *in* watir, & þis schal be cast' vpon þe enpostym wiþ a vessel holden an hiȝe þe*re* from / [1 lf. 147, bk.] þ*an*ne aftirward þou schalt' [1]dissolue þe mat*ere* & make it' neische w*ith* medycyns þat' ben forseid *in* hard enpostyms, & þan cure it' vp 4 as it' is aforseid *in* þe enpostyms of' wijnd. ¶ A greet' boch þat' comeþ of' þe passiou*n* of' þe riggeboon, whan*ne* þei ben of' þe ioynct', is incurable whanne it' is co*n*fermed /

Of an enpostym apperi*n*ge i*n* þe mouþ of þe stom*ac* / 8

¶ ix° c° If there is an Apostema at the stomach, the liver, or the spleen, strengthen the affected part,

WHanne þe*re* schewiþ an enposty*m* i*n* þe mouþ of' þe stomac & aboute þe regiou*n* of' þe lyuer & of' þe splene: þouȝ su*m*men wollen take hede to þe contrarie, bi my general rule[2] it' is good & p*ro*fitable to comforte þe place wiþ oile of' mast*ic*, & oile of' 12 spica, & oile of' lilie, & wiþ cold enplastris of' rosis, & of' absinth*io*, squinanto, cip*er*o, citonijs wiþ mele of' barli & o þe*re* þi*n*gis. & þou schalt' be wel war of' rep*er*cussiuis, wh*an*ne þe enpostym is nyȝ ony p*ri*ncipal lyme, saue þou schalt' leie þe*r*to resoluy*n*g' & maturatif' 16 þi*n*gis. & loke þat' þei be not' medlid wiþ no þi*n*gis þat' be*n* rep*er*cussif'; for if' þou leidist' rep*er*cussiuis vpon þe stomak, or [3]þe lyuere, or þe splene, þei wolde be e*n*feblid þe*r*wiþ, & to al þe accio*un* of' þe bodi wolde be enpeirid; for þese lymes seruеþ principaly for 20 to norische al þe bodi / þerfore þou schalt' not' vse *in* þis caas pure maturatiuis, ne pure rep*er*cussiuis, ne colde þi*n*gis / What' schalt' þou do *in* þis caas? Þou schalt' avoide þe mat*ere*, & þou schalt' comforte þe place w*ith* stiptikis, & temp*er*e attractiuis, & do awei þe 24 mat*ere*. & if' þou miȝt' not', þa*n* resolue þe mat*ere*, for it' is greet' perel[4] of' þis enpostym, for it' wole liȝtli turne *in* to sclirosym, & þa*n* it' wole be hard to resolue, & aftirward it' wole be cause of' þe dropesie / Þerfore if' þou seest'[5] þat' þe enposty*m* bicome hard, þa*n* 28 þou muste leie þe*r*to mollificatiuis & wiþ comfortatiuis. & þou muste be *in* þis caas ful wijs. & wh*an*ne þe enposty*m* is maturid, þa*n* opene it' as it' is aforseid, & leie þe*r*to mundificatiuis & cure vp þe enpostym as it' is aforseid. 32

This apostema easily gets indurated, and causes dropsy.

apply resolving medicines, but beware of repellents.

[3 lf. 148]

// Of an enposty*m* þat comeþ i*n* iguine .*id est* þe gryndis

¶ x. c°/ [6 lf. 148, bk.]

APostym comeþ ofte*n* time i*n* iguine for vlcera of' þe ȝerde & of' þe feet', for [6]þe place is discendi*n*g' adou*n* of' humours to þat' 36

[2] *rule*, above line. [4] *perel*, above line. [5] *seest*, in margin.

place,[1] & þa*n* it' is not' so greet' drede[2] þe*r*of'.[3] Saf' if' his bodi be ful of' wickid humours, þa*n* it' is greet' drede þe*r*of' / þis mate*r*e þou muste resolue i*n* þis maner. Take oile of' camomille & anointe þe*r*-
4 wiþ þe enpostym, & leie þe*r*vpon wolle vnwaische, & if' it' resolue not' i*n* þis maner, þa*n* leie þe*r*to maturatiuis, as it' is aforseide. ¶ If' þe mate*r*e be hoot', þa*n* lete hi*m* blood i*n* þe veyne þat' is clepid sophena. & þou schalt' sotille[4] his dieting', & leie þe*r*to resoluyng'
8 þi*n*gis þat' ben not' to strong', & þat' þei drawe not' to harde. & wha*n*ne þe cours of' humours ceessiþ, þa*n* leie þerto stronge resoluyng' þi*n*gis. & i*n* þis caas þis is good þe*r*fore: lie of' askis & of' vryne, & wete þeri*n*ne stupis & leie vpon þe enpostym, for þis
12 makiþ maturatif' & waastiþ it' sotilly & drieþ it' / If' þou myȝt not' resolue it', þa*n* leie þe*r*to maturatiuis & opene it', & þa*n* leie þe*r*to mu*n*dificatiuis & hele it vp as it' is aforseid /

Apostemas in the groins are caused by ulcers of the yard or the feet.

℞

Apply resolving medicines; if the matter is hot, bleed from the Vena Saphina.

℞

Of an enpostym of þe hau*n*che & of þe cox.

16 IN þis place ofte tyme engendriþ an enpostym, & þou schalt' fynde [5] þe*r*e þe curis þe*r*of' i*n* þe chapitre of' dolo*ur* of' ioynctis; saue if' þe enpostym be wi*th*out' þe haunche in þe hipe, or i*n* þe leg', or i*n* þe foot', þa*n* þou schalt' do þe*r*to þe same cure þat' is aforseid
20 i*n* þe enpostyms of' þe arm. Saf' herof' þou schalt' take kepe, þat' oftetymes an enpostym gaderiþ i*n* a ma*n*nes hipe al wiþi*n*ne i*n* þe depnes of' it', þat' a leche schal not' knowe it', but' if' he be þe more wijs / þe*r*for ypo[cras] seiþ: i*n* placis þe*r*e enpostym is, and þe quit-
24 ture schewe not' out', it' is pe*r*ilo*us* / þe*r*for þou muste taste it' wiþ þi fyngris, & loke where it' is moost' maturid, & opene it', and drawe out' þe quitture, þa*n* leie þerto mundificatiuis, & þa*n* fulfille þe cure as it' is aforseid /

¶ xj. c°.

[5 lf. 149]

Apostema on the legs are treated like those on the arms.

A deep apostema in the hip must be opened.

ypoc*ra*s.

[1] Lat.: Sæpe prouenit apostema in inguine propter vlcera virgæ et pedum: propterea quod locus est descensus humorum ad illa loca. The translator mistook "descensus" sb. for descensus part.

[2] *drede*, above line.

[3] Compare Guiliel. de Salic. I. 42. Sl. 277, fol. 5 b.: "*This seeknesse is cleped bubo or dragunceil,*[a] *or apostemе of þe grynde, & it is maad as oftest of eold matere whiche is cast out of þe lyuere to þoo places, & oþerwhile it is hoot. It is maad also, when a man is seek in his ȝerde for filþehede of wommen or of oþer cause.*"

[4] *sotille*, Lat. attenuare. O.Fr. soutilier. Compare *sotilen* with the abstract meaning, "argue subtly."—*Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Gloss.

[a] Dufr. *Gloss.*: "Dracunculus, ulceris vel cancri species."

Apostym of þe ȝerde & ballokis /

xij. c°.

RIȝt' as enpostyms comeþ in o*þe*re lymes, riȝt' so þei come*n* i*n* a mannes ȝerde & i*n* hise ballokis, of' humo*ur*s hoot' or cold, as bi þese signes þou miȝt knowe. Sumtyme a ma*n*nes ȝerde swelliþ 4 wi*th* wy*n*d, þ*at* þou miȝt' knowe bi enpostyms of' wy*n*d þ*at*' be*n* aforseid. & it' falliþ ofte to ȝo*n*ge children,[1] & also þis enpostym þou miȝt' knowe [2]i*n* þis maner, if' þe place be hard & heuy & þ*er* is no difference bitwixe þe colo*ur* he*r*of & of' þ*at*' o*þe*r p*ar*tic of' his 8 bodi.

A windy apostema of the yard occurs frequently with children.

[2 lf. 149, bk.]

¶ In an hoot' enpostym of' þe ȝerde or of þe ballokis, þou schalt lete hi*m* blood i*n* a veyne þ*at*' is clepid basilica in þe same side, & i*n* þe .ij. dai lete hi*m* blood in þe sophene / Also þou schalt' forbede 12 hi*m* wijn & fleisch & al mane*r* swete metis þ*at*' engendriþ blood or colre. Þa*n* þou schalt' leie þ*er*to medecyns to putt' awei þe mater, þ*at*' ben maad i*n* þis maner. R7, cortices *gr*anator*um*, rosas siccas, & lentes & seþe he*m* i*n* wat*er* til þei dissolue, & þa*n* grinde he*m* i*n* 16 a mort*er* wiþ oile of' ro*ses* & a litil vinegre, & make herof' an enplastre & leie it' þ*er*on hoot' / Also take succi portulace siluest*ris*, & oliu*m* ro*sarum* & a litil vinegre, & wete heryn a ly*n*nen cloop & leie it' aboute þe ȝerde & hise ballokis / Wh*an*ne þe cours of' þe mater 20 ceessiþ, þa*n* do þ*er*to mele of barly & of' benis, or dist*em*p*er*e þese wiþ þe ȝelke of' an ey & wiþ iuys of' morel & oile of' ro*ses*, & leie þ*er*on. & wh*an*ne þe enpostym goiþ awey, þa*n* leie þ*er*on enplastre of' mele of' benis [3]& of' fenigrec & camomille dist*em*p*er*id w*ith* gotis 24 talow / If' þis enpostym gadere quitture & vlcera, þa*n* cure it' as þou schalt' fynde in þe chapitre of' vlcers of' þe ȝerde.

A hot apostema of the yard and the testes is treated with blood-letting, a suitable diet,

R a hot plaster,

R and dressings.

[3 lf. 150]

¶ A coold e*m*postym þ*at*' is in þe ballokis schal be curid wiþ anoynti*ng*' of' þe mat*er*e wiþ medicyns or wiþ scharpe suppositorijs; 28 for þis d*ra*wiþ þe mater fro þe ballokis / If' it' be so þ*at*' þe enpostym be woxen hard i*n* þe ballokis, þa*n* leie þ*er*to þis enplastre þ*at*' I haue ofte p*r*eued / Take bran of' whete & grinde it' wel in a mort*er* til it' bicome al poudre, & þa*n* dist*em*p*er*e it' wiþ oximel 32 maad of' .ij. p*ar*tis of' vinegre & oon p*ar*tie of' hony, & dissolue þ*eri*n*e* gu*m* armoniac & make herof' an enplastre & leie it' on hoot', & þis schal be remeued ofte. Þis is auicens medicyns.

A cold apostema of the testes is treated with an ointment and suppositories.

R A plaster for an indurated apostema.

¶ If' a ma*n*nes ȝerde be swollen wiþ wijnd & þe cause be hoot', 36 þa*n* lete hi*m* blood; if' it' be coold, þa*n* leie þ*er*to enplastris, & i*n* þis caas among' alle op*er*e þi*n*gis þis is good / Take oile of' ro*ses* iiij.

R

[1] Add. 26,106, fol. 59 b.: accidit quibusdam iuvenibus calidis.

p*ar*tis, of wex o p*ar*t, meltc he*m* togidere & þa*n* waische he*m* i*n* cool*d* wat*er* til it bicome as it were a whit oynemen*t*, & herwiþ [1]anoynte þe place / If it be hoot, þa*n* þou schalt make hi*m* caste, & þou schalt ʒeue hi*m* agnus castus,[2] & seed of rue & comyn & anise & o*per*e þingis þat waastiþ wijnd, & make an enplast*er* of þese þi*n*gis þat distr*i*eþ wijnd / ¶ An enplast*er* þat gilbert made for swelly*n*g of a ma*n*nes ʒerde & it is mitigatif .℞, crummis of whit breed & grinde he*m* i*n* a morter & temp*er*e hem wiþ watir, & þa*n* boile hem til þei bicome þicke, & do þ*er*to a litil oile & a litil hony, & þa*n* boile hem togidere & leie it vpon hoot // If a ma*n*nes ʒerde be swollen wiþ hete of liggyng bi a wo*m*man, þus þou schalt helpe hi*m* / Take leues of wiþi & seþe he*m* i*n* wat*er* & baþe his ʒerde herynne & binde þ*er*to þe leues // Also seþe lynseed & leues of malue & grynde hem togidere & make he*r*of a plastre /

[1] lf. 150, bk.]

A plaster for a cold windy apostema.

A plaster for a hot windy apostema.

.℞.

A lenitive plaster of Gilbert.

℞

The cure of scrophularu*m* & glandulu*m* /[3]

¶ xiij.

Scrophula is caused by Melancholy; Glandula by Phlegm.

[4] lf. 151]

These apostemas are treated with purging.

℞

The patient shall neither drink water, nor weep, nor sleep on a full stomach.

CUre of glandular*um* & scrophular*um* is almoost oon, saue herof is a difference / Scrophule comeþ þe moost p*ar*t of malancoli & ben worse to dissolue. & glandule comeþ þe most p*ar*t of fleume, & be*n* liʒter to resolue / In boþe causis it is [4]necessarie to p*ur*ge þe mat*er*e. & þe medicyn laxatijf maad of turbit is good þ*er*fore þat is aforseid i*n* þe chapitre of allopucia, or i*n* þis maner as .A. makiþ it / ℞ turbit zinzi,[5] zu*care* .ʒ .ij, & ʒeue þis ofte, or trociscus de turbit maad wiþ diarubarbe, & þou must sotile his dietyng, & he schal not ete to miche, & he schal drinke no wat*er*, & he schal holde his heed an hiʒ, & he schal kepe hi*m* fro wepinge, & he schal not, wha*n*ne he is ful, slepe anoon þ*er*vpon, & þou schalt anoynte þe place w*ith* oile of camomille, & wiþ oile of

[2] Besides the names given in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. Agnus castus, there are: "*Agnus castus*, frutex est, i. bischopeswort." *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 1. "A. c., toutsayne." Wr. Wü. p. 562, 24 (xvth cent.). "Chastlambe" in *Maplet.* A greene Forest, fol. 39. De Propr. Rer. (Add. MS. 27944, fol. 216 *a*): "*Agnus Castus is an herbe hoot and dryue and haþ vertu to kepe men & wommen chaste a pli*nius *seiþ*. ¶ *Þerfore wommen of Rome vsede to bere wiþ hem þe fruyt of þis herbe in dyrige and service for dede men, whanne þey moste nedes lyve chaste for comyn honestee.* ¶ *Þis herbe is alway grene as dy-as*corides *seiþ, and plat*earius *also, and þe flour þerof is nameliche y-cleped agnus castus.*"

[3] Sl. 2463, f. 97 (see p. 222, note 8): "*Because þat þe cure of scrophules & glanndules, as who seith, is bothe oone, but þer is a difference be as moche as scrophules ben for þe more partie of malancolye . . .*"

[5] MS. ZZ.

.R7. lilie, & wiþ þis oile þat' is ap*r*eued / R7, radices electerij,[1] radic*es* malue vis*ci*,[2] & kutte he*m* smal & leie he*m* *in* oold oile of oli*uarum* & do he*m* *in* a vessel of' glas, & sette þis glas *in* a vessel of' wat*er*, & make þe wat*er* to seþe, & be war þat' þou saue þe glas fro breki*n*g'. 4

Use one of the following plasters. One prepared with goat's-dung.

& wiþ þis oile anointe hi*m*, & þa*n* leie þe*r*on wolle vnwaische / And if' þis suffise no*t*', make him a plastre of' gotis tordis & oximel, or quik lyme & swynys grese þat' it' be freisch / & oold,[3] or þis medicyne / R7 staphisacre, se*mini*s-lini,[4] farini orobi, resine [5]albe & 8

.R7.

[5 lf. 151, bk.]

R7

Another prepared with dove's-dung.

make herwiþ an enplastre wiþ ole & vinegre / Also ano*þer* þat' is swiþe good. Take radices lilij, & seminis lini, an*a*,[6] boile he*m* *in* wijn til þei dissolue, & þa*n* do þe*r*to of' culuer tordis & make it' a þicke plastre, & þou schalt' putte þe*r*to culuer toordis more or lesse 12 as þou seest' þat' þe mater resolueþ more or lesse, as þou seest' þat' it' nediþ. ¶ Also diaculon[7] ras*is*, & diaculon Ioh*ann*es Mesue þat' schulen be seid i*n* þe antidotarie, ben good for to resolue scrophulas / Wh*ann*e þou resouest' þe mater & sum þe*r*of' goiþ awei, & su*m* 16 þe*r*of' leueþ hard, þa*n* þou schalt' do þe*r*to su*m*tyme mollificatiuis & su*m*tyme resoluy*ng*' þi*n*gis //

Glandula and Scrophula must be opened when they are quite ripe.

¶ Glandule & scrophule be*n* pa*r*ti of' douce fleume or of' blood; it' is ful hard to make he*m* clene, for su*m* pa*r*tie þe*r*of' wole leue 20 hard & wole not' bicome maturatif'. þou schalt' [not][8] haste to opene he*m* saue þou schalt' leue if' þou miȝt', til it' be al rotid, & þa*n* ope*n* it' & leie þe*r*to mu*n*dificatiuis / & *in* þis place it' is good to leie þe*r*to vng*uentu*m apo*stolorum* & poudre of' affodille & o*þe*re li*ȝ*t' corosiuis. & þou schalt' *in* no maner leie þe*r*to realgar,[9] ne noon 24

[10 lf. 152]

violen*t*' [10]þi*n*gis, & leie þe*r*on a mu*n*dificatif' *in* which be medlid rotis of' lilie wel soden, for þis mu*n*dificatif' makiþ clene & also quitturiþ þe remenau*n*t' of' þe mate*r*e / þou must' take greet' dili- 28 gence for to make clene glandulas & scrophulas, for þei be*n* ful hard

[1] Lat. elaterium, ἐλατήριον. *Alphita*, p. 53, "*Elacterium* succus cucurbite agrestis idem. sed *electerides* sunt cucumeres agrestes tam fructus eorum quam ipsa herba." Vigo *Interpr.*: "Elateriu*m* is the iuice of a wild coco*m*ber."

[2] *malua viscum* = Althæa officinalis, marsh-mallow.

[3] Some words omitted. Lat.: cum axungia porcina, sine sale antiquo.

[4] MS. *staphisacre seminis. nitri.*

[6] *partes æquales* om.

[7] "*Diachylon*, a Plaister made of the Mucilages or pappy Juice of certain Fruits, Seeds, and Roots, whose Office is to ripen and soften." Phillips.

[8] *not* om. Lat.: Non ergo festines in earum apertura.

[9] *realgar*, Arab. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* *Alphita*, p. 156, *Realgar* vel *risalgar* est uena terre." Vigo *Interpret.*, "Realgar is made of brymstone, vnslaked lyme, and orpigmente. It kylleth rattes."

to make clene, & ofte þ*er* engendriþ þ*er*of' festris / ¶ If' þou desirist' to cure glandulas & scrophulas wiþ kuttyng', loke wher glandula or scrophula be neische, & be war of' veynes & senewis, & loke þ*at*' þ*er* be no veine þ*er*e nyȝ. Þan take hi*m* vp wiþ þi lift' hond & drawe hi*m* vp as hiȝe as þou miȝt' & kutte þe skyn endelongis þe necke, & be war þ*o*u touche not' þe cloo*þ* þ*at*' he is folde þ*er*i*n*ne, & þane score[1] hi*m* & drawe hi*m* out' al hool w*ith* þe cloo*þ*, & if' þ*er* leue ony þi*ng*' þ*er*of', caste þ*er*on poud*re* of' affodille or sum oþ*er* liȝt' corosif', & þa*n*ne regendre fleisch & soude it' vp / If' it' so be þ*at*' glandula or scrophula be closid w*ith* veynes or wiþ arterijs, þa*n* kutte hi*m* not' i*n* no maner, for þer miȝt' come greet' p*er*el þ*er*of'.[2]

In extirpating the apostema take care not to injure a blood-vessel.

// Þe cure of þe cancre not vlc*er*id & his cure /

¶ xiiij .co. [3 lf. 152, bk.]

CAusis & difference þou hast' herd of' a ca*n*kre [3]& i*n* what' man*er* þou schalt' cure cancru*m* þ*at*' is not' vlceratus / Rasis seiþ, & it' is sooþ, & I haue seen ofte tyme, þ*at*' wha*n*ne ony ma*n* touchiþ a cancre wiþ iren or wiþ ony medicyn corrosif', but' if' þei kutte hi*m* awey clene wiþ alle his rotis, ellis þei makiþ þ*at*' þe cancer is vlceratus / & for to make a cancre vlceratu*m*, it' ne falliþ for no goodnes, saue it' makiþ þe pa*tient* haste þe fastere to his deeþ, & schortiþ his lif' & bringiþ hi*m* in turment' // ¶ þ*er*fore if' a cancre be i*n* a place þat' he mai be kutt' awei wiþ alle hise rotis, wha*n*ne he is kutt' awei, þa*n* þou schalt' bre*n*ne þe place wiþ an hoot' iren or wiþ gold, & þa*n* þou schalt' fulfille þe cure as it' is aforseid i*n* þe chapitre of' a cancre þ*at*' is vlcerat*us*.[4] ¶ If' it' so be þ*at*' þe cancre be p*er*fit' & greet', þa*n* þou schalt' touche hi*m* wiþ noon iren ne wiþ no medicyn corrosif', saue þ*o*u schalt' kepe þe pa*tient* wiþ good dieting', & he schal ofte tymes haue medicyns for to purge malancolie wiþ gootis whey & w*ith* epithi*m*o, & sumtyme lete hi*m* blood, & þou schalt' anoy*n*te þe place wiþ vng*uent*um ras*is*

Rasis

Unless a non-ulcerating cancer is removed thoroughly, it becomes an ulcerating one.

Use the hot iron after cutting.

A large and fully developed cancer shall neither be cut nor cauterized.

[1] *score.* Lat. discarnare.

[2] Sl. 2463, fol. 98 : "*But if þe glandule or þe scrofule be intrikes*[a] *with reynes, arteries oþer synewes, so þat þei cleue oþer be faste knytte to hem, for nothing þou schall nyȝe hem nother with Iren noþer with noone other corosyue medecyne.*"

[4] A different opinion is expressed in Sl. 2463, fol. 115 : "*The cure of þe canker is done in two maners. The tone cure is for to kutte away all þe membre þat þe canker is inne, with all þe syknesse; and þis is an yuell cure and may be done, but it is not plesaunt.*" Ibid., fol. 115 b. : "*And yf þer be noon oþer remedie but for to cutte hit away with alle þe rotes, me thenkith hit is more honest to leue hit þanne to do hit.*"

[a] Lat. intricata.

[[1] lf. 153] de thutia, þat is [1] [2]aforseid *in* cura cancri vlcera*ti*. & þou schalt leie þe*r*on colde leues, & alwei þis schal be þin entencioun, for to kepe þ*at* þe cancre wexe not ne rotie not / I haue seen ful manye lechis þ*at* hadde*n* greet name *in* cirurgie þ*at* fou*n*den cancris *in* me*n*, and 4 wexe not, & þe ca*ncr*is were not vlcerati & miȝte ful long tyme haue lyued if he hadde be kept aftir my teching *in* þis book; saue vnku*m*nyng cirurgians weneþ þ*at* *in* kutting of a cancre þei schulde finde quitture & be*n* disseyued, & so disseyuen he*m*-silf & also þe 8 pa*tient*, & þa*n* wha*n*ne þei han kutt þei fynde nouȝt saue fleisch corrupt wiþout quitture *in* þe maner of a sponge, wherfore þe lippis of þe wou*n*de wole come aȝen worse þan þei were tofore & more stynking. & wiþ þe greet sty*n*ki*n*ge þe spirit is schent, & makiþ þe 12 pa*tient* þe raþere drawe toward þe deeþ / & if þe cancre were not vlcerat*us* þe pa*tient* miȝte lyue lo*n*ge þ*er*wi*th*.

Bocium þat comeþ of humours corrupt.

¶ xv° c°. "Bocium" is caused by corrupt phlegm, [[3] lf. 153, bk.] or arises from hot apostemas.

BOciu*m* is a postym þ*at* comeþ of humours, & pr*in*cipali it is 16 enge*n*drid of fleume corrupt / Su*m*tyme it comeþ of [3] hote enpostyms, as wha*n*ne þei be*n* rotid & not opened. & þouȝ þe subtil mater be dr*a*wen out, þat o þ*er*e p*ar*t bicomeþ hard & leueþ þ*er*e longe tyme / & sumtyme a rume[4] falliþ adou*n* of his heed i*n*to 20 his necke & makiþ þe mat*er*e wexe more / þis maner enpostym haþ manie diners signes / Su*m* maner þ*er*of is lijk as it were cley, & su*m*me is lijk schellis. Su*m*me is as it were chese, & su*m*me is as it were drastis of oile, & so þis enpostym *in* his corrupcioun takiþ 24 manie diuers colo*ur*is /

This apostema is treated with drawing and caustic medicines.

þis enpostym schal be helid wiþ dr*a*wy*n*ge þi*n*gis & wastynge þ*at* schulen be take*n* bi þe mouþ & leid to wiþoutforþ / þou schalt ȝeue hi*m* bi þe mouþ a medicyn for to purge fleume, & þa*n* þou 28 schalt ȝeue hi*m* a medicyn for to waaste þe mat*er*e & is maad in þis maner / ℞ p*ar*ua*m* plantam nucis a terra cu*m* suis radicib*us* extirpatam i*d* *est* take a litil plauntein of a note & take it vp of þe ground wiþ alle hise rotis, & grynde it wiþ greynes of pep*er*, so þ*at* if þ*er* be 32 of þe notis .ʒ iiij., þa*n* do þ*er*to of pep*er* ℥ j, & þis þou schalt boile

.℞. A caustic medicine.

[2] In later hand at the bottom of the page: *contra ffetorem cancri.* ℞ *pulueris corticis quercus ffarine sileginis ana succi appii mell ana succus & mell inspissentur decoque super ynguem cum puluere ffarina. Item decoque pulverem corticis quersini in aqua et inde tepide laua cans*erem *a ffetore paliando.*

[4] *rume*, rheum, O.Fr. reume.

in a quart' of' wyn [1] of' paris til it' come to þe half', & þanne cole it', [1 lf. 154]
& herof' þe patient schal take euery dai ℥ ij. // ¶ Enplastris þat' A caustic plaster.
wastiþ ben enplastris þat' enpostyms of' fleume be wastid þerwith /
4 If' þou desirist' for to cure it' wiþ kuttyng', þan þou must loke, wher
þe matere þat' is wiþinne be neische or hard. & wher it' be among'
veynes & arterijs, þou schalt' touche it' wiþ noon iren in no maner /
If' it' so be þat' þe mater be neische & if' þou miȝte kutte it' for In extirpating this apostema do not injure the integument wherein the tumour is situated.
8 perels þat' ben forseid, þan kutte it' & drawe out þe mater, & leie
þerto mundificatiuis, & alle þingis as it' is aforseid in þe general
chapitre / If' þe mater be hard & þe enpostym be hangynge & be
fro veynes & arterijs, þan kutte þe skyn endelongis aboue, & be war
12 þat' þou touche not' þe bagge þat' bocium sittiþ þeron & scarre[2] it'
al abouteforþ & drawe him out' with al his skyn. & if' þer leue
þeron ony þing' of' his skyn, þan caste þeron poudre of' affodille, &
make it' clene wiþ poudre of' sum liȝt' corrosif' þerwiþ—vnguentum
16 viride,[3] & þan regendre fleisch, & þan drie it' vp as it' is aforseid /

[4]Of þe akynge of ioynctis. [4 lf. 154, bk.]

¶ xvj° c°. Diseases of the joints are similar to apostemas,

NOw it' is seid pleynlier of' alle enpostyms, now speke we of'
passiouns þat' comeþ in ioynctis. & þis passioun is myche
20 lijk to enpostyms in causis & signes & curis, & also it' diuersiþ
miche fro oþere enpostyms / For þouȝ þe place be greet' to-swollen,
it' comeþ but' late or neuere to quitture. Swellynge & akynge of' but they rarely terminate in suppuration.
ioinctis, þis passioun is vnknowen to manie kunnyng' lechis þat' han
24 greet' name. Bi þe cause þat' cirurgians ben clepid algate to þis
manere passioun, þerfore I haue studied to make a general chapitre
of' passiouns of' ioinctis. & I haue take miche þerof' þe bokis of'
Rasis & of' myn owne worching' þat' I haue proued. ¶ þe causis Pains in the joints are caused by an evil condition of the limbs or the body,
28 þat' makiþ akinge in ioynctis : or it' comeþ of' yuel complexioun of'
lymes, or it' comeþ of' hoot' complexioun þat' hetiþ, or it' comeþ of'
coold complexioun þat' cooldiþ / Drie ligaturis of' ioynctis con-
streineþ & makiþ akynge,[5] & moist'nes makiþ neuere akynge wiþ-
32 outen oþer [6]mater / Mater þat' makiþ akinge of' ioynctis is ofte tyme [6 lf. 155]
haboundaunce of' blood, & ofte tyme it' is raw fleume, & moost'
principali colre or blood medlid with fleume / & it' comeþ ful seelde
of' fleume, but' if' it' be medlid wiþ ony oþer þing' as colre / In what'

[2] *scarre.* Lat. scarnare.
[3] *vnguentum viride.* See Notes.
[5] Lat. sicca (complexio) ligamento junctarum astringendo dolorem aliquando generat.

maner þou schalt knowe which humour be *in* þe cause of akynge of ioinctis, þou schalt finde *in* þe chapitre of allopucia & *in* þe general chapitre of enpostyms, if þou takist good kepe of þe signes of þe forseid chapitris, what humour is *in* cause of akynge of 4 ioinctis / Saue þis þou muste take hede, *þat* ofte tyme raw fleumatik humo*ur*is makiþ akynge of ioinctis as it is forseid, & þa*n* þe colour of þe lyme schal be b*ut* litil[1] chau*n*gid þ*er*fore / & þa*n* a leche but if he be þe more expert þ*er*on mai be bigilid. & sumtyme a litil 8 quantite of colre wole schewe vpon þe lyme, & þa*n* þe leche wole leie þ*er*to coolde þi*n*gis, & þa*n* þe mat*er* of fleume wole bicome hard, & so þe greuau*n*ce wole be worse þa*n* it was / þ*er*fore it is greet nede *þat* þe leche be ku*nn*y*ng* & knowe wel þe [2]mater of passiou*n*s 12 of ioyntis.

and frequently by phlegmatic humour.

The physician can easily be in error, and apply wrong medicines.

[2 lf. 155, bk.]

¶ Þe cure of akynge of ioinctis *þat* comeþ of yuel complexiou*n* oonly, þou schalt remeue w*ith* þingis *þat* ben contrarie to *þat* complexou*n* :[3] as if þe mater be hoot, þa*n* þou schalt remeue it w*ith* 16 colde þi*n*gis, & if þe mater be coold, þa*n* þou schalt remeue it wiþ hoot þi*n*gis, & if þe mater be of drienes, þa*n* þou schalt remeue it wiþ moist þi*n*gis, & wiþ metis & drinkis *þat* makiþ fatt, & wiþ rest[4] & wiþ gladnes; for as faste as his bodi bicomeþ fatt, he schal be 20 hool of *þat* passiou*n* / þis passiou*n* *þat* comeþ of humours, is curid w*ith* mitigacio*n* of þe akynge, & I fynde diuers opiniou*n*s þ*er*on / & þ*er*fore I wole schewe he*m* in þis chap*iter* / Auicen seiþ: *þat* wh*an*ne þou wolt worche in þis mater, þi pr*in*cipal entecciou*n* schal 24 be for to do awei þe akynge / And Rasis forbediþ *þat* þou schalt leie þ*er*to no rep*er*cussiuis, ne noon resolutiuis but if þe mater be avoidid tofore / For to do awey þe akynge: saue avoide þe mater, or leie þ*er*to a rep*er*cussif or a resolutif. & þa*n* Rasis seiþ *þat* 28 þou schalt avoide hi*m*, & auicen for[5]bediþ *þat* / In what man*er* schule*n* we worche þa*n*ne, wh*an*ne þou fyndist a man *þat* haþ greet akynge? / First þou schalt leie a plastre to þe lyme *þat* it be mitigatif or an oynement *þat* be mitigatif, & þe difference herof 32 schal be aftir *þat* þe mater is // Also þou miȝt ȝeue hi*m* su*m*what bi þe mouþ for to aswage þe akynge. & þou schalt fynde greet plente *in* þis chapitre of defensiuis & mitagatiuis to defende þe mater / And wh*an*ne þe akynge is p*er*fiȝtli swagid lete hi*m* blood 36

Treatment, when the illness arises from a bad condition of the body.

If it is caused by the humours, soothe the pain.

Auic*en* and Ras*is* differ in their treatment.

[5 lf. 156]

Apply first a lenitive plaster or ointment, or give a medicine,

then let blood

[1] A second *litil* deleted.

[3] Lat.: Cura doloris iuncturarum quæ ex mala complexione sola est, non est nisi cum contrariis complexionis malitiam removere.

[4] MS. *rost*.

if þe cause be of blood. & if it be of anoþer cause avoide it. & if þou letist him blood, þou schalt do it in a lyme aforȝens. & if þou wolt avoide þere matere, loke þat þou knowe þe cause / for þis is ful necessarie for a leche to kunne / Whanne þe mater is avoidid & þe akynge ceessid, þan þou schalt bigynne wiþ resoluynge medicyns þat ben forseid. ¶ Also in curis of akynge in ioyntis be wel war þat þou feble not his appetit, for þis sijknes comeþ moost of humours þat ben vndefied. & þerfore þou schalt in as miche as þou miȝt make him haue good ap[1]petite & good digestioun / If þou fyndist oonly þe mater coold, þat makiþ ful seelde ony gret akynge, saue it makiþ þe lyme heuy. Þis þou schalt wite þat in a coold cause þat makiþ akinge in ioinctis, þouȝ it be hard to do awei, neþeles þou schalt ȝeue him no strong medicyn ne he schal not be purgid hastili as manie men weneþ, saue it schal be do wiþ a propre medicyn þat is sure. & it schal ofte be ȝeuen, so þat þou mai algate kepe his appetit, for þer is noon so strong medicyn þat mai avoide þe mater al at oonys / And if þou ȝeuest him a strong medicyn it wole afeble hise vertues. & þerfor þou must chese a liȝt medicyn þat mowe comforte þe stomac & þat it mowe be ȝeue ofte //

from the sound limb,

or evacuate any evil matter:

and attend to the patient's appetite and digestion.

[1 lf. 156, bk.]

Therefore do not give a strong purgative, but a mild one in several doses.

¶ Of akynge of ioyntis þou hast had general rulis; now we mote speke of curis here after. ¶ If þou be sent after to a man þat haþ arteticam,[2] þat is as myche to seie as a goute, first þou muste loke wher þe mater be hoot or coold, or wheþer he haue strong akynge or liȝt akynge / & if his akynge be strong, þan [3]leie þerto mitigatiuis / In oon maner þou schalt ȝeue him medicyns bi þe mouþ þat ben mitigatif for to take awey þe akynge, & enplastris þat ben mitigatif, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ A good medicyn þat schal be ȝeue bi þe mouþ: ℞, glandes & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyȝt, & after þat drie hem to þe sunne or in an ouene, & þan kepe it / & whanne þou wolt ȝeue it, grynde it & ȝeue þerof ʒ .j.; þis medicyn makiþ blood greet & remeueþ þer from / Also take lentes

Arteticam.

When gout is attended with pain, give lenitive medicines, and apply plasters.

[3 lf. 157]

.R.

[2] *artetica*, arthritica, gout, *Trevisa De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, Cap. 56 (Add. MS. 27,944, fol. 96 *b.*). "*Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swelling & sore ache / and whanne hit is in þe fyngres, hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra, if hit is in þe whirlebones and ioyntes it hatte sciatica passio, and comeþ of colerik blood & of fleumatik humours, & comeþ most ofte of reumatik cause.*" The author of the Treatise on Surgery, preserved in Sl. 1736, mentions this disease as a hereditary one. Ibid. fol. 122 b.: "*also yt ys often tymes sene þat þis arthetica passio gose by erytaunce as fro þe [fadyr] to the childur, and so forth to odyr.*"

A medicine only to be given in great need.

excorticatas, semen coriandri, succu*m* glandulu*m*, hermodactulis[1] wiþ sugre & coold watir, saue herof' þou must' take kepe þat' þese medicyns schulen not' be ȝeue b*ut*' i*n* greet' nede, & wh*an*ne þe akynge is so greet' þ*at*' it' mai not' be take awei. & þei mai be 4 moost' sotilly ȝeue wh*an*ne þe mater is subtil & scharp / & if' þe mater be greet' & miche, þ*an* þis medicyn schal not' be ȝeue. ¶ If'

R þe mater be coold & of' greet' akyng', þ*an* take hermodact*ulis*, thuris an*a* xx. p*ar*tis, cucume*ri* p*ar*tes .x, & ȝeue þerof' ʒ .iij. vpon þe 8

[2 lf. 157, bk.] R place / If' þe mat*er*e be litil & scharp [2]& subtil / ℞, amigdalas, camphore an*a*, gr*in*de he*m* & temp*er*e he*m* wiþ watir of' ro*ses* /

R Also anoþir i*n* þe same kinde / ℞, mirre, panis albissimi & subtilissimi ℥ j, opij ℥ ß, grinde he*m* wel & temp*er*e he*m* wiþ milk of' a 12

R cow, & leie it' þ*er*on wh*an*ne it' is greet' nede / Item ℞, opij, cortices mandrag*orae* an*a* .ʒ .v, grinde he*m* & temp*er*e he*m* wiþ þe iuys of' port*ulacae* & oile of' ro*ses* & a litil vynegre / Also an oynement' for

R to ccesse þe akynge / ℞, oliu*m* ro*sarum* ℥ iiij, cere ℥ j., melte þe oile 16

An oinement' þat' sesses ache

& þe wex togidere & waische it' w*ith* oile of' ro*ses*, & þ*an* do þ*er*to cit*rini* ℥ j., opij ℥ ß / If' þe mat*er* be myche & be neiþer more i*n* quantite þ*an* i*n* q*ua*lite, & þou wolt' defende more þe cours of' þe mater, þ*an* do awei þe akynge.[3] ℞, cortices g*ra*natoris, sandal*i*[4] 20 albi, & rue,[5] & ro*se*s, boli armenici, ferrugi*n*e,[6] opij, confice cum succ*o* mirtillor*um* v*el* folior*um* salicis, or w*ith* a decocciu*n* of' he*m* i*n* watir wiþ a litil oile of' ro*ses* & vineg*r*e & make herof' an oynement'. & wh*an*ne þe akynge is aswagid, þ*an* dissolue þe mater of' blood wiþ 24 letyng' blood. & þ*at*' suffisiþ as it' is aforseid. ¶ Colre þou schalt'

R dissolue i*n* þis maner / ℞, mirabol*anorum* cit*r*inor*um* .℥ vj., [7]grinde

[7 lf. 158] he*m* & leie he*m* al anyȝt' i*n* lī ß of sirup of' viole, & ℥ .iiij. of' wijn of' pomegarnat*es* þ*at*' ben swete, amorowe boile he*m* alitil & do þ*er*to 28 ȝucc*are* .℥ ß, hermodact*ylorum* .ʒ ß., & ȝeue it' hi*m* i*n* þe mornyng'. & if' þou wolt' make itt' more coold, do þ*er*to .ʒ .ij. of' musilag*in*is

[1] "*Hermodactyla*, crawanleac." Wr. Wü. 137, 3.—"Hermodactylus, a round-headed Root, brought from Syria, which is of an insipid Taste; and gently purges Phlegm." Phillips.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 63: Si uero materia fuerit multa et times plus de quantitate quam de qualitate, et uis plus prohibere materiæ cursum quam extinguere . . .

[4] *sandali albi*, σάνταλον. The d in sandal is explained by influence of Arab. sandal (Devic). Matth. Sylvat. mentions three sorts of Sandal: album, ruffum et citrinum. See *Alphita*, p. 161. *whit saunders* and *reed saunders* are distinguished in Sloane MS. 2463, fol. 155 *b* (c. c. 1450).

[5] *rue* for *rubidi*.

[6] Lat. foenugreci.

psillij or ʒ .j. ¶ þis is a good clectu*arie* þ*er*fore .℞, citonio*rum* lī .R.
ß., & make he*m* to gobettis, & leie he*m* *in* vinegre adai & aniʒt' / & A good electuary, to purge
þ*an* wrynge he*m* & grinde he*m* smal, & do þ*er*to scamonie þ*at*' it' be choler and to strengthen
4 good .ʒ .j, cardamomi, cubube .ʒ .iij, spice nar*di* .ʒ .j, ros*is* .ʒ .v, the stomach.
ʒucc*are* lī ß, make herof' a letuarie þ*at*' purgiþ wel colre & comfortiþ
þe stomac. þou schalt' ʒeue herof' .ʒ .ij. & þou miʒt' scharpe it'
more if' þou wolt' w*ith* a litil hermodact*ylis*. ¶ þese be*n* good
8 pelottis for þe same cause / ℞, aloes .ʒ .ij, hermod*actylos* .ʒ j, .R.
scamonie .ʒ ß, ros*is* .ʒ .j, make h*er*of' pelottis w*ith* sir*upo* viol*arum*, Pills for the same purpose.
& þou schalt' ʒeue herof' .ʒ .j. Wh*an*ne þe passiou*n* bigy*n*neþ to go
awei w*ith* þese medicyns, þ*an* þou schalt' leie þerto plastris þ*at*' ben Resolving plasters:
12 resoluynge: as of' malue & bismalue, camomille, mellilotu*m*, absin- .R.
thiu*m*, pe*r*atorie, semen caulium, aneti, fenug*r*eci, [1]semen lini, [1 lf. 158, bk.]
furfuris, & swynys grese, & gandris grese, & he*n*nis grese, & oile of'
camf*re*, & oliu*m* aneti. & wh*an*ne þe cours of' humours ccessiþ,
16 þ*an* þou schalt' vse oonly resoluy*n*ge þ*in*gis & make þ*er*of' enplastris /
Also to do awaye residue of' þe aki*n*ge, þis is a good medicy*n* / ℞, .R.
oli*um* camom*ille* ʒ̄ .iiij, cere .ʒ̄ j., sem*in*is aneti & caulium, flor*um*
camom*ille* an*a* .ʒ .iij. & make herof' an oynem*ent*' / Also *in* anoþ*er*
20 man*er* / ℞, fenig*reci*, sem*en* lini, aneti, & temp*er*e he*m* w*ith* iuys of' .R.
caul*ium*. & herof' þou must' take kepe, þ*at*' as ofte as þou wolt' vse
clene resolutiuis, þou schalt' algate waische þe lyme þ*at*' is to-swoll*en* A lotion for the limb.
wiþ a decoccioun of' malue & bismalue, & flor*um* of' camom*ille* &
24 melliloti, absin*thii* & oþ*er*e mo, & þe lyme schal be waische þ*er*wiþ
til it' bicome reed, & þ*an* þou schalt' anoy*n*te hi*m* / And þis þou
schalt' wite þ*at*' as meuy*ng*' & baþi*ng*' greueþ þe passiou*n* *in* þe firste Moving and bathing is obnoxious at the beginning of the illness, but useful at the end of the cure.
bigy*n*ny*ng*', riʒt' so þei be*n* *in* þe ende riʒt' greet' helpi*ng*' / For
28 to stuwe & baþe doiþ awei þe laste p*ar*t' of' þe mater & makiþ
a ma*n*nys lymes haue her meuy*ng*' as þei schulde haue. & also it'
is good wh*an*ne þe pa*tient* goiþ out' of' [2]his stue, if' hise io*in*ctis [2 lf. 159]
akiþ, þ*an* frote he*m* wel wiþ salt' grou*n*de / If' þe mater be coold þou
32 schalt' diʒte hi*m* wiþ diaʒinʒib*er*is þ*at*' is aforseid *in* allopucia. &
þ*an* þou schalt' dissolue wiþ trocisco de turbit' wiþ hermodact*ylis*
m*aad* *in* þis man*er* / ℞, diaʒinʒib*er*is p*r*edicti ʒ j. & ß, turbit' electi R
.ʒ .j, hermodactulor*um* albor*um* solidor*um* ʒ ß, & viij greines of'
36 anise, & make þ*er*of' a gobet' wiþ a litil hony. & þis schal be ʒeue
in þe morny*ng*'. & þ*er*after he schal dri*n*ke a litil wijn hoot' & a
litil wat*er*; or wiþ þese pelottis / ℞, hermodact*ylorum*, saturionis[3] R

[3] *Saturion*, iarus. See *Alphita*, p. 158.

sene an*a* .ʒ .v, ierapig*re*[1] þat entriþ i*n* pululas cochias .ʒ .x, pulpe coloquintide, centaurie. an*a* .ʒ .v, euforbij .ʒ. ij, turbit .ʒ .ß., cassie,[2] sinapis, pip*er*is, castorij an*a* .ʒ .j. & make herof pelottis w*ith* hony. & þou schalt ʒeue h*er*of .ʒ j. at oonys, & þis medicy*n* schal be 4 ʒeue manie tymes. & in daies bitwixe he schal take diaʒinʒib*er*u*m* of our*e* maki*n*ge þat is forseid. & if it be i*n* winte*r*, þou schalt ʒeue hi*m* diat*r*ion pip*er*ion[3] or anoþ*er* hoot eletuarie // ¶ Anoþ*er* electuarie þat dissoluiþ akynge i*n* ioyntis þat comeþ of raw mat*er*. 8

.R. ℞, camedrios,[4] centaurie minor*um* an*a*. ʒ .viij, aristolo*gia* longa.

[5 lf. 159, bk.] [5]gencian. an*a*. ʒ .vj, agarici .ʒ .ij, vtriusq*ue* spice an*a* .ʒ .j, make

A lectuare þat dysolues Ache in Iunnctes

he*m* wiþ hony. þou schalt ʒeue h*er*of þe qua*n*tite of a note eerli & late. Me*n* þat be*n* lene schule*n* not take þis medicy*n* // Wh*an*ne 12 þe pa*tient* is p*ur*gid sufficie*n*tly, þa*n* þou schalt vse enplast*ris* for to

R leie to þe place / ℞, oold swynis grese þat it be freisch lī j., & medle þ*er*wiþ quyk-lyme & make þ*er*of a plast*re* & leie vpon þe

R place / Also take sterc*us* cap*r*in*um* & distemp*er*e it wiþ vinegre & 16

R hony an*a*, & leie it þ*er*on / Also ℞, aristolo*gia*, radices yrios, ell*eborus*, & pip*er*, boile he*m* i*n* oile & do þ*er*to ʒelow wex & make þ*er*of an oynemen*t*. ¶ Also diaquilon m*aa*d of litarge & oile & iuys of mustard seed. & if þ*o*u wolt haue mo remedies, go to þe 20

Rasis. book of Rasis, & þ*er*e þou schalt fynde i*n* þe chapit*er* of ioy*n*tis, medicyns ynowe þ*er*fore. ¶ Also if þ*o*u desirist to co*m*forte þe lyme & do awei þe coold mat*er* wiþ rep*er*cussiuis, i*n* þe laste chap*iter* of þis book þou schalt fy*n*de rep*er*cussiuis & mollificat*iuis* ynowe // 24

/ Of sciatica passio[6] /[7]

¶ xvij°. co [8 lf. 160] Pain in the haunches

A kynge of haunchis schal be curid wiþ avoidi*n*ge of þe mat*er* i*d est* laxat*iu*is, for rep*er*cussiuis be*n* not þ*er*fore, for þe mat*er*e[8] is i*n* þe depnes of þe lyme, &[9] ne mowe not come þ*er*to. Resolutiuis 28

[1] "*Hiera Piera*, a purging Electuary invented by Galen, and made of Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Honey, &c." Phillips. [2] MS. cassif.

[3] *diatrion piperion*, a medicine composed of three sorts of pepper.

[4] "Chamœdrys, the Herb Germander, or English Treacle." Phillips. Camedreos ance Teterwose. Wr. Wü. 569, 47 (xvth cent.).

[6] MS. *passis*.

[7] *De Propr. rerum*, Lib. VII, Cap. 57 (Add. 27,944, fol. 96 *b*.): "*Gutta sciatica is an yuel* þat *comeþ of humours* þat *falliþ doun into* þe *grete senewe* þat *is bytwene* þe *grete brawnes of* þe *hanche as constantyn seiþ*. ¶ *And comeþ ofte of gleymy humours i-gadred togedres in* þe *holouʒnes of* þe *ioyntes & of* þe *haunche / somtyme of blody humours i-medlid wiþ colera & alle* þese *beþ ofte cause of ache* þe *whiche ache streechiþ into* þe *legges & anon to* þe *hele & also anon to* þe *litil* [*too*]." [9] The subject is: *repercussivis*.

be*n* not þ*er*fore, for þei mai not come to þe depnes of þe mater. & for þe mat*er* is so greet, it schulde more d*ra*we to þe place humo*ur*is þ*an* dissolue. Saue þou must aswage þe ak*in*ge, & þou schalt do awei þe akynge w*it*h oile & hony & fatnes þ*at* doiþ awei[1] ak*in*ge. ¶ If þe mat*er* come of blood, þ*an* lete hi*m* blood *in* a veyne þ*at* is clepid basilica *in* þe same side, & *in* þe sec*un*de dai lete hi*m* blood in a veyne þ*at* is clepid sciatica, & p*r*incipaly if þe mat*er* descende adou*n* wiþoutforþ toward þe foot, for þ*an* it mai p*r*incipaly be holpe*n* / If þe mat*er* come of fleu*ma*, þ*an* p*ur*ge hi*m* wiþ pelottis of hermodact*ilorum* / Saue he*r*of þou schalt take kepe þ*at* bifore his p*ur*gacioun bineþe forþ[2] he schal haue a vomet. For if þou make hi*m* a medicy*n* laxatif bineþeforþ & no vomet tofore, þ*an* it wole d*ra*we more þe mat*er* toward þe place þ*an* aweyward / þ*er*for first þou schalt make hi*m* a vomet, & aftirward a medicyn laxatif / And þ*er*fore medicy*n*s laxatiuis su*m*me be*n* p*ro*pre for akynge of þe hau*n*chis, as coloq*u*intida, yrios, sarc*ocolla*, [3]centaurea, agaric*us*, & [3 lf. 160, bk.] i*n*fusiou*n* of aloes. For infusiou*n* of aloes wole make blood passe fro hi*m* at his sege, & þ*an* þe ak*in*ge wole go awei & he schal be hool / & wh*an*ne he is p*er*fitli maad clene wiþ medicy*n*s laxatiuis, þ*an* þou miȝt leie þ*er*to enplastris m*aa*d *in* þis man*er* / ℞, nast*ur*cij,[4] peretri,[5] capparis, gri*n*de he*m* & te*m*pe*r*e he*m* wiþ lie m*aa*d of askis of a fige tree, & make þ*er*of a þicke enplast*er* as it were hony, & anoi*n*te þe place til it be ful of bladdris & þe bladdris ful of wat*er*, riȝt as þe place were bre*n*t wiþ fier. & þ*an* anoy*n*te þe place wiþ butt*er*, & leie þ*er*on caule leeues þ*at* þe bladdris soude not togideris anoon; for þe leng*er* þ*at* þei leueþ þ*er*on, þe bettir it wole be. Eiþ*er* anoy*n*te þe place oo*n*li w*it*h mel anacardi,[6] & þ*at* makiþ bladdris. & wh*at* man*er* þou schalt make mel anacardi, þou schalt fynde *in* þe antidotarie þ*at* techiþ to make medicyns & caute*r*ijs / Saue herof þou must take kepe þ*at* þou schalt not vse þese medicy*n*s þ*at* makiþ caute*r*ijs, but if his bodi be wel avoidid wiþ medicy*n*s laxatiuis tofore; for if his bodi be [7]not p*ur*gid, it wole d*ra*we more

must not be treated with repellent or resolving medicines.

Use blood-letting, if the illness is caused by the blood.

Purge, if phlegm is the cause, and first give an emetic.

When the patient is well purged, apply plasters.

℞ A blistering plaster.

.Nota. Purge the patient before applying the blister.

[7 lf. 161]

[1] *awei*, above line.

[2] *bineþe forþ*, Lat. per inferius. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. beneath-forth.

[4] *nasturtium*, a kind of cress.

[5] *peretrum*, Lat. piretrum. Anthemis pyrethrum (Dunglison), "Piretrum . . pelestre."—*Alphita*, p. 145. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot."—Phillips.

[6] "*Anacardus*. Or after Ruellius *anacardium:* is the frute of a tre, growing in Sicilia, and Apulia, called vulgarly, Pediculus Elephantis. The iuyce wherof is called *Mel Anacardi*, which is a ruptory medicine."—Halle, *Table*, p. 10.

mat*er* to þe place þa*n* aweyward. ¶ Also aȝe*n*s þe sciatica passio
.R. A plaster of Avicenna. here þou schalt' haue an exp*er*iment' p*r*eued of A*vicenna*. Take
gotis tordis & drie he*m*, & make he*m* to poud*er*, & distemp*er*e he*m*
wiþ strong' vinegre & made hoot', & make herof' a plastre, & leie it' 4
vpon as hoot' as þou maist' suffre, & anoynte þ*er*wiþ his haunche.
¶ Also a medicyn þat' is forseid of' camedrios & centaurea[1] is good
þ*er*fore, for it' wole drawe awei bi vryne / ¶ Item : caut*er*ijs m*aa*d
i*n* þe nexte welle vnd*er* þe place of' þe aki*n*ge be*n* gode þ*er*for aft*er* 8
þe tyme þat' his bodi is m*aa*d clene w*ith* p*ur*gaciou*n*s, & tofore þou
schalt' make hi*m* no caut*er*ijs.

Of þe man*er* of dieti*n*g of he*m* þ*a*t ha*n* pass*ions* i*n* io*in*ctes / 12

¶ xviijo. co A patient with a disease of the joints shall abstain from wine,

IN what' man*er* þou schalt' diete me*n* þ*a*t ha*n* passiou*n*s i*n*
io*in*tis. Þou schalt' wite þat' þ*er* is no þi*n*g' so greuo*us* to þis
passiou*n* as is wy*n*, & it' is principali forbede i*n* an hoot'
cause, & so it' schal be i*n* a coold cause; for wha*n*ne it' is 16
take, it' p*er*siþ liȝtli to þe io*in*tis, & makiþ wei to þe mat*er* for
to falle þ*er*to / Saue if' þe pass*ion* be coold, & þe pa*tient* mai
[2 lf. 161, bk.] not' wel [2]defie his mete, þa*n* þou schalt' grau*n*te hi*m* a litil
and if there is hot matter, from meat and fish; wijn, & not to miche for þe causis þat' be*n* forseid. ¶ In an 20
hoot' cause make hi*m* dri*n*ke þat' is forseid i*n* þe chapit*er* of' dieti*n*g'
of' wou*n*dis, or he schal vse vinu*m* g*r*anatoru*m* wiþ coold wat*er*. &
þe pacient' schal absteine hi*m* fro fleisch & fisch & vse lact*ucis*, por-
t*ulacis* / & if' he be gretli feble, þa*n* þou schalt' ȝeue hi*m* litil 24
chikenys. & lete þou not' hi*m* drinke wijn bi no man*er* if' his
and if the matter is cold he shall eat only once a day. passioun be hoot' / & whoso haþ þe coold passiou*n* herof', he schal
holde hi*m* wel apaied[3] for to ete oonys adai & not' to miche. &
lete hi*m* drinke ydromel wel sode*n* / for if' he mai suffre hu*n*g*ur* & 28
þirst' he mai soone be hool. & he schal i*n* no man*er* ete, but' if' he
haue wil þ*er*to.

¶ The firste techi*n*g of egrit*udines* of yȝen, ouþ*er* passiou*n* & anothami / 32

¶ io. co/ NOw wolen we make a tretice of' pass*ioun* of' lymes þat' falliþ
for no wou*n*dis, & curis þ*er*of' comeþ ofte to cirurgians

[1] *centaurea*, written above *cauterie*.

[3] *he schal holde him wel apaied*, Lat. sit contentus. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. apaid. O.Fr. apaier. Compare: je m'en tieng bien paiez. (Littré.)

handis[1] / I wole bigy*n*ne of' sijknes of' y3en & to speke of anatho- The anatomy of the eyes.
mia*m* *per*wiþ þat' was not' forseid i*n* þe .ij. book / þou schalt' fy*n*de
i*n* su*m*me bokis of' auctoritees þat' a ma*n*nes i3e*n* be*n* ma*a*d of' .iij. The eye has three
4 humou*r*is & of' .vij. cootis. & i*n* su*m* bokis [2]þou schalt' fynde þat' [2 lf. 162]
þe i3e*n* be*n* ma*a*d of' .iij. cotis or of' .iiij. or of' .vij. or of' .x., & alle humours and seven coats.
þei seien sooþ. Saue þe .j. coote þat' make*th* þe schap of' þe i3e,
ben but' .iij. þat' schewe*th* out' i*n* þe hole of' þe i3e, & þe*r*fore me
8 mai seie .vj. & also þre[3] / And fro þe brain tofore comeþ .ij. bind- Two processes reach from the brain to the eyes.
i*n*gis þat' be*n* not' of' ne*r*ucs, saue þei be*n* of' þe substau*n*ce of' brain,
& þat' oon comeþ out' i*n* þe ri3tside, & þat' oþe*r* i*n* þe liftside, & be*n*
schape as it' were þe hedis of' .ij. tetis, wherbi þe witt' is take.[4] &
12 afte*r* þese .ij. comeþ out' ij. ne*r*ues, & be*n* fast' to þe i3en, & be*n* Two nerves, crossing each other,
schape i*n* þis maner: þa*n* þat' ne*r*ue þat' wexiþ i*n* þe
ri3tside of' þe bray*n*, wha*n*ne he goiþ out' of' þe scolle boon & e*n*triþ enter the Orbitam,
i*n*to orbita*m*, þat' is þe holow place þat' þe y3e sitt' on, & goiþ to þe
16 i3e i*n* þe liftside. & bi þes ne*r*ues comeþ þe spiritis of' lijf' & of' si3t' and confer the spirit of life.
to þe y3en / Of' þe substau*n*ce of' dura ma*t*ris is engendrid rethina,
þat' is þe þi*n*ne sky*n* þat' goiþ wi*th*out' þe i3e, þat' is clepid þe vilm The eye is enveloped in the Retina (film).
of' þe i3e. And þis serueþ of' greet' seruice, & þis vilm was ma*a*d
20 swiþe þi*n*ne þat' it' ne hurte not' humou*r*is, & þat' it' lette not' þe
meuy*n*ge of' þe i3e, and it' [5]byndiþ i*n* al þe i3e, & it' defendiþ þe i3e [5 lf. 162, bk.]
fro harmynge of' þe boon //[6]

¶ þe*r*e comeþ manye sijknessis i*n* þe i3en, & su*m*me comeþ of' The diseases of the eyes have partly external, partly internal causes.
24 causis wiþoutforþ, & su*m*me of' causis wiþi*n*neforþ / Wiþi*n*neforþ:
as of' yuel complexiou*n*s, or of' yuel humours; wiþoutforþ: as of'
greet' hete of' þe eir, or of' greet' cooldnes of' þe eir, or of' poudre, or
of' fume, or of' wynd / And þe*r*e be*n* oþe*r*e mane*r* sijknes of' þe i3e,
28 & þat' ben seid contagiou*s*: as obtolmia & blere i3ed, & alle þese
sijknessis come*n* to cirurgians handis. & **obtolmia** is clepid a whit' Obtolmia. Icchinge. Scabbe. Sebel. Vngula. Cataracta.
welke or a reed poynt',[7] & icchinge & scabbe, sebel, vngula, cataracta,

[1] Lat.: Volentes tractare de passionibus membrorum particularium, que non sunt vulnera, quæ sæpe veniunt ad manus chirurgi . . . incipiemus ab ægritudinibus oculorum.

[3] The passage is corrupt, and the corresponding Latin phrase differs: Tunicæ tres quæ in oculi formatione tres præcedunt humores, in ordine causant ex ipsis tres alias, quare dici possunt sex et tres.

[4] Lat.: quibus sensus comprehenditur odoratus.

[6] Lat.: Facta fuit ergo retina valde subtilis, ne læderet humores: et ne motum ipsorum in dilatatione comprimeret. Et facta fuit sclirotica: ut oculum totum cum cornea ligaret: et defenderet ab ossis oculi nocumento. The translator omits the description of the Anatomy of the eye. See Notes.

[7] Lat.: ophthalmia, vlcus, albula, macula simplex, punctus, rubedo. The

Dilatacio Pulpe. Inuersacio Palpebrarum. Ordelius. Grando. Nodus. Pilus. ffistala lacrimalis

dilatac*ion* pulpe,[1] inuersac*ion*, palpebra*rum*, ordelus, grando, nodus, & pilus, fistula lacrimalis. ¶ Also þ*er* be*n* o*þere* man*er*e sijknessis of' þe i3en: as bli*n*d & hurti*n*ge þat' mowe not' be curid /

[3 lf. 163]

iij man*er* obt*atmia*

It' is forseid wh*at*' þi*n*g' is enpostym i*n* þe gen*er*al *capitulo* of' enpostyms. & it' is forseid þat' eu*er*y þi*n*g' þat' gaderiþ humo*ur* togid*er*e & makiþ swellynge,[2] [3]schal be clepid enposty*m*[4] / In þe same man*er* obtalmia[5] is clepid enposty*m* of' þe i3e. & þ*er*e be*n* .iij. man*er*s of' obtalmia: as li3t', & strenge*r*, & alþ*er* strong'. Li3t', as wh*an*ne a ma*n*nes i3e bicomeþ reed & haþ bre*n*nynge þ*er*i*n*ne & p*r*icki*n*ge, & þ*er* is no swelly*n*ge þ*er*on. & þis mai come of' a cause w*ith*outforþ: as of' hoot' eir or of' coold, or of' smoke, or of' poudre, or of' waki*n*ge, or of' *tra*ueile. & þe cure herof' is but' li3t; for þis sijknes mai be curid i*n* þis man*er*. Take þe white of' an ey & scume[6] it', & loke þat' þ*er*e falle no filþe þ*er*on, & leie it' i*n*to his i3e; for þis is þe best' medicy*n*[7] amo*n*g alle medicyns þat' be*n* clepid colliries, for it' wole make coold his i3e & do awey þe akynge. & it' abidiþ þe lenger i*n* his i3e*n*, for it' is viscous // ¶ If' þe cause be cold,[8] þa*n* þis cure suffisiþ: þa*n*ne lete hi*m* dry*n*ke a litil sutil wijn, & make hi*m* a fomentacio*un* of ro*sis* & flouris of camom*ille*, & fenigrec sode*n* i*n* wat*er*. & if' þis suffise not', þa*n* [9]þou muste lete hi*m* blood, & avoide awei þe humo*ur*is. & þou muste caste i*n*to his i3e a whit' collirium, & it' is seid i*n* o*þere* spicis of' obtolmia.

1. Mild ophthalmia. The eyes get red, and feel burning, but there is no swelling.

Treatment.[1]

℞

Apply an eye-wash,

Nota.

a fomentation, and if necessary bleed the patient.

[9 lf. 163, bk.]

2. Severe Obtolmiæ.

¶ Obtolmia þat' is strong'. þese be*n* þe signes þ*er*of': greet' reednes, & þe veynes of' þe i3en be ful replete, & þe corner of' þe i3e schal watri, & he schal haue greet' aki*n*ge & p*r*icki*n*g', & su*m*tyme þ*ere* comeþ i*n* þe first' bigy*m*nyng' vlcera þ*er*on, as it were

translator mistook this list of names of eye diseases for a definition of "ophthalmia." On the other hand he took the words "Dilatacio, Pulpe, Inuersatio, Palpebrarum" as names for four separate diseases.

[1] *pulpe*, for *pupillae*.

[2] On the bottom of the page: "*contra obtalmia Recipe, the inner rynde off the ceritre, sethe yt in venygger, & hold a sponffulle in thy movthe lucke warme, so do oft in þ' day.*"

[4] Sl. 2463, fol. 84 b.: "*As it is sayd of auctores in* þe *generall Chapiter of enpostumes, þat euery floryng of humore þat swellith a member ouer his kyndely beyng is an enpostume, ri3t so obtalmia is cleped an enpostume of þe eye.*"

[5] *obtalmia*, med. Lat. form of ὀφθαλμία, inflammation of the eye.

[6] *scume*, despumare. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 450. "*scummyn lycurys*, despumo."

[7] Lat.: quod non dicitur vilipendi, quia est nobilior medicina. Sl. 2463, fol. 85: "*and sette not li3tly þerby, for it is þe noblest medicyne.*"

[8] MS. *hoot*. Lat. si causa sit frigida. Sl. ibid.: "*and yf* þe *cause be of colde.*"

white prickis or reed, & sumtyme þer ben noon sich pointis þeron þat a man mai se, saue al his iȝe is reed & to-swollen. & he schal haue greet akinge & pricking. & þouȝ þer be noon vlcera þeron, þe cure mai be do al in oon maner. ¶ If þe akynge be swiþe greet, þan aceesse þe akynge, & þan lete him blood in þe heed-veyne[1] þat sitt in þe arme & in þat same side þat akiþ. & if he haue passioun in boþe his iȝen, þan þou schalt lete him blood in boþe his armys. & þou schalt lete him blood þe quantite after his elde & after his strenkþe; or sette a ventuse vpon his schuldris, & þat is more better, for þe mater comeþ more [2]of blood þan of colre. & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe signes of blood þat ben forseid // ¶ And if þe mater come of colre, þat þou miȝt knowe bi greet akinge & scharp, & litil swellinge. & þe mater wole be ȝelow aboute hise iȝen. & he schal haue but litil reednes. & þau þou schalt lete him blood in lasse[3] quantite þan[4] if þe mater come of blood. & blood letinge is good in þis caas, for þe scharpnes of colre mai be take awei wiþ þe blood letinge. & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ a decoccioun of fruitis with mirabolanis þat ben forseid in þe chapitre of allopucia. & if colre be medlid wiþ ony partie of gret mater, þat falliþ ofte tyme, þan þer is no medicyn so good as cochie Rasie. & first he schal do þingis þerto for to aceesse þe matere / R7, a ȝelke of an eij, & as miche of oile of rosis, & as miche of iuys of verueine, & ℈ j. of saffron, & ℈ j. opij; medle þese togidere, & make þerof an enplastre, & leie it vpon a sotil lynnen clooþ, & leie it on þe iȝe. & in his iȝe leie collirium album with wommans milk[5] þat noryschiþ a maide child; for .G. made þis medicyn[6] / Rasis made collirium album in þis maner, [7]& it is good þing, for I haue preued it ofte

The symptoms are great pains and swelling.

Treatment. Soothe the pain by blood-letting

or by cupping.

[2 lf. 164]

If choleric matter is the cause, use blood-letting and purging.

Purging Pills.

Cochie Rasis

R

Mitigatum optimum *contra* dolorem in oculis

Colirium album Galion. Rasis.

[7 lf. 164, bk.]

[1] vena cephalica. [3] Lat. maiori. [4] MS. þat.

[5] The use of woman's milk for an eye-salve is mentioned by Galenus *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, Lib. IV. Cap. 3.

[6] The translator has omitted the following prescription preserved in Sl. 2463, fol. 85 b.: *and he eleped hit helpyng, for he, þat he made hit fore, was holpen by one leyng therto. ¶ Take iiij. 3. of ceruse sarsed, and distemper hit wit water on a marbull stone tenne dayes, and kepe hit euermore couered þat þer falle no ponder þerinne; thanne take .ij. 3. and an halfe of gomme arabik and putte hit in þe water, to þat hit be molten in þat water, and þanne cole hit and medele yt as well as þou may wit þi forsayd ceruse; and whane þis medeeyne is made liche paste, adde therto these thynges sotilly poudered and sarsed tryes or thryes thoruȝ a sotyll lynnen clothe. Take amidum .iiij. 3. sarcocolle, safran, opium ana þe iiij. partie of a .3. grynde hem all wel togeder longe tyme, and make smale pillules and reserue hem, to þat þou hane nede, and whanne yt ys nede dystempere one of hem with* (fol. 86) *womannes mylk and administer yt.*

R A Collyrium used by Rhasis.

tyme. Take ceruse waische .x. partis, sarcocolle greet' .iij. partis, amidi .ij. partis, draganti[1] .j. parti, opij .j ß / Grinde alle þese togidere & tempere hem wiþ rein water, & make þerof' pelottis as gret' as it' were a pese & kepe hem / & wh*a*nne þou wolt' worche 4 þerwiþ, tempere oon þerof' wiþ wommans milk þat' it' be as þicke as it' were must',[2] & leie þerof' in hise ȝen þre siþis in þe dai. þis collirie aceessiþ þe akinge. & in sumtyme it' curiþ obtolmiam in oon dai as I haue preued itt' manie tymes. & wh*a*nne he haþ slepe, if' 8 hise ȝen cleue togidere, þan he schal waische hise ȝen wiþ water of' rosis hoot', & þan leie in þe corner of' his ȝe puluus citrinus, þat' is maad in þis maner / ℞, sarcocolle x. partis, aloes, croci, licij ana partes .ij., mirre partem vnam, & make herof' sotil poudre, & leie 12 herof' a litil in þe corner of' his ȝe /

'puluis citrinus

The patient's diet: He shall take neither meat nor wine;

& wh*a*nne þe reednes & swellyng' of' his ȝe is aweie, he mote be war of' his dieting', for he mai ete no fleisch ne drinke no wijn, saue he mote ete colature of' bran wiþ almaunde milk. & wh*a*nne 16 he lieþ in his bed his heed mote lie hiȝe, & he schal ligge [3]vpon þe hool side & not' vpon þe soor side / & if' boþe his ȝen ben soor, þan he mote diȝte him as sutilli as he may.[4] & he mote ofte tyme haue

[3 lf. 165]

he shall lie in a dark room,

þe sauour of' water coold, & þe sauour of' wiþi & campher, & he 20 mote lie in a derk hous þat' he mowe se no liȝt'. & wh*a*nne þe mater goiþ awei faste & his bodi [is][5] þan clene, þan sette him in a baþ of' swete water, & lete him be þerin but' a litil while[6] / If' it' be so þat' þe akynge aswage not' wiþ blood leting' & colliries & laxatiuis, 24 þan it' is a signe þat' þere is pustula woxe þerinne, & it' is nede for to make it' maturatif'; for þe akinge wole not' goon awei, til it' be maad maturatif'. & in þis caas baþinge is ful noious / For if' akinge be go sumwhat' awei, it' wole come aȝen wiþ baþing'; þerfore thou 28 schalt' attende for to make maturatif'.[7] & putte in his ȝe a collirie

and take a bath, when the matter has gone.

Bathing is noxious, when there is a pustule.

Maturative medicines: Colirium thuris

[1] *draganti*, Lat. dragaganthi.

[2] *must*, Lat. mustum.

[4] Sl. 2463, fol. 86: "*and yef bothe eyen be sore he schal lye vpward, his hodes muste be wyde.*" Lat.: caputia vestium non sint stricta.

[5] *is*, omitted.

[6] Sl. ibid.: "*And yef it be plesaunt to hym lete hym abyde therinne, and lete hym foment his eyen and his heuede. And yf he wexe riȝt hoot in þe bathth, lete hym dwelle therin not passyng an houre, but þenne þe pacient schal be purged ayen.* ¶ *And in þe laste ende of þe obtalmia yt ys good to take hoot salt water, þat rosen haue be enfusyd inne, and lete hit droppe doune fro an hyȝe vpon þe hornes of his heued, þat yt mowe passe downe so by the eyen.*"

[7] *thou schalt attende for to make m..* Lat.: ergo in tendas ad maturandum. Compare O.Fr. s'atendre à faire qu. ch.

of' thus wiþ al[1] togidere til þe quitt*ur*e schauwie, for þ*an* þe aki*n*ge
wole aceesse / For wh*an*ne pustula is to-br*o*ke, & quitt*ur*e is gaderid,
þ*an* þou schalt' putt' þ*er*on a collirie of' lced. & þ*an* þou schalt' Colirium plumbe.
4 fulfille alle þi*n*gis þat' schule*n* be seid wiþ vlceribus / A collirie of'
thus þ*at*' is maturatif' for [2]pustul*is* is m*aa*d *in* þis man*er* / ℞, thur*is* [2 lf. 165, bk.]
albi gu*m*mosi grossi, p*ar*tes .x, antimonij, sarcocolle an*a*. p*ar*tes .v, ℞
croci p*ar*tes ij, & te*mper*e he*m* wiþ muscilage of' fenigrec; & make
8 þ*er*of' pelottis, & kepe he*m* for þi*n* vss. & wh*an* þou hast' nede
herof', þ*an* te*mper*e a pelot' w*ith* þe forseid licour, & make it' moist'
& bi*n*de it' vpon his ȝe, & lete þis ligge til þe akynge go awei; &
putte in his ȝe colirium de plu*m*bo, þ*at*' is maad *in* þis man*er* / ℞, .R.
12 plu*m*bi vsti, antimonij, ȝuc*ar*e, eris vsti, gu*m*m*i* arabic, d*ragant*i
an*a* p*ar*tes .viij, opij p*ar*tem ß., & make herof' a sutil poudre, &
þ*an* te*mper*e it' wiþ reyn-watir & wiþ wat*er* of' ro*sis*, & make þ*er*of'
pelottis. & wh*an*ne þou wolt' vse he*m*, distemp*er*e oon þ*er*of' or
16 tweyne wiþ wat*er* of' ro*sis*, & binde it' vpon his ȝe; for þis collirie
soudiþ & gendriþ fleisch / Aftir þe tyme þ*at*' it' is soudid, if' þ*er*e
leue a litil ampulle,[3] þ*an* þou schalt' cure it' as þ*o*u schalt' fynde
in his p*r*opre place. ¶ ffleumatik mater makiþ ful seelde*n* ony Apostemas in the eyes seldom arise from phlegm.
20 enpostym *in* þe ȝe, & malancolie myche latter; neþeles we wolen [4 lf. 166]
telle curis of' he*m*. ¶ Signes of' [4]fleu*m* be*n* þese: greet' swellyn*g*e
& manie teeris, & litil reednes ouþ*er* noon; & þe cure he*r*of' is to
p*ur*ge hi*m* wiþ cochijs or wiþ trocisco de turbit', saue cochic be*n*
24 more bett*er*. & þou schalt' putte *in* his eere muscilagine*m*[5] fenigrec, In this case purge and apply a plaster.
& putte *in* his ȝe ȝelowe poudre þ*at*' is forseid. & vpon his ȝe þou
schalt' leie enplastre m*aa*d of' aloe, mirra, acacia, & croco an*a*, & ℞
diste*mper*e he*m* wiþ mussilagine fenigreci. & in þis caas good wijn
28 wole do hi*m* good, dru*n*ken in mesure / If' it' come of' malancolie, Treatment of an apostema if Melancholy is the cause.
þou schalt' knowe bi blaknes of' al þe bodi[6] & leene, & bi drienes of'
hise ȝe*n*, & ful litil reednes or noon *in* hise ȝe*n*. & þe cure herof'
is for to p*ur*ge wel malancolie, & baþi*n*g' & fome*nta*c*ion* wiþ rosis &
32 violet', & flouris of' borage & buglossa. & þis þou schalt' wite þ*at*' Nota.
in eu*er*y man*er* of' obtalmia, *in* þe ende þ*er*of' baþi*n*g' be*n* good.

[1] Lat.: cum coto, donec super cotum sanies apparebit. The translator read "toto." Sl. 2463, f. 86: "*with cotoun, to þat þe quytture schewe vpon þe cottone.*"

[3] *ampulle*, a tumour in the skin of the hands or the feet. See Tomm. *Dict.*, s. v. ampolla. The Lat. has *albula*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Albule* id est macule oculi albe."

[5] MS. *&* inserted.

[6] Sl. 2463, fol. 87: "*All þe body of þe pacient ys blakkyssh.*"

If pain and swelling follow an injury, apply blood drawn from a living dove.

¶ If[1] þat[1] reednes of[1] þe iȝe come of[1] smytyng[1] & akynge, & swellynge come þerwiþ, þan it[1] is necessarie for to haue a ȝong[1] culuer quyk, & lete hir blood in a veyne vndir hir wynge wiþ a nedle, & putte it[1] in his iȝe as hoot[1] as it[1] comeþ fro þe culuer.[1] Þis 4 doiþ awei [2]þe akynge, & þe reednes & þe brennyng[1].

[2 lf. 166, bk.]

de vlceribus oclorum.

These ulcers are accompanied with continual pain.

vij maner vlcus

The symptoms of an ulcer are pain and a red point in the eye.

¶ Vlcera ben engendrid in a mannes iȝe. & þan þer comeþ greet[1] akinge þerwiþ & abydynge, & þis mai not[1] be doon awei wiþ collirium album, ne wiþ noon mitigatif[1] / And þere ben vij. maner 8 vlcera, & of[1] alle we wolen telle her curis schortli & profitabli, of[1] curis þat[1] I am expert[1] of[3] longe tyme. ¶ The signes of[1] vlcera þat[1] pustula comeþ þerof[1] ben þese: grete akingis þat[1] mai not[1] be swagid wiþ collirium album, & þer wole in his iȝe appere a reed poynt[1] or a 12 corn. & if[1] al his iȝe be reed, þan þe poynt[1] or corn wole be more reed, & þat[1] point[1] wole make greet[1] agreuaunce, & greet[1] swellinge, & greet[1] betyng[1], & manie teeris / It[1] is greet[1] nede in þis passioun for to sotille his dietyng[1], & do þerto þingis for to make mitigatif[1], as 16 colirium album, & lete him blood, & do al þe cure as it[1] is aforseid / If[1] þou miȝt[1] not[1] defende þe mater wiþ alle þese remedies ne aswage þe akynge, or þer wexe a corn þeron or vlcus, & collirium de plumbo ne wole suffise for to soude vlcus, þan þou schalt[1] leie þerto mitiga- 20 tiuis for to do awei þe akynge. & do in his iȝe collirium [4]eliser,[5] for þat[1] wole defende þat[1] þe enpostym schal not[1] wexe, þat[1] is maad in þis maner / ℞, antimonij, emathitis,[6] ana partes .x., acacie partes .iij., aloes partem .j., grinde hem sotilly & tempere hem wiþ iuys of[1] 24

Treatment:

Apply Colirium album to relieve pain;

and if this is insufficient,

[4 lf. 167]

Colirium Eliphur.

℞

[1] The use of blood taken from a vein under the wings of a dove is mentioned by Galen: De Simplicium Medicamentorum medicamentis, Lib. X., Cap. II. 3. Trevisa translation of *Bart. de Propr.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, (Add. 27,944, fol. 84), "*Also philosophres telleþ as Constant, seiþ þat þe blood i-drawe out of þe poynt of þe riȝt wynge of a culver, oþer of a swalowe, oþer of a lepwink, & i-doo in þe bygynnynge rppon þat mole, clensiþ hit miȝtyly / for þe blood of þese foules heteþ and dissolreþ strongliche.*"

[3] *of curis þat I am expert of*, Lat. curam quam sum expertus.

[5] MS. *elifer*, Lat. elesir, the form of Arab. eliksir as preserved in Ital. elisire. It means in its pharmacological sense an alcoholic liquor, in which aromatic substances are dissolved. Devic (*Dict. Ét.*) states, that the Arabic word is merely a transcription of Greek ξηρόν, dry. Lanfranc gives a curious explanation of the word in the present passage, which has been omitted by the translator: collyrium elesir: quod est dicere penetrativum, quod egressum uveae prohibet. Sl. 2463, f. 87 b.:. "*colirium eleser þat is þe seyne persyng, þe whiche defendith þe egression of vuea.*"

[6] *emathites*, hæmatites, bloodstone. Mentioned as a stiptic and an eye-medicine in *Galen* (ed. Kühn, vol. X., 330); in *Bart. De Propr.*, Lib. XVI., Cap. 39 (Add. 27,944, fol. 199 *b*), "*Emathites is a reed stoon . . . . & is good aȝeins þe flux of þe bladdre and to sore yhen.*"

corigiole,[1] & make þerof' polottis; & dissolue herof' wiþ watir of' rosis, & binde it' faste to his iȝe. Þis collirium fastene þ his iȝe, & makiþ þat' þe enpostym may wexe no ferþere / ¶ Macula[2] is a wem
4 in a mannys iȝe, & summe be white þerof' & sittiþ vpon þe siȝt' of' þe iȝe,[3] & summe bisidis þe siȝt'. & þis comeþ of' an oold obtalmiam. & herto principali is good collirium album of' .G. þat' is forseid. & þis collirie is good þerfore / ℞, aloes, croci. ana partes viij, eris vsti
8 waischen, gummi arabici, opij, ana partes vj., mirre xij. partis, climie[4] partes iiij., thurus partes .iij, grinde alle þese sotilly & tempere hem wiþ swete wijn, & make þerof' pelottis, & kepe hem: & wiþ þis collirie I temperid collirium album. Galien & I haue curid
12 wiþ þese .ij. colliries, & wiþ cauterijs, & kuttingis of' veynes, manye men / & I curide þerwiþ a man þat' was clepid sir Reynold Manesyn. & he hadde obtolmiam id est postym in his iȝe longe tyme to[5]fore, & þerof' came manye wemmys in his iȝe; summe þerof' weren white
16 & summe þerof' weren reed, & maden þat' he miȝte not' se, & anoþer man ledde him. & þouȝ þer were leid mete tofore him vpon þe boord, he miȝte not' se þerof' / & þo I lokide to him; & wiþinne a monþe he miȝt' se to pleie at' þe tabler.[6] & I dide awei alle þe
20 wemmys of' his iȝen, so þat' he miȝte se as wel as euere he dide tofore / & þere tofore he hadde manie oþere lechis, & leiden in his iȝen stronge collirijs, & algate his sijknes was more & more: & so his siȝt' was binome him þre ȝeer. ¶ Collirium .G. is good for
24 obtolmiam, as I haue apreued manie siþis; & it' is good for vlcera þat' ben newe & not' olde, & for wemmis.

Macula is a white spot on or near the pupil of the eye.

Galien

Colirium album

Galien

A nobleman who had lost his eye-sight [5 lf. 167, bk.] was treated by Lanfranc, and after a month he could play backgammon.

Colirium Galien.

& sumtyme sich a maner pricke comeþ of' smytynge, or of' greet' crijnge, or of' blood as þoruȝ brekynge of' a veyne, & makiþ a poynt'
28 in a mannes iȝe, & þerfore blood letynge is good. & do in his iȝe

If a 'point' in the eye is caused by an injury, use blood-letting,

[1] "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas." Halle, *Table*, p. 29.

[2] *macula* as a name for an eye-disease is not used by the Latin authors. It occurs in *Bart. de Propr. rer.*, and is translated by *webbe, mole.* See p. 248, note 3.

[3] *þe siȝt of þe iȝe*, Lat. cornea. "The sight of the eye, that is, the hole of the skinne called Ragoides, out of which the vertue visible worketh his operation." Cooper. Compare O.E. *sêo*, f., O.H.G. *seha*, f., the black of the eye.

[4] *climie.* Matth. Sylv. "Klimia. Cadimia. alkimia Auicenna'. est fumus seu fuligo adherens superioribus fornacis in purificatione cuiusque metalli. sioria vero est fex descendens ad inferiora."

[6] *tabler.* Lat.: vide ipsum ludentem in vesperis ad tabulas cum taxillis. "*Tabler*, or table of pley or game." *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 485.

and apply the blood of a dove and a woman's milk.

blood of[1] a culu*er*, & waische his iȝen wiþ wo*m*mans milk warm, as it[1] eomeþ out[1] of[1] þe tete.[1]

[2 lf. 168]

¶ Rubedo i*d est* reednes, pruritus i*d est* iechinge, sebel, sca[2]bies, & vngula, goiþ al i*n* oon eours.[3] & oon herof[1] is ease of[1] ano*þer* / 4

Redness of the eyes causes itching and vice versa. Both occasion scab and vngula.

For of[1] long[1] reednes tofore eomeþ icehi*n*ge, & su*m*tyme iechinge is ease of[1] reednes, & of[1] þese .ij. eomeþ scabbe i*n* þe iȝe liddis; & if[1] it[1] gad*er*e togidere i*n* þe eorner of[1] þe iȝe, þa*n* it[1] is clepid vngula / þerfore þou must[1] first[1] eure hastily þe reednes & þe iechinge of[1] his 8 iȝe*n*, lest[1] þ*er* eome ony oþ*er* sijknes þ*er*of[1] / Reednes may be curid

Galien

wiþ þe white of[1] an ey & w*ith* eollirium albu*m* / Galien seiþ: icchinge may be curid wiþ whit[1] wijn, i*n* whieh be grou*n*de*n* aloes, & leid i*n* his iȝe wiþ soft[1] ly*n*ne*n* elooþ, & bou*n*de*n* þ*er*to. ¶ Scabies 12

Scabies. The eye-lids are full of pimples.

is wha*n*ne þe iȝe liddis be*n* reed & to-swolle, & ful of[1] reed pinplis. & þis passiou*n* makiþ greet[1] icchinge & bre*n*nynge, & manie teeris / þe eure he*r*of[1] is þis: waische hise iȝen wiþ wijn i*n* whieh be resolued grene cope*r*ose, þat[1] is clepid vitriolu*m* romanu*m*.[4] & if[1] 16

Colirium rubeum ℞

þis suffise not[1], þa*n* þou schalt[1] make eollirium rubeu*m* in þis man*er* / ℞, emathitis, vit*r*ioli adusti an*a* pa*r*tes tres, eris vsti pa*r*tes duas, mirre, e*r*oci, an*a* pa*r*tes x., pipe*r*is longi pa*r*te*m* ʃ; te*m*pe*r*e alle þes

[5 lf. 168, bk.]

wiþ old [5]wijn, & make þ*er*of[1] pelottis, & kepe he*m*; and wha*n*ne 20 þou wolt[1] vse he*m*, diste*m*pe*r*e he*m* wiþ oold wijn, & do it[1] i*n* his iȝe / If[1] þe mater be greet[1] & strong[1], þa*n* þou muste vse collirium

Colirium viri[de] ℞

viride, þ*at*[1] is maad i*n* þis maner / ℞, floris eris pa*r*tes tres, vitrioli vsti pa*r*tes .vj., arseniei rubei, baurae, an*a* pa*r*tes .ij, 24 armoniacu*m* dissolued i*n* iuys of[1] rue; & grinde alle þe oþ*er*e sotilli, & medle he*m* þ*er*wiþ also & make þ*er*of[1] pelottis, & dissolue oon

[1] *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 17 (Add. 27,944, fol. 84 *a*), "*Also it happiþ þat blood wooseþ out of reynes & of pipes & comeþ to þe yȝen, & veynes brekeþ or be i-hurt in þe kertil þat hatte coniunctiva, & þan suche vnhiȝtnes of þe yȝe comeþ of blood þat comeþ so to þe yȝe. ¶ Culuir blood or turtil blood dissolreþ & departeþ þis blood* þat *is so i-ronne as const*antinus *seiþ, & so doþ womman melk wiþ ensens, & so doþ freisch chese i-medlid with hony wiþouten salt, if it be laide* þerto."

[3] *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, "De lippitudine albugine de panno siue de macula. *Another erel of þe yȝen þat we clepiþ a webbe, & Constan*tinus *clepiþ it albugo, & bredi*þ *in þis mane*re. ¶ *ffers*t *a rewme renneþ to þe yȝen, &* þer*of comeþ an yeel þat hatte obtalmia, a schrewed blereynes & ache & aposteme; & if it is erel i-kept* þer*of leveþ a litil mole & infectioun, & longtyme turneþ & growiþ into a webbe & þicke, & occupieþ more place þan al þe blacke of þe iȝe. ¶ This webbe turneþ into cloob by more þicnes & occupieþ more place, for it ocupieþ al þe blake of þe yȝe, & at þe last it turneþ into þe kynde of a naile of þe honde.*"

[4] *Vitriolum Romanum.* "The one growyng of it-selfe in the earth by concretion, and is vulgarly called Coppa rosa." Halle, *Table*, p. 139.

þerof' in watir of' rue distillid & leid in his iȝe // ¶ **Sebel**[1] is seid, wh*a*nne þe veynes þat' ben ioyned togid*e*re in þe iȝe,[2] ben ful of' blood & wexiþ greet', & su*m*tyme a clooþ þat' is in a ma*n*nes iȝe. For to cure þis passiou*n* collirium rubeum is good þerfore, or collirium viride þat' ben forseid // ¶ **Vngula** sittiþ in þe corner of' þe iȝe þat' is next' þe nose, & gooþ forþ vpon þe iȝe til it' hile al þe iȝe; & su*m*tyme it' comeþ of' a super*f*luite of' fleisch þat' wexiþ in þe corner of' a ma*n*nes iȝe, & wexiþ forþ abrood as it' were a clooþ. & þer be*n* manie mane*r*s þerof', & oon is sotil & þi*n*ne, & goiþ ouer þe iȝe. & of' su*m* me*n* þat' is clepid a clooþ, & þat' oþer mane*r* is more fleischi & þicke, & is clepid vngula / þe cure [3]herof' be*n* collirium viride & rubeum, þat' be*n* forseid: & if' þis suffisiþ not', þa*n* it' mote be kutt' awey wiþ instrumentis as miche as me mai kutte awei þerof', & aftirward cure hi*m* w*ith* collirijs / In þe kuttinge of' vngulam be war þat' þou kutte not' þe fleisch in þe corner of' þe iȝe to depe; for if' it' were kutt' to depe, his iȝe schulde watre, & be ful of' teeris al þe while he lyueþ. ¶ Also in scabbe, sebel, & vngula, p*ur*gaciou*n* is good, & blood leting'; & þe pa*tient* schal absteyne hi*m* fro alle swete þi*n*gis & scharp, for al þese forseid passiou*n*s comeþ of' blood corrupt'. ¶ **Cateracta**[4] is wat*er* þat' falliþ dou*n* bitwixe þe .ij. sky*n*nes of' þe iȝe & abidiþ tofore þe place þat' is clepid pupilla, þat' is þe poynt' of' þe iȝe. & þa*n* it' defendiþ þat' a man mai not' se; & it' is clepid cataracta, bi þe liknes of' an instrument' þat' is a mille / & su*m*tyme þis passiou*n* bigy*n*neþ, & su*m*tyme it' is co*n*fermed / Signes of' þe bigy*n*nynge be*n* þese / It' semeþ to þe pa*tient* þat' he seeþ briȝt' þingis tofore hi*m*, & hi*m* þi*n*kiþ þat' oon þi*n*g' is .ij. þingis or þre / & su*m*tyme it' semeþ to hi*m* þat' þi*n*g' þat' he seeþ to be ful of' holis / & su*m*tyme þese þi*n*gis [5]mowe come of' yuel

Sebel, an inflammation of the veins of the eye.

Ungula, a web in the eye, sometimes covering the whole eye-ball.

[3 lf. 169]

If Collyriums prove insufficient, cut away the growth.

Cateracta. Cataract is a water between the two skins of the eye.

At the beginning of the disease the patient sees double.

[5 lf. 169, bk.]

[1] "*Sebel* idem quod Serasif i. vene rubee que sunt in albo oculorum." *Sinonima Serapionis*, ed. Venet. 1497. Arab. Pers. zabēl, Dung, a dried gourd, basket. (Johnson.) Fr. sébile, basket.

[2] Lat.: Sebel dicitur quando venæ conjunctivæ et corneæ, quæ sunt in earum superficie — — replentur sanguine. The translator mistook 'conjunctivæ' for 'conjunctæ.'

[4] *Cataracta.* The Latin authors used this word for 1. waterfall, 2. floodgate, sluice of a river (Scheller *Dict.*). In its pathological meaning, it is first found in *Platearius*, xiith cent. (*Practica*, Lib. II., Cap. VII., fol. 209 *b*, Lugd. 1525, quoted by Hirsch, *Klin. Monatsbl. f. Augenheilkunde*, 1869, p. 284). The explanations vary according to the above-mentioned Latin significations. Lanfranc adopts the meaning 'gate.' Lat.: "et dicitur cataracta per similitudinem illius instrumenti, quod est apud molendina: quod quando eleuatur, currit aqua per canalem: quando deponitur nihil currit." Molendinum, "*a mylle.*" Wr. Wü., *Voc.*, 596, 27.

This irregularity may arise from a disordered stomach, and then it is easily cured.

disposicioun of þe stomac, & þan it is not so greet dredc þerof; for wha*n*ne þe stomac is curid, þese signes wolcn go awei / In þis man*er* þou schalt wite wher it come of þe stomac or of þe iȝe / If þese signes comen wha*n*ne þe stomac is ful, & wha*n*ne he is fastynge 4 & þei come not, it is a signe þat it comeþ of þe stomac / And if it is *in* hisc iȝen contynuelli, þa*n* it comeþ not of þe stomac, but it is sijknes of þe iȝen / ¶ Also pu*r*ge hi*m* oones wiþ pululas cochias,

When the Cataract is developed, a spot on the pupil of the eye is discovered.

& if it is ncuer þe bettir, þa*n* þou miȝt wite for certeyn þat þe 8 passiou*n* comeþ of þe stomac. And if þis passiou*n* haþ longe durid *in* a man, & if þou miȝt no þing se *in* his iȝe, þa*n* þou schalt wite for certeyn þat it is a bigy*n*nyng of cataracta / Wha*n*ne cataracta is confermed, it schal not be hid to a ma*n*nes witt þat is vsid *in* þe 12 craft. & *in* þis mane*r*e þou schalt knowe it: þou schalt se a mane*r* colour vpon þe poynt of þe siȝt of þe iȝe, þat wole su*m*tyme be whit, & su*m*tyme *in* þe colour of askis, & su*m*tyme a litil grene: & þis stoppiþ al a ma*n*nes siȝt // 16

[1 lf. 170]

The Cataract can be cured by medicines at its early state.

Regulate the patient's diet, purge and apply a Collyrium prepared with the gall of several animals.

R

Þis mane*r* siknes [1]schal be helid wiþ phisie or it be confermed. & wha*n*ne it is confermed, it mote be curid wiþ a ma*n*nes hand. þe pa*tient* mote absteine hi*m* fro sopers[2] & fro al mane*r* fatte potagis, & from al manc*r* moiste fruitis, & fro al maner fruitis þat 20 engendriþ moistnes / sauc he schal vse hote þingis, & he schal ofte be pu*r*gid wiþ pillis cochie rasis, þat is þe beste þing laxatif þat mai be for iȝe*n*, & þa*n* make a collirie of gallis of beestis þat is ma*a*d *in* þis maner. R, fellis grue; fellis stelionis, fellis hirci, fellis 24 anticipitris,[3] fellis aquile & pe*r*dicis, & alle þese gallis ben drie, & take herof .x. pa*r*tijs, cuforbie, colloquintide, an*a*. pa*r*tc*m* .j, grinde alle þese & tempe*r*e he*m* wiþ þe iuys of fenigreci & make þe*r*of pelottis. & wha*n*ne þou wolt worche þe*r*wiþ, resolue oon þe*r*of wiþ 28 wate*r* of fenel distillid, & leie it in his iȝe twies on þe day ./

R

A Collyrium prepared with lye.

¶ Anoþe*r* liȝt medicyn þat is pre*u*ed / Take askis of vynes & sarce he*m* & make þe*r*of lie w*ith* good whit wijn, & lete it stonde *in* a glasen vessel, & lete it clarifie þe*r*i*n*ne. & þis is a good collirie 32 þe*r*fore, for þe more cold þat cataracta is, þe bettir þis medicyn is

[4 lf. 170, bk.]

þe*r*fore / And if cataracta be [4]so confermed þat it stoppe al þe liȝt, þa*n* it is incurable wiþ medicyns, & also þe*r* ben manie oþe*r*e

Cure of Cataract by operation: Dilate the pupil of the

i*n*curable. ¶ And if it so be þat he se not, þa*n* make hi*m* close 36 his iȝen togide*r*e, & frote al softe vpon þe iȝe lid þat is soor; & if it be in boþe his iȝen, þa*n* serue so boþe, & þa*n* lete hi*m* opene his

[2] *soper*, cœna. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. supper.
[3] *anticipiter*, med. Lat. for *accipiter*. Dufr. Glass.

iȝen sodeinli anoon, & loke if' þe poynt' of' þe iȝe bicome whit',[1] & if' it' bicome not' whit', þa*n* it' is of' .ij. þi*n*gis; ouþ*er* it' is opilaciou*n* of' þe nerue, þa*t*' comeþ fro þe brain & is holow & defendiþ þe siȝt', or it is cataracta þa*t*' is greet' & stoppiþ þe nerue, & stoppiþ þe weie of' þe spirit' þa*t*' it' mai not' come to þe poynt' of' þe siȝt þa*t*' is clepid pupilla / If' þou frotist' his iȝe as it' is forseid, þa*n* lete hi*m* do vp his iȝe hastili, & þ*o*u schalt' se þa*n* vpon his iȝe a whit' þi*n*g' as it' were a peerle, þa*n* þou miȝt' sureli worche wiþ instrumentis of' cirurgie[2] / First' þou schalt' make þe pacient' sitte vpon a stool tofore þee, & þou schalt' sitte a litil hiȝer þan he, & his iȝe þa*t*' is hool þou schalt' bynde faste þa*t*' he ne mowe no þi*n*g' se þ*er*wiþ, & þa*n* þou schalt' haue i*n* þi mouþ a fewe braunchis [3]of' fenel, & þou schalt' breke he*m* a litil wi*th* þi teeþ, & þa*n* þou schalt' blowe i*n* his iȝe .ij. siþis or iij. þa*t*' þe fume of' þe fenel mowe entre into his iȝe / þa*n* þou schalt' haue an instrument' of' siluir, schape i*n* the maner of' a nedle, and it' schal sitte i*n* a greet' hafte þa*t*' þou mai þe bettir hold it' wiþ þi*n* hand, & þa*n* þou schalt' bigy*n*ne aforȝens þe lasse corner of' þe iȝe, & þ*o*u schalt' putte i*n* þin instrument' anoon to þe corn þa*t*' is i*n* þe iȝe, & wha*n*ne þou seest' þe poi*n*t' of' þe instrument' vndir þe corn,[4] þa*n* lete þe poi*n*t' of' þin instrument' goon anoon to þe wat*er* þa*t*' is gaderid tofore þe iȝe / And wha*n*ne þou hast' broken þe place þa*t*' þe wat*er* was y*n*ne, þa*n* presse it' adou*n*ward, & drawe out' al þe watir þ*er*of' clene,[5] & if' þ*er* come more watir þ*er*to, þa*n* þou must' reherse þis werk aȝe*n*. & if' þ*er* come no more wat*ir* þ*er*to, þa*n* þou schalt' leie vpon his iȝe a plastre m*aa*d of' þe ȝelke of' an eij wiþ þe white, & bole leid vpon ly*n*nen clooþ & binde vpon his iȝe, & lete þe pa*tient* be i*n* a derk place, & he schal heere no

eye by rubbing the eyelid.

It will not dilate, if there is an obstruction in the nerve.

In the dilated pupil a white spot like a pearl is seen.

Then bandage the sound eye,

[3 :f. 171]

and pass a silver needle through the eye-ball until it reaches the white corn and the cataractic water.

When you have pressed out this water,

apply a plaster to the eye, and let the patient be in a dark room,

[1] *whit* for *wid*, Lat.: vide si pupilla dilatatur.

[2] Lat.: quod cum videris manum ullatenus non apponas. This method of testing, whether a cataract is fit for operation or not, has already been proposed by Galen, as mentions *Paulus de Aegina*, Lib. VI., Cap. 21. We find the same in *Hali Abbas*, Lib. IX., Cap. 28, fol. 279, ed., Lugd. 1523. See Magnus H., *Geschichte des grauen Staars.* Leipzig, 1876.

[4] *corn*, a mistake; the translator did not know the meaning of "cornea." Lat.: et impellas instrumentum usq*ue* ad corneam: quia tunc videbis illum. Cum aute*m* instrumentum videbis sub cornea illum impellas vsq*ue* ad aqua*m* quæ est coram pupilla.

[5] *& drawe out al þe watir þerof clene*, an insertion of the translator. The operation which he describes is the dislocation of cataract by depression. A fuller and more accurate account of it is given by John Vigo, who begins his description with the following words: "And yf the cataractes cannot be healed, whe*n* they are confirmed, then we must turne to ha*n*dy operatio*n*. And though we cou*n*seyled to leave it to ye tothdrawers, yet we wyl declare ye maner therof." Traheron, *Vigo*, fol. 136^b^.

and in perfect rest, for 8 days.

greet' noise, & he schal not' traueile wiþi*nne* .viij. daies, & he mote be kept' so þ*at*' he cow3e not' [1] & fro wrappe / Sumtyme þe poynt' of' þe i3e si3t' is stoppid wiþi*nne*forþ, & þ*an* he schal neuere be curid

[1 lf. 171, bk.]

An obstruction of the pupil from internal causes is difficult to cure.

pig*ra* Rasis

þ*er*of' ; ouþ*er* it' wole be greet' maistrie for to eure it'. & if' it' mai 4 be curid, þis is þe eure þ*er*of': þou muste p*ur*ge hi*m* w*ith* pig*ra* rasis, & wiþ pululis eochijs þ*at*' rasis made, & þei muste be ofte 3eue, & þou muste do i*n* his i3en drijnge collirijs & oþ*er*e driy*ng*' medieyns / Ouþ*er* it' mai come of' causis w*ith*outforþ as of' smitynge 8 & þ*at*' mai li3tli be curid / First' þe pa*tient* schal be lete blood, if' age mai suffre it' & oþ*er*e p*ar*ticlis þ*at*' be forseid, for blood letynge wole helpe for to avoide awei þe enpostym, & þ*an* þou schalt' make hi*m* an enplastre wiþ oon of' þese medieyns, & it' schal be bou*n*den 12 þ*er*to softli / ℞, mele of' beenis þ*at*' be sotil & grinde it' wiþ wiþi leeues smal / Also take mele of' beenys & flouris of' camomille & þe rote of' altea .ʒ. ij., & also biteine .ϑ .j., absinth*ium* .ʒ j. & seþe he*m* i*n* wat*er* & make þ*er*of' an enplastre & lete þe pa*tient* reste, 16 p*r*obatu*m* es*t*.

If the obstruction arises from external causes, let blood

and apply a plaster.

℞

Hordeolum is a swelling in the eye-lids,

¶ Ordecilus is a litil swelli*n*ge, & is long' & smal & comeþ to a child wh*an*ne it' is bore, & þis passiou*n* wole sitte in [2] his i3e liddis / þe cure herof' is for to lete he*m* blood & purge hi*m* of' humours cor- 20 rupt', & do þ*er*to þis medicyn : medle aloes w*ith* lieio[3] & make þ*er*of' a poudre / Also þou sehalt' anoy*n*te hi*m* wiþ storax liquida & anoi*n*te him þ*er*wiþ / ¶ Also resolue a litil opoponac i*n* wat*er*, and make an enplastre þ*er*of' & leie vpon the place, & þe same þing' doiþ 24 diaquilon, & or þou leie ony plastre þ*er*vpon, þ*o*u sehalt' make a fomentaciou*n* wiþ hoot' wat*er*.

[2 lf. 172]

and affects new-born children.

Grando. A knot in the eye-lids.

¶ Gr*an*do & nodus. Grando is as miche to seie as an hail stoon, & nodus is a knotte, & þus comeþ i*n* þe i3e liddis, & su*m*tyme it' 28 wole sehewe wiþi*nne*forþ, & su*m*tyme wiþoute. & wh*an*ne it' sehewiþ wiþoutforþ, opene it' & leie þ*er*on diaquilon & oþ*er*e þi*ng*is for to

If medicines fail to effect absorption, extirpate the growth.

consume þe mater. & if' þis suffise not', þou schalt' take it' wiþ þi .ij. fyngris & drawe it' harde, & þ*an* kutte þe skyn þ*er*on & drawe 32 hi*m* out', & þ*an* þou shalt' soude it' wiþ þe white of' an eij & oþ*er*e þingis þ*at*' be*n* soudinge //

fistula lacrimalis

¶ ffistula lacrimal*is*,[4] þ*at*' is as miche to seie as a feestre wiþ

[3] "Lycium. Is the Juice of a thorny tree, growing chiefly in Capadocia and Lycia, of three cubites heyght." Halle, *Table*, p. 63.

[4] Sl. 2463, f. 90 : "*A ffystule in þe wyke of þe eye, hit comyth of concours of renuyng of humores to þe corner of þe eye besyde þe nose, & because of her multitude & gretnesse þey may nat passen out but abyden there & maken an emynence, as hit were a lupyne ; & therfore of sume hit is cleped lupinus.*"

teeris / þis comeþ *in* þe corner of' þe iȝe next' þe [1]nose, & engendriþ [1 lf. 172, bk.]
þere & makiþ a *þing*' as greet' as it' were a pese. & if' þese humours At the inner angle of the eye a growth begins, which ulcerates,
leeue *þere* longe þei wolen rotie & þei wole*n* make vlc*us* *þere*, & *þer*
4 wole come manie teeris *þer*to, and þei mai not' be m*aa*d drie, & þis
mai leeue *þere* so longe *þat*' *þer* wole engendre a feestre *þer*of'. & gives rise to a fistula and finally affects the bone.
b*ut*' if' *þat*' feestre be curid while it' is freisch, it' wole rote þe boon,
& þe lenger *þat*' it' wexiþ oold, þe worse it' wole be for to cure.
8 ¶ þe firste bigy*nn*ynge of' þis cure is for to avoide þe heed wiþ Apply a powder,
cochijs & wiþ pigra, þa*n* do *per*on þis collirium / ℞, aloes, thuris, ℞
sarcocolle, sang*ui*nis drac*onis*, balaustie, antimonij, *aluminis*, an*a*, puluis contra fistula lacremali.
floris eris a litil, as miche as wole be þe fourþe p*art*' of' oon of' þe
12 forseid. & make of' alle þes sotil poudre & dist*empere* he*m* wiþ
reyn wat*er* or wiþ wat*er* of' ro*ses*, & caste it' i*n* þe corner of' his iȝe,
but' þe place schal be maad drie first'. & þa*n* þou schalt' do *per*to a cleansing ointment.
oon of' þe mundificatiuis *þat*' schule*n* be seid *in* þe antidotarie, or
16 þis medicyn *þat*' is aproued / Take clene mirre .ʒ .ij. & make þerof' ℞
poudre & make it' þicke wiþ þe galle of' a boole, *þat*' it' be as þicke
as it' were a*n* oynemen*t*', [2]& leie it' vpon ly*nn*e*n* clooþ & leie þis *per*- [2 lf. 173]
vpon, for þis wole soude þe place & make it' clene / ¶ If' it so be
20 *þat*' it' be not' curid w*ith* þis medicy*n*, þanne it' is a signe *þat*' þe If the disease has affected the bone, use the hot iron repeatedly until the diseased part of the bone is removed.
boon is rotid, & þa*n* þou muste opene þe skyn & vnhile þe boo*n*,
& touche þe boon wiþ an hoot' iren as fer as it' is rotid / & þanne
leie *per*vpon buttir or grese *þat*' þe scar þer mowe falle awei, & þa*n*
24 þou muste reherse þe cauterie aȝen. & þa*nn*e leie *per*vpon buttir,
& þus þou muste do til þe boon be clene, & þa*n* leie *per*vpon oile of'
rosis hoot' medlid wiþ ȝelke of' an ey til al þe brennynge falle awey.
& þan drie þe place w*ith* drijnge medicyns, & þan regendre fleisch &
28 soude it', & þou schalt' wite *þat*' *per* is noon so good maner medicyn
as þis is / For if' þou wolt' leie *per*to ony corosif' wat*er*, *þat* wole
brenne for*þere* þa*n* it' schulde / & also it' were greet' p*er*el for þe iȝe
& *per*fore it' is good for to worche as it' is aforseid / [3]

[3] The end of this chapter, omitted by the translator, is given in Sl. 2463, fol. 90 b.: "¶ *Also he*[a] *seyth þat yf þe bone be schauen with Instrumentis þat all þe corupcion is seldome taken awaye, wherefore þe corupcion comyth ayen bycause of þe partie whiche leuyth behynde corupt.* ¶ *He seyth also þat alþouȝ the corupcion be taken away neuer so well, yet nature departith a litell follikell þerfro aforne þat þe flessch mowe be faste knyt other soudid to þe bone and what tyme þe bone is touchyd with an hoot Iryn, þanne all þat is corrupt dissenerith fro þat ys hoole, and þe complexion of þe place is tempered.*

[a] Lanfrank.

Of þe passiou*n* of eeris.

¶ ij°. c°.

Nerves go to the ear from the brain.

[[1] lf. 173, bk.]

The sound is conveyed to the brain through the ear passage.

This passage is curved.

The ear is made of cartilage, that it may both sustain itself and be pliable.

The diseases of the ear belong partly to Surgery, partly to Physic.

[[2] lf. 174]

All these diseases may be comprised under "aching of the ear."

Simple aching arising from a hot complexion is treated with oil of roses, and some opium.

If caused by a cold complexion it is treated with hot oil of lilies.

AS it is aforseid þat' nerues come*n* fro þe brain to þe iȝe*n* / in
þe same man*er* nerues come*n* from þe brain & goiþ *in*to þe
eris & makiþ heerynge & be*n* instrume*n*tis of' witt'. [1]þe hoolis *in* a 4
ma*n*nes eeris be*n* m*aa*d *in* a deep holowe boon, & it' was bi þis
skille þ*at*' it' schulde vndirstonde sownynge, & þ*at*' þe sowne schulde
not' come into þe brayn anoon, b*ut*' alitil & alitil bi degree, & also
for þis skille þat' þe coold eire ne þe hoot' eire schulde not' sodeinly 8
entre yn; & þe wei þ*at*' goiþ *in*to a ma*n*nes eere, ne goiþ not' riȝt'
forþ, b*ut*' hidir & þidir, for if' þe weie were riȝtforþ, it' wolde þe
raþere be hurt' of' al man*er* þing' / þe eere was maad of' cartilaginis
þat' is hardere þan fleisch & neischer þan boon, þ*at* it' miȝte be 12
pliaunt'. & if' þei schulde be m*aa*d oonly of' fleisch, þei schulde
haue noo*n* sustentaciou*n* for to bere he*m* vp. & if' þei hadden be
maad oonly of' hard boon, þei miȝten not' haue be meued, & þ*er*fore
itt' was moost' nede þ*at*' þei were*n* cartilagino*us*: þ*at*' is as miche to 16
seie as m*aa*d of' gristle þat' is neischer þan boon & hardere þ*an*
fleisch. To þis lyme þ*er* comeþ manie sijknessis, & su*m*me þ*er*of'
falliþ for cirurgie as apostimes & vlcera, & su*m*me fall*i*þ to phisik
as greet' sownynge *in* þe eeris & sibillus, [2]defaute of' heeri*n*ge & 20
deefnes.[3] Akynge of' þe eeris sumtyme is an yuel, & su*m*tyme
harme fallynge þ*er*to / & þ*er*fore it' is mi purpos for to speke boþe
of' sirurge and of' phisik in þis chapitre. ¶ Alle þe sijknessis of'
þe eeris mou*n* be take *in* þis man*er*, as akynge of' eeris. Ouþ*er* it' 24
is apostym & w*ith*out' vlcera, or it' is wiþ enpostym & vlcera; þ*an*
it' is of' yuel complexiou*n* & hoot';[4] þat' þou *mi*ȝt' knowe bi scharp
akynge & reednes of' þe place. & þan þou schalt' cure it' wiþ cast-
ynge into þe eere oile of' ro*sis*, boylid hoot' as he mai suffre, wiþ þe 28
.iiij. p*ar*t' of' vinegre / & if' þe akynge go not' awei in þis maner,
þan þou schalt' do þ*er*on a litil of' opiu*m* / And if' it' come of' yuel
co*m*plexiou*n* þat' it' be coold, as coold wynd or of' coold eire entrid
þ*er*on, þis þou miȝt' knowe bi greet' cooldnes in þe place, & þan þou 32
schalt' cure hi*m* wiþ þi*n*gis þ*at*' schal be cast' *in*to þe eere, watir of'
maiorana, or oile of' lilie, þ*at*' þou schalt' fynde þe composiciou*n* *in*
þe antidotarie. & *in* þis maner hoot' oile schal be putt' *in* his eere &

[3] MS. *deesires*.

[4] The translation is corrupt. Lat.: aut est sine apostemate vel ulcere aut cum apostemate et ulcere. Si sine apostemate et ulcere: tunc aut est propter malam complexionem calidam — — aut propter malam complexionem frigidam.

no coold þi*n*g', & þ*o*u schalt' stuwe þe pacient'[1] / Sumtyme it' comeþ [[1] If. 174, bk.]
of' su*m* þi*n*g' þat' falliþ i*n* his eere as a worme or a corn or a stoon, Aching caused by a foreign body in the ear:
or watir; þis þou schalt' knowe bi þe tellinge of' þe pacient'; for if'
4 þ*er* be ony þi*n*g' wiþi*n*ne, me mai se it'. If' it' so be þat' þ*er* be If it is a stone, cast hot oil into the ear;
falle yn ony stoon, þa*n* caste i*n*to his eere oile of' ro*sis*, or oile of' almaundis, & if' þ*er* be falle yn ony corn, þan þou schalt' do noon if it is a grain use an instrument,
oile i*n* his eere; for it' wole make þe corn wexe greet'. Make a
8 litil instrument' of' tree or of' su*m* o*þer* þi*n*g' & wete it' in terbentyn or try the cupping-glass.
& putte it' i*n*to his eere, & touche þ*er*wiþ þe stoon, ouþir þe greyn, & If it is a worm, apply warm water.
þan it' wole cleue þ*er*to, & þan drawe it' out' / ¶ Also smite his eere
wiþ þe pawme of' þin hand, & bi hap it' wole falle out' þ*er*wiþ / Also
12 sette a ventuse wiþ fier vpon þe hoole of' his eere, for þis sumtyme
wole drawe out' a corn ouþer a stoon.[2] ¶ If' þer entriþ ony worme
into a ma*n*nes eere, þan fille his eere ful of' flact watir,[3] & þan drie If the pains are caused by an apostema,
it' / And if' þis suffisiþ not', fille his eere ful of' oile of' almaundis
16 þat' ben bittir; & if' þis suffisiþ not', þa*n* do i*n* his eere iuys of'
calamynte.

¶ If' þe akynge come of' humo*ur*is gaderid to apostym, þat' þou
[4]miȝt' knowe bi greet' akynge, & akynge of' his pous,[5] & bi þe [[4] If. 175]
20 swellynge of' þe place, þa*n* þou muste bigy*n*ne for to aswage þe
akynge wiþ oile of' ro*sis*, & lete hi*m* blood i*n* þe heed veyne i*n* þe bleed the patient from the Vena Cephalica,
same side. If' it' so be þat' he mai not' be lete blood, for su*m* cause or scarify his shoulders;
þat' lettiþ, þan garse hi*m* vpon his schuldris, & putte i*n* his eere oile
24 of' ro*sis* wiþ a litil vinegre. If' þee þinkiþ þat' þe mater comeþ of'
colre, þat' þou schalt' knowe bi signes þat' be*n* forseid, þa*n* purge
hi*m* wiþ a decocciou*n* of' mirabol*anorum* / If' þe mater be not' if this fails to soothe the pain, apply a poultice and
aswagid, ne þe aki*n*ge do awei, þan bigy*n*ne for to leie mussillaginis a plaster, until suppuration begins.
28 of' fenigrec & of' lynseed, & rotis of' altea, wiþ wo*m*mans milk, &
do it' flat'[6] into his eere / & vpon þe eere leie an enplastre þat' it'
hile al þe eere, ma*a*d of' lynseed, & barli, & rotis of' altea, & of'
lilie, & medle he*m* w*ith* ga*n*dris grese & grese of' an hen. & þis cure
32 þou schalt' contynueli do, til þe quitt*ur*e come out' of' his eere, & þe

[2] The translator has omitted the case when water is in the ear. Sl. 2463, fol. 83 b.: "*And yef be water enterid into þe ere, doo Galyenys experyment. ¶ Take a rodde of wilowe othyr a twigge of þe ryne and putte þe tone ende in þe patientis ere, & lappe wex aboute þe tother ende and sette hit on fyre, ffor by þe vertu of þe fyre þe water schal be elene dried vppe.*"

[3] *flact watir.* Lat. flaccidus. O.Fr. flaccide. N.E. flat water. Compare *flaccid.* Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, and *flaisch*, p. 265, note 1, *flasch*, p. 266, note 3. O.Fr. flasque, Lat. flaccidus, another form of flaccidus.

[5] Lat.: per fortem dolorem et pulsationem.

[6] *flat*, Lat. tepidus. See above, note 3.

akynge aceesse.[1] & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as vlcera of þe eeris
If the matter is caused by cold, ben curid, þat schal be seid here aftir / Also if þe mater þat makiþ
[2 lf. 175, bk.] þe enpostym come [2]of cooldnes, & þat falliþ ful seelde, but if it
come in an old man, & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe akynge & bi þe 4
purge, cooldnes of þe place, þan þou schalt bigynne to avoide him wiþ
instil oil of lilies into the ear, pillulas cochie & wiþ a clisterie. & caste into his eere oile of lilies,
& resolue in þe same oile ʒ .ß. euforbij ouþir .ʒ. j. de turbit, &
anoynte al aboute his eeris wiþ þe forseid oile of lilies, & leie þer- 8
apply A ffumigacioun ffor the eere vpon wolle vnwaischen, & make him a fumigacioun to his eere wiþ
hoot water in which schal be soden maiorana & calamynte. & if þis
and a garlic-plaster. suffisiþ not, leie þer-vpon an enplaster or an oynement, & of garleke,
& rotis of lilie soden to-gidere & grounden wiþ butter, & do þerto 12
leuayn, & do þerto oile of lilie or of camomille, & a litil vinegre, &
make an enplastre and leie vpon his eere, for þis enplastre rotiþ
coold mater & drawiþ it out, & if þou miȝt se ony place in þe eere
þat quitture is gaderid on, þan it is good to opene þat place & 16
drawe out þe quitture as it schal be seid heraftir. & þan þou schalt
[3 lf. 176] cure it riȝt as þou schalt cure vlcera þat schal be seid herafter.

If the pain arises from wind in the ear, Sumtyme akynge of eeris comeþ of gret [3]wynd & sound in þe
eere, & noise & wynd þat comeþ of þe heed & falliþ into þe eeris.[4] 20
Þis þou miȝt knowe liȝtly, for wiþ þe akynge he schal haue a maner
noise in his eeris & pipinge / & þe cure herof schal be avoiding of
instil oil of rue. greet humours, & þou schalt caste into his eere oile of rue, & in
þe same oile schal be dissolued a litil castor, & he mote kepe him 24
fro al þing þat engendriþ wynd.

If the pain is caused by ulcers in the ear, ¶ Also akynge of þe eeris comeþ of vlcera þat ben wiþinne in
þe hoole of þe eere, & sumtyme þei comen of an enpostym goinge
tofore. & þe signes herof ben akynge & cours of quitture þat 28
a stinking pus will be discharged. stynkiþ. & þe more stinking þat þe quitture is & þe more departid
fro whit colour, þe worse it wole be to cure / ffirst þou schalt make
The mundificatives. clene his heed with cochijs & wiþ pigra, & þan þou muste do mundi-
ficatiuis to his eere & drijng þingis. & be war þat þou worche not 32
.Galien. as .G. seiþ þat summe worchiþ: þei leide þerto an oynement þat
A noxious ointment. was good for woundis, & alwey þe patient hadde þe more penaunce,[5]
.Galien. & þe sijkenes woxe more & more / & þerfore .G. axiþ what is good
[6 lf. 176, bk.] [6]þerfore / And .G. seiþ: who þat seiþ þat it schal be curid wiþ 36

[1] *aecesse*, O.Fr. acesser.

[4] Lat.: Fit etiam dolor auris propter grossam ventositatem ad aures de capite descendentem.

[5] *penaunce*, Lat. dolor; *penaunce* usually means "penitence."

drijnge þingis, he seiþ fals ; for drijnge þingis constreineþ, & apostym is con*s*treyny*ng*ᵗ / And su*m*men han now newe rulis : þat wiþ contrarijs contrarie þi*n*gis schulen be curid / In þis maner þou schaltᵗ
4 worche. Make poudre of mirre, & of aloe, & olibani, & sang*uis* d*r*aco an*a*, & take oon tentᵗ & wete it *in* hony, & folde þe tentᵗ *in* þe poudre, & putte þe tentᵗ *in* his eere anoon to þe botme / & if þe tentᵗ mai notᵗ come to þe botme þ*er*ofᵗ, þa*n* dissolue þe forseid poudre
8 wiþ watir & hony, & caste it yn / If it so be þ*at* vlcus be swiþe cold, þa*n* þou schaltᵗ cure hi*m* in þis maner / Take þe rustᵗ of iren, & grinde itᵗ smal, & leie it *in* an erþen vessel w*ith* vinegre, & boile he*m* togidere, til þe rustᵗ bicome drie. & þus þou muste do ofte tyme.
12 & þa*n* þou muste poudre it ȝen, & seþe it *in* vinegr*e* ȝen til it bicome þicke as hony, & þa*n* do þis *in* his eere, for þis wole hele vlcera, & þis wole drie þe moistnes þ*er*ofᵗ, & þis wole do awey þe akynge / And take hony .ʒ. .x., vinegr*e* ʒ. viij., & boile he*m* liȝtly
16 atᵗ þe fier til it be wel skymed,[1] & þa*n* do þ*er*to ʒ .ij. of vertᵗ de grece, and [2]medle he*m* wel togid*er*e, & wete herynne a tentᵗ, & putte it in his eere, & þis is good for vlcera þatᵗ ben oold.

¶ If a man be deefᵗ, þa*n* it comeþ of su*m*me of þe forseid causis,
20 & p*r*incipali of longe akynge ; also it comeþ of child beri*ng*ᵗ, & þanne it is incurable / Also if it comeþ of humours þatᵗ stoppiþ nerues, & þe cure herof is for to purge hi*m* wiþ cochijs & pigra, & caste in his eere oile of bittir almau*n*dis & o þ*er*e medicyns þatᵗ ben
24 openynge. & oon þ*er*ofᵗ is þis / Take pulpe colloquintide .ʒ .j., castor, aristologia ro*tunda*, succi absinthij an*a* ʒ. ℔, euforbij .ʒ. j, costi g*r*a*n*a .xv, & make h*er*ofᵗ smale pelottis, & dissolue oon herofᵗ wiþ oile of almaundis þatᵗ ben bittir, & do it *in* his eere ; saue þou
28 schaltᵗ make hi*m* a fumigaciou*n* tofore wiþ a decocciou*n* of sanbuci, absinthij, sticados / Also take whitᵗ oile .ʒ .j., & grynde hony & oile togidere / If þe passiou*n* comeþ of defaute of spiritis, þanne putte herofᵗ *in* his eere, & þanne he schal be baþid & haue reste, &
32 vse metis þatᵗ engendriþ good blood, & he schal heere sotil voicis for to make hi*m* haue heerynge / & su*m*me seien þ*at* þe fatnes of grene [3]froggis, þatᵗ lyuen among trees ;[4] take he*m* & seþe hem, & gadere þe fatnes of he*m* & caste *in* his eere, for þis haþ vertu for to make
36 me*n* heere. ¶ Also take a litil garlek & make it clene, & do þ*er*to þe .iij. p*ar*tᵗ of tartre, & grinde he*m* smal togidere, & boile he*m* *in* vinegre, & wh*an*ne it is coold þan coole it, & of þis vinegre leie hootᵗ to his eere /

One must not apply drying remedies.

℞ ffor vlcers in þe eere

A powder that is applied to the ear by a tent.

℞ A preparation of rust heals the ulcer, dries the moisture and allays the pain.

℞ An application for old ulcers.

[2 lf. 177]

Deafness resulting from childbearing is incurable.

If it is caused by the humours, purge and instil opening medicines into the ear.

℞ a ffumygacio.

℞ If deafness arises from a weakness of the spirit, strengthen the patient,

[3 lf. 177, bk.]

and apply the fat of green frogs.

[1] *skymed.* Compare *scume*, p. 242, note 6.

[4] Some words like *is good* are wanting.

Of þe passiou*n* of þe nose & anoth*amia*.

¶ iij. co.

The nose has two holes through which the brain is purged.

Air is gathered in the "colatorium," and there is the seat of smelling.

The nose has two bones,

AS we haue bifore seid þat' þ*er* ben .ij. hoolis in þe nose þ*at*' þe brayn is p*ur*gid þ*er*bi of' super*f*luite. & þe nose is not' neruous, & þe nose is a p*ro*pre instrument' for to smelle. & þese .ij. hoolis in 4 þe nose ben m*aa*d fast' i*n* þe scolle. & i*n* þat' place is ordeyned a þi*n*g' þ*at*' is clepid colatoriu*m*,[1] & eir is gaderid þ*erin*ne þ*at*' makiþ v*er*tu of' smellynge. & þoru3 þat' place þe super*f*luitees of' þe brayn be*n* po*ur*gid, & þ*er* is oon hoole þ*er*of' þat' goiþ toward þe mouþ. & 8 þe nose is m*aa*d of' .ij. boones in þe maner of' a triangle in þis maner. Δ Δ. þe scharpe eendis þat' be*n* aboue ben ioynynge wiþ þe boones of' þe i3en. & þe boonys of' þe nose þat' be*n* bineþe ben cartilaginous for þe causis þat' ben forseid.[2] 12

Latin Original.

[In parte vero inferiori vnum quodque illorum duorum ossium habet quandam cartilaginem propter iuuamenta que sciuisti. In medio vero habet aliam cartillaginem, quæ nasum in duas partes diuidit, 16 quæ durior et fortior est duabus aliis, quæ sunt in nasi fine. Iuuamentum vero illius medie cartilaginis est, ut si vni parti nasi nocumentum acciderit, pars alia totius suppleat iuuamentum. Duo autem ossa nasi coniunguntur ad inuicem: & fit nasi forma, quæ cum his quæ 20 dicta sunt, plures habet vtilitates. Prima, vt sit tutamen & coopertorium superfluitatibus: quæ de cerebro diriuantur. Secunda, vt aerem recipiat, qui est ad receptionem odoratus necessarius mediator. Tertia, quod quamuis maior pars aeris que attrahitur vadat ad pul- 24 monem: tamen aliqua eius pars per nasum tendit ad cerebrum. Foraminis autem quod est inter nasum & os, iuuamenta sunt tria. Primo vt cum os clauditur, possit aeris fieri attractio ad pulmonem.

and three cartilages.

The nose provides the brain with air.

The nasal cavity communicates with the mouth, 1. that one may breathe through the nose,

[1] *os colatorium.* I could not find this name in the ancient authors, but it occurs frequently in the Latin translations of the Arab authors. The idea that it is the function of the nose to purge the brain is an old one. Compare A. C. Celsus de Medicina Lib. IV. Cap. V., ed. Daremberg: "Destillat autem humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leve est, interdum in fauces, quod pejus est; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est." Avicenna mentions the "os colatorium" in connection with this theory in his Canon Lib. I. Fen. I. Doctr. V. Cap. 1., ed. Venetiis. 1527, fol. 9. "Ossa autem porosa facta fuerunt . . propter additionem necessitatis causa, rei alicuius, que necesse est ut in ea penetret sicut odor, qui cum aere attrahitur in osse, collatorio simili, et cerebri superfluitates, que per ipsum expelluntur." We find the same theory in the French name for a cold: "rhume de cerveau," and for the same reason "Hellebore" is called "brain-purging." *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. brain.

[2] Three leaves or four are wanting, and I insert the Latin text from the *Editio Argellata Ven.*, 1546, f. 239, bk., and Add. 26,106, f. 71.

Secundo, vt per illud cerebri anterior ventriculus expurgetur. Tertio, ad intercisionem adiuuet literarum, & voces melius explicandas: quoniam cum in loquendo sit necessarium vocem temperare: literas incidere: syllabas solidare: ad hoc saepe labia clauderentur & dentes: si non esset alia via, per quam posset aer superfluus exalare apud literarum incisionem totus conculcaretur aer, qui literarum incisionem & syllabarum prolationem sua multitudine impediret: & vocem etiam generatam non claram emitteret: facit ergo in verborum & vocis prolatione foramen hoc quod facit foramen fistulæ superius,[1] quod in vocum et tonorum modulationem remanet absolutum: quare voces & toni inde magis exeunt absoluti.[2]

2. to purge the brain; 3. it helps in the articulation of words.

In naso vel naribus plures concurrunt egritudines. Nam ibi fiunt pustulæ, vlcera, caro superflua, polypus, cancer, fluxus sanguinis, fetor, & olfactus priuatio.

Pustulæ fiunt vt plurimum ab adustis humoribus, et sunt cum punctura & ardore. Et cura est phlebotomia & corporis euacuatio, et iniectio albuminis oui cum oleo ros. in simul agitatis. Pustulis fractis, fiat vnctio cum vnguento albo Rasis.

Pustulas and Ulcers are treated with bloodletting and an ointment.

Vlcera quoque si calida fuerint, curantur eodem modo. Si frigida, cum lauatione vini et mellis, & cum vnguento apostolorum, et cum vnguento viridi dicendorum.

Caro superflua remouetur cum instrumentis chirurgicis; si non potest tota cum instrumentis remoueri: remouetur residuum cum puluere asfodillorum & cum vnguento viridi, & apostolorum, & cunctis mundificantibus: & remotis superfluis cum unguentis solidantibus compleatur.

Proud flesh is removed with an instrument.

Polypus dicitur a polypo pisce: cuius malitiosa est astutia: quia quando vult piscibus saturari, ascendit saxum quod est in litore maris: & ipsi multum assimilatur, pisces fatigati videntes saxum, non aduertunt de polypo propter similitudinem: sed volentes quiescere, salliunt de mari: polypus illos absorbet: & in eius conuertit nutrimentum. Sic iste morbus cum naso magnam habet affinitatem: quoniam eius materia est catarrhosa frigida grossa descendens a capite: & in via propter eius grossitiem & tenacitatem hæret naso seu substantiæ nasi inuiscata: et humores capitis agitatione moti naturæ volentes descendere, & exire, materiam ibi recipiunt congregatam:

The polype is a disease, so called for its similarity with the animal.

[1] Add. 26,106, fol. 71 b., on margin: gallice flaute.

[2] The whole preceding passage about the utilities of the nose, and especially the utility of the "nares posteriores," *i. e.* the communication between the nasal cavity and the pharynx, is taken from *Avicenna*, l. c. Cap. 4.

quæ humores illos in suam conuertit malam naturam: et ex ipsa quotidie augmentatur. Differentia vero est inter polypum & carnem superfluam: quoniam caro superflua, non habet profundam tenacitatem cum nasi substantia: nec cum ipso naso nimis assimilatur: 4 immo potest de facili segregari: polypus vero firmiter adheret cum naso: & non sine violentia separatur. Quorum scilicet polyporum aliquis est curabilis: aliquis incurabilis. Curabilis est substantiæ mollis & tractabilis: nec nasum reddit durum: nec in colore nigrum 8 seu fuscum: nec est multum supra circa cerebri confinia inuiscatus. Incurabilis vero nasum reddit durum, liuidum seu nigrum: & magnam profunditatem tenet, quam quanto magis videris maiori nigredine maiorique participari duritie, maioremque profunditatem 12 occupare, tanto plus ab eo existima fugiendum: quoniam naturam tunc tenet cancri: quanto plus eum curare niteris tanto plus videbis eius malitiam augmentari.

There are two kinds of polype:

1. The incurable one has the nature of a cancer.

Curabilis vero cura est secundum quod diximus in cura super- 16 fluæ carnis quæ ibi consurgit cum ablatione sive cum instrumentis & cum vnguentis mundificativis: & aliis quæ nouisti: præcedente semper corporis et capitis purgatione: sicut multoties est ostensum. Cauteria quoque secundum quod audies, multum valent ad polypi 20 materiam consumendam. Eius vero quem incurabilem diximus, non assumas curam. Si tamen rogaris nimis, palliatiuam curam adhibe: sicut in cura cancri recolimus ostendisse.

2. The curable one may be treated like proud flesh.

De anatomia oris, & contentorum in ore, & passionibus doctrinæ 24 tertiæ tractatus tertii Cap. iiii.

Totam vero oris concauitatem interius circundat panniculus qui continuus est cum meri, & cum stomacho: quare accidit quod multæ res tangentes palatum prouocant vomitum. Ad oris concaui- 28 tatem duæ perueniunt viæ: quarum anatomiam superius habuisti; in earum summitate est epiglottis: quæ est creata ad perficiendum vocem: et ut seruet aliquid de aere attracto ad anelitum. Hæc epiglottis ex tribus est composita cartilaginibus: vna est eminens 32 ante & dicitur clypealis & a laicis dicitur guttur vel nodus gulæ: alia est posterius cum osse laudæ continua et uocatur nomen non habens.[1] Tertia vocatur cymbalaris siue cooperturalis:[2] & continuatur cum nomen non habente: & cooperit clypealem: et ista cymbalaris 36 mouetur per eius musculos: quare cum homo comedit, viam claudit

The membrane lining the mouth is continuous with the integument of the stomach.

The organ of voice is composed of three cartilages.

[1] Cartilago cricoidea. [2] Cartilagines arytænoideæ.

canne pulmonis: & viam aperit oesophagi. Cum autem homo loquitur, aperit viam canne pulmonis: & claudit viam oesophagi. Quare multoties accidit, quod si homo comedens dicere vellet aliquid ignoranter: quod aliquid viam intraret canne pulmonis: quare natura moueretur ad tussiendum: nec cessaret, donec quod cannam intrauerat, esset ad extra expulsum.] [1]til þat mete be out of his þrote, saue algate he schal couȝe til it be oute. & þan aboue þis instrument is vuula þat is þe palet[2] of þe mouþ & helpiþ for to make soun / For þe wynd þat comeþ of þe lungis reboundiþ[3] aȝens þe palet & makiþ þe more soun. In þe holownes of þe mouþ is maad fast þe tunge, þat is maad of whit fleisch, & neische, & of nerues, & veynes, & of arterijs, as it is necessarie þerfore / And in þe þrote of þe tunge ben .ij. wellis þat spotil is gaderid þeron, & holdiþ alwei þe tunge moist / Also in a mannes mouþ ben .xxxij. teeþ, & þerof sittiþ .xvj. in þe cheke boon,[4] & summen han but .xxviij. / And for to hile a mannes teeþ ben ordeined lippis, & ben as it were þe dore of an hous, & helpiþ forto speke & to pronounce wordis / Now to alle þese lymes þat ben forseid: as þe palet of þe mouþ & a mannes tunge & þe teeþ & þe gomis & þe lippis, alle þei han diuers passiouns.

[1 lf. 178]

The mouth contains the epiglottis, the uvula, which helps to make sound,

the tongue, made of white flesh, nerves and blood-vessels,

32. teeþ.

and the lips, by whose help words are pronounced.

Diseases in these parts.

¶ **Vuula** sumtyme wiþ cours of humouris sumtime gaderiþ an enpostym, & sumtyme vuula wexiþ to long,[5] & sumtyme apostym of þe [6]palet comeþ of hoot cause, þat þou schalt knowe bi þe reednes of þe place & bi brennyng; & þanne in þe cure herof þou schalt bigynne for to lete him blood in þe heed veyne, & purge colre wiþ a decoccioun of fretis.[7] & herof þou schalt make him a gargarisme, & þerwiþ he schal ofte waische his mouþ: ℞, lentes, balaustias, psidias, gallas, rosas, sumac, & boile þese wiþ .ij. partis of water, & oon part of vinegre, & herof make a gargarisme / Also þou schalt leie to his palet poudre of rosis, & sandalis,[8] & balaustiarum & a litil of camphre / þis is a good help þerfore wханne þe palet is woxe long wiþ hoot humouris. ¶ If þer come an enpostym of coold humouris, ouþer þat þe palet wexe long wiþ coold humouris, & þat þou miȝt knowe wханne þe place is not reed, & if þer be

Vuula.

[6 lf. 178, bk.]

In case of a hot apostema on the palate (uvula) bleed, purge and use a gargle,

Gargarismus.

℞

If cold humour cause the apostema,

[2] *palet*, palate. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* The erroneous identification of uvula and palatum is not in the original.

[3] *rebound*, O.Fr. rebondir. See later references in Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

[4] Lat.: XVI in utraque mandibula.

[5] Lat.: Vuula namque propter humorum decursum aliquando apostematur aliquando solum elongatur.

[7] *fretis*, fruit. [8] MS. inserts *& rosis*.

purge and use a gargle.

R miche spotil *in* his mouþ, first' þou schalt' p*ur*ge hi*m* wiþ cochijs & pigra, & þa*n* make hi*m* a garg*arisme* wiþ þis decoccioun: ℞, aceti p*ar*tes duas, mellis p*artem* vna*m*, boile he*m* togidere & do þ*er*to poudre of' mirtillor*um*[1] & þe seed of' rosis & peletre[2] & ȝinȝib*er*e, & 4

[3 lf. 179]

A powder applied by a Funnel.

þa*n* make hi*m* poudre of' pepir [3]& sal armoniac, & make herw*ith* a fumigac*ioun* wiþ enbotu*m*.[4] & if' it' be greet' to-swolle, & þa*n* þou muste make consumynge þi*n*gis as diameron & sappa michu*m*[5] / If' þe palet' be recchid along', & if' it' be so long' þ*at*' it' lie vpon þe 8 tunge, þa*n* þou muste kutte awei as miche þ*er*of' as þee þinkiþ good, so þ*at*' it' be nomore þan it' schulde be; & be war þ*at*' þou kutte not' to myche þ*er*of', for þ*er* miȝte come greet' p*er*el þ*er*of': as his vois miȝte be apeirid þe while he lyuede, & contynuely couȝinge, & his 12 lungis miȝte be þe worse þ*er*fore & also his piys.[6] & þ*er*fore it' is greet' p*er*el for to kutte a ma*n*nes palet'.[7]

If the uvula gets too long, remove a portion.

Be ware not to cut too deep.

¶ The tunge suffriþ manie sijknessis as pustulas and swellynge & kuttynge, & ofte tyme a ma*n*nes tunge bicomeþ schorter þa*n* it' 16 schulde be. And þ*er* is anoþ*er* passiou*n* þ*at*' is clepid fili **ranulam**[8] & spasmu*m*, & su*m*tyme a ma*n*nes tu*n*ge wexiþ to long'.[9] ¶ The curis of' pustulis & vlcera schulen be seid heraftir / If' þer come an enpostym or ony swellynge to a ma*n*nes tu*n*ge, & it' come of' hoot' 20 humours, þa*n*ne þou schalt' bigy*n*ne þe cure þ*er*of' *in* þis [10]maner / ffirst' lete hi*m* blood *in* þe heed veine, & þanne make hi*m* a decoccio*un* & a waischi*ng*' as it' is aforseid *in* apostym of' þe palet': & he schal holde *in* his mouþ þe iuys of' letuse. & in þe same maner þou 24 schalt' cure swellynge of' a ma*n*nes tu*n*ge / If' þ*er* come apostym or

the tong' suffers from many diseases.

Ranulam.

In case of an apostema in the tongue,

[5 lf. 179, bk.]

bleed from the head-veiu and use a wash.

[1] MS. over *mirtillor*um is written *mirtelberys*.

[2] *pelletre*, Lat. pyrethrum. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot." Phillips. See *Pelleter* Cath. Angl. and Note ibid.

[4] *enbotum*, Lat. embotum. See *Dufr.* = infundibulum. Fr. embut, a surgical instrument, a funnel.

[5] *sappa michum*, Lat. saramitum.

[6] *piys*, Lat. pectus. O.Fr. pis.

[7] Gulielmus de Saliceto, Lanfranc's teacher, uses a cautery instead of cutting. I give the quotation from an English translation, MS. Sloane 277, fol. 1 (beginning of 15th cent.): "*Be þe grape cutt wiþ a brennynge yren keruynge, & be it putt in by a pipe to þe grape, þe mouþ holden open. Be þe grape receyued in þe hole of þe pipe. Whiche receyued, be putt in þere þe brennynge yren in þe pipe, & be þe grape eauterieed.*"

[8] *Ranula*, a tumor, which forms under the tongue. (Dunglison.) See Vegetius, De re veterin. 4, 5, 1. Gr. βάτραχος. Fr. grenouillette.

[9] The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Lingua quoque multas patitur ægritudines, pustulas, inflationem, scissuram, breviationem fili, ranulam, spasmum et relaxationem.

ony swellynge of' coold humouris, þan purge him with pillulis þat' be forseid of' .G[aliens]. makinge. ¶ Ther was a man þat' his tunge was so swolle þat' it' mizte not' be conteyned in his mouþ. & first' I made him purgaciouns & waischingis, & þan I made him consumynge þingis; & in þis maner he was curid. ¶ **Scissure** is a passioun in a mannes tunge þat' is as it' were kuttinge. & þat' schal be curid wiþ þe iuys of' malue soden wiþ psillium & medlid wiþ sugre & sode, & herwiþ he schal waische his mouþ. & he schal drinke water of' barli, & his mete schal be hoggis feet' wel soden, & wiþ þe nerues of' þe feet' he schal frote wel his tunge. ¶ Also þer is a þreed[1] vndir sum mannes tunge þat' he mai not' put' out' his tunge as he schulde, & also it' lettiþ him to speke. Þe cure herof' is for to kutte þat' þreed, [2]& þan brenne him. & it' is better for to make an instrument' of' goold & brenne it' þerwiþ, & kutte also wiþ þe same instrument' / ¶ Also þer comeþ an enpostym vpon a mannes tunge of' fleume[3] & also of' malancolie, saue of' malancolie an enpostym comeþ but' selden / Þese ben þe signes if' it' come of' malancolie: þe place wole be ledi ouþir blak. & þan do þou no cure þerto / If' it' come of' fleuma, þanne frote wel his tunge wiþ salt', til þe blood come out' þerof'. & if' þis suffise not', þan frote it' wel wiþ vitriol / If' þe spasme come in a mannes tunge þat' wole constryne þe tunge inward, þe cure herof' is for to holde oile of' anete in his mouþ & of' camomille hoot' as he mai suffre, & make an enplastre herof' medlid wiþ hoot' water, & leie it' vpon his heed & vpon his nolle hoot' / If' his tunge bicome neische, þan þou muste purge him wiþ pillulis fetidis,[4] or with trocisco de turbit'. & þan do þerto þis medicyn: ℞, grana vij. numero, recentis & lucidi euforbij,[5] & take vij. figis & pare awei þe ryndis þerof' & grynde hem wel togidere, & do þerto as miche raw hony [6]& medle hem togidere, & make herof' þe maner of' a letuarie; & herof' he schal take as miche as a bene, & leie it' vndir his tunge, whanne he were

If the apostema is caused by cold humours use the purging pills of *Galien.*

"Scissure" is a fissure in the tongue.

Use a wash, and let the patient feed on barley-water and hog's-feet.

When the "frænum linguæ" extends too far, cut it with a golden instrument.

[2 lf. 180]

When the apostema is caused by melancholy,

try no cure;

if it is caused by phlegm, rub the tongue with salt or vitriol.

Against cramp in the tongue use anet-oil and a plaster.

If the tongue becomes soft, use purging pills and an electuary.

℞

[6 lf. 180, bk.]

[1] *þreed*, Lat. filum. Usually filetum. Fr. filet de la langue.

[3] Lat.: Ranula quoque fit sub lingua. Sl. 2463, fol. 93: "*Ranula is an emynence vnder þe tunge toward þe forther teth in maner of an enpostume, & whane þe tunge is lift vp þer schewith as it were a nother tunge vnder þe tunge.*"

[4] *pillulæ fetidæ*, pills composed from fetid things.

[5] Halle, *Table*, p. 35. '*Euphorbium*, Ευφόρβιον: is the gum or teares of a tree called Euphorbia growinge in Lybia, found out (by the testimonye of Dioscorides) in ye time of Iuba: and was called by that name (as saith Ruellius) of his Phisicien."

fastynge / Wiþ þis medicyn þe abbot' of' seint' victor was *maad* hool; for he miȝte not' speke, & herwiþ his speche come aȝen.[1]

Toothache

¶ Akinge of' teeþ: sumtyme it' comeþ of' vijs of' þe teeþ,[2] & sumtyme of' þe gomis, & sumtyme it' comeþ of' vijs of' þe stomac, & 4 sumtyme it' comeþ of' hoot' mete, & sum*t*yme of' coold mete. & if'

caused by hot meat is treated with cold water, by cold meat with hot oil, by sour things with cheese and purslane.

it' come of' hoot' mete, make hi*m* holde coold watir i*n* his mouþ, & þa*t*' wole cure hi*m* anoon. & if' it' come of' coold mete, þan he schal holde i*n* his mouþ hoot' oile. & if' a ma*n*nes teeþ akiþ for sour 8 þi*n*gis, þa*n* he schal ete chese & portulacas, or he sch*a*l gnawe wiþ his teeþ hoot' wex[3] / If' it' come of' vicis of' þe heed or of' þe gomis,

If it arises from the head or gums let blood.

and þe cause come of' hete, þat' þou miȝt' knowe bi reednes of' þe place & bi þe hete þe*r*of', & þa*n* þou schalt' lete hi*m* blood i*n* þe heed 12 veine, & þa*n* þou schalt' lete hi*m* blood i*n* þe veine þa*t*' is vndir his tu*n*ge; & þa*n* he schal holde in his mouþ oile of' ro*sis*, medlid wiþ

[4 lf. 181]

watir, [4]ouþ*er* coold watir & vinegre / If' þe akynge be so greuous þa*t*' it' mai not' be take awei, þan aswage his akynge wiþ þis 16

To soothe the pain,

℞

apply to the tooth a preparation of hyoscyamus and opium.

medicyn: ℞, seminis iusq*uia*mi al*bi*[5] opij an*a* ℈ .j, se*min*is apij ℈ .j, grinde he*m* togide*r*e & te*m*pere he*m* wiþ vinegre, & make þe*r*of' pelottis i*n* þe greetnes of' a pece, & leie oon herof' vpon þe tooþ, & þis wole do awei þe aki*n*ge þe*r*of'. & aft*er* þe fourþe dai lete hi*m* 20 holde in his mouþ oile of' ro*sis*, i*n* which is dissolued masticis.

If the pain is caused by cold humours, purge, use an electuary and instil a medicine into the ear.

¶ If' þe akynge come of' coold humo*ur*is, þa*t*' þou miȝt' knowe if' þe place be no*t*' reed ne to-swolle*n*, þa*n* purge hi*m* wiþ cochijs or wiþ pig*ra*. & aftir þis he schal holde in his mouþ tiriacam diatesseron.[6] 24

℞

¶ Also do þis medicyn in his eere i*n* þe same pa*r*ti þat' akiþ / ℞, oli*um* oliuar*um* .ʒ ij., aceti .℥ j., coloq*uint*i*dae*, pipe*r*is an*a* .ʒ .j.,

[1] Lat.: cum hac medicina fuit restituta loquela dominæ abbatissæ sancti victoris ad ultimum, quæ propter linguæ mollificationem non poterat uerbum intelligibile bene loqui; dedi ei hanc medicinam, et cito locuta est expedite.

[2] *of viis of þe teeþ*, dentium vitio. *viis* is used synonymously with *defaute*. Sometimes both expressions are used. Sloane 277, f. 12 *b.*: "*These seknesses be maad of vice or defaute of þe norischinge strengþe.*"

[3] This is evidently a way of filling the hole of a tooth.

[5] Halle, *Table*, 52. "*Hyosciamus.* Henbane is called in Greeke Ὑοσκυαμος; in Latin: Hiosciamus, Apollinaris, Faba suilla et Altercum; of Apuleius: Symphoniaca; of others also Fabidum and Fabilonia, and of some Cassilago or Caniculata; of the Apothecaries Iusquiamus. Of Henbane there are three kyndes: the blacke, the yelowe and the whyte."

[6] *diatessaron*, an electuary into the composition of which entered four medicines. "Among Farriers *Diatessaron* is taken for Horse-treacle; — —. Also an Electuary made of Gentian, Bay berries and Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to a very fine Powder, and work'd in like manner with two Pounds of Honey in a Stone-mortar."—Phillips.

& boile he*m* *in* a double vessel, & distille it' in his eere flaisch[1] / Sumtyme a ma*n*nes teeþ ben frete & ben holow, & þis comeþ of' humours corrupt' þat' falliþ to þe teeþ. & *in* þis maner þou schalt' cure it' / ℞, oli*um* .℥ j., sansuci[2] sicci,[3] se*min*is sicute an*a* ʒ ß. boile he*m* togidere, & þan þou schalt' haue [4]a cauterie wiþ .ij. pointis, & þ*o*u schalt' haue þe schap herof' heraftir, & þou schalt' make þe same instrument' hoot' *in* þe fier, & þan putte it' *in* þe forseid oile, & þa*n* putte it' in þe hole of' his tooþ, & be war þat' þou touche not' his gomys wiþ þe iren ne his lippis: & þis medicyn þou muste reherse ofte tymes / þis medicyn wole bringe water out' of' þe teeþ, & it' wole do awei þe akynge. ¶ If' þou desirist' to drawe out' ony mannes tooþ wiþouten iren: ℞, cortices radicum mori & piretru*m* an*a*, diste*mpe*re he*m* wiþ vinegre & grinde hem wel togidere, & drie he*m* in þe su*n*ne, & departe liʒtli þe tooþ & þe fleisch of' þe gomis & leie of' þe medicy*n* bitwixe þe tooþ & þe fleisch / Also lac titimalli[5] diste*mpe*rid wiþ flour of' amidu*m* / Also make poudre of' peletre & lete it' lie in vinegre *in* þe somer tyme, & kepe it'; þis makith neische, þat' þe tooþ mowe be d*ra*we out' wiþouten ony iren / If' a ma*n*nes teeþ be*n* blac, *in* þis maner þou schalt' make hem whit' / ℞, farina*m* ordei, sal an*a*, & leie he*m* *in* hony, & make þ*e*rof' past' & folde it' *in* paper [6]or *in* ly*n*nen cloop, & bre*n*ne it' *in* a furneis. & þa*n* bre*n*ne schellis of' eiren, & cipe*r*i, al*um*inis an*a* p*ar*tes duas, corticu*m* cit*ri* siccor*um*, camfer an*a* p*ar*tem vna*m*, make herof' poudre, and frote þ*er*wiþ his teeþ & hise gomis, & þis wole do awei þe blaknes of' a ma*n*nes teeþ /

If the teeth are hollow ℞ cauterize the hole with the hot iron. [4 lf. 181, bk.]

To draw teeth without using the iron. ℞

A powder to make black teeth white. ℞ [6 lf. 182]

Of þe passioun in wo*m*men brestis /

¶ v. c°. A woman's breasts are made of glandular flesh, blood-vessels and nerves, and the blood is turned to milk in them.

28 GOd almiʒti made *in* a wo*m*man tetis for þe norischinge of' a child. & a wo*m*mans tetis ben maad of' fleisch þ*at*' is glandulous, & of' veines, & of' arterijs, & of' ne*r*ues, & ben but' veines þat' come*n* fro a wo*m*mans lyuere to hir tetis & þe maris, as it' is seid here tofore, & *in* what' maner blood t*ur*neþ *in*to milk it' is forseid.[7]

[1] *flaisch*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

[2] "*Samsucus*, maiorana," et cet. *Alphita*, p. 161.

[3] MS. *succi*.

[5] *lac titimalli*. τιθύμαλος, euforbia.

[7] Lat.: et ad ubera veniunt venæ concavæ a matrice, per quas, ut scivisti, pars sanguinis attrahitur menstrualis, et sicut chylus camellinus veniens a stomacho, cum a hepate recipitur, colorem recipit rubeum: sic sanguis a matrice veniens rubeus albescit. Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. XII., Cap. 1, f. 209. "Nam epar rubificat chilum album et facit ipsum sanguinem. Et mamilla albificat sanguinem rubeum et facit ipsum lac."

Egidius.

¶ In a wo*m*mans tetis comeþ manie passiou*n*s / ffor, as Egidius seiþ, þat' sumtyme þe*r* comeþ þe*r*to apostym of' milk, & sumtyme vlce*r*a / And comou*n*ly enpostyms comeþ of' blood þat' is d*r*awe to þe tetis & mai not' turne i*n*to milk, or if' a wo*m*man haue to miche 4 blood, & it' comeþ of' febilnes of' ve*r*tu as it' is aforseid in þe general chapitre of' enpostyms. ¶ þe cure of' an hoot' enpostym i*n* þe tetis / ffirst' þou [1]schalt' letc hir blood i*n* Basilica, or sette a ve*n*tuse vpon hir schuldris. & if' þe cause come of' retenc*i*ou*n* of' menstrue, 8 þa*n* þou schalt' ȝeue hir medicyns for to bringe out' þe menstrue, or þou schalt' lete hir blood i*n* þe sophene, & anointe þe place wiþ oile of' ro*sis*, & þe fourþe p*ar*t' of' vinegre. & if' þis suffise not', þan wete a ly*n*nen clooþ in þe iuys of' solatri,[2] & wh*an*ne þou hast' 12 anoyntid þe place wiþ oile & vinegre, þan leie þis clooþ þe*r*vpon. & loke þat' alle þingis þat' þou leist' þe*r*to be flasch hoot';[3] for þe*r* schal no coold þi*n*g' be leid þe*r*to for þe place is neruous, for coold þi*n*g' wolde greue it'. If' alle þese medicyns suffisen not', saue þe 16 mater bigy*n*nc þ to drawe to quitture, þa*n*ne leie þe*r*to maturatiuis. & if' þou miȝt' not' do it' awei wiþ repe*r*cussiuis ne wiþ resoluynge þi*n*gis, & þou ne miȝt' not' make it' maturatif', þan it' is dredc lest' þe wo*m*man bicome i*n* a passiou*n* þat' is clepid Mania.[4] þan hir heed 20 mote be schaue, & ȝeue hir confortif' þi*n*gis for hir heed, & ȝeue hir sotil dietynge, & sche schal drinke no wijn ne ete [5]no fleisch. & þou muste worche ful sotilli, ffor I say a wo*m*man þat' hadde an enpostym i*n* hir brest' & come of' blood, & so I tauȝte hir for to do[6] 24 as it' is aforseid, & þo þe*r* come a lewid cirurgian & rep*re*uede me, & he leide þe*r*vpon maturatiuis: & þe more þat' he leide þe*r*vpon maturatiuis, þe more þe mater wexide greet' & þe more bre*n*ny*n*ge. & þe same cirurgian woldc not' heere my counseil / & þe wo*m*mans 28 frendis took more hede to þe lewid cirurgian þan to me, & wiþi*n*ne .iij. daies Mania come to hir and was oute of' hir witt', & so þe frenesie fil on hir / & þis p*ro*nosticaciou*n* I seide in þe bigynnynge, but' þei wolde not' leue mi wordis[7] / If' it' so be þat' it' make quitture, 32 þan opene it' & do out' þe quitture, & þan leie þe*r*to a mundificatif',

Apostemas are caused by blood in the breast, which cannot be turned into milk. Treatment of a hot apostema.

[1 lf. 182, bk.] Use blood-letting and cupping.

In case of retention of the menstrual blood, bleed from the Saphena: use an ointment and a compress, which must be lukewarm.

If suppuration is imminent, apply maturatives, and if they fail there is danger of Mania.

Shave her head,

[5 lf. 183] and let her abstain from wine and meat.

A woman with an apostema in her breast was treated by an unskilful surgeon, with maturatives,

in three days she fell into Mania and frenzy, as I prognosticated.

If it suppurates, open it.

[2] Halle, *Table*, p. 119. "Solanum hortense, which doubtlesse Lanfranke meaneth by Solatrum, doth Galen also call Esculentum."

[3] *flasch hoot*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

[4] De propr. rer. lib. V. cap. 34. Add. 27,944, fol. 53 b.: "*ypocras seiþ þat in wommen in þe whiche superfluyte of blood turned to þe pappis, it bodeþ madnes.*"

[6] *do*, above line.

[7] Lat.: mea tamen prognosticatio multum exaltata extitit.

& be wel war þat þou putte *peri*nne no greet tent ne long, as manie foolis doon; for a wo*m*mans tetis ben ful of nerues, & if þe nerues were p*r*essid wiþ ony tent, it wolde make gret akynge, & wolde
4 lette þe cure *per*of. ¶ Also *per* ben manie foli lechis, wha*n*ne þei fynde*n* [1]*in* a wo*m*mans tetis fleisch þat is glandelous, þan þei wene þat it be wickid fleisch, & be*n* *per*aboute for to drawe it out, & þan þei schendiþ al þe substau*n*ce of þe brest. Þou schalt worche
8 wiseli & þou schalt remeue noon herof, for as it is aforseid, al þe fleisch of þe tetis is glandelous. & wha*n*ne þat is clensid wiþ mundificatiuis þan þou schalt regendre fleisch, & þan þou schalt drie it / If it be so, þat coold mater gadere to enpostym *in* a wo*m*mans
12 brest, & þat comeþ ful selde, loke if þis mater come of fleume, & þan anoynte þe place wiþ oile of camom*ille*, & oile of lilie, & oile of anete, & a litil vinegre medlid *per*wiþ. & if it be ony nede first make hir a purgaciou*n*, & if it resolue not, þan leie þerto matura-
16 tiuis, & þan do as it is aforseid / & if it so be þat þe mater turne to hardnes & blak or ledi, þan þou muste be war þat þou leie *per*to no medicyns þat be*n* to hoot, for *per* mai engendre a cancre *per*of ful liȝtli. & if it be so, þan be þou not *per*aboute for to make it
20 maturatif, & do þou no cure *per*to. & su*m*men seien þat a wo*m*man mai be curid for [2]to kutte off al þe brest, & þat is al fals. Saue þou schalt kepe þe place wiþ vng*uentu*m de tutia, & sche mote ofte be purgid, þat sche mowe lyue þe lenger. ¶ I-leue þe wordis þat I
24 seie; þouȝ I haue curid manie men of diuers e*m*postyms, I miȝte neuere cure a verri cancre, but it were i*n* a fleischi place *per*e I miȝte kut al awei wiþouten ony hurtyng of senewis & of veines[3] / & a wo*m*mans brest is ful of senewis & veynes & arterijs. ¶ Vlcera
28 þat be*n* *in* a wo*m*mans tetis schulen be curid as it is aforseid *in* þe general chapitre, saue herof þou muste be war þat þis lyme may not suffre so harde corosiuis for þe greet tendirnes *per*of, saue þou schalt do *per*to medicyns þat ben mundificatif & driynge / It falliþ
32 to su*m*me wo*m*men þat þe point of hir tete ne goiþ not out, but ben al hid *in* þe tete so *pat* a child mai not take it *in* his mouþ for to souke / In þis maner þou schalt helpe it / Take þe cuppe of an acurne, & þat is lyk to þe point of a wo*m*mans tete, & do *per*on
36 terbentyn or pich, & make it hoot & leie it vpon þe point of hir tete & bi*n*de [4]it *per*to faste, & þis wole drawe out þe point of hir

Be ware not to use a great tent, as many fools do.

Many foolish physicians [1 lf. 183, bk.] remove the glandular flesh, mistaking it for corrupt flesh.

If cold matter gathers into an apostema, apply an ointment and maturatives.

If the matter becomes hard, it may easily become a cancer. In case of cancer, [2 lf. 184] operation does not help: but apply an ointment and purge to prolong the patient's life.

I have only cured a true cancer in a fleshy part.

Ulcers in a woman's breast are treated with mundificative and drying medicines.

If the nipples are hid in the breast draw them out with an acorn-cup.

R7

[4 lf. 184, bk.]

[3] There is no condition mentioned in the Latin original, under which the operation might be performed. Roy. 12. C. XIV. fol. 54 b.: de uero cancro nunquam curare potui, licet pluries cum meis uiribus laborauerim.

In case of enlargement of the breast apply

tetc. ¶ Also it bifalliþ to maidenes þat her tetis bicomeþ more þan þei schulde be bi resoun, & þou schalt helpe hem in þis maner / Take stonys þat me whettiþ knyues on, & frote þese .ij. stones

℞ the powder of a whet-stone and vinegar,

togiderc in vinegre longe, til þe vinegre bicome þicke þerof, & make it hoot & anoynte þer wiþ hir tetis, & þan binde hem / þis medicyn defendiþ þat þei schulen not wexe, & make hem bicome litil til þei

or a plaster of cumin with honey and vinegar.

come to her owne propre schap. ¶ Also take comyn & make poudre þerof, & medle it wiþ hony & vinegre; and it worchiþ þe more strongli if þou medle þerwiþ bole armoniac & terra sigillata; grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & make a plastre þerof & lete it lie þeron .iij. daies, & þan þou schalt waische it wiþ coold water / And a womman be war herof þat sche haue no sich medicyn, if hir brest schal wexe ony more.[1] ¶ If þat milk be gaderid hard in a wommans brest for hete, þanne þou schalt anointe hir brest wiþ oile of rosis & vinegre, & þou schalt make an enplastre as [2]of solatri, portulace, for þese herbis han propirte for to dissolue. ¶ þis is a plastre þat wole dissolue mylk þat is congelid hard, and it wole make þe mater of an enpostym maturatif / ℞, mice panis, farina ordei, fenigreci & seminis lini ana. ℥ j, radicis malue visci & herbe veruce.[3] ana. ꝏ .j.; seþe wel þese .ij. laste, & þan stampe hem wel alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ oile, & make þerof a plastre & leie it vpon flasch hoot /

If the milk becomes hard, anoint the breast with oil and apply a solvent.

[2 lf. 185]

℞

ffor brekyng of þe siphac & of his laxyng.

¶ vjo co/

ANothamia of þe siphac is aforseid / & sumtyme siphac is kutt, & sumtyme it recchiþ along, & sumtyme it to-brekiþ wiþ lepinge, & sumtyme for greet wepinge, & sumtyme for greet crijnge, & sumtyme for greet traueile. ¶ If siphac be recchid aboute þe nauele ouþer aboute þe heeris, þat þou myȝt knowe in þis maner: þe place wole be to-swolle an hiȝ as it were an enpostym. & whanne þou touchist it wiþ þi fyngir, it wole goon yn aȝen. & sumtyme it wole come aȝen, & it wole make noon gurgulacioun / þe cure herof is but liȝt, & is wiþ a ligature & wiþ enplastre þat schal be seid in þe brekinge [4]of þe siphac. & if siphac be to-broke, þou miȝte knowe bi þe greet noise, whanne þou lest þin hond þervpon for to putte hem yn

If the "siphac" protrudes at the navel or the groins,

use a ligature and a plaster.

[4 lf. 185, bk.]

If the siphac is broken a gurgling sound is heard, on the application of pressure.

[1] The translator has omitted the following passage: Caueat etiam illa quæ non vult suas ingrossare mamillas: ne illas tangat vel tangi permittat.

[3] *herbe veruce*, Lat. *herbæ erucæ*. Brassica eruca L., white mustard. The translator mistook it for Verrucaria.

aȝen.[1] ¶ þe cure herof' is hard in an oold ma*n*. þa*n* make him a brac- Apply a bandage and a plate of iron firmly fastened on the place;
cal[2] *id est* a boond þat' it' be þe brede of' .iiij. fyngris. & it' mote be
ma*a*d of' ly*n*nen cloþ maniefoold,[3] & þou muste make a plate of' iren,
4 as brood as þe brekyng' is, & þat' mote be fooldid manie foold *in* þe
forseid ligature, & it' schal not' be round, but' plain. & þou muste
ordeyne þe*r*fore fastny*n*gis tofore & bihinde & *in* hise flankis, þat' it'
mowe be holde algate *in* oon place, and þou schalt' make an enplastre and beneath the bandage apply a plaster.
8 for to leie vpon þe same place vndir þe bindinge *in* þis maner / ℞,
glutinu*m* piscium vel carte .℥. iiij, picis grece .℥. .iiij, picis naualis ℞
armoniaci an*a*. ℥ ij, kutte þese alle to smale gobetis, & do he*m* in
℥. ij. of' vinegre, & ℥ .iiij. of' oile of' mast*icis* & lete he*m* lie þe*r*on
12 adai & anyȝt', & þa*n* melte he*m* *in* a pa*n*ne & cole he*m*. & heron
medle poud*re* mastic & thus, & boli armoniaci, mu*m*mie, san*uinis*,
d*ra*conis, dragaganti, farine fenigreci an*a* ℥ ß. medle he*m* longe
togid*ere* / Ouþir take [4]scropholarie[5] þe rynde þe*r*of' & grinde it' [4] lf. 186]
16 wiþ grese, & make þe*r*of' an enplastre, & of' þe same rotis make
poudre, & ȝeue hi*m* þe*r*of' eueri dai .ʒ .j. & ß. wiþ wijn / Also ȝeue
hi*m* eue*r*y dai .ʒ .j & ß of' poudre m*aa*d of' þe rotis of' valarian
temp*er*id wiþ wijn. ¶ And if' hise guttis falle adoun into his
20 ballok leþir,[6] þe cure þe*r*of' schal be seid in þe nexte chapitre //

Of hernia[7] of þe ballokis //

THis siknes mai be seid *in* manie maners / In oon maner wh*a*nne ¶ vij. c°/
a ma*n*nes bowels falliþ into his ballokis leþeris, & þan it' is
24 clepid hernia intestinalis / Or þe*r* falliþ watir into þe same place as Scrotal hernias

[1] The distinction made between a simple protrusion and a rupture of the siphac is, in fact, one between a less or more developed hernia. The "gurgling sound" has already been noticed by *Avicenna Canon*, Lib. III., Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 3.

[2] *braccal*, Lat. brachale = cingulum coriaceum Dufr., from med. Lat. bracæ. See *breeches*, *N. E. Dict.* The use of the "brachale vel lumbare" is mentioned by Gulielm. de Salie, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I., Cap. 43. De crepatura in inguinibus. Engl. transl., Sl. 277, fol. 6 *b*. "*Wiþoute cuttynge moost children & oþere in whiche þe guttes comen not down to þe ballock codd, & whiche þat hadde but litel schewynge wiþ a lumbare or a bawdrike*, & *oure plastre & powdre manye in my tyme I curede þe lumbare or bawdrike oweþ to be maad of lynnen cloþ þrefold.*" Sl. 2463, fol. 123 b. says: "*The cure without inscicion . . . is don with a gyrdell made for þe rupture, þe whiche a man may fynde to sylle.*"

[3] *maniefoold*, Lat.: multis duplicationibus facta.

[5] *scropholarie*, scrophularia, water betony, *medewort* written above. See Wr. Wül. *mêdwurt*.

[6] *ballok leþir*, testiculorum bursa.—*Cath. Angl.*, p. 211. Ledyr; birsa. Sl. 2463, f. 123 *b*.: *þe purs of þe ballokes.* [7] MS. *hernio*.

Hernia intestinalis, hernia aquosa, hernia ventosa, hernia carnosa, hernia varicosa.

.1. Either the Zirbus or the [1 lf. 186, bk.] bowels fall into the enlargened Didymus.

2. They fall through a rupture of the Siphac into the Scrotum. This latter case can only be cured by operation.

it' were a dropesie, & þan it' is clepid hernia aquosa / Ouiþir þer
comeþ wijnd into þe same place, & þan it' is clepid hernia ventosa.
And sumtyme þer wexiþ fleisch aboute & is greet', & þan it' is clepid
hernia carnosa / And sumtyme þer ben veynes þereaboute ful of' 4
malancolious blood & wele be gret' as it' were notis, & þan it' is
clepid hernia varicosa / The firste cause comeþ in þis maner: Din-
dimus, þat' anathomia þerof' is [1]forseid, wexiþ wide for sum moistnes
þat' falliþ þerto, so þat' ȝirbus, ouþer þe bowels falliþ adoun in þe 8
same place; and þis maner is ofte seen. Ouþer siphac is to-broke
in þe flank wiþ oon of' þe forseid causis in þe chapitre tofore / &
þoruȝ þe same brekinge' þe bowels falliþ adoun ouþir ȝirbus, & bitwixe
dindimus & mirac þei fallen adoun into þe ballok leþeris. & þis 12
maner falliþ ful selden. Þis laste maner is incurable wiþ ony
medicyns, but' wiþ kuttynge it' mai be curid & sewid. & who þat'
vsiþ sich maner boondis aforseid, but' if' it' be in children & in newe
causis, it' is al traueile in idil, & þe patient haþ greet' penaunce þerwiþ 16
wiþouten ony profit'. ¶ The firste may be curid / & þe .ij. maner
is ful hard for to cure, & þerfore it' is ful necessarie for a cirurgian
for to knowe alle þe maners herof' & anathamiam as it' is forseid

Many unskilful men dare to try these cures,

lest' he falle in errour. ¶ Þer ben manie men þat' ben hardi for to 20
entermete of' þese curis þat' knowen not' þe maner of' þe sijknes ne
þe diffence þerof', & þerfore þei falliþ aldai in errour. & þe lasse

[2 lf. 187]

good þat' [2]þat' þei kunne, þe raþere þei wole entermete of' sich an
hard cause. & þis cause is ful perilous / I haue seen manie wise 24

whereas some wise men are afraid of doing so.

men þat' coude do þis cure ful wel, & ȝitt' þei wolde not' entermete
þerof' / Þerfore þou muste take consideracioun sotilli, where þe
bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ þe brekynge of' siphac ouþir þoruȝ dindi-

These two kinds of Hernia must be distinguished.

mum, & þat' þou schalt' knowe in þis maner: ¶ In þe firste caas þe 28

1. The bowels fall out suddenly through the broken **Mirac.**

bowels or ȝirbus falliþ doun sodeinli wiþ agreuaunce, & þan þou
miȝt' fele his bowels or ȝirbum in þe botme of' þe ballok leþir, & þan
þer is but' oon skyn to-broke, & þat' is mirac. & wh*an*ne þou wolt'
putte yn þe bowels aȝen, þou miȝt' fele in what' place þei goon in. 32
& wh*an*ne hise bowels ben ynne, þan lete þe patient stonde vp, &
hise bowels wolen falle out' sodeinli aȝen, & þan þou miȝt' fele in

2. The bowels descend slowly, with a gurgling sound.

what' place þei comeþ out' / In þe .ij. caas ȝirbus or þe bowels, or
boþe comen adoun alitil & alitil, & makiþ miche gurgulacioun, & þe 36
wei þat' þei comeþ out' is algate sumwhat' greet' in dindimo, & þat'

[3 lf. 187, bk.]

wole not' be put' yn wh*an*ne þe bowels ben putt' yn, saue [3]wiþ greet'
penaunce & in longe tyme. & wh*an*ne þe bowels falliþ þoruȝ dindi-
mum, he makiþ þe ballok leþir neucre þe lengere, & þis is a good 40

knowinge: wha*n*ne þou hast' take kepe of' alle þese p*r*iuitees, þa*n* þou miȝt' wite wherof' þe cause is. ¶ Wha*n*ne þe bowels falliþ adou*n* þoruȝ a fissure, i*d est* þoruȝ a brekynge, þan þou schalt' not' traueile forto worche wiþ plastris & wiþ boondis þat' be*n* forseid, but' if' it' be i*n* childre*n* & i*n* causis þat' ben newe. & if' þe brekynge be but' litil, þan þou miȝt' make .v. cauterijs vpon þe skyn wiþoutforþ, so þat' þe cauterie p*er*se mirac, for þat' wole make an hard drowi*n*g' vpon þe brekinge / & it' wole not' suffre þat' þe bowels schulen not' falle adou*n* þoruȝ þat place, so þat' þe brekinge be but' litil. If' it' so be þat' þe bowels falle adou*n* þoruȝ dindimu*m*, þan men haueþ diuers curis. Su*m*men leien a corosif' vpon þe ers wiþ dindimu*m*, a medicyn corosif', til þe skyn wiþout' be frete, til þou mai se di*n*dimu*m*, & þan aftirward he fretiþ dindimu*m*; & su*m*men drawiþ awei a ma*n*nes ballokis, and [1]su*m*men drawiþ not' awei, but bi þe wei of' þe corosif' þe ballokis wolen rotie aft*er*ward / ¶ Also su*m*men maken pu*n*ctual cauterijs i*n* þe maner of' a cros vpon dindimu*m*, & þan aftirward heliþ it' vp / Su*m*men kutten þe hiȝer skyn wiþ a cauterie,[2] & þei streyneþ di*n*dimu*m*, & þei bindiþ it' wiþ spago[3] / Su*m* worch*ith* in anoþir maner: first', þei kuttiþ þe skyn aboue, & þan þei makiþ cauteriu*m* aboue vpon dindimu*m* i*n* su*m*me p*ar*tie, & i*n* su*m* p*ar*ti þei leeueþ hool. & þis maner is lasse worse þan þe toþ*er* þat' ben forseid / Su*m*me*n* ficchiþ .ij. nedlis i*n* di*n*dimu*m* wiþ double þreed & crossiþ þe nedlis togidere, & þan þei takiþ þe þredis & leiþ þ*er*vpon martenciu*m*,[4] til al þe skyn þat' was take wiþ þe nedelis be rerid an hiȝ. & oþ*er* me*n* han diuers werkis þat' I hadde not' certey*n*, for alle maners þat' I heere þ*er*of' ben disseyuable / For sumtyme wha*n*ne a man haþ miche traueilid þoruȝ, þing' þat' he haþ do brekiþ aȝen, & þan it' wole be worse þan it' was raþ*er*. & among' alle þe maners þ*at*' be*n*, þ*at*' is worst' þat' is doon wiþ medicyn caustica, for medicyns caustica for þe grete venym & malice [5]þat' it' haþ, makiþ greet' akynge, & is cause to make an enpostym i*n* dindimo, and þoruȝ þe agreuau*n*ce þat' dindimo haþ, siphac mai be agreued & diafragma. & fro diafragma it' mai go[6] to þe brayn, þat' is þe welle of' alle nerues, & so þe ma*n* mai falle in a spasme, & þan he is but deed. ¶ O þou wrecchid leche, þat' for a litil money

When the bowels fall through a rupture apply bandages only in case of children.

If the rupture is small, cauterise the skin above the **Mirac.**

If the bowels fall through the "Didymum," different ways of treatment are proposed.

Some physicians use a Corrosive, [1 lf. 188]

some remove the testicles,

some use cauteries,

some tie a string round the Didymus.

All these cures are uncertain, **Nota.**

a relapse may occur.

Caustics are dangerous,

[5 lf. 188, bk.]

they may affect the Diaphragm and the brain.

A bad leech, for a little sum

[2] *wiþ a cauterie*, error for *wiþout cauterie*. Lat.: Alii sine cauterio superficialem cutem incidunt.

[3] *wiþ spago*, cum spago; med. Lat. spacus, thread. See Diez. s. v. spago.

[4] *martenciu*m, Lat. martentinum. Name of a cautery?

[6] *go*, above line.

endangers a man's life, which is worth more than any gold or silver.

puttist' a ma*n*nes lijf' in p*er*el of' deep / for þe lawe seiþ, it' is better
þan ony gold or siluer, for þou for a litil money makist' hi*m* i*n* p*er*el
of' deep / For a man mai lyue vn-to þe tyme of' his ende for þis

The author's advice is, not to cut, but apply the above mentioned bandage and plaster.

passiou*n*. & þ*er*fore I wole counseile to kutte no man / Saue bi my 4
counseil þei schulen make a ligature as it' is aforseid in þe brede of'
.iiij. fyngris of' ly*n*nen clooþ or of' sendel,[1] as I haue tauȝt' hertofore.
& make þat' enplastre þat' is forseid, & teche hi*m* good regimen &
good dietynge / & þouȝ he be not' curid wiþ þis medicyn he schal 8

He treated in this way a patient who was sixty years of age.

lyue neue*r*e adai þe lenger, ne þe lasse while þerfore / ¶ I say .ij.
men þat' hadden þe passiou*n*, & þ*a*t' oon was .lx. wint*er* oold, & his
bowels fel out' as it' is for seid, & it' was ful hard[2] to bringe he*m* in

[3 lf. 189]

[3]aȝen, & I made hi*m* sich a boond as it' is aforseid & a plastre, & 12
tauȝte in what' man*er* he schulde diete hi*m*-silf'. & I seide to hi*m* if'
he louede his owne lijf' he schulde go to no ma*n* to kutte hi*m*. &

He wore the bandage during two years in perfect health.

he was glad of' my cou*n*seil, & he bar þe forseid bond & þe enplastre
.ij. ȝeer contynueli, dai & nyȝt', & wiþi*n*ne þat' tyme he was hool, & 16
ȝitt' I wiste not' wher he schulde be hool or no / & þat' oþir man

Another patient who was forty years old, was cured by similar treatment.

was .xl. wint*re* oold, & þer fel so greet' plente out' at' his bowels,
þat' þei miȝte not' be putt' in aȝen, til þe pacient' were sett' in a baþ.
& þo I putte he*m* in aȝen / & I toolde of' þe p*er*el of' kuttynge, & 20
he bad me make sich a boond, & I made hi*m* oon & þe enplastre þat'
is forseid. & I tauȝte hi*m* how he schulde kepe hi*m*-silf', and how
he schulde diete hi*m*-silf'. & wiþi*n*ne a litil tyme he come to me, &
seide þ*a*t' he w*as* almost' hool, & þat' he wolde were his boond no 24
lenger. & þo I rep*re*uede hi*m*, & seide þat' he schulde not' be hool,
but' if' he weride it' lenger / In þis maner þou schalt' teche hi*m* for

The patient shall always wear his bandage,

to kepe hi*m*-silf' : he schal algate were his boond & his plastre, saue
if' he haue greet' penaunce [4]þ*er*wiþ wha*n*ne he goiþ to his bed an- 28

[4 lf. 189, bk.]

shall abstain from vegetables and new wine,

euen he mai vndo it' / And he schal in[5] no maner ete no growel ne
raw fruit, ne no mete þat' makiþ inflaciou*n* / And he schal drinke
no newe wijn, & he schal ete no greet' saule,[6] and wha*n*ne he haþ
ete þan he schal reste hi*m*-silf'. & he schal not' arise, but' if' his 32

shall not leap, cry, or run,

ligature be faste bounden, & he schal not' lepe, & he schal not' crie
ne renne, & he lepe vpon an hors softli. & wha*n*ne he sittiþ at'

[1] *sendel*, Lat. sindon, σινδών, a fine Indian cloth, muslin ; *sendel*, O.Fr. *cendal* is derived from *sindon*. See Diez, s. v. zendale. See *sendalle*, *sendylle*, in *Cath. Angl.*, p. 329, and note *ibid.*

[2] *hard*, in margin.

[5] *in*, above line.

[6] Lat. : ne comedant ad plenam saturitatem. *saule*, O.Fr. saoulée, from saoul, Lat. satullus.

priuy he schal not streyne hi*m*-silf to harde, & he schal ete no mete þat wole make hi*m* costif. & if he wole ony þing traueile, he schal do it þe while he is fastynge. & if he wole holde alle þes
4 p*r*eceptis he mai be hool / & þis medicyne is certeyn, for he schal herfore lyue neue*r*e þe lasse while.

and avoid constipation.

Nota

¶ If **hernia** be watri, þis is þe signe þe*r*of, þat his ballok wole be heuy & schynynge, & if þou p*r*essist it wiþ þi fy*n*gir þou schalt
8 fele watrynes þe*r*on / ffirst þou must loke wher it be litil or myche[1] — — & þan medicyns þat ben consumynge & driynge suffisiþ / þe*r*fore þat þou schalt fynde here aftir i*n* þe chapitre of þe droþesie.

Watery **hernia.** The scrotum is heavy and shining, the water is felt on pressure.

¶ If the [2]mater be greet, þan avoide awei þe mat*er* wiþ kuttynge &
12 wiþ caut*er*ijs. But if þou make cauterijs, þe watir wole come aȝe*n* þe*r*to, & þe cauterijs wolen lette þ*at* þ*er* schal no more mater come þe*r*to. ¶ If þe mater be of wynd: þat þou myȝt knowe bi inflacciou*n* þat is not ledi colo*ur*[3] & bi felynge wiþ þi fyngris, if þou felist
16 no watrines þe*r*on, ne heuynes; þe cure herof is w*ith* ele*ctuar*i maad of greynes of lauri & oþ*er*e þi*n*gis þat schulen be said i*n* þe chapitre of þe dropesi i*n* tympanido.[4]

Use drying medicines, [2 lf. 190] or evacuate the matter with cutting and cauteries.

Hernia **ventosa** is treated with an electuary.

¶ If it be superfluite of fleisch, þat þou miȝte wite wiþ þi fyngris, it wole be hard,[5] þe cure herof mai not be
20 do, but if þou kutte þe skyn þat is wiþoute & d*ra*we out þe mater, & þan soude it, & if it be in þe oon part hard & callous, & in þat oþ*er* p*ar*t neische, þan it is better þat þou sette noon hand þe*r*on, & p*r*incipali if it be blac & ledi.

Carnosa. Cut the skin and remove the matter.

¶ Varicosa schal be curid wiþ
24 gotis whey, & w*ith* epithi*m*o, & wiþ purgaciou*n*s of malancolio*us* blood, & þan leie þe*r*to þingis þ*at* be*n* wastynge /

Varicosa.

¶ Of a stoon i*n* þe bladd*re* & reynis /[6]

¶ viijo. co. [7 lf, 190, bk.]

A stoon i*n* a man is engendrid of plente of [7]grete humo*ur*is
28 wiþi*n*ne a ma*n*, as we mou*n* se an ensample wiþoutforþ of oþ*er*e þi*n*gis, i*n* þe maner þat men bre*n*nen tilis i*n* a furneis. þei maken first þe tilis of strong cley þ*at* is viscous, & wh*an*ne þei han schape it as þei wolen, þan þei leie it in þe su*m*ne to drie / &
32 þan þei doon he*m* i*n* a furneis wiþ fier. & þe stronger fier þat þe

A stone in the bladder or the reins arises from a superfluity of the humours and great heat, as tiles get hard in the fire.

[1] Some words are wanting. Lat.: *quæ si sit parua*, sufficit tibi medicamen consumens.

[3] Lat.: Ventosa cognoscitur per tumorem non lucentem.

[4] Lat.: in hydropisi tympanite. See p. 282.

[5] Lat.: Signum hernie carnose est . . . quod sentis, cum tangis, testiculos dura carne circumvolutos.

[6] Compare *Celsus Medicina*, lib. VII., cap. 26. The later authors followed more or less closely.

tilis han, þe stronger þei wolen be, & riȝt so in a mannes bodi, wha*n*ne a man haþ miche viscous mat*er*e in his bodi & mai not be putt out for febilnes of expulcioun, & þan scharp hete specialy in þe reines falliþ to þat mater & mak*ith* it hard, & in þis maner 4 engendriþ þe stoon in þe reynes. ¶ Also in children a stoon engendriþ in her bladdre; for þe reynes of a child ben not so hote as a mannes / In þis man*er* þou schalt knowe wher þe stoon be in a man*n*es bladdre or in his reynes[1] / If þe gr*a*uel of his vrine be 8 whit: þan þe stoon is in þe bladdre / And if þe grauel be reed, þan it is in his reynes[2] / ¶ Su*m*men þat ben hardi wolen asaie for to cure a man wiþ kuttynge þat haþ þe stoon in his reynes; for þei knowiþ [3]not þe p*e*rel of wou*n*dis þat falliþ in þe reynes þat I haue 12 aforseid, & þan þei doiþ no more saue bringe þe pacient to his deeþ. ¶ Now I wole teche in what maner a man schal kepe hi*m* þat is disposid to haue þe stoon, he schal ete no metis þat ben viscous ne to scharpe, & tofore alle þi*n*gis hard chese gaderiþ viscous 16 mater & hard. & he schal ete no beef, ne no fleisch of a goos, ne no grete briddis þat swy*m*meþ in þe wat*er*, & he schal ete no fleisch of an hert, & he schal ete no swete breed,[4] & al maner mete þat is ma*a*d of swete past, & he schal ete no whete soden, & he schal ete 20 no maner þing þat is maad of milk saue þe whey, & he schal drinke no coold watir, & he schal ete no fruitis þat ben of greet substau*n*ce, as applis, peris, & he schal drinke no newe wijn, ne no wijn of greet substau*n*ce, & he schal ete no þingis þat is to myche 24 salt, & he schal absteyne hi*m* fro alle þi*n*gis þat engendriþ scharpe humou*r*is & grete, & he schal not ete to greet sauly[5] / In þis man*er* he schal diete hi*m*-silf, he schal ete breed þat is wel leueyned / &

Nota

The position of the stone is detected by the colour of the urinary sediments.

[3 If. 191]

Rules of dietyng for a man, who is disposed to get a stone.

He shall abstain from sweet things, milk, cold water, apples, pears,

new wine, salted things.

He shall take well-fermented bread,

[1] Barth. *De propr. Trevisa*, lib. VII., cap. 54, indicates another symptom. Add. MS. 27, 944. fol. 96. "*And if þe ston is in þe reynes hit is i-knowe by slepinge of þe fote and in þe ioyntes of þe lift side, and if it is in þe bladder þe ache is in þe schare and þe twist bitwene þe genetras and þe hole at þe rigge bones ende.*"

[2] The translator omits the passage about the causes of stone in general, about the stone in the reins and its treatment. The following sentence, *þat I haue aforseid*, refers to this omitted part. The author says that he will speak about the causes and treatment of the stone in the reins, although it does not properly belong to surgery. Lat.: Ego vero, licet liber iste meus de cirurgia dicatur, et ad instrumentum cyrurgicum de lapide renum tractare non pertineat, tamen quoniam multum assimilatur in causis et curis, quamvis dissimiletur in signis et curis. Et quum ad curas lapidum renum multotiens sum vocatus, propter gratiam scholarium modum quo usus sum in utriusque lapidis curatione, causas, signa, et differentias ponere non postponam.

[4] Lat.: a pane azymo. ἄζυμος, unleavened.

[5] Compare p. 272, note 6.

his breed wole be þe[1] bettir for hi*m* if[t] it[t] be medlid wiþ poudre [[1] lf. 191, bk.]
maad of[t] fenel-seed & p*er*sil, & he schal drinke sutil wijn & cleer, mild wine,
medlid wiþ fair cleer wat*er* / And if[t] his reynes & his bowels weren
4 hote, þan he mai drinke coold wat*er* þ*at*[t] be fair & clene, & he mai
ete fleisch of[t] capou*n*s & he*n*nes & chikenes, & partrichis, & of[t] meat of capons, chickens,
alle o*per*e maner of[t] briddis þ*at*[t] mouen i*n* feeldis, & of[t] he*m* þ*at*[t]
woneþ i*n* watir he schal not[t] ete. & he mai ete pork & motou*n* & pork, mutton, gelded
8 principali of[t] beestis þ*at*[t] ben gildid, & he mai ete fleisch of[t] .iij. beasts and veal.
daies poudringe,[2] & he mai ete feel,[3] & he mai ete eiren þ*at*[t] ben
neische soden; fisch þ*at*[t] haþ no schellis & þe substau*n*ce of[t] hi*m* be
greet[t] & hard, he schal not[t] ete þ*er*of[t] / Alle maner fisch þ*at*[t] haþ Fishes with scales are better than those without.
12 manie schellis, is better þan he þ*at*[t] haþ no schellis / And of[t] erbis:
he schal ete fenel, ache, p*er*sil, sp*er*ge, attriplice*m*,[4] spinochia & The herbs and the kind of fruit he may take.
boraginem, eruca*m*, melones, cucume*r*is, & he schal be war þ*at*[t] he
ete no substau*n*ce of[t] caul, & he schal ete no mustard / And he mai
16 ete þese man*er* fruits: almau*n*dis, auellanes, figis, notis, vuas b*ene*
maturas. & he schal not[t][5] traueile to miche [6]aftir mete, & he schal [[6] lf. 192]
bere noon heuy birþu*n*s, ne he schal not[t] be girt[t] to streite, & he
schal not[t] slepe vpon his reynes. & if[t] his reynes ben to hote, þan
20 he schal anoy*n*te hem wiþ oile of[t] ro*sis*, medlid wiþ vinegre, & he **Nota**
schal anointe his reynes wiþ a lynnen cloop wet[t] i*n* iuys of[t] colde He shall anoint his loins and abstain from women.
erbis, & he sch*a*l absteyne hi*m* fro wo*m*men, & he schal touche no
wo*m*man to make hi*m* haue appetit[t] þerto / for greet[t] medlynge wiþ
24 wy*m*me*n* wiþ greet[t] t*ra*ueile achaufit[t] a ma*m*nes reynes & *con*sumeþ
her natural moistnes / Who so euere vsiþ þis regime*n*, he schal haue
no drede of[t] engendringe of[t] þe stoon / Who so vsiþ þis regime*n*[7] & If a stone begins to form, use a diuretic syrup.
is disposid for to haue þe stoon, w*ith* medicyns he schal do it[t] awei
28 or it[t] be *con*fermed. He schal vse sirupis duretikis[8]: as oximel
diu*reticum* & squilliticu*m*,[9] or he schal vse a sirup þ*at*[t] auicen
made / ℞, aq*uæ* lī. x, aceti lī. ß, medle hem togid*er*e & boile hem ℞
wiþ ℥. iij of[t] rotis of[t] ache, & rotis of[t] fenel ℥. iij, and fenel-seed &

[2] *fleisch of iii daies poudringe.* Lat.: porcos trium dierum salitos. Compare *Liber Cure Coe.*, p. 6. *To powder befe within a ny3t.*

[3] *feel*, vitulus. O.Fr. veel.

[4] *Attriplex*, Chenopodium vulvaria. *Alphita*, p. 16. "Attriplex agrestis, crissolocanna idem ang. mielde." O.E. *melde*, Leechd. III. Gloss. Compare Germ. *Molten*, *Milten*. Dessen.

[5] *not*, above line.

[7] Lat. Qui vero tali *non* utitur regimine.

[8] Traheron translation of Vigon's *Chirurgery*. Interpret.: "*Diuretike.* Diuretyke prouokynge vrine, or that hath vertue to prouoke vrine."

[9] Traheron, *ibid.* "*Squylliticke* vinaygre is made with the rootes of the greate oynion, called sqylla, or Scylla dryed, and with vynaygre."

ache an*a* ℥. j, seþe he*m* alle togid*er*e til þe .iij. part' be *con*sumed awei, & þa*n* cole he*m* & do þ*er*to lī. x of' sugre, & þa*n* clarifie it' & [1 lf. 192, bk.] seþe it' [1]& kepe it' for þin vss // The vss of' þis sirip wole suffise for to do it' awei; but if' þe mat*er* be þe more greet', & þan þou mi3t' do 4 þ*er*to if' þou wolt' oximel squillit*icum*, or þou mi3t' ordeine þe sirip wiþ modicis[2] erbis diuretic*is*. ¶ þer is no þing' so good for to p*ur*ge mater of' þe reines as is castynge / for whi cast*in*ge curiþ vlcera of' þe reynes / In þe somer þou schalt' make hi*m* oonys i*n* þe 8 monepe sich a maner of' vomet' / Take þe seed of' raphani & make it' clene & kutte it' ou*er*þwert' i*n* rollis, & lete þis lie in þe forseid sirup .℥ iiij. adai & any3t' / & þan lete þe pacient' ete diu*er*s metis, as chese, oynou*n*s, salt' fisch & þ*in*gis þ*at*' mai make hi*m* drinke 12 wel; & lete hi*m* drinke diu*er*s wynes, saue the while he is fast*in*ge, lete hi*m* ete 3 notis of' þe forseid rollis of' raphani þat' lay in þe forseid sirup, & wha*n*ne he hath ete his saule & dru*n*ke, þan binde vpon his i3en neische lynet' or flex, & streyne þou not' it' to harde 16 but' meneli. & þan take watir i*n* which has been soden anetu*m* til it' bicome reed, & take þ*er*of' lī .j., & medle it' wiþ þe sirup þat' radix raphani lay þ*er*i*n*ne, & make him [3]drinke vp al togidere, & þa*n* he schal caste vp al his mete & al his drink, & manye wickede 20 humours þ*er*wiþ. & þan make hi*m* gadere out' þe foul mater of' his nose, & waische his mouþ & his teeþ; þis medicy*n* wole do awei þe mater of' þe stoon & p*ur*ge wel his reynes, þis is þe best' medicyn þat' mai be, for to kepe a man fro þe stoon. 24

¶ If' þe man be not' hool i*n* þis maner, saue þe stoon is confermed fast', þan þe cure þ*er*of' mai be i*n* .ij. maners: þat' oon is for to aswage þe akynge, & þat' oþ*er* is for to breke þe stoon & putte him out' // Wha*n*ne a man haþ greet' akynge in his reynes & in his 28 bladdre, & þou wotist' wel it' ben signes of' þe stoon, first' þou schalt' make hi*m* a clist*er*ie wiþ a decocciou*n* of' herbis þat' be*n* mollificatif' & duretik: as malua, viol*ae*, bismalue, fenigrec*i*, paritaria, apij, fenicli, petro*silij* scolopendrie, sp*er*gi, brusci,[4] sauine, ebuli, sambuci. 32 & if' it' be i*n* win*ter* do þ*er*to calame*n*tu*m*, pulegiu*m*, origanu*m*, se*m*en fenicli, apij, pet*rosilij*, carui, aneti, leuistici,[5] dauci, milij solis,[6] [7 lf. 193, bk.] eruce, quatuor se*min*a frigidor*um*, & i*m*pone mel, [7]sal, oleu*m* camo-

The best way to purge the kidneys is vomiting.

℞

Let the patient take salted meats,

wine,

and first a preparation of radish with syrup,

then put compresses on his eyes

[3 lf. 193]

and give an emetic.

If the stone is fully developed, one may either soothe the pains or break and remove the stone.

To soothe the pain apply a clyster of a

℞

decoction of herbs,

[2] MS. *modiu's.*

[4] *brusci*, Ruscus aculeatus, wild myrtle.

[5] Alphita. p. 98: "Leuisticus, keisim idem angl. loueache."

[6] MS. *solus. Alphita*, p. 117, "*Milium solis*, granum solis, cauda pecorina idem. g^e^. et a^e^. gromel." Phillips: "Milium solis, the Herb Gromwell."

m*ille*, & scharpe it' wiþ be*ne*dicta,[1] and make þ*er*of' a clist*er*ie, & þe pacient' schal holde it' wiþ*in*ne hi*m* longe tyme, & after þis clisterie do hi*m* in to a particular baþ, & lete hi*m* sitte þ*er*o*n* anoon to þe nauele, & in his baþ schule*n* be soden leeues of' malue, p*er*itorie, viole, senacion, scutella panici pistati & cortice mu*n*dati; þis maner baþ as I haue ofte p*r*eued, it' aswaged akinge / & wha*n*ne he goiþ out' of' his baþ, make an enplastre of' mele, oile & watir, as þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe antidotarie i*n* þe c°. of' maturatiuis, & leie vpon þe place þ*er*e þe passiou*n* is / If' þou knowist' wel þ*at*' þe stoon falliþ adou*n* of' þe reynes toward þe bladdre bi þe weie of' þe vrine, sette þan vndir þe place þ*er*e it' akiþ,[2] sichia*m*[3] wiþ fier wiþout' ony kuttynge, for þis wole drawe adou*n* þe stoon. & as þe stoon discendiþ adou*n* to sichia*m* to sette it' lower til he comc anoon to þe bladdre, & þan al þe akynge wole go awei. ¶ Tofore alle þi*n*gis fildoniu*m*[4] is good, þat' þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe antidotarie of' auicen, for þ*at*' is a sure medicyn i*n* þis caas. ¶ Anoþ*er* medicyn þ*at*' auicen made, & I haue p*r*eued it', and it' [5]doiþ awei akynge þ*at*' is i*n* vlceribus renu*m*. ℞, se*min*is iusq*uia*mi albi .ʒ. ß, opij, grana .iiij, se*min*um citruli, lactuce, portulace, ana .ʒ. j., medle al togidere & ȝeue herof' .ʒ. ij. wiþ sugre. ¶ And þis þou muste wite þ*at*' þou schalt' ȝeue þe pacient' no þing' for to make hi*m* pisse wha*n* his akinge is strong', & whanne his vrine is stoppid; for þat' wole make þe more aki*n*ge / It' is p*er*el of' þis passiou*n*, for þe akynge is so grcet' sumtyme þ*at*' þe pacient' haþ þe spasme þ*er*wiþ & is deed þ*er*wiþ, saue þou schalt' do awei his akynge wiþ baþi*n*ge & enplastris & anoyntyngis, & þane aftirward þou schalt' make hi*m* medicyns for to breke þe stoon & putte hi*m* out' wiþ þe vryne / ℞, cretan*i* marini,[6] scolopendrie, capillis veneris, spice celtice, an*a* .℥. ij., radix fenicli, apij, pet*rosilij*, sp*er*gi, brusci, cicore, g*ra*mi*n*is, filipendule, genci*ane*, saxifrage, squille, asse, an*a* .℥ j., iiij^or^ se*min*a frigidor*um*, se*min*u*m* fenicli, apij, coriandri, scariole,[7] g*ra*nor*um* iuniper*i*, nucleu*m*

put the patient into a bath

and apply a plaster.

Draw the stone from the kidneys to the bladder by application of heat.

The best medicine is the Philonium.

Another medicine of Avicenna.

[5 lf. 194]

℞

One must not give diuretic medicines to the patient.

A medicine to break the stone.

℞

[1] *benedicta.* Lat. cum benedicta Nicolai.

[2] MS. *makiþ.* Lat. sub loco doloris.

[3] *sichia*m. Lat. syciam G. *σίκυος*, the common cucumber. "A figuræ vel formæ similitudine Cucurbitæ vel cucurbitulæ medicis dicuntur vascula illa, quæ cuti cum flamma affigi solent, cum vel sine scarificatione." Castelli, Lex. medicum.

[4] *fildonium.* Lat. philonium romanum. Matth. Sylv.: "Filonium i. nouus amicus & est confectio quedam sic uocata." Galen, ed. Kuehn, vol. xvii. B. 331, *φάρμακον φιλώνειον.* An electuary with Opium, so called from Philo of Tharsus.

[6] Crithmum maritimum, L.

[7] Sin. Barth.: "Scariola, lactucella, lactuca agrestis idem, an. sowethistel."

*ce*rasor*um*, milij solis, ana .ʒ ß. fiat sirupus cu*m* duab*us* p*a*rtib*us* ȝucari, & t*er*cia mell*is* squillitici, & it' schal be take wiþ a decocciou*n* of' tribulo*rum* & cice*rum* rubeo*rum*, þis eletuarie is [1]of' auicen makynge / ℞, cine*r*is vitris, caulis, cine*r*is leporis combusti, cine*r*is scorpionis, cine*r*is testi oui,[2] lapidis spongie, lapidis iudaici, sa*ngui*nis hirci sicci, gu*mmi* nucis acori, an*a* .ʒ. j. se*min*is petro*silij*, dauci, pulegij, gu*mmi* arabici, se*min*is albi pipe*r*is an*a* .ʒ. j., auri .ʒ .iiij., balsami .ʒ. ß., muscati .ʒ. j., make alle þese wiþ good hony þat' it' be whit' & clene, & þou schalt' ȝeue .ʒ. iiij. þe*r*of', & .iij. tymes i*n* þe woke. ¶ Also a good medicyn for þe stoon þat' is comen to a ma*n*nes reynes & in his bladdre / Take a litil hare þat' bledde neu*er*e blood, & do hi*m* in an erþen vessel[3] wel glasid wiþi*n*ne wiþ a couercle of' þe same mater, & stoppe it' faste, þat' þer mowe come out' þe*r*of' no fume, wiþ good lute or wiþ past', & sette þis vessel in a furneis til þe hare be bicome al aischis, & þan grinde it' & kepe it', & ȝeue hi*m* þe*r*of' .ʒ. j. wha*n*ne he goiþ out' of' his baþi*n*ge þat' is forseid, wiþ a decocciou*n* of' tribulo*rum*, & hony. I have p*r*eued þat' þis medicyn is good, & also þou miȝt' medle wiþ þis poudre, triacle / And þis schal be þi*n* entenciou*n* for to ȝeue hi*m* medicyns þat' ben not' strong' for to breke þe stoon, as saxifrage & cantarides [4]& o*þer*e strong' medicyns þat' piliþ þe reynes. & if' þe pacient' haue drie reynes & he be leene of' bodi, þan i*n* þis caas .ʒ. j. of' Rasis makynge is good / ℞, se*min*a melonu*m* mu*n*dator*um* .ʒ. xxx, se*min*is citruli, se*min*is portulace, se*min*is cucurbite, se*min*is papau-*er*is al*bi* an*a* .ʒ. iij, se*min*is iusqu*ia*mi albe .ʒ. ij., ȝucari pondus o*mniu*m,[5] saue ī do þe*r*to þe double weiȝte of' sugre /

If' þe stoon be i*n* his bladdre, þan þou schalt' worche i*n* þis maner / First' þou schalt' take kepe wher he haue stranguria. þat' þou miȝt' wite if' he makiþ watir droppynli & a litil at' oonys, & haþ greet' penau*n*ce i*n* his bladdre. þan þe stoon is in þe necke of' þe bladdre; þan þou schalt' make hi*m* a clist*er*ie mollificatif' þat' þou mowe avoide his bowels, & þan þou schalt' frote his noseþrillis w*ith* watir,[6] & þou schalt' p*r*esse liȝtly þe place of' his ars þ*er*eaboute þat' þou supposist' þat' þe stoon sittiþ. & if' he remeue not' in þis maner, þan þou schalt' putte i*n* siryngam liȝtli in þe condijt' of' his ȝerde til he come to þe stoon. & if' þou myȝt' not' putte it' awei in þis maner,

[1 lf. 194, bk.] ℞ — A medicine made of Avicenna.

℞ — The ashes of a hare burnt alive.

The medicine shall not be too strong, [4 lf. 195] as it might hurt the kidneys.

A medicine of Rasis. ℞

The patient suffers from strangury, if the stone is in the neck of the bladder.

Remove the stone with the finger as with a syringe.

[2] *testi oui.* Lat. testæ oui.
[3] Lat.: pone ipsum vinum in olla terrea.
[5] Lat. ad pondus omnium.
[6] Lat.: faciendo egrum leuare nates. The translator read: lauare nares.

þan putte þi fyngir in [1]his ers, & þe*re* þou schalt fele þe stoon, & [[1] lf. 195, bk.]
helpe wiþ þi fyngir for to putte it awey. Wh*an*ne þe stoon is
re*m*eued, þa*n* þe pacient mai make watir, þa*n* his aki*n*ge wole ceesse, When the stone is
4 & þan þou schalt go to þe cur*e*. First þou schalt make hi*m* a removed into the bladder,
clisterie of duritikis / *in* which schule*n* be medicyns þ*at* haue p*ro*- try to break the stone
p*r*iete for to breke þe stoon, & þa*n* sette þe pacient i*n* a baþ þ*at* is with an internal
forseid. & a litil tofore or he go out of his baþ, ȝeue hi*m* of þe treatment,
8 poudre of þe hare þ*at* is forseid. & wh*an*ne he comeþ out of þe a bath,
baþ, leie þis enplast*re* vpon þe place þ*at* is clepid pectinis.[2] ℞, foli-
or*um* nasturcij aquatici,[3] & folio*rum* apij .an*a*. ꝏ j, & grinde hem and a plaster.
wel wiþ grese. & wh*an*ne þei ben medlid togidere i*n* þe mort*er*, þan ℞
12 hete hem a litil ouer þe fier & leie it vpon, & eu*er*i dai in þre daies
contynuely þou schalt sette hi*m* in þe forseid baþ, & leie vpon þe
forseid plastre, & ȝeue hi*m* of þe forseid poudre. Þis cure is good
& I haue p*re*ued it //

16 If alle þese medicyns availiþ not, þan þou muste drawe out þe If these medicines
stoon wiþ kuttynge or þe pa*tient* falle i*n*to etikis.[4] & if þou wolt do not avail,
d*ra*we [5]out a stoon of þe bladdre wiþ kuttynge, þan þou muste ap- operate. [[5] lf. 196]
paraile[6] alle þi*n*gis þ*at* ben necessarie for þee: as sirupis & ligat*ur*is, Prepare the things necessary for the
20 & þan þou schalt binde his hipis & his leggis faste, þ*at* he mowe operation,
not meue, for to lette þee wh*an*ne þou wolt kutte hi*m*. & þanne and bind the patient fast.
þou schalt anoynte þi longist fyngir of þi lift hond & þi þombe wiþ
oile, & þou schalt putte he*m* in þe pacientis ers, saue first þ*o*u schalt First use a Clister*ie*,
24 avoide hi*m* wiþ a clisterie mollificatif, & þou schalt sette[7] þi riȝt
hond vpon his ers, and grope softli, where þe stoon be, & putte hi*m* feel for the stone,
to þe hedis of þi fyngris. & wh*an*ne þou myȝt take þe stoon wiþ þi hold it between the fingers,
.ij. fyngris, þan þou schalt putte hi*m* to þe necke of þe bladdre
28 toward þe ballokis as myche as þ*o*u myȝt. & þan þou schalt fele þe
hardnes of þe stoo*n* bitwixe his ers, & þe ballokis þ*at* is i*n* þe necke
of þe bladdre. þan þou schalt wiþ þi riȝt hond take a rasour, & then cut out the stone
kutte faste by þe preed þ*at* goiþ bitwixe þe ers & þe ballokis ende- with a razor.
32 longis, saue þou schalt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngris þ*at* þe stoon [[8] lf. 196, bk.]
mowe come out. & þa*n*ne ioyne wel þe lippis of [8]þe wou*n*de to- and sew the wound.
gidere, þa*n* þou schalt sewe [not][9] oo*n*ly þe skyn aboue, but þou

[2] Lat.: supra locum pectinis. Os pectinis, the share-bone.

[3] Nasturtium aquaticum, watercress.

[4] *etikis*, Lat.: antequam æger incurrat hecticam. O.Fr. étique. Med. Lat. Ethica uel Ethica febris. Dufr.

[6] *apparaile*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. apparel, v. 1., to make ready, prepare.

[7] *sette*, above line.

[9] *not*, wanting. Lat.: et labia vulneris optime conjungas *non* solum in superficie.

schalt sewe al þe depnes of þe wounde tegidere, & þan þou schalt springe þeron poudre þat is aforseid to woundis. & þan þou schalt binde it with boondis & lynt til þe wounde be perfitli hool / In þis eaas þou muste take kepe of manye þingis / First þou muste take kepe of þe age of þe pacient, for children þat ben xiiij. wintir oold ben moost able for þis cure,[1] for her lymes ben tendir ynowȝ, & in þat elde þei ben strong ynowȝ for to be maad hool, & her complexioun is hoot & moist. Ȝonge children & olde men ben not able to be kutt, for in þe kuttynge of hem enpostyms wolen engendre hastili, & þat wole lette þe vrine & make more akynge, & so þei miȝten falle in-to þe spasme, & so wiþ þe spasme þei miȝt be deed / Summen seien þat olde men ben able to be kutt, for her blood is miche laskid[2] & her hete, & perfore þei ben not able to take an enpostym; perfore þei ben moost able to be kutt of þe stoon / Summen seien þat her lymes ben to drie & her vertues ben to feble / [3 & perfore þei ben not able to be kutt, & herwiþ I acorde / þese .ij. þingis: engendrynge of an enpostym, & if þe place þat is kutt wole not soude, þese .ij. bringiþ perel of deeþ / Also þou muste take kepe of þe schap of þe stoon, & what quantite þat he be, for if þe stoon be .ij. forkid[4] or eornerid, or so greet þat he may not be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no maner kutte him, but if þou miȝt first wiþ þin hond breke þe stoon. & þan if þou miȝt not bringe it out at oonys, þan in diuers tymes þou schalt gadere him out.[5] ¶ And if þe stoon be so greet þat he mai not be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no maner kutte him, forwhi he mai not be brouȝt out, but if þou woldist kutte þe substaunce of þe bladdre & þat were mortal; but þou schalt put him to þe botme of þe bladdre wiþ instrumentis, & teche þe patient for to kepe him in þat maner þat þe stoon falle not into þe necke of þe bladdre / Also if he be so sutil þat he mai not be felid wiþ þin hond, þan þou schalt not kutte him neiþer. & if þe patient mai be hool in ony [6] maner, [n]or kutt wiþouten passioun, it

Nota. Children who are fourteen years old, are most fit for this treatment.

Younger children and old men are not fit,

although some people say the contrary.

[3 lf. 197]

If the stone cannot be brought to the neck of the bladder,

you must first break it before cutting.

Beware.

Do not cut, if the stone is small.

[6 lf. 197, bk.]

[1] De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 96: "*§ somtyme þey schal be take to surgerye and namelich children and þan ȝongelinge. For in elde keruynge is perilous, for aftir fourty ȝere þis euel is incurable as it is i-said in amphor.:*[a] *aftir fourti ȝere he þat haþ þe ston is nouȝt i-saued.*"

[2] *Celsus* Lib. VII. Cap. 26, ed. Daremberg, p. 307: "As neque omni tempore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit."

[4] *ij forkid*, diffurcatus.

[5] Lat.: "pluribus vicibus educatur."

[a] Rhazes, Aphorismi.

is better þat[1] he be nouȝt kutt þan he be kutt.[2] for men þat ben so kutt schulen neuere gete children, but if it be þe more hap[3]; & also it is perilous for to kutte / & þerfore I rede þee take þat wyn-
4 nynge[4] to opere cirurgians. ¶ Ful ofte tyme men leie me to scorn, for I wolde not entermete me of sich curis, & seide þat I lefte siche maner curis, for I coude not do it, & þe same þei seide of men þat weren filme broke,[5] & of men þat weren in þe dropesie. & I lefte
8 þe curis þerof for perels þat miȝte folowe / ffor if a kunnynge man entermetid him of sich a cure, & if þer fil ony yuele happis to þe patient, þan wolen vnkunnynge lechis seie þat þei han do þat cure ful ofte, & so he mai be brouȝt into an yuel looss þerbi; for blame
12 & for perels I wolde not vse kuttyngis / þese ben yuele happis þat falliþ to a man þat is kutt: as greet akynge vndir þe nauele, & hise lymes bicomith coold, & atach of þe feuere,[6] & greet akinge in þe place þat was kutt, alle þese signes ben signes of deeþ / Good signes
16 herof ben þese: strenkþe of vrine, & þat he mowe go to priuy wel [7] & þat he haue good appetit to mete. ¶ Sumtyme it falliþ bi strenkþe, þe stoon is putt into þe ȝerde. & þat I say [in] a man, þat his vryne was stoppid .v. daies in þe same maner, & I drowe
20 him out wiþ instrumentis wiþouten ony kuttynge. & if þe stoon sitte in þe canel of þe ȝerde, & þou maist not bringe him out wiþ þi fyngris, þan þou schalt binde his ȝerde bihinde þe stoon, þat þe stoon mowe not go into þe bladdre aȝen. & þan grope þe stoon softli
24 wiþ þi .ij. fyngris, & kutte endelongis, as it is aforseid, a litil hole, as miche as þou miȝt drawe out þe stoon, & þane cure þe wounde as it is aforseid /[8]

People who are operated upon, never get children.

I was often scorned because I would not undertake these cures.

A good physician may get a bad reputation by some mishap.

Fatal symptoms after operation are: great pain, coldness of the limbs and fever.

Good symptoms are a [7 lf. 198] strong urine, a good appetite.

Sometimes the stone is removed through the Urethra.

ffor to drawe out watir of men þat han þe dropesie /[9]

28 THouȝ þis book be maad oonli of cirurgie, ȝitt it is myn entencioun to speke of þe dropesie, & principaly þat ben wrouȝt

¶ x°. c°.

[1] MS. *þan.* [2] *& if þe patient . . . þan he be kutt*, an insertion.

[3] Lat.: "Considera quoque quod sæpe per loci nominati incisionem generatio prohibetur."

[4] *þat wynnynge*, Lat.: sed aliis cupidis chirurgis dimitte illa lucrari. *Cath. Angl.*, p. 420, "*Wynninge.* Emolimentum, lucrum."

[5] *of men þat weren filme broke*, Lat. de ruptorum incisura.

[6] *atach of þe feuere*, attack of fever. See later references in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. attach, sb.

[8] The translator has omitted one chapter: De clauso hermaphrodito & additione panniculi mulieris doctrinæ tertiæ, tractatus tertii, Cap. IX.

[9] The four kinds of dropsy are mentioned in De propr. rerum. Lib. VII., Cap. 52, Add. 27,944, fol. 94 b.: "*þe firste dropesye hatte leucofleuma, and*

The dropsy is a compound disease, caused by superfluity of matter.

[1 lf. 198, bk.] The men of Salerne distinguisn four kinds of dropsy.

The Arabs only three:

yposarca, Aschites,

Tympanites.

There is cold matter in all these kinds of dropsy, the exciting cause may be heat or coldness.

When the liver is diseased, cold phlegmatic matter is produced.

[5 lf. 199] The Salernitans say that dropsy is caused by a debility of the liver, the stomach, or other organs.

Some physicians say that the urine will be red if there is a hot cause,

wiþ mannes hond. ¶ I seie þat þe dropesie is a sijknes compound in which superflue mater þat is coold swelliþ þe body / Men of salerne seiden þat þere weren .iiij. maner spicis of dropesie, & iiij. maner dropesies. But auctours of arabie acorden alle at [1]oonys,[2] & seien sooþ þat þer ben but .iij. maner dropesies,[3] & þat oon comeþ of rawe blood, of raw fleume medlid wiþ blood, & is bore into al þe bodi, & swelliþ al þe bodi, & is clepid yposarca. þat oþer is of mater of ȝelowȝ water & falliþ into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid aschites / þe .iij. is engendrid of greet wynd resolued of coold mater, & falliþ into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid tympanites / Of þis ydropesie summen iugiþ liȝtli, & seien þat yposarca comeþ of coold alwei, & tympanites comeþ sumtyme of wynd & of hete, but moost comounli of cooldnes / Aschites comith moost of hete, & ful selden of cooldnes / but for to seie þe soþe, alle þe spicis ben medlid with coold mater, & þerfore he seiþ sooþ þat clepiþ eueri ydropesie coold mater,[4] for euery spice of þe dropesie mai come of hete or of cooldnes goynge tofore. ¶ þer is no þing þat defendiþ, þat whanne þe lyuere is hoot out of hir propir hete, or if al þe bodi is distemp[er]id in hete, as in feueris, þe patient mai so miche be feblid þerwiþ, þat it may engendre coold mater & fleumatik / Ful ofte I haue had þis caas / [5]þerfore auctouris seien þat þe dropesie comith of þe febilnes of þe lyuere / þerfore men of salerne seien þat it comeþ of defaute of digestioun of þe lyuere. & it comeþ of takinge of yuele metis & drinkis, & of febilnes of oþere lymes, as of þe stomak, & of þe reynes, & of þe maris, & of þe lungis, & of diafragma. & whanne þese lymes ben enfeblid, þan þe lyuere enfeliþ // Therfore it is necessarie for a leche to wite[6] wher it comeþ of causis goinge tofore hoot or coold / And summe lechis halden hem paid for to haue a siȝt of þe vrine, & iugiþ þe dropesie hoot & coold bi þe siȝt of þe vryne / for if þe vrine be reed, þei wolen iuge þat þe cause is hoot, & in þis maner þei ben

comeþ of distemperaunce of coldeuesse and drinesse, & haþ þat name of white fleume for leucos is white. ¶ þe secounde hatte yposarca oþir anasarca, and comeþ of distemperaunce of coolde and of drynes. The þridde hatte aschites and comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & moisture. þe ferþe hatte tympanytes & comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & drinesse."

[2] *acorden alle at oonys*, Lat. in una conveniunt. Comp. *Reliqu. Antiqu.* I. 233, *accorde in one.* (*N. E. Dict.*, s. v. accord v. 5.)

[3] Lanfranc follows *Avicenna*, Lib. III. Fen. 14, Tract. 4, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 238 b.

[4] Lat.: omnem egritudinem ydropicam appellant materialem frigidam.

[6] *to wite*, above line.

disseyued / ¶ Forwhi, *in* what' maner so þe lyuere be enfeblid of' coold cause or of' hoot', it' wole make his vrine reed / For sumtyme a ma*n* mai not' ȝeue a discreeioun[1] of' blood fro vrine, for a litil blood colourid miche vrine, riȝt' as a litil saffron colouriþ miche wat*er* / þ*er*for of' wh*at*' eause so it' be þ*at*' his lyuere be enfeblid, his vrine mai schewe reed. ¶ Also þe signes of' yposarcha & aschites & tympanite be*n* open ynowȝ. [2]In þis man*er* þ*o*u schalt' knowe he*m* / [2 lf. 199, bk.]

but a little blood colours much urine.

8 In yposarcha al þe bodi swelliþ, as his face, & his armis, & his riggeboon, & his necke, & alle his lymes, so þat' in what' p*ar*tie of' his bodi þ*at*' þou p*r*essist' þi fyngir þ*er*e wole be a pitt'. & wh*an*ne þe fyngir is aweie it' wole arise aȝen / & it' is a greet' maist*r*ie for to

Signys of yposarca are a general swelling of the body.

12 knowe whe*þer* yposarcha come of' eoold eause tofore goynge or of' hoot' cause / If' it' comeþ of' coold goinge tofore, þan his iȝen wole*n* be discolourid as it' were þe eolo*ur* of' askis, or pale[3] / If' it' eome of' hete goi*n*ge tofore, þa*n* his iȝen wolen be ȝelowȝ or su*m*what' reed /

If the cause is cold, the eyes will be pale; they are yellow or red, if there is a hot cause.

16 & þou muste wite, whe*þer* he had a feuere tofore or haue þe feu*er*e fortis þ*er*wiþ / or if' he hadde þ*er*e tofore an hoot' enpostym þ*er*wiþ, ou*þer* he haue enpostym þ*er*wiþ / þese be*n* þe p*r*opre signes of' aschites, þ*at*' his faee, & his neeke, & his brest', & his armis

The signs of ascites are a wasting of the limbs and a swelling of the belly.

20 bieom*ith* smal, & his vois schal bieome smal, & his wo*m*be schal oonli swelle. & su*m*tyme *in* þe firste bigy*n*nyng' his feet' & his leggis wolen swelle *in* þe firste bigy*n*ny*n*ge, for þe greet' stre*n*kþe of' þe mat*er* þ*at*' makiþ it' falle adou*n*. & if' þou [4]smite his[5] wo*m*be, he [4 lf. 200]

24 wole sowne as it' were a touȝt' le*þer* ful of' wynd[6] / þese be*n* þe p*r*opre signes of' tympanites: his wombe & þe regiou*n* of' his stomae schulen oonly be to-swolle, & alle his o*þer*e lymes, bo*þ*e his feet', & his leggis, & his neeke, & his armis wole*n* bieome smal, & if' þou

Signes of tympanites. They are the same as in ascites, but there is less pain and more swelling.

28 smitist' hi*m* vpo*n* his wombe, it' wole soune as it' were a tympan / & *in* þis passiou*n* þ*er* is lasse agreuaunce þan in aschite & more swellynge. & if' þou p*r*essist' his wombe, þou schalt' fynde it' streite as it' were a eorde. & þou schal fele no meuy*n*g of' wat*er*, wh*an*ne

32 þe pacient' turneþ hi*m* from o side to ano*þer* / Curis herof' þou schalt' fynde ynowe *in* bokis of' phisik / For I nyle telle but' fewe medieyns þ*er*fore, I haue lo*n*ge tyme vsid.

¶ Wh*an*ne þou wolt' ordeine regime*n* on yposarcha, ȝeue hi*m*

[1] *ȝeue a discreeioun*, discernere.
[3] Lat.: coniunctiva oculi est valde discolorata, cinericia vel pallida.
[5] MS. *his*, twice.
[6] Lat.: auditur quasi sonus vtris de corio vino pleni.

Make the patient who suffers from Hyposarcha sweat, in summer in hot sand or on a sunny hill, [3 lf. 200, bk.] in winter in a hot-house.

trociscus de lactea[1] cum apoʒimate[2] de radicib*us* fro þe firste dai to
þe .iiij., & ʒeue hi*m* pelottis de agarico. & wh*an*ne þe swellinge
bigy*n*neþ to go awey, if' it' be *in* somer, þan þou schalt' hele al his
bodi *in* hcot' *gr*a*u*el þ*er*e þe su*n*ne mai ʒeue greet' hete, or lete hi*m* 4
sitte vpon an hiʒ hil þere þe [3]su*n*ne schineþ hoot', þ*at*' he mai swete
wel, & þ*at*' his bodi mai wexe hoot' wiþoute & wiþi*n*ne. & if' it' be
in winte*r*, putte hi*m* *in* a drie stewe, so þ*at*' þe watir come not' niʒ
hi*m*. þus þou schalt' make apoʒima of' rotis / ℞, corticis fenicli, 8

℞ Prescription, how to make the decoction.

apij, [ana drac.][4] .x., se*min*u*m* [apii] squinantu*m*, ameos, an*a*. ʒ .v.,
rosar*um* rubiar*um*, spicenarde an*a* .ʒ .iij, seþe he*m* *in* lī .ij. of'
watir til þei come to lī .j., cole he*m* & kepe þe colature. & if' þou
doist' þ*er*i*n*ne a litil hony it' wole be þe better / Trocisci de lacte be*n* 12

℞ How to make the troches.

maad *in* þis maner / ℞, rubarbe, lacte, an*a* [drac iii.], se*min*is apij,
spice, ameos, amigdalu*m* amaru*m*, masticis, sq*u*inante, se*min*is iuni-
p[er]i, costi amari,[5] rubee succi, eupatorij,[6] aristolo*gia*e ro*tunda*e,
gencian an*a* .ʒ. ß, make herof' gobetis, þe weiʒte of' ʒ .j., & he schal 16

℞ The Agaric-pills.

take oon þ*er*of' wiþ .ʒ̄ iiij. of' þe forseid pelottis de agarico / ℞,
agarici .ʒ .x., succi eupatorij, rubarbar*um*, aristolo*gia* ro*tunda*e an*a*
ʒ .ij, ʒucare albe .ʒ .v, & make herof' pelott*is*. & þou schalt' ʒeue
herof' .ʒ .ij. 20

Treatment of Ascites.

The disease is almost fatal, if the cause is hot.

If' þou seest' þ*at*' þe cause þ*at*' ʒede tofore þis passiou*n* was hoot',
& he make litil vrine & reed, & if' his v*er*tu be feble of' þe hete, &
þou hast' dispeir of' hi*m*,[7] & if' he haue þe feuere þ*er*wiþ, it' is so
[8]myche þe worse // If' his vrine schewe þ*at*' þe cause is coold, & if' 24

[8 lf. 201] If there is a cold cause, and if the patient is strong,

give him rhubarb-pills;

þe pa*tient* be strong' ynowʒ, loke if' his wombe be hard. & þan
make hi*m* vse sirup acetose m*aa*d wiþ seedis & sugre, & ʒeue hi*m* þe
pelottis of' rubarbe þ*at*' ben maad *in* þis maner / ℞, rubarberi, succi
eupatorij, seminis endiuie an*a*. ʒ. iij, agarici ʒ. v., make þ*er*of' 28

[1] *lactea*, Lat. lacta. "Lacca, a red transparent Substance made as some say, by winged Arts; as Hony by Bees, and gather'd from a Tree of that Name, in Bengala. Malabar &c. Also a kind of red Gum issuing from certain Trees in Arabia, of which the best Sealing hard Wax is made; often us'd in Painting and Varnishing." Phillips.

[2] *Apozima.* "Apozeme, a Physical Decoction, a Diet-Drink made of several Roots, Woods, Barks, Herbs, Drugs, Flowers, Seeds, &c., boil'd together." Phillips.

[4] MS. *ʒ*.

[5] Two kinds of *costus* are mentioned in *Alphita*, p. 46: c. indicus, and c. arabicus.

[6] *eupatorium.* Add. 15,236, fol. 3 b. (cc. 1300). "*Eupatorium. saluia agrestis idem. G. eupatorie. A. wyldesage. i. hyndehale.*"

[7] *þou hast dispeir of him*, Lat. de tali ægri salute desperes. Comp. *þou schalt neuere þe lattere be in despeir of cauteriis.* Lat. nec propter hoc desperes, p. 311, note 3.

pelett*is* wiþ þe iuys of' endiue. Þou schalt' ȝeue hi*m* herof' at' oonys .ʒ .ij, & euery wike þou schalt' ȝeue it' oonys / If' it' so be þ*at'* he be feble, & if' he mai not' take so miche, þan *in* þe place of' þese pelottis he schal take gobetis þ*at'* be*n* maad i*n* þis maner / ℞, se*min*is endiuie ʒ .x, esule,[1] succi cupatorij, agarici, an*a*. ʒ .ij, & .ϑ .j, rosar*um*, se*min*is citrulor*um*, an*a* ʒ .ij, & make herof' .x. gobettis wiþ a decocc*i*on of' fenel i*n* wat*er*: ȝeue hi*m* oon þ*er*of' wiþ sirupo acetoso de sceminib*us*. Enplastre[2] his wombe wiþ enplastre maad wiþ .ij. p*ar*tis of' oxis dou*n*ge, & oon p*ar*t' of' gotis dou*n*ge, boli armo*ni*aci, sulphuris, & salis, & diste*mpe*re he*m* wiþ strong' vinegre / if feeble, gobbets. ℞ and apply a plaster on his belly.

Þis is þe cure of' tympaniti þ*at'* is ful selde curid / & specialy wh*an*ne it' is entrid i*n*to diafragma & is confermed þ*er*e / ffirst' þou [3]schalt' make hi*m* ele*ctuar*i de baccis lauri, & þou schalt' make hi*m* suppositorijs for to dist*r*ie[4] wynd, & he schal suffre hungir as miche as he mai, & he schal absteyne hi*m* fro þi*n*gis þ*at'* engendriþ wijnd, & þou schalt' frote his wombe ofte wiþ a scharp clooþ / Ele*ctuar*i de baccis lauri / ℞, folior*um* rute .ʒ .x., ameos, se*min*um,[5] nigille,[6] leuistici,[7] petrocilij macedonici,[8] origani,[9] carui, amigdala-r*um* amar*um*, pipe*r*is lo*ngi*, mentastri,[10] dauci, acori, baccar*um* lauri, castore an*a* .ʒ .iij., serapini .ʒ .iiij., appoponac .ʒ .iij., make herof' a lectuarie wiþ .iij. so miche of' hony, þis electuarie wiþ consumeþ. ¶ Þus þ*ou* schalt' make suppositorijs for to distrie wijnd / ℞, cimi-nu*m*, folio*rum* rute viridis[11] an*a*. ♁ .j., radic*is* brionie, radicis mali terre, radicis rafani an*a* .ʒ .ij., sal nit*r*i .ʒ .j., & make herof' suppositorijs wiþ hony. ¶ Wh*an*ne þou knowist' wel þ*at'* þe dropesie is of' hoot' cause, þ*an* þ*ou* schalt' not' forgete to helpe þe side þ*at'* is hoot'; & also if' þe mater be coold, þou schalt' helpe hi*m* wiþ hote þi*n*gis.

[3 lf. 201, bk.]

Treatment of Tympanitis.

Give an electuary ℞

and suppositories. ℞

Suppositorijs.

[1] "*Esula*, quedam species est titimalli, gallice yesele." *Alphita*, p. 50.

[2] *enplastre*, Lat. venter enplastretur. O.Fr. emplastrer. Sl. 277, fol. 1: "*be þe place emplastred wiþ a plastre maad þus.*" Comp. *plasteren*, Prompt. Parv.

[4] *distrie*, Lat. dissoluere, destroy. [5] Lat.: cimini.

[6] *nigilla*. Add. 15,236, fol. 10, "*Nigella i. lollium. G. neel. A. cokel*," fennel flower.

[7] *Ibid.*, fol. 4 b., "*Leuisticum. G. luuache*," lovage. See *E. P. N.*, p. 43, *luvestiche*, *luvesche*.

[8] *Alphita*, p. 108, "*macedonia vel macedonicum, petrocillinum idem, g. alisandre, a. stamerche.*"

[9] Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b., "*Origanum. G. Origane. i. pulegium. A. puliol reale.*" See *Alphita*, p. 150. "*Pulegium. gallire puliol, a. Brotheruurt.*"

[10] *Ibid.*, fol. 7 b., "*Sisimbrium. mentastrum. G. mentastre. A. hors. minte.*"

[11] *Ibid.*, fol. 7, "*Ruta bissara. puganum vel pucanum. hermola idem. G. Rue. A. smalrede.*"

If the cause is hot, [1 lf. 202] give a decoction with chickens, and a syrup.

¶ Þis þing is necessarie for to ȝeue a man þat haþ þe hote dropesie, a decoccion of solatrum & endiue; & in þat watir he [1]schal seþe chikenys for to ete, & first he schal drinke sirupum acetosum wiþ seedis / And I wole telle þee a cure, þat I curide in my tyme .ij. men þat weren in aschite of hoot cause, þat it mowe be ensaumple to þee / I made hem a sirupe of platearie[2] in þis maner / ℞, succi scariole li .ij., succi apij & petrosilij, ana. li .j., & boile hem wiþ .℥ iiij. of esule, masticis, seminis fenicli, apij, ana. ℥. ß, seþe hem in watir til þei come to .li .ij., & þan cole hem & do perto .li .j. ȝucare, & boile hem til þei be perfit. & whanne þow doist adoun fro þe fier, do perto rubarbe .℥ ß., & lete it boile a litil, & þan kepe it for þin vss. & þou schalt ȝeue it him in þe morowe wiþ a decoccion of fenel seed, .ij. in þe wike. & þou schalt enplastre al his wombe, saue þe regioun of his lyuere, wiþ þe forseid plastris & dounge & vinegre. & vpon his lyuere leie an enplastre maad of .℥ .ij. of barli mele, & rosis, & sandalis albi & rubei ana. ℥ ß, camphore .ʒ .ij., & distempere hem wiþ water of rosis & wiþ vinegre. & if he haue not þe feuere, þan ȝeue him gotis milk fasting. And whan þe patient bicomeþ smal in his wombe, þan sette him in a baþ, þat be soden perinne sulphur [3]& salt, & he schal be perinne but a litil while. ¶ Herof þou muste be war: whanne water is dried in a man wiþ drijnge wiþ medicyns, þan his lymes leueþ swiþe drie; wherfore þei falliþ in etik & dien. Þerfore þou muste in alle þes þingis be wel war /

To be given twice a week.

A plaster is put on the region of the liver.

Finally use a bath. [3 lf. 202, bk.]

Take care in using drying medicines that the patient does not get consumption.

☞ Operation should not be performed on all sorts of people;

Þe cure þat is wiþ iren falliþ oonli in aschite, þat manie men doon hardili, & takiþ no kepe of þe particuleris perof, for þei knowen not þe science, for þei doon al oon maner to ȝonge & to olde, to stronge & to feble; þei kuttiþ þe skyn vnder þe nauel, & alle men þat þei kutten ouþer þe mooste weren perischid / Saue þou schalt take kepe of kunnynge, & worche bi resoun / for þow schalt take kepe wher he be strong or no; & if he be not strong, þou schalt do no cure to him. ¶ Also þou schalt do no cure to olde men þat ben to-broke, for þou schalt not leeue þe strenkþe of an oold man, for it is impossible for to fynde an oold man strong, whanne þe dropesie is confermed on him / If it so be þat he be ȝong & strong, þan þow schalt haue good trust for to helpe him.

patients who are not strong, and old men, are not fit.

One cannot trust in the strength of an old man.

[4 lf. 203] ¶ Thanne þou muste enquere sotilly wher [4]þe principal vijs be of

[2] Matthæus *Platearius* belonged to the school of Salerno about the middle of the 12th century. He wrote: "Liber de simplici medicina," commonly called "Circa instans."

þe lyuere, for þan þou muste kutte hi*m* *in* þe splene side / And if' it' so be þat' þe splene be þe p*r*incipal of' þe dropesie, þan þe kuttynge muste be *in* þe ri3tside. And if' þe cause come of' lymes aboue, as
4 of' þe stomac or of' diafragma, þan þou muste kutte hi*m* vpon pecten. & if' it' be in a wo*m*man, & come of' þe vijs of' þe maris, þa*n* þou schalt' kutte hir aboue þe nauele. Wh*a*nne þou knowist' *in* what' place þ*o*u schalt' kutte þe pacient', þan þou schalt' opene þe
8 place of' þe pacient', & þou schalt' p*r*esse his wombe adou*n*ward as miche as þou mi3t', & make hi*m* ete a litil of' breed tostid[1] vpon coolis, & wet' *in* wijn; & þa*n* lete hi*m* sitte tofore þee bitwene a strong' ma*n*nes armys, þat' mai holde hi*m* faste, þ*a*t' he mowe not'
12 meue *in* þe tyme wh*a*nne þou wolt' worche. And þan þou schalt' take þe skyn þat' is clepid mirac, wiþ þi lifthond *in* þe place þ*e*re þou wolt' make þi kuttynge, & þat' skyn þou schalt' peerse endelongis wiþ an instrume*n*t' þ*a*t' is competent' þ*er*fore / And be wel war þ*a*t'
16 þou touche not' siphac *in* no maner; and [2]wh*a*nne þou hast' kutt' þe skyn aboue & mirac, þan opene þe place þ*a*t' þou mowe se siphac. & þan þou schalt' peerse a litil hole *in* siphac & sette þ*er*to a canel,[3] & drawe out' þ*er*of' as miche watir as þou seest' good for to saue his
20 v*er*tu / & þan drawe out' þe canel, & lete þe skyn þ*a*t' is clepid mirac goon ou*er* þe openynge of' siphac, for þat' wole suffre no þi*n*g' to go out' / In þe morowe opene þe same skyn a3en þat' was kutt' first', & putte *in* þe canel, & kepe his v*er*tu as miche as þou mi3t'.
24 & þ*us* þou schalt' do til þou haue drawe out' þe watir; saue þou schalt' not' drawe out' al, for þou schalt' consume it' aft*er*ward w*ith* p*r*opre medicyns / Herof' þou schalt' take kepe *in* þe tyme, þe whilis þou d*r*awist' out' þe wate*r*, as it' is forseid: þe pa*tient* schal ete good
28 metis, & drinke good drinkis & swete, þat' mowe engendre *in* hi*m* good spirits & good blood: as good broþis maad of' he*n*nys & of' capou*n*s. & di3t' wiþ swete þi*n*gis, for eueri avoidinge laskiþ miche þe spiritis; & wh*a*nne þe spiritis falliþ, þan a ma*n*nes vertues
32 failen /

The place of the incision depends on which organ—the liver, spleen, stomach, or uterus—is affected.

Let the patient be held by a strong man;

cut the skin, called Mirac;

[2 lf. 203, bk.]

pierce the siphac, and draw out the water by a cannula at repeated sittings.

Strengthen the patient during this treatment with good food.

[4]Of ficus, & cancre, & vlcer in ma*n*nes[5] 3erde / [4 lf. 204]

¶ xj°.c°.

FIcus is a maner wexynge þat' arisiþ vpon a mannes 3erde tofore. & su*m*tyme it' wole be neische, wh*a*nne it' is enge*n*drid of'
36 fleume / & wh*a*nne it' is engendrid of' malancolie, it' wole be hard;

Ficus is a growth on a man's yard; it is either soft or hard,

[1] *breed tostid*, Lat. panem tostum. *Prompt. Parv.*
[3] *canel*, Lat. cannula. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. canal 1.
[5] MS. *manner*.

and may become a cancer.

Ulcers arise either from hot pustules

or from intercourse with diseased women.

The ficus must be removed by a thread or with cutting,

with mollificatives;

[4 lf. 204, bk.]

the surest way is the hot iron.

A cancer must be removed with all its roots.

Nota. If there are ulcers in the fore-skin, remove the growth.

℞ þe gren water

[6 lf. 205]

& if' it' rotie, it' wole turne into a cancre. ¶ A cancre comeþ *in* a ma*n*nes ȝerde, riȝt' as *in* oþ*er*e lymes of' a man, & vlcera comeþ of' hote pustulis þat' comeþ þ*er*on, & aftirward þei brekeþ it'.[1] Ou*per* þei comeþ of' scharpe humo*ur*is, þ*at*' makiþ vlcera i*n* þe same place; 4 ouþir it' mai come of' a wo*m*man þ*at*' a man, þat' hadde þe same passiou*n*,[2] hadde leie by hir tofore[3] /

Þis is þe cure of' ficus þ*at*' com*ith* of' fleume: þou schalt' binde hi*m* wiþ a þreed, ou*per* kutte hi*m* al awei; & þan þou schalt' soude 8 it' as it' is aforseid i*n* oþ*er*e placis / If' it' come of' malancolie, it' mai be curid or þ*at*' it' rotie, wiþ temp*er*e mollificatiuis, as it' is forseid i*n* þe cure of' sclirosis i*n* þe gen*er*al chapitre of' enpostyms: þ*at*' wh*an*ne he is m*aa*d neische, þ*an* þou schalt' take hi*m* awei wiþ 12 alle his rootis / saue it' is more sure take awei it' wiþ [4]an hoot' iren, & þa*n* leie þ*er*vpon butt*er*, & ȝitt' þou muste touche hi*m* wiþ an hoot' iren aȝe*n*; & þan leie buttir þ*er*vpon. & þus þou schalt' do oftetyme litil & litil til it' be al wastid awei / If' it' be a cancre, it' 16 wole not' be curid but' if' it' be kutt' awei wiþ alle his rotis. And þ*er* is no wei so sure to take hi*m* awei as fier / Alle þe rotis of' hi*m* muste*n* be brent' awei, & þan leie þ*er*vpon a mu*n*dificatif' of' apiu*m*, & aftir þis þou muste leie þerto drijnge þi*n*gis / & *in* þis place þou 20 schalt' no*t*' forȝete to leie a defensif' vpon þe place þ*at*' is hool, for þis defensif' schal defende þe place þ*at*' is hool fro swellynge. ¶ Vlce*ra* þ*at*' comeþ *in* a ma*n*nes ȝerde: as wh*an*ne þe skyn þat' is tofore *in* a ma*n*nes ȝerde bicom*ith* greet', & þis mai not' be curid 24 but' if' þat' greetnes be doon awei. & þis medicyn is good þ*er*fore / Take whit' wijn, & of' verte grece .ʒ .j, auripigment' .ʒ .ij; grinde þes .ij. sotilli, & leie he*m* *in* þe whit' wijn, & meue he*m* ofte, & kepe he*m* for þi*n* vss. & þe more cold[5] þ*at*' þis medicyn is, þe bett*er* it' 28 wole be. & þan þou schalt' wete a ly*m*men cloop *in* þis medicyn, [6]& leie vpon þe ȝerde / For þis þi*n*g' wole soude woundis & defende þ*at*'

[1] Lat.: que postea crepantur. [2] MS. inserts *þat*.

[3] Lat.: Ulcera veniunt . . . . ex commixtione cum feda muliere, que cum egro talem habente morbum de novo coierat. *Hæser*, III. p. 230, gives a list of references, showing the early knowledge of venereal diseases in the mediæval ages. The earliest quotation is from Richardus Anglicus, *Micrologus* MS., xiith cent.: "Ulcerantur utraque, virga scilicet et testiculi, tempore menstruorum, ex coitu ex salsis humoribus et acutis et incensis, quod satis ex colore cutis et pustularum vel saniei, et ex pruritu et punctura et ardore perpenditur." Richardus gives the same preventative, which is mentioned by Lanfranc: "Ablutio cum aqua frigida et continua abstersio — — et maxime si post ablutionem cum frigida aqua fiat roratio loci abluti cum aceto."

[5] MS. *cold*. Lat.: quanto plus *antiquatur* tanto melius.

þer mai wexe no ca*n*cre / If' it' so be *þat* a ma*n*nes ȝerde be sky*n*ned, & be noon o*þer* passiou*n* *þer*on saue *þat*, þan *þ*ou schalt' leie *þer*-vpon vngu*ent*u*m* albu*m*, ou*þer* leie *þer*vpon a ly*n*nen cloo*þ* wet' i*n* watir of' ro*sis*. Also poudre maad of' cucurbita & aloes is good *þer*fore / If' a man wole saue *þ*is lyme algate fro corrupciou*n*, wha*n*ne he ha*þ* leien bi a wo*m*man, & he haue ony suspeciou*n* of' vncle*n*nes, þan he schal waische his ȝerde wi*þ* coold wat*er* medlid w*ith* vineg*r*e / In case of a simple excoriation, apply an ointment or compresses.

Of Emeroidis & fistule in þe ers /

EMoroides ben veines *þat'* endi*þ* i*n* a mannes ers & ben .v.[1] *þ*ese veines sumtyme openeþ & sumtyme *þ*ei be*n* enpostymed. Wha*n*ne *þ*e blood *þat'* is i*n* *þ*e same veines falli*þ* adou*n* & mai not' out', þan it' engendri*þ* apostym. & if' *þ*e blood is g*r*et' & fleumatik, *þ*an it' wole engendre fic*us*, & if' *þ*at' blood be greet' & colerik, þa*n* it' wole engendre moralem.[2] And if' *þ*e blood be greet' & malan-coli*us*, þan it' wole engen[dre] condilomata / Sumtyme *þer* come*þ* *þ*erto [3]so manie diuers humou*r*is, & maki*þ* diue*r*s enpostyms i*n* *þ*e same man*er* as it' falli*þ* in o*þ*e*r*e lymes, & ofte tyme of' *þ*is enpostym come*þ* a festre, but' if' it' be *þ*e bettir holpe; *þ*e blood *þat'* come*þ* to a ma*n*nes ers bi veynes *þat'* be*n* clepid emoroides is gretter blood *þ*an ony blood of' his bodi / & if' it' so be *þat'* a man haue *þ*e flux of' blood of' *þ*e emoroidis, *þ*ou schalt' not' stoppe it', but' it' blede so myche *þat'* it' make *þ*e pacient' feble, saue *þ*ou schalt' kepe hi*m* wi*þ* good regime*n*, & he schal vse no metis ne drinkis *þat'* engendrith scharp blood & greet' // For bi *þ*e flux of' blood a ma*n*nes bodi mai be kept' from malancolious blood, & it' wole kepe a ma*n* fro lepre & fro mania, & fro al sijknes *þat'* come*þ* of' malancolie / Also if' a ma*n* is woned to haue he*m* & *þ*ei be stoppid, *þ*a*n* *þ*ou muste ȝeue hi*m* medicyns for to bri*n*ge he*m* out' / And if' it' so be *þ*at a ma*n* haue so greet' flux of' he*m* *þat'* his lyue*r*e be enfeblid *þ*e*r*wi*þ*, *þ*an he myȝte falle i*n* a d*r*opesi *þ*er *þ*oruȝ, for to miche flux of' blood mai be cause of' a dropesie / *þ*e*r*fore if' *þ*ou [4]seest' *þat'* *þ*e flux be to greet', *þ*a*n* *þ*ou schalt' constreine blood wi*þ* medicyns *þat'* ben constrictif', & *þ*ou schalt' fynde medicy*n*s *þ*e*r*fore i*n* *þ*e ende of' *þ*is chapitre / Wexi*n*gis *þat'* ben clepid **emeroidis**, su*m*me *þ*ei falli*þ* Emeroides

¶ xij°. c°. There are five hæmorrhoidal veins, they are sometimes open, sometimes they form tumours.

[3 lf. 205, bk.]

The blood in these veins is the thickest in the body.

Nota Hæmorrhoidal flux shall not be stopped, as it keeps a man from leprosy mania and other diseases.

Too great flux causes dropsy.

[4 lf. 206]

[1] *De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII., cap. 54. Add. 27,944, fol. 95 b.: "*Emorydis ben fyve veynes þat strecche*þ *oute at þe ers, of þe whiche veynes come*þ *diuers passiouns and euelis, as bolu*y*nge & swellinge, with holdinge and flux.*"

[2] *moralis*, a mulberry form of tumour.

(piles) are internal or external.

wiþoute þe hole of' a ma*n*nes ers, & su*m*me wiþi*n*ne / Also su*m*me wexiþ *in* þe for side of' þe ers, & su*m*me *in* þe hyndir side. Su*m*tyme it' wexiþ *in* þe forside toward þe rote of' þe ballokis, & þan þei makiþ greet' aki*n*ge / for su*m*tyme þei lette*n* þa*t*' a man mai no*t*' make vrine. If' it' be **ficus**, þa*t*' þou mi3t' knowe, for it' wole be wiþoute hete[1] & neische, & þe cure herof' is but' li3t'. Þou schalt' take a strong' þreed & knitte þe*re* aboute, & eu*er*y dai þou schalt' streine it' more & more, til he falle awei, & þan wiþ driyng' medicyns þou schalt' drie it' vp. ¶ **Moralis** makiþ greet' akinge & haþ manie smalle swelli*n*gis as it' were mora celsi, & þe colour þe*r*of wole be reed & su*m*del[2] purpur, & but' þis haue help for to acese þe aki*n*ge, it' wole engendre an enpostym. Þe cur*e* herof' is to lete hi*m* blood i*n* þe veyne þa*t*' is clepid [3]basilica & sophena al i*n* oon dai,[4] & *in* þe same side þa*t*' þe passiou*n* drawiþ mooste þe*r*t'o. If' he is wont' to haue þe same passiou*n*, þa*n* make hi*m* haue þe same flux of' blood. & if' he is not' wont' to haue it', þan þou schalt' 3eue hi*m* no medicyns for to make hi*m* haue þa*t* flux, & þan þou schalt' acese þe akynge wiþ þis medicyn, & is good for thenasmon[5] & for alle þe passiou*n*s of' þe ers / ℞, thuris, mirre, licij, croci, an*a* pa*r*te*m* .j, opij pa*r*tes duas, grinde he*m* & medle he*m* wi*th* 3elke of' an eij & wiþ þe iuys of' psillij, & ole of' ro*ses*, & make þe*r*of' an oynement' / & if' þe akynge be wiþi*n*ne *in* his ers, þa*n*ne anointe a tent' & putte i*n*to his ers, & if' it' be wiþoutforþ, þan leie vpon ly*n*ne*n* cloop & leie it' vpon þe place. ¶ Also a medicyn of' Haly þe abbot' / ℞, ceruse .ʒ. v., litarge .ʒ. iij., iusqu*ia*mi al*bi* .ʒ. ij., masticis, grynde he*m* & temp*e*re he*m* wiþ þe 3elke of' an ey & oile of' violet' & make herof' an oynement'. & þis oynement' is good wh*an*ne þe aki*n*ge is wiþ an enpostym, for þis wole resolue & make it' maturatif', & doiþ awey þe [6]akinge / ℞, folio*rum* malue, flo*rum* camomi*lle*, Melliloti[7] an*a* .ℳ. j., feni*greci*, se*mi*nis lini an*a* .ʒ. iij., lenticula*rum* excorticar*um* .ʒ. x., seþe alle þes *in* wat*er* til þei resolue & þe wat*er* consume awei, & þan putte he*m* *in* a mort*er* & grinde he*m* wel, & þan do þe*r*to .ij. 3elkis of' eiren & oile of' violet',

ficus can be tied away.

Moralis consists of many small swellings, like a mulberry.

[3 lf. 206, bk.] Bleed from the Basilica and the Saphena,

relieve the pains with a medicine,

℞

apply an ointment, or tent.

℞

An ointment to ripen an apostema.

[6 lf. 207]

℞

[1] Lat.: sine colore. The translator read "calore."

[2] *sumdel*, altered in a different coloured ink from *sumdei*.

[4] Lat.: cura est flebotomia basilice lateris eiusdem in uno die, in alio de saphena eiusdem lateris.

[5] Vigo, Traheron Interpret.: "Tenesmos is whan a man hathe greate prouocation to the seege, but can do nothynge. It commeth of tissein, whych signifieth to stretche."

[7] Add. 15236, fol. 5: "*Mellilotum. Corona regia. idem. G. mellilote. A. hunisoke vel redclaure.*"

& make herof' an oynement'. ¶ If' it' so be þat' in þis place of' þe forseid þingis come an enpostym & gadere to quitture, þou schalt' not' abide til it' breke him-silf', for þan it' wole make a greet' hole ynward toward þe guttis. Þerfore þou schalt' opene it' hastili, or it' wexe to miche ynward / If' þe place of' þe emeroide make no greet' akynge ne noon enpostym, & if' þou wolt' drie hem & waste hem, þan þou miȝt' worche in .ij. maners, do þerto mel anacardi & vnguentum ruptorium,[1] or touche hem wiþ an hoot' iren þat' is bettere / If' he be a delicat' man or a feble, drie hem with fumygaciouns maad of' pulpa coloquintida & seed of' mirtillorum, & þe leeues & þe ryndis of' capparis, mirra, nux cipressi, & gallis, & make him a decoccoun of' þese þingis in water [2]&[3] lete him sitte þeron, for alle þese þingis maketh þe emeroidis blak & makiþ hem falle awey / I nolde neuere leie in þat' place corosif' medicyn /

When an apostema begins to suppurate, open it quickly.

Nota

To dry hæmorrhoids, use a corrosive ointment, the hot iron,

and for a delicate patient a fumigation.

[2 lf. 207, bk.]

If' þer be greetnes of' veynes ful of' blood wiþout' ony enpostym, & þe patient haue gret' akynge þerwiþ, & principaly if' he was wont' to haue þe flux of' emeroidis wiþ blood, & he hadde it' not' longe tyme tofore, þan þou schalt' ȝeue him medicyns to haue þe flux of' blood, & þat' þou schalt' do in þis maner anoon, wiþ þe iuys of' a strong' oynoun, or wiþ ius of' lekis, ouþer if' þou makist' suppositorijs of' hem & frotist' þerwiþ þe place, & þis wole opene þe veynys of' þe emeroidis / Also þe rotis of' maluis wet' in þe gall of' a bole / Also take hony .ij. partis, & vert de grece oon part', & medle hem togidere, & herwiþ anointe a suppositorie maad of' lynnen cloop & putte it' yn / If' it' so be þat' þe patient blede to miche & he bicomeþ feble þerwiþ, þan helpe him with trociscus de carabe[4] þat' ben gode for to restreine flux of' blood of' emeroides. & it' is good for to restreyne menstrues. ℞, carabe, gummi nucis, balaustie, lacte, succi barbe yrcine[5] [6]ana .ʒ. v., thuris .ʒ. ij., opij .ʒ. iij., make herof' gobettis wiþ muscillagine psillij, & make euery dai a gobet' þe weiȝte of' .ʒ. ij., & þou schalt' ȝeue oon þerof' wiþ sirupo stiptico, & þou schalt' make fumigaciouns of' driynge þingis: as gallis, balaustie, psidiorum & oþere mo þat' ben forseid / ℞, nuces cipressi,

If the veins are replete, provoke flux of blood.

If the patient loses too much blood, stop the flux.

℞

[6 lf. 208]

Use a fumigation.

℞

[1] *vnguentum ruptorium.* Vigo Interpret.: "Ruptorie: that, that hath strengthe to breake."

[3] At the bottom of the page, in later hand: *contra emeroides vell bubo vell tenassmoun:* ℞ *mer* ʒ *ij, olibani, ameos ana* ʒ *j, oppij* ʒ ß, *gosium gres et* [?], *fiat decoctio cum mell vell cum pestello ellido et nido, formetur suppositorum.*

[4] Matth. Sylv.: "Caraba i. Karabe. Electrum." Fr. carabé Arab. Kabrabà Devic *Dict.* Amber.

[5] *Alphita*, p. 20: "*Barba yrsina . . . a° buckestonge.*"

cupular*um* glandulu*m*, corticas *gra*nator*um*, kutte hem a litil & seþe
A wash. he*m* i*n* good wijn. & wiþ þis wijn waische þe place an eue*n* &
a morowe / Also a fumigaciou*n* maad of' tapsi barbasti[1] is good
þ*er*fore / 4

The great bowel is often pierced by an enpostema and a fistula is formed. It falliþ ofte tyme þat' aft*er* þe flux of' þe emeroidis, ouþ*er* if'
enpostym be to longe mat*ur*atif' i*n* þat' same place vnopened, þan it'
falliþ ofte tyme þat' þe grete bowel[2] is peersid. & sumtyme it'
makiþ a greet' hole[3] in þe same place, & þoru3 þat' hole comeþ out' 8
wijnd & sumtyme egestiou*n*,[4] & þis hole is cleped a festre of' þe
ers.[5] Of' þis cure manye men be*n* hardi & knowen not' þe p*er*els
[6 lf. 208, bk.] þ*er*of', & makiþ þe same medicyns in þis place for a festre as þei
This wants careful treatment. doon in oþ*er*e placis / But' þou schalt' take good [6]hede of' þis maner 12
enfestre; þou schalt' asaie if' þe hole of' þe festre go to hi3e þat' it'
Look whether the fistula passes the muscles of the buttocks, touche þe place of' þe lacertis of' þe ers, þan þe festre is incurable,
& þan a man schal not' holde his egestiou*n*, þat it' nyle go out'
whether there is much pus alwei / Also þou muste loke wher þ*er*e go out' miche quitture ouþir 16
litil of' þe hole of' þe festre, or wheþir þe quitture þ*er*of' be whit' or
and great pain. reed / Also þou muste take kepe wher he haue greet' penaunce þ*er*of'
or no / And aftir alle þese diuers þi*n*gis, þou muste diuerseli worche.
For as it' is aforseid, first þou muste acese þe akynge & þe swell- 20
ynge, þan þou schalt' asaie wher þe festre go to þe lacertis; þat' þou
Try with a probe and the finger, how far the fistula reaches. schalt' knowe i*n* þis man*er* / Putte þi fyngir as fer as it' wole go, i*n*to
his ers, & þan putte a pliaunt' tent' i*n* þe feestre. & loke in what'
place þe tent' mette wiþ þi fyngir, & þan say þat' þe pa*tient* streyne 24
his ers, & þan þou mi3t' wite wheþer þe festre go aboue þe braun or
If the fistula passes above the brawn, no. If' þe festre go aboue þe braun, þan þe pa*tient* schal lete go
out' wijnd & egestiou*n* at' þe hole of' þe fest*re*. [7]þan þou schalt' i*n*
[7 lf. 209] no man*er* touche þe fest*re* wiþ no medicyn corosif' ne wiþ noon 28
apply no corrosive, but only a wash. hoot' iren; but' þou schalt' teche hi*m* for to vse a waisching' wiþ
wat*er* & hony & mirre, & wiþ su*m* mundificatif', and i*n* þis maner
he schal kepe hi*m* þat' þe malice of' þe fest*re* wexe nomore. ¶ O
Many unlearned surgeons, mi briþ*er*en, manye lewid lechis haue I seen þat' coude on ruptorie, 32
& þei supposide þ*er*bi for to cure ca*n*cris & festris, & al maner crepa-

[1] *Alphita*, p. 182: "Tapsus barbatus—g^e. molayne. an. catesteyl, uel feldwrt."

[2] *intestinum*, inserted in later hand.

[3] *callid ffestula testium*, inserted in later hand.

[4] "*Egestion*, a casting forth, avoiding: In the Art of Physick, the discharging of Meat digested through the Pylorus, or lower Mouth of the Stomach, into the rest of the Entrails." Phillips.

[5] *ffestula*, inserted in later hand.

turis, & þei supposiþ bi þis maner ruptorie[1] for to surmounte G*alien* in worchinge / And me*n* þat' ha*n* þis opiniou*n*, in þe mo errouris þat' þei falliþ, þe more wrooþ þei wole*n* be, & þe more þei wolliþ vse her ruptorijs / And þe*r*fore þis mai be ensau*m*ple to þee : if' a man haue no drinke but' eysel, and haþ indignaciou*n* for to fecche ony oþ*er* but' halt' hi*m* þe*r*to, & ȝeueþ þe*r*of' to men þat' ben aþirst'. & if' þe drinke agreue he*m*, & þei speke ony þing' þe*r*of', he wole be wrooþ þe*r*fore, & he nyle noon oþ*er* drinke fecche, but algate ȝeueþ he*m* of' þe same til her sp*irit*uals bicome drie / And if' þe same [2]man hadde wijn ynowȝ & knew wel þe vertu þe*r*of', he wolde ȝeue no man eysel for to drinke nomore / þe*r*fore þou schalt' vse medicyns þat' be*n* app*r*eued, & do awei al medicyns þat' ben false, & holde þee apaid of' þe medicyns þat' ben aforseid /[3]

knowing only one corrosive apply it in every case. G*alien*.

They do like a man who has no other drink but vinegar, and gives it to thirsty people;

[2 lf. 209, bk.]

if he had wine, he would not give vinegar.

Of þe cancre[4] and þe mormole /

¶ xiijo. co /

CAncrene ben rounde vlceris þat' falliþ i*n* a mannes leggis, & malum mortuum also, & þei falliþ boþe in oon place, þe*r*fore I wole make differe*n*ce þe*r*of' / ¶ Cancrene be*n* round vlcera & be*n* foule & comeþ of' dedinge of' þe skyn,[5] for þe natural spiritis comen not' þe*r*to, & þe*r*fore þe place is corrupt' / & if' þe corrupcioun go anoon to þe boon, þan it' schal not' be clepid cancrenu*m*, but' it' schal be clepid aschachiles.[6] & if' þe corrupciou*n* ocupie al þe lyme, þan it' schal be clepid herpes estiomenus, þat' is as miche to seie as etyng' him-silf'. ¶ þe signes of' cancrenar*um* be*n* blac vlcera, & þe fleisch þe*r*of' wole be foule & of' ledi colour, & þe lippis þe*r*of' wole*n* be gret', & þe fleisch þat' is i*n* þe middil [7]of' vlcera wole be corrupt'. & it' be miche lijk to a cancre þat' is vlcerat*us*, but' þis is þe difference þe*r*of' þat' a cancre comeþ of' corrupciou*n* of'

Gangrene is a mortification of the skin.

If the bone is affected it is called aschachiles

if the whole limb is affected he*r*pes estiomen*us*.

The symptoms of Gangrene are black ulcers

[7 lf. 210]

similar to an ulcerated cancer.

[1] MS. *rurptorie*.

[3] The translator omits a short passage about "Fissure of the Anus."

[4] *cancre*, a mistake. Lat. De cancrenis. Med. Lat. cancrenum, cancrena, is derived from Lat. canceroma, cancroma, canchrema, and has very early been confounded with Lat. gangræna, γάγγραινα. Vigo. Interpret. "Cancrena. Gangrena is when some parte of the body thorow great inflammation dieth, but is not yet perfitly dead; when it is perfectlye dead, and wythout felyng: it is called sphacelos in greke, whyche they have turned to ascachillos, sideratio in latine. Some saye, that Gangrena is whan a membre is apte to putrefye. Ascachillos, when it is putrified, but hath not all partes of putrefaction. Esthiomenas, when a membre hath al degrees of putrefaction."

[5] *of dedinge of þe skyn.* Lat.: de cutis mortificatione.

[6] *aschachiles*, the Arab. corruption of σφάκελος. Fr. sphacile.

It is caused by general debility.

malancolie, & þis comeþ of lesynge of þe spiritis of lijf / Also þe lippis of þe cancre ben more reuersid and more grene, & a cancre fretiþ more / And *per*fore þis passiou*n* is clepid of su*mmen* a deed cancre / 4

Treatment of Gangrene: Purge the body from melancholic matter,

þe cure of þis passiou*n* is *in* þis maner / first þou schalt avoide his bodi of malancolie, & þouȝ it be not his principal cause as it is of a cancre / ȝitt þe mater þat fallip to þe place is greet / þerfore it is good for to clense his blood of malancolie; for it is good þing *in* 8 vlcera þat ben olde, & principali wh*an*ne þei be*n* *in* pa*r*ties bineþeforþ / & wh*an*ne he is clensid, þan lete hi*m* blood *in* þe veyne þat is bitwixe þe leeste too of his foot & þe too next þe*r*to, *in* þe same leg þat þe passiou*n* is on. & vpon þe place þou schalt caste poude*r* 12 of affodillo*rum*, ouþ*er* remeue awei al þe deed fleisch / If þou wolt worche more surely & bettere, make hi*m* a cauterie, þat [1]it be myche & long as þe place is þat [is] corrupt, & wiþ an hoot iren make a cros vpon þe middil of þe passiou*n* as depe as þe deed fleisch 16 is. & þan þou schalt leie þe*r*on a plastre maad of whete mele & iuys of ache, & þan cure it vp as þou doist o*pe*re vlcera, as it is forseid / And *in* þis caas þou schalt not forȝete *in* no maner for to leie aboute þe place a defensif of bole & terra sigillata; for þat 20 wole suffre no wickide mater to re*n*ne to þe place, & it defendiþ þe hool place fro corrupciou*n*. ¶ Malum mortuu*m* is a man*er* scabbe, & comeþ of grete humo*ur*is brent, & falliþ to þe place. & sum pa*r*t þe*r*of leueþ *in* a ma*n*nys flank, & engendriþ glandulas & 24 swelliþ / þe cure herof is to avoide his bodi of greet humo*ur*is, þat be*n* brent; & lete hi*m* blood *in* basilica, *in* þe same side; & lete hi*m* blood *in* þe foot, as it is forseid / & þou muste dissolue glandulus, as it is forseid *in* þe chapitre of glandul*us* & scrophulis; 28 & þan þou muste anoi*n*te þe place wiþ drijnge medicyns. þou [2]schalt anointe al þe place w*ith* psilatro,[3] til al þe heeris falle awei wiþoute*n* ony violence / Take þe grete titimalle & þe smale, & boile he*m* *in* vinegre & *in* oile, & do þe*r*to a litil sope, & make þe*r*of þe 32 man*er* of an oynement; & wiþ þis oynemen*t* þou schalt anointe þe place harde aȝen þe fier / ℞, olei aceti an*a*. ʒ .ij., sapponis mollis & sapponis duri an*a*. ℥ j.; medle he*m* togidere, & do þe*r*to iuys mali terre ouþer brionie .℥ .ij.; boile he*m* alle togidere, & anointe 36 þe place þe*r*wiþ, & þou schalt fynde oynementis *in* þe antidotarie þat ben gode in þis caas //

bleed from a vein between the last two toes, use daffodil-powder.

[1 lf. 210, bk.]

The best method is, to cauterize the place with the hot iron.

Then apply a plaster,

and a defensive.

Malum mortuu*m* is a kind of scab,

and is treated with purging,

blood-letting,

and an ointment.

[2 lf. 211]

℞ an ointment of tithymal.

℞ An ointment of soap.

[3] *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 35: "Psilotrum, depilatorium idem."

Of varices, þat ben veynes, and elephancia.[1]

¶ xiiij. c°/ Varices are enlarged veins in the legs.

UArices ben clepid veynes, þat ben grete, & grene, & purpur, & sittiþ aboute a mannes leggis. and þei comen of greet
4 malancolious[2] blood, þat falliþ adoun. & also it comeþ of grete metis & of greet traueile, or it may come of greet fleume; & it wole make a mannes feet & his leggis al grete, & sumtyme his feet also[3] // þe [4]cure of varicium is in þis maner: þou schalt purge him
8 wiþ gotis whey & wiþ epithimo, for þis purgacioun is propre in þis caas, or purge him wiþ pelottis of epithimi. & lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid basilica, of þe arme in þe same side, & also in his foot. & he schal absteyne him fro metis þat engendriþ
12 malancolie / þis passioun þow myȝt cure in þese maners[5] / þis is þe first maner: loke in his hamme, vnder his knee. þere þou schalt se a greet veine; & alle þe grete veynes, þat ben bineþe in his leg, comeþ out þerof. þan þou schalt take vp þe same veyne wiþ a
16 nedele. & loke þat þou peerse not þe veyne, & knytte hir wiþ a þreed. & þe brede of þi fyngir aboue þat place, putte yn þi nedele aȝen, vndir þe veyne as þou hast do heretofore, & knitte in þe same maner wiþ a þreed; & þan þou schalt kutte þe skyn ouer þe veyne
20 endelongis; & þan take vp þe veyne & kutte hir bitwixe þe .ij. bindingis, & þan þe ende of þe veyne þat is aboue schal be brent wiþ an hoot iren, & þe neþir side [6]of þe veyne schalt be vnknit. & presse out þe blood bineþeforþ of þe veyne, as myche as þou
24 myȝt. & þanne þe remenaunt þou schalt drawe wiþ medicyns þat ben consumynge. & þe fleisch þere þou madist þi wounde, þou schalt touche wiþ an hoot iren also; & þan þou schalt leie to þe place mundificatiuis, & þan soude as it is aforseid.[7] ¶ Also anoþer
28 maner cure: lete him blood oonli in þe same veyne, & take out of þe blood as miche as þou miȝt, & purge him ofte, & make him

Elephantia attacks the feet.

[4 lf. 211, bk.] The general treatment consists in purging, and in bleeding from the Basilic vein.

Local treatments: 1. Apply a double ligature on the popliteal vein,

cut the vein between the two ligatures,

[6 lf. 212]

and press the blood out from the lower part of the vein: after removal of the ligature.

2. Use blood-letting and purging.

[1] Lanfranc follows the description given by *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 15, ed. Ven. 1527. Avicenna's list of the occupations that are predisposing to this illness reminds us of the fact that he was a courtier himself. *Ibid.*: "Et plurimum quidem accidunt cursoribus, & viatoribus, & onera portantibus & coram regibus astantibus."

[2] MS. *humour*, deleted.

[3] Incorrect translation. Lat.: "Elephantia dicitur quædam carnis augmentatio, in qua crus vltra mensuram debitam augmentatur cum pede toto, et fit ex grosso fleumate vel ex grossa melancolia non corrupta."

[5] Lat.: Locus autem tribus curatur modis.

[7] This mode of operation is the same as has been described by *Paulus Ægineta*, Lib. VI, 82, ed. Fr. Adams 1844, 2nd vol., p. 406, and by *Avicenna l. c.*, Cap. 18.

enplastris aboute his leggis wiþ drijnge þi*n*gis, & diete hi*m* as it is
3. Do not try a perfect cure, but purge and bleed several times a year.
aforseid. ¶ þe .iij. maner is þis: þou schalt go to no p*er*fit cure
þ*er*of, but þou schalt lete þat blood falle adou*n*, & þan a fewe
tymes i*n* þe ȝeer þou schalt purge hi*m*; & þou schalt laske his greet 4
blood wiþ blood-letyngis, þat ben forseid, & leie enplastris vpon þe
place þat ben drijnge. & þus þou schalt do til al þe swellynge be
goo*n* awey / & þis laste medicyn is þe beste for he*m* þat haue had
þis passiou*n* longe, & for he*m* þat ben olde / For if þou kutte a 8
[1 lf. 212, bk.] veyne in he*m*, [1] þan þ*er* wole engendre manie sijknessis aboue, &
make þe pacient deed þe raþ*er*e / For I siȝ men þat her veynes weren
so kutt þat were*n* algate sijk aftirward, & wiþi*n*ne a litil time aftir
Elephancia can be cured at the beginning of the disease.
þat þei diede. ¶ Elephancia[2] is incurable wh*an*ne it is confermed; 12
but bifore þat it is confermed, it mai be curid for to purge þe
hum*our*is þat ben i*n* þe cause wiþ blood-leti*ng*, þat ben aforseid. &
Use purging, blood-letting,
he schal absteine hi*m* fro grete metis, þat engendriþ greet hum*our*is;
keep the legs bandaged before an exertion, use an ointment.
& þan he schal not go ne ride, but if his leg & his foot be bou*n*den 16
wiþ a boond faste, & speciali in þe ioynct / But first þou schalt
anoynte his leggis wiþ epithi*m*o maad of acacia, mirra, aloe, ipoqui-
stidos,[3] & alym w*ith* vinegre. & wh*an*ne þe swellynge bigy*n*neþ to
goon awei, þan make hi*m* a stuwe, & lete his leggis be þ*er*i*n*ne 20
longe; & be it maad of askis of vines & caul-seed, sticados arabici,
lupinor*um*, mirre, stercus cap*r*ini, fenigrec*i*. Also anointe hi*m*, &
binde hi*m*, as it is forseid. & i*n* þis maner I haue curid me*n*, þat
ne weren not confermed þeron // 24

Of wertis in handis and in feet /

[4 lf. 213] ¶ xv°. c° /

4 POrri[5] ben engendrid of fleume þat is greet, & ben white;
veruce[6] comeþ of malancolie, & ben blake, & han mo rotis /
Scissure[7] comeþ of malancolie brent, & makiþ as it were kuttyngis; 28

[2] The disease which Lanfranc describes is the Elephantiasis Arabum, commonly known as Barbadoes leg, quite different from the Elephantiasis of the Greeks, a general term for severe leprosy.

[3] *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 25: "Ipoquistidos est succus fungi qui nascitur ad pedem rosæ caninæ." ὑποκιστίς, ἴδος, ἡ, a parasitic plant which grows on the roots of the κίστος, Cytinus hypocistis. (= Holly Rose, *Gerard*, p. 1281.)

[5] "*Porrus*, a Leak, also a kind of Wart." Phillips.

[6] "*Verruca*, (Lat.) a Wart, a little hard brawny Swelling, which breaks out of the Skin, and breeds in any part of the Body." *Ibid.*

[7] "*Scissure*, a Cut or Cleft, a Rent or Chap." *Ibid.*

& if þei comeþ of cooldnes, þan þei schulen be clepid muge.[1] ¶ Þe cure of porror*um* is for to clense his bodi wiþ trocisco de t*ur*bit, & þan frote þe place wiþ medicyns þat be*n* consu*m*ptif; & frote he*m* wiþ poudre m*aa*d of a gotis toord, & temp*er*e wiþ þe iuys of mirti & wiþ þe ryndis of capparis / Veruce schulen be curid wiþ a purgaciou*n* m*aa*d of epith*im*i & gotis whey, & wiþ su*m*me oþ*er*e medicyn þat is p*r*oprid for malancolie, & þa*n* þou schalt vse stronge oynementis / as vng*uentu*m ruptoriu*m*, ouþ*er* mel anacardi or su*m* oþir corrosif, ouþ*er* i*n* þis man*er* is better / garse it al aboutforþ & binde it wiþ a strong preed, & streine wel þe þred & drawe hi*m* awei wiþ þe preed, & þa*n*ne touche þe rotis of hi*m* wiþ a caute*r*ie pu*n*ctual. ¶ Scissure. It is nede i*n* þis passiou*n* for to purge his bodi of humouris þat be*n* brent, & make [2]hi*m* a baþ of swete wat*er*. & þa*n* þou schalt waische his lymes wiþ a decocciou*n* of bismal*ue* i*n* watir, & a litil oile þ*er*wiþ; & lete him vse metis þat makiþ moist & enge*n*drid good blood, & þan anoynte hi*m* wiþ þis oynement / ℞, oli*um* ros*arum*, cere cit*r*ine, adipis anatis colatus, Isopi humide,[3] muscillagine se*min*is citonior*um*, amilu*m*, drag*anti*, an*a*, make herof an oynement / ¶ **Muge** schulen be curid wiþ oilis & oynementis / ffirst þou schalt aswage þe akinge wiþ oile, & þa*n* leie þ*er*to a mundificatif þat schal be seid i*n* þe antidotarie, & þan soude it wiþ mirre / If þ*ou* seest it at þe first bigy*n*nyng, þan make an enplastre of armoniaco, for þat wole resolue þe enpostym. & þou schalt make þat he vse [not][4] streit schoon, & he schal anoynte his feet, & p*r*incipali hise heelis wiþ þis oynement / ℞, oli*um* de lilie ℥ .vj., cere ℥ ß., resine ℥ ij., armoniaci ℥ j., farine feni*greci* ℥ .ß., thuris, mast*icis*, an*a* ʒ .ij., & make herof an oynement /[5]

Treatment of porror*um*. Apply a caustic medicine.

veruce. Use purging and a strong ointment,

or tie the growth.

Scissure. Use purging, [2 lf. 213, bk.] a bath, a wash,

an ointment. ℞

Muge.

Relieve the pain; apply a mundificative,

a plaster,

and an ointment. ℞

[1] *Matth. Syluat.:* "Perniones vel rasulæ, sunt excoriationes quæ fiunt in nimio frigore in calcaneis, quæ *Mugæ* vulgariter dicuntur," probably allied to *mucus, mungere, μύξα.*

[3] *isopus humida.* Sloane 2463, fol. 159 bk.: "*The fyfte, whiche is nother* propurly *oynement nor enplastre, but atwixe two, & is cleped ysopus humida. Take wolle that is bytwixe the thyes and the iowes of schepe, as moche as þou wilt, and put as moche water therepon as may covere hit, and lete hit stonde so aday and anyȝt, and þanne boile hit with a lente fyre, and lete hit wexe cold, and coile hit; and thanne boile hit eftesones in a tymed panne with a liȝt fyre, and thanne lete hit wexe cold, and coile hit: butt loke thou stere hit euermore with a spature of tre till þat it be thikke as oynement.*"

[4] *not*, wanting. Lat.: iube ne calciamenta portet stricta.

[5] Gulielm. de Saliceto, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I, Cap. 57. Sloane 277, fol. 19: "*For cold in wynter þe leche may haue two consideraciouns to þe heelynge*

Of blood-letyng //

¶ xvj

[1 lf. 213*]

Blood-letting belongs to a surgeon's craft.

Nota.

Learned physicians leave it to unlearned men and women.

One ought to be both a physician and a surgeon.

Blood-letting is used to keep a man's health, and to remove sickness.

[4 lf. 213*, bk.]

Bleed those who eat and drink much, and have little exercise.

Bleed in order to prevent a disease.

Blood-letyng is a craft for to laske a mannes blood þat is in his veynes / [1]And þis þou schalt wel wite, þat it falliþ for oure craft, þou3 we for pride take it to barbouris & to wommen; & blood-letynge falliþ principali for cirurgians / O lord, whi is it so grect difference bitwixe a cirurgian & a phisician, but for philosophoris bitoken þe craft into lewid mennes hondis / or as manie men haue dedignaciou*n* for to worche wiþ her hondis / & 3itt mani men weneþ þat it is impossible þat oon man to kunne boþe þe craftis[2] / But þou schalt knowe wel þis, þat he is no good phisician þat can no þing in cirurgie / And also þe contrarie þerof: a man mai be no good cyrurgian, but if he knowe phisik. ¶ Blood-letynge is vsid bi cause for to kepe a mannes bodi hool, & to remeue awei sijknessis fro a mannes bodi / But þus manye þingis þou muste take kepe in blood-leting: tyme, & hour, & eir, & disposiciou*n* of þe sike man / & þou muste take kepe þat þou lete no man blood but if he mowe endure itt // ¶ First a man schal be lete blood for to kepe him-silf,[3] & principali hem þat etiþ good fleisch [4]& drinkiþ good wijn, & etiþ metis for to engendre myche blood, & traueiliþ but litil, & principali þe while a man is 3ong, & also in eelde if he be myche vsid þerto / Also þou schalt lete hem blood þat ben wont to haue akynge in her ioyntis, ouþer a feuere þat is clepid sinocha[5] or þe squinacie, ouþer pleureses / Alle þese, tofore þe tyme þat þei ben woned to haue her passiou*n*, þou schalt lete hem blood or her passiou*n* come, þat it mowe go awey þerwiþ: & þis maner is clepid preuisiuus. ¶ þe iij. maner: wh*a*nne a man haþ greet akynge in

of swiche maner seknesses: oon of partie of defense þat *it come not, & another of* þe *partie of remeynge of* þe *seknesse i-made. By* þe *reson of defence that it come not, leue* þe *patient wiþ all his witt streit schoynge, & haue he dowble schoos & large, & anoynte he euery nyȝt* þe *heele with an oynement* þus *maad.*"

[2] Lat.: "aut quum operari ut dicunt quidam cum manibus dedignantur, aut, quod magis credo, quum operationis modum quod apud scientiam est necessarium non nouerunt; et hæc abusio tantum valuit propter antiquam dissuetudinem, quod apud quosdam de vulgo credatur impossibile, quod unus hoc possit scire magisterium utriusque."

[3] Lat. pro sanitate conseruanda.

[5] Lanfranc, *Chirurgia Parva*, Cap. X, Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 25a (xvth cent.): "*blood* þ*erfore, ȝif it ouer haboundeþ rpon al* þe *body, & it is hett with hete enflammynge or brennynge* þe *herte, & is corrupt, & neþeles it is not roten,* þ*erof is maad a feuere clepid* **synocha continua.** *And ȝif he is roten,* þ*enne is maad* þ*erof a feuere clepid* **synochus continuus.**

his heed wiþouten[1] a feuere, or a squinantes plureses, periplumonia, apostema calida, & eueri sijknes þat comeþ of to miche blood. In alle þese causis þou schalt lete him blood; & þis maner is clepid curantes.[2] ¶ Now I wole telle alle maners in what maner a man schal be leten blood / ffirst, who schal lete þee blood / þe .ij, wханne it is necessarie for to be lete blood / þe .iij., in whiche veynes a man schal be leten blood for diuers passiouns, & in what maner þe veyne schal be kut. ¶ A man þat schal be letere blood schal be ȝong, [3] & he schal be no child, ne noon oold man, ne he schal not quake, & he schal haue a good scharp siȝt; & loke þat he kunne knowe veines, & þat he kunne knowe hem from arterijs; & he schal haue manie diuers tool[4] for to lete blood þerwiþ, & þei schulen be clene and cleer, & not rusti; & summe of his tool schulen be longe, & summe schorte, for to peerse aftir þat þe veyne is greet þerto / Also children schulen not be lete blood, but if it were greet nede, & he were so replet of blood þat he schulde be achekid þerwiþ; þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe streitnes of his breeþ & fulnes of his veynes, & bi reednes of his face. Þan it is necessarie þat he be leten blood; but it is ful greet drede for to lete a child blood, þerfore I wyle ȝeue no counseil þerto. & if it so be þat he be in perel of deeþ, þan lete him blood / Now þou art war of þis perel, do as þou seest þat it is to do; & þou schalt warne þe childis fadir & his modir of þe perels þat ben aforseid, & saue þee fro blame. ¶ Also olde men schulen not be lete blood, & ȝitt summe olde men ben strenger of vertu þan summe ȝonge [5] men; & þan þou schalt take hede to þe rule in þis maner: þat þou schalt not lete hem blood wханne þei arisiþ out of her sijknes / ¶ Also wommen wiþ childe schulen not be lete blood, & speciali not in þe .iij. firste moneþis, ne in þe laste monþe / Also ȝonge men þat ben white & pale, & haueþ fewe heeris in her browis, & haueþ smale veynes & priui, ne ben not couenable to be lete blood; ne men þat han manie humours & litil blood, for blood þat is in hem is tresour. ¶ Ffrensch men doon hem-silf miche harme in þis caas; wханne þei ben ful of coold humours & corrupt þei letiþ hem-silf blood, & þan þei seen her blood corrupt &

Bleed in those diseases which are caused by abundance of blood.

.1.
.2.
.3.

1. The operator must have [3 lf. 214] the proper age, know the blood-vessels, and have good instruments.

2. Children ought not to be bled except in urgent cases; it is always dangerous, and the parents must be warned.

Do not bleed old men, [5 lf. 214, bk.] nor pregnant women, nor young men who are pale and have spare hair and small veins.

Much harm is done in France by too much blood-letting.

[1] The Latin editions of Lanfranc read: "Tertio cum dolor fortis adest capitis siue febres fortes squinantes pleuresos," ed. Ven. 1498, fol. 201 bk., Ven. 1546, fol. 249, but Add. MS. 26,106 (xivth cent.), fol. 88, shows the correct reading, which corresponds with the translation: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis sine febre, cum fortes squinantes, pleureses."

[2] Lat. curatiuus.

[4] *tool*, a survival of the O.E. tôl, N.A. plur.

foul, & þan þei supposen þat' þei han wel doon þat' þei haue lete out' þat' blood, & þe barbour wole seie þat' he mote hastili be lete blood aȝen / It' were wel better to hi*m* þat' he hadde kept' his blood, & þat' þe corrupt' humours hadde be voidid awei i*n* o*per* man*er* / 4

Nota Do not bleed at the beginning of cataract.

¶ Blood-letynge is not' good for a ma*n* at' þe firste bigy*nn*ynge of' cataracta, ne noon ventuse is not' good for hi*m* / but' i*n* causis as it' is forseid, blood-letyng' is good // And [1] if' a man etiþ miche fleisch & drinkiþ miche wijn, for þis wole engendre miche blood / And 8

[1 lf. 215] Blood-letting shall be used, if a man eats and drinks too much,

þan but' if' a man lete hi*m* blood, þan þe*re* wole engendre diue*rs* sijknes þ*er*of', & ofte tyme sodeyn deeþ / Also me*n* þat' haue þe goute of' blood, he schal be lete blood tofore þe tyme þat' he supposiþ to haue his passiou*n*; for ofte tyme þis wole take awey 12

in case of gout—before the illness is quite developed—

his akynge. & i*n* alle sijknessis þat' comeþ principali of' blood, it' is good for he*m* to be lete blood / Also me*n* þat' haueþ synocham, blood-letynge is ful necessarie to he*m*, til þei swowne. & þis wole do awei þe feuere, or it' waastiþ so miche þe mater; & þan he muste 16

in case of synocha,

be holpen wiþ o*per*e medicyns, þat' þou schalt' fynde i*n* bokis of' phisik [2] / If' he be not' lete blood, þan þe blood þat' is i*n* hi*m* wole boile vpward to þe brest', & gadere togidere in the brest', þat' þe pacient' schal be ful ny3 stoppid.[3] & sumtyme a veine wole breke 20

else the blood may boil into the breast,

and a vein may break.

Nota

i*n* þe piyse or i*n* þe lungis, & þan þat' veine mai not' be streyned ne stoppid, & þan þe pa*tient* schal die þ*er*on. ¶ In þis chapitre it' is myn entencioun forto speke oonly of' openynge of' veines [4] þat' be*n* i*n* us,[5] & what' v*er*tu þ*er* is þ*er*i*n*ne. In boþe armis of' a ma*n* þ*er* 24

[4 lf. 215, bk.]

The veins on which phlebotomy is practised are 1. Cephalica.

be*n* .iij. veines þat' be*n* i*n* us for to be lete blood þ*er*on / þe .i. is clepid cephalica, & is þe hi3este veine of' þe arme, & sitt' next' þe elbowe[6]; & þis veine mote be kut' large, & not' to depe / If' þat' veine be kut' streit', þan ofte tyme it' makiþ an enpostym / & also 28

which is cut either near the elbow, or between the thumb and the first finger.

þou muste be wel war þat' þou touche no synewis / For þe same cause þou mi3t' lete a man blood vpon þe hond, bitwixe his þombe & þe nexte fyngir þ*er*to // Basilica sittiþ adou*n* afor3ens þe elbowe, vndir þe arme, & þis veine sittiþ ful ny3 þe gret' arterie: & þ*er*fore 32

2. Basilica. is cut either in the fold of the arm,

a man mote be wel war þat' he touche not' þe arterie veyne. & for þe perel of' þe arterie it' is good for to lete him blood bitwixe þe litil fyngir & þe fyng*er* next' þ*er*to. & þis blood-letynge is good for

or between the little finger and the ring finger.

[2] *& þan he muste be holpen—bokis of phisik*, inserted. Lat.: "aut omnino phlebotomia febrem tollit, aut adeo materiam minuit, quod in putridam de cetero non mutatur."

[3] Lat. quod patiens suffocatur. [5] Lat. quæ sunt in usu.

[6] Lat. prima cefalica que in duobus minuitur locis prope cubiti plicaturam aliquautulum supra.

alle þe placis vndir þe brestꝑ, & for þe lyuere. ¶ Of ꝑ þis veine þatꝑ is clepid Basilica, & of ꝑ þe veine þatꝑ is c[l]epid Cephalica, comeþ a veine þatꝑ is clepid Mediana / And wha*nn*e a ma*n* is lete blood i*n* þis veyne, itꝑ is pe*r*el of ꝑ ij. grete synewis þatꝑ liggiþ i*n* boþe sidis [1]of ꝑ þe veyne. And wha*nn*e þou þi*n*kistꝑ to avoide al a ma*n*nes bodi, þan þou schaltꝑ lete hi*m* blood i*n* þis veine, & principali for þe herte & for þe brestꝑ. ¶ In Basilica, i*n* þe riȝtꝑ hond, þou schaltꝑ lete a man blood for passiou*n* of ꝑ þe lyuere, & i*n* þe lift hond for passiou*n* of ꝑ þe splene,[2] & i*n* þe liftside of ꝑ þe forheed[3] itꝑ is good to lete blood for akynge of ꝑ þe heed,[4] & principali wha*nn*e sijknes is confermed i*n* a ma*n*nes heed. & þis I apreuede misilf ꝑ / for sumtyme itꝑ doiþ awei þe frenesi. & I siȝ a wo*m*man þatꝑ hadde akynge in hir heed, þatꝑ itꝑ miȝte notꝑ be take awei, & I lete hir blood i*n* hir hond as itꝑ is forseid & purgide hir, & þe veine i*n* hir forheed þatꝑ was gretter þan ony oþer veine i*n* hir bodi; & I openede þatꝑ veine, & anoon riȝtꝑ sche was hool / Butꝑ wha*nn*e þou woltꝑ lete a man blood i*n* þatꝑ place, þou schaltꝑ streyne þe necke & kutte þe veine endelongis; & þis blood-letynge is good for tynea, þatꝑ is in a ma*n*nes heed, & for Saphati.[5] & for demigrania þou schaltꝑ lete blood i*n* þe templis of ꝑ his heed. & þe same blood-letynge is good for passio*n* [6]of ꝑ a ma*n*nes iȝe*n* / I hadde a ȝongꝑ ma*n* i*n* my kepinge þatꝑ hadde demigrayn[7] of ꝑ hootꝑ cause, & I purgide hi*m* ofte & lete hi*m* blood, and I knytte þe arterie þatꝑ was i*n* þe same side of ꝑ his heed, & þo he was cured for euermore / Also letynge blood i*n* þe veynes bihinde hise eeris is good for þe dimigray*n* & for tineam / Also letynge blood i*n* þe tu*n*ge is good for þe squinacie, & for enpostyms, þatꝑ be*n* as itꝑ were almaundis, & for brancis;[8] butꝑ he

3. Mediana. is selected for general bleeding. [1 lf. 216]

A vein in the forehead is cut against headache and frenzy;

as the author did in the case of a woman.

Blood-letting on the temples is good against megrim, [6 lf. 216, bk.] and an eye disease.

Cut the veins behind the ear against megrim: bleed the tongue against squincy.

[2] *Regimen sanitatis Salerni*, transl. by T. Paynell (1530), fol. h. iiii.: "*Saluatella* is þat veyne betwene þe myddell fynger and the rynge fynger, more declynynge to the myddell fynger. Hit begy*n*neth of *Basilica*. This veyne is opened in the ryghte hande for opilation of þe lyuer, and in the lefte hande for opilation of the splene. There is no reason why it shuld be so, as Auicen saythe, but experyence: whiche Galen founde by a dreame, as he saythe. He had one in cure, whose lyuer and splene were stopte, and he dreamed that he dyd let him blud of this veine, and so he dyd, and cured the pacient." [3] MS. inserts *for*.

[4] Lat. in capite flebotomatur vena frontis propter capitis egritudines.

[5] MS. *sanaci*. The editions of Lanfranc read *saphati*, Add. MS. 26,106, fol. 89: *saffira*. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Saphiros, Sephiros idest apostema durum cui non associatur sensus." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Sephiros is an arabike word, and it is called in Greke scirros, in latyne durities, that is hardenes."

[7] *demigrayn*, Lat. emigranea. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. megrim.

[8] *brancus*, med. Lat. Dufr., a throat-disease. *Isid.*, Lib. 4, Cap. 7: "branchos est præfocatio faucium a frigido humore." The editions of Lanfr. read: brachiis.

schal be lete blood tofore *in* þe heed-veyne. & it' is good for þe
iȝen, & it' is good for icchinge & for pustulis *in* þe nose, & for
Bleed from the jugular vein against suffocation, from a vein in the lower lip, scotomia þat' comeþ of' blood / Sumtyme a man is lete blood *in*
veynes *in* þe necke, þat' ben clepid gwide,[1] for drede of' suffocaciou*n*[2] 4
of' blood; & sumtyme in lepro*us* men, þat' schulen be lete blood *in*
her lippis bineþe.[3] & þis is good for hote enposty*ms* *in* þe mouþ, &
from the 3 veins in the leg, for hote passiou*ns* of' þe go*m*mys. ¶ In a ma*n*nes foot' be*n* .iij., þat'
ben p*ro*fitable to be lete blood for manie passiou*ns* / And þ*er* is oon 8
veyne *in* a ma*n*nes ha*m*me vndir his knee, þat' is good to be lete
1. a vein under the knee, [4 lf. 217] [4]blood for passiou*ns* of' þe maris, & for to bringe out' menstrue: &
it' avoidiþ al þe bodi. ¶ Also þ*er* is anoþ*er* veine, þat' sittiþ bitwixe
2. a vein in the hollow of the foot called **Sophena.** þe holowe of' þe foot' wiþ*in*neforþ, & is clepid Sophena; & *in* þis 12
veyne wo*m*men ben leten blood for passiouns of' þe maris, & me*n*
be*n* lete blood *in* þe veine of' þe same place for enpostyms of' þe
3. the sciatic vein. ballokis. ¶ þe veine þat' serueþ for þe scie, is wiþoute bitwixe þe
heele & þe holowe of' þe foot' wiþoutforþ, & blood-letynge *in* þis 16
veine is good for scia[ti]cam passionem, as it' is aforseid *in* þe cure
If you intend to let blood more than once from the same place, of' sciatica. ¶ Herof' þou schalt' take kepe. If' þou þinkist' for to
lete a man blood *in* .ij. diuers times, & not' al at' oonys, þan þou
schalt' do *in* þis maner; & *in* þis caas, wh*an*ne þou wolt' lete a man 20
miche blood, and ne darist' not' do it' al at' oonys; þan wha*n*ne þou
make a larger incision. letist' hi*m* blood, þou schalt' make þe inscicioun of' þe veine þe more
long', þat' it' soude not' hastili; & þan þou schalt' bi*n*de his arme, &
[5 lf. 217, bk.] smite þe place þ*er*e þou wolt' lete hi*m* blood wiþ þi fyngir, & make 24
If by blood-letting, you wish to draw the matter to the opposite part of the body, bleed repeatedly. hi*m* blede more, as myche as þou seest' þat' good is / [5]¶ Also
whanne þou wolt' wiþ blood-letyng' make þe mater go to þe place
aforȝens; whanne þou hast' lete out' þe .iij. p*ar*t' off' blood þat' he
schal blede, þan þou schalt' sette þi fingir vpon þe wounde, & make 28
him stonde vp & remeue[6] hi*m*-silf', & lete him sitte adoun, & do
awei þi fyngir & lete him blede more. & þus þou schalt' do .iij.

[1] Lat. vene guidegi.

[2] Phillips: "*Suffocation.* a suffocating, stifling, etc., a Stoppage."

[3] This statement is due to a wrong interpunctuation in the Latin original. Add. 26,106: "Aliquando flebotomantur uene guidegi colli cum suffocatio ex sanguinis timetur multitudine. & aliquando in quibusdam leprosis uene quæ sunt in labiis inferioribus interioribus minuantur propter acola calidum in ore — —." A full stop ought to be between leprosis and uene. Compare *Liber Rasis ad Almans*, Tract. VII, Cap. 21, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 32 bk.: "Sed due vene que dicuntur guidegi sunt flebotomande, cum anhelitus in lepre principio maxime angustatur." "Vene itidem, que in labiis sunt inciduntur cum in aliquo multiplicantur alcola et ulcera in ore et gingivis."

[6] *remeue him-silf* has the sense of M.E. remuen, O.F. remuer, to move, stir.

siþis or .iiij., for *in* þis maner þe blood drawiþ more to þe partie aforȝens, & þe *ver*tu of þe pacient schal þe better be kept. ¶ Also if a man is wont to swowne in blood-letynge ouþ*er* falle doun, þan
4 lete hi*m* lie & be lete blood / Also or he be lete blood, lete hi*m* ete a schiuer of breed toostid & leid *in* wijn of *gra*nator*um*. ¶ Alle maner veynes *in* blood-letinge schulen be kutt endelo*n*gis / And whanne þou wolt lete a ma*n* blood *in* þe p*a*rtijs aboue þe necke, þan
8 þ*o*u muste binde þe veine,[1] til þe veyne arise þat þou wolt lete hi*m* blood on / And wha*n*ne þou wolt lete a man blood *in* his arme, þan þ*o*u muste binde his arme þe brede of foure fyngris aboue þe place; & þou muste [2]be wel war þat þou streyne not to faste, as manie
12 me*n* doon / Manie me*n* binden so faste a ma*n*nes arm, þ*a*t he mai not fele his arm / Veynes of a ma*n*nes feet & *in* his hondis, if þou wolt lete a man blood þ*er*on, þan þou muste sette he*m* *in* hoot wat*er*, & lete hem achaufe þ*er*on an hour; & þ*a*n þ*o*u muste bi*n*de
16 his foot ouþir his hond aboue þe ioinct wiþ a boond, & algate his foot or his ho*n*d mote be *in* þe watir as longe as he schal blede /

Give the patient a slice of bread and wine before the operation.

Before operating cause the vein to swell, by bandaging the limb,

[2 lf. 218]

and by a warm foot-bath.

Of kuttyngis and bledyngis //

¶ xvij°. c°.

SIccia is sett sumtyme for kuttynge & sumtime wiþoute kuttynge,
20 and sumtyme wiþ kuttinge.[3] Wiþout kutti*ng* as vpon a ma*n*nes wombe or wo*m*mans / ffor akynge þat comeþ of wijnd, & it is good for to waste wijnd / Also it is sett vpon þe wei of þe stoon þat falliþ adou*n* of þe reynes, & þan it schal be sett a litil bineþe þe
24 akynge þat it mowe drawe þe stoon lower & lower til it come to þe hole of þe bladdre / Also it is sett vndir a wo*m*mans tetis for to restreyne þe blood of þe nose & of þe maris / Also it is sett vpo*n* þe regio*n* [4]of þe wombe for fallinge of þe maris, þat is clepid dislo-
28 cacio*n* of þe maris: as if the maris falle adou*n* *in* þe riȝtside, þan it schal be sett *in* þe liftside / And if þe maris falle *in* þe liftside, þan it schal be sett *in* þe riȝtside / Also it is sett vndir a ma*n*nes eere for to d*ra*we out a greyne or a stoon of þe eere þat is falle yn /
32 Also it is sett vndir a mannes ers to drawe out þe emeroidis þat sittiþ hid fer yn / And it schal be sett *in* eu*er*i place þ*er*e þou wolt make a greet attraccio*un* / Also it is good for to be sett vpon þe bitynge of a wood hou*n*d, & vpon þe biti*ng* of a venymous beest.

The Sycia is used against flatulence,

to draw the stone from the kidneys towards the bladder,

to restrain flux of blood in case of falling of the womb,

[4 lf. 218, bk.]

to draw a stone out of the ear,

to draw out internal piles,

on the bite of a mad dog.

[1] Lat. opus collum stringi donec appereant.

[3] Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "Siccia aliquando ponitur sine incisione aliquando cum incisione." The printed editions omit this passage.

Cupping with previous scarification is used instead of blood-letting, if the patients are either very old or very young.

[2 lf. 219]

Scarify on the head, for eye-disease, skin-diseases, and tooth-ache.

Scarify between the shoulders for swooning.

It schal be sett þeron wiþ scarificacioun, also in causis þere þou lettist for to drawe blood for febilnes, or for elde, or in children; & hem after .iiij. ȝeer oold we moun garcie, wh*a*nne blood leting is forboden hem, & speciali wh*a*nne we purposen for to drawe awei mater 4 þat is vndir þe skyn / Also we moun garse a man bihinde in þe nol of þe heed — —[1] & for greuaunce of þe iȝen, & vpon þe .ij. corneris of þe heed for tinea & for pustules þat ben in þe heed vnder [2]a mannes chyn, for wennys of þe face & for vlcera þat ben in þe 8 mouþ & in þe lippis & for akynge of þe teeþ / Also if it be sett bytwixe þe .ij. schuldris for swownynge & for quakinge of þe herte, & for hem þat han to miche blood in þat place. þis maner letynge blood avoidid a mannes bodi miche & makiþ him feble[3] / 12

watir lechis

Bad leeches have big heads and live in foul water.

Also watir lechis[4] drawiþ more blood þan þese / In þis maner þou schalt knowe whiche ben gode watir lechis & whiche ben nouȝt. þei þat han blac colour medlid wiþ diuers colouris, & þei þat haueþ grete hedis & ben in foule stynkynge watris & han miche spume on 16 hem ben nouȝt / And in þis maner þou schalt knowe whiche ben gode: þei þat han reed wombis & litil reed rewis in þe rigge medlid wiþ grene, & wh*a*nne þei haueþ litil hedis & smale tailis, & wh*a*nne þei ben in good watir þat ben manie froggis yn. & or þou sette 20 hem vpon a man, þei schulen be kept al adai fastynge. & þan þou schalt ȝeue him a litil scharp blood for to ete, & þan þou schalt waische hem wiþ cleer water; & þan vpon þe [5]place þat he schal be

Good leeches have red wombs, small heads, live in pure water.

Keep them fasting before use.

[5 lf. 219, bk.]

[1] Some words are wanting. Lat.: propter grauedinem capitis.

[3] The sentence to which this statement refers is omitted. Lat.: "Que vero in poplitis plicatura valent ad egritudines renum, et matricis, testiculorum et omnium membrorum nutritiuorum ex sanguine."

[4] Rhasis, Continens, Lib. XV. Cap. 6, ed. Brix, 1486, fol. CC. 3. bk., gives an interesting description of different kinds of leeches: "Sanguisugarum vna est venenosa, que est nigra vehementer ad modum antimonii, habens caput magnum & squamas ad modum piscium quorundam & habens medium viride, etiam alia, super quam sunt pili, habet magnum caput et colorem diuersum ad modum iris, in cuius colore sunt linee ad modum lazuli: que quotiens mordet, inde accidet apostema cum sincopi, febre, ebrietate, et laxitudine articulorum; tamen bona ipsarum est, que assimilatur colori aque in qua erit viriditas, habent super se duas lineas ad modum arsenici: sed blonde rotonde & ad colores epatis apte, que veloces sunt ad attrahendum sanguinem subtilem & que assimilantur caude muris, habentes odorem horribilem & similes locuste parvule et tenui & habentes ventrem ruffum cum nigrore & dorsum viride, sunt meliores; sed peiores erunt in aqua mala valde stabili, in qua sunt ranule multe, tamen bone sunt in aqua bona & optima." This account is copied by Avicenna, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 22, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 62, bk. He differs in one point: "illas elige, que in aquis colliguntur, in quibus morantur rane. Neque attendas illud quod quidam dicunt, quod si sunt in aquis vbi morantur rane, sunt male."

sett', þe place schal be wel frotid tofore, þat' it' bicome reed, & þan sette þervpon a ventuse for to drawe þerto blood. & þan anoynte þe same place wiþ blood, & þan sette þervpon þe watir leche. & wha*n*ne he is ful & þou wolt' do hi*m* awei, blowe vpon þe place baurac, ouþer askis maad of' paper. & wha*n*ne he is falle awei, þan sette þervpon a ventuse aȝen to drawe more blood to þe plase. & þan sette þervpon anoþer watir leche, if' þere gaderiþ þerto miche mater. & þis maner is good for al maner blood þat' is rotid, for it' dr*aweth* it' out' /

Draw the blood to the place with cupping, before the leech is set on,

and use again cupping, when the leech has dropped.

Of cauteriu*m* or bre*n*nyng of large & streite.[1]

¶ xviij co

CAuterium is seid i*n* ij. maners, þat' is to seie large & streit'. & cauterium is seid p*r*opurli a brennynge wiþ gold or wiþ sum oþer instrument' þat' is hoot', ouþer wiþ watir or wiþ oile, ouþer wiþ medicyn caustica, ouþer wiþ herbis / And þer be*n* manie medicy*n*s for to make cauterijs, whiche þou schalt' fynde pleynlier i*n* þe antidotarie / A caut*er*ie is clepid streit',[2] wha*n*ne it' is ma*a*d wiþ an hoot' yren, wiþ gold, or wiþ siluir // Cauterijs þat' [3] ben ma*a*d wiþ medicyns þat' ha*n* ve*r*tu for to bre*n*ne / þer is seid a cauterie po[tentia]le wha*n*ne it' is not' hoot' i*n* feli*n*ge / & þat' caut*er*ie p*r*euailiþ wiþouten brenny*n*ge as he*r*bis / þer is anoþer mane*r* caut*er*ie : actual, for so miche as it' bre*n*neþ i*n* dede / Of' þis caut*er*ie auicen[4] spekiþ & seiþ, þat' it' is a medicyn, miche helpi*n*ge for to defende, þat mat*er* schal not' dep*ar*te i*n*to al þe lyme ; & it' wole comforte þe lyme, & bringe it' i*n*to good complexiou*n* aȝen, & it' wole dissolue mat*er* þat' is corrupt', & it' wole streyne flux of' blood. & auicen seiþ, þat' a cauterie is oon of' þe beste pointis of' cirurgie / for þi*n*gis þat' mowe not' be fulfillid in long' tyme, wiþ caut*er*ie þei be*n* fulfillid / As it' is seid phisicians leueþ þis craft' to cirurgians. & þe*r*fore it' is greet' wondir if' þer be ony good cirurgian fou*n*de, for þei be*n* alle lewid me*n*. & if' a lewid ma*n* schal worche wi*th* cauterijs, þan he knowiþ not' þe difference bitwixe a caut*er*ie þat' is clepid actuel & potencial. & also þei knowe not' i*n* wha*t*' place of' a ma*n*nes bodi þei schule*n* make he*m*. & þis is so rep*r*eued þat' it' is almoost' out' [5] of' vss / Also su*m*me*n* make*n* caut*er*ijs i*n* vnclene bodies þat' ben ful replet' of

A Cautery is any substance used for burning.

In a narrower sense it is the hot iron, gold or silver.

[3 lf. 220]

A caustic medicine is called potential cautery.

The actual cautery is really burning.

The effects of cauterization.

Auice*n* praises the cautery.

The physicians leave its use in the hands of surgeons, who are all unlearned, and cannot distinguish the Caut*er*iu*m* actual*e* [5 lf. 220, bk.] and Caut*er*iu*m* potenciale.

[1] The translator misunderstood the meaning of the Latin, "large et stricte," in the following passage : Cauterium dicitur duobus modis, large & stricte. [2] See the preceding note.

[4] Lanfranc mentions Avicenna, who has a short chapter about cauterization, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 29 ; yet he chiefly follows Gulielmus de Salic., Lib. V., Cap. I., but with many additions and alterations.

Some cauterize a patient, who is full of bad humours, wherof a cancer may ensue.

yuele humours, & þan cautˢrijs wolˢn do litil pˢrofit to passiouˢns
þatˢ beˢn forseid, butˢ þˢer wole falle þˢerto so manie humouˢris, & make
þe place ofˢ þe cautˢerie to swelle, & liȝtly engendre a cancˢre. & þan
meˢn þatˢ beˢn vnkuˢnnynge ben agastˢ herofˢ & ben notˢ hardi for to 4
make no mo cautˢerijs. & ifˢ þe paˢtient hadde be purgid ofˢ grete

Some use **Cantarides.**

humours tofore, þaˢn itˢ wolde notˢ haue fare so. ¶ And suˢmmen
vseˢn cantarides for to make cautˢerijs þˢerwiþ, & leggen itˢ vpon meˢn
þatˢ haˢn hote complexiouˢn & drie; & þis is contˢrariouˢs & falliþ 8
greetˢ agreuauˢnce þˢerofˢ, & þaˢn þei seien þatˢ cautˢerijs ne ben nouȝtˢ

Auicˢen says, the cautery is the best consuming medicine, if properly applied, and if there is not too much matter.

worþ / Butˢ auicen seiþ, þatˢ a cautˢerie is good tofore alle medicyns
for to waaste & consume matˢer / if þe cautˢerie be settˢ iˢn place þˢere
itˢ schulde be, butˢ ifˢ the matˢer be so miche þatˢ þe cautˢerie mai notˢ 12
coˢnsume itˢ, as þou miȝtˢ se an ensample herofˢ: þatˢ fier ouˢercomeþ
alle þiˢngis / butˢ ifˢ þou doistˢ a litil fier amongˢ miche wetˢ wode, þˢer
wole come smoke þˢerofˢ. & the fier [1]mai notˢ ouˢercome to waaste þe

[1 lf. 221]

As a little fire has no effect on a large quantity of wet wood, so the cautery is inefficient, if the patient is too full of humours.

wode, for watˢer þatˢ is iˢn þe wode is more þan þe fier / In þe same 16
maner itˢ fariþ ofˢ a cautˢerie þatˢ is iˢn a maˢnnes bodi, ifˢ he be ful ofˢ
humouris, þanne þe cautˢerie mai notˢ worche. & þerfor þou schaltˢ
purge hiˢm wiþ laxatiuis tofore þe cauterie as itˢ is aforseid / Also
þou schaltˢ make no cauterijs iˢn a man þatˢ is ful ofˢ gode humours 20
as ofˢ blood, for þan oonli blood-letyngˢ suffisiþ / butˢ ifˢ þe paˢtient
be strongˢ & þe matˢer on hiˢm be coold & moistˢ, þan a cauterie is

The patient shall not bear the cautery longer than three months.

good for to driue awei þe matˢer. & a man schal notˢ bere a cauterie,
butˢ .ij. moneþis ouˢþˢer .iij. atˢ þe mooste. ¶ Now I wole telle þee 24
a good rule / Ifˢ þou fyndistˢ iˢn a maˢnnes body a lyme iˢn wei of cor-
rupciouˢn[2]: as herisipula, or herpes estiomenˢus, ouˢþˢer formica, or iˢn
yuel disposiˢciouˢn ofˢ a wouˢnde þatˢ bigyˢnneþ to encancre,[3] & for al
oˢþˢer corrupˢciouˢn, þaˢn sette a cautˢerie iˢn þe nexte welle to þe place, 28

Particulars about cauteries, [4 lf. 221, bk.] and the shape of the instruments:

for þe cauterie wole defende þe place fro corrupciouˢn. ¶ Now speke
we ofˢ paˢrticlis ofˢ cauterijs þatˢ falliþ iˢn diuˢers placis ofˢ a mannes
bodi, & wiþ diuˢers instrumˢentis þei schuleˢn [4]be maˢad, whiche þou
schaltˢ se portraied[5] tofore þˢe, & her signis forþwiþ. ¶ Þe .i. instru- 32

1. **Nodulum**, an iron plate with a hole,

mˢentˢ þatˢ is comouˢn & moostˢ iˢn vss, is clepid **nodulum**,[6] & is an
instrumˢentˢ maˢad iˢn þˢis maˢner / Take a brood plate ofˢ iren & make
þˢeron an hole, & leie þatˢ plate þˢere þou woltˢ make þi cauterie. &

through which the red-hot iron is applied.

þan þou muste haue an iren maˢad longˢ & smal & maˢad hootˢ, & 36
putte itˢ iˢn þatˢ hole ofˢ þe plate / þis plate wole saue þe place þatˢ þe

[2] Lat.: si membrum invenis in via corruptionis.
[3] *encancre*, med. Lat. incancrire; Dufr., Ital. incancherare.
[5] The figures are omitted. [6] Lat. anodulum, adnodulum.

cauterie schal be nomore but as þou wolt / & þat iren þat þou schalt make þi cauterie þerwiþ, schal haue a litil round knap tofore. & þat iren schal be maad hoot til it bicome reed / & þerwiþ þou
4 schalt make þi cauterie, & wh*an*ne þou doist awei þin iren, þere wole be vlcus. & þan þou schalt leie þeron butter or oold grese, or grese stampid wiþ caul-leues, & þat is þe best of alle, & leie it þerto, til þe cruste falle awei þat þe hoot iren made. & þan þou
8 schalt do þerto a litil pelot maad of lynnen cloop round & hard. & þat pelot schal be anoyntid wiþ oile, & vpon þe place leie a caul-leef, or an yue-leef, or a vine-leef, & in þis [1] maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. ¶ The .ij. cauterie is clepid **round**, &
12 haþ no knap at þe ende, but it is schape long, & wh*an*ne þou makist þi cauterie, þou muste be war þat þou touche no nerues ne veynes. & þis instrument schal be maad in þis maner, þat it make a cauterie in boþe endis, after þat þou desirist, greet or smal. ¶ The
16 .iij cauterie is clepid **punctuale**, & is ful necessarie wh*an*ne þou wolt make a streit cauterie. & is maad in þis maner. ¶ The .iiij. is clepid radiale, & is smal & scharp, & is good for children, & is maad in þis maner[2] / ¶ The .v. cauterie is maad in þis maner, & is swiþe
20 comoun & is clepid **calcellare.**[3] & þis wole make a long brennyng as ouerþwert þe heed, & wh*an*ne þou wolt make vlcera long þat ben rounde, þan þou schalt worche wiþ þis cauterie. ¶ The .vj. is clepid **subtile**, & is good for festris þat sittiþ in þe corner of a mannes iȝe,
24 & it is good for yuel fleisch þat growiþ in a mannes iȝe, & is maad in þis maner / þis sotille [4] cauterie schal be maad hoot & putt in a canel in þis maner // The .vj.[5] is clepid dactilare, for it is schape as it were þe stoon of a date. & herwiþ þou schalt make cauterijs in þe
28 haunche. & þere schal be an instrument schape as a table, & schal be leid to þe haunche in þis maner, & haþ .vj. arisyngis þeron as haþ a stoon of a date.[6] & oon þerof is in þe myddil, & .ij. aboue, & .j. bineþe, & oon in boþe sidis in þis maner / Wh*an*ne þis instrument
32 is hoot, it schal be putt vpon a mannes haunche, & a table bitwixe maad of iren. & þis table schal be coold, & þer schulen be .vj. holis

After this operation an ulcer is left, on which cabbage-leaves are applied.

[1 lf. 222]

2. The round cautery can be used at both ends.

3. punctuale.

Radiale is used for children.

4. Calcellare makes long burns.

5. Subtile, used for a fistula in the corner of the eye.

[4 lf. 222, bk.]

6. Dactilare, used to cauterize the haunch, is an iron instrument of two parts, one a table with five holes, the other with five eminences fitting into the holes.

[2] The description of the Cauterium radiale is an insertion of the translator. Lat.: "tertium cauterium punctuale, seu radiale, & est necessarium ubi valde strictum uolueris facere cauterium, & est sic factum." Gulielm. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 45, bk.: "*þe fifþe is clepyd cauterium minutum, or radiale or viduale þat is a comoun instrument to children.*"

[3] Add. 26106, fol. 98, bk.: "cutellare," printed ed. "cultellare."

[5] The translator, forgetting that he counted the "radiale" as a separate cautery, follows again the numbers of the original.

[6] Lat.: et habet v. eminentias sicut ossa dactilorum factas.

þeron, schape after þe cauterie þat haþ .vj. arisingis out as it is aforseid. And þou schalt make .v. cauterijs vpon a mannes haunche, & .ij. þerof schulen be aboue þe ioynct, & .ij. bi þe sidis, & oon vpon þe ioynct, & .j. tofore þe ioynct. ¶ Þe vij. is clepid triangulare, & þerwiþ þer mai be maad .iij. at oonys. & þis cauterie is good for þe haunche also, & is maad in þis maner / ¶ The .viij. cauterie is clepid actuale,[1] for sumtyme it is maad wiþ a nedle, & it is good [2]for to make cauterijs þerwiþ in þe browis, & is maad sutil as a nedele. ¶ The .ix. cauterie is clepid linguale, & it is schape as it were a tunge of a litil brid in þis maner. & it is good for to make cauterijs vpon a mannes browis / ¶ The .x. cauterie is clepid ceton,[3] & is maad triangulis holowid.[4] & in þe hole þerof þere may entre a scharp instrument þat haþ a fenestre[5] as it were a nedele, & it schal be holde with coold tenaclis, also þe place þat þou wolt make þi cauterie on. Þou schalt take vp þe skyn wiþ tenaclis, & putt in þin hoot iren þorugh þe hole of þe tenaclis, & brenne þe skyn. Þan þou schalt make a corde of wollen ȝerne & wete it in blood, & drawe it þorugh þe holis, & þan þou schalt knytte þe .ij. endis togidere, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. Þis is a comoun cauterie, & þis cauterie mai be maad in þe mouþ of þe stomac, & vpon þe lyuere & þe splene, & vpon þe ballocke-leþeris / Now þou knowist alle þin instrumentis, for to make cauterijs with, & her names / Now telle we in what maner & in what place þou schalt make hem / In oold heed-akynge, [6]whanne purgacioun & laxatiuis & gargarismis & snesyngis[7] & clisterijs & oþere maner of avoidynge, & wiþ enplastris & wiþ anoyntyng, whanne þe akynge of a mannes heed wole not go awei wiþ alle þese, ne þe epilencie,[8] ne noon passioun þat comeþ of þe heed, ne passioun of þe iȝen, & passioun of þe eeren, & of þe noseþrillis, & oold couȝe, & flux of þe wombe þat comeþ of þe reume. ¶ For alle þese passioun þou schalt make cauterie þat is clepid cultellare in þe welle of þe heed[9]

7. Triangulare.

8. Actuale is like a needle, and [2 lf. 223] used for the eye-brows.

linguale.

Ceton.

The skin is lifted up with pincers, a hole is burnt through, and some threads of wool put in.

[6 lf. 223, bk.] When all other medicines are inefficient to remove a chronic headache and other diseases arising from the head,

use the Cauterium Cultellare.

[1] *actuale*, a mistake for *acuale*.

[3] *ceton*, med. Lat. seto, sedo; Fr. séton; Ital. settone, "seton." Add. 26,106, and the printed ed. read: dicitur ad sectionem.

[4] Lat.: fit cum tenaculis perforatis.

[5] *fenestre*, Lat. fenestra; "la fenestre de la cannule," Paré; see *Littré Dict.*

[7] *snesyngis*, Lat. sternutationes.

[8] *epilencie*, O.Fr. epilence. Plinius: epilenticus. See Dufr. Matth. Sylv.: Epilensia .i. morbus caducus.

[9] Lat. in capitis fontinella. Phillips: "Fontanella, or Fonticulus, a little Well, or Spring: In Surgery, an Issue, or little Ulcer, made in sound parts of the Body, to let out bad Humours, and to Cure, or prevent Diseases. In

bihinde. & first schaue awei þe heeris, þere þou wolt make þi cauterie as it is aforseid with an hoot iren, & herof þou schalt be ware þat þou lete not þat iren be þere to longe, but þou schalt hastili make it, & hastily do awei þe iren, & þan þou schalt do awei þe cruste þerof wiþ butter, or wiþ oold grese, or wiþ leeues of caul, as it is aforseid. ¶ Þis cauterie schal be holde open wiþ litil pelottis as it is forseid as longe as þou wolt, til þe patient be hool / But or þou make þi cauterie, þou muste be wel ware, as it is aforseid, þat þin iren lie not to longe, [1] but hastili take it awei, for if it were þere longe his brayn myȝte be harmed þerbi. ¶ Wiþ þis cauterie I helide a womman þat hadde passiouns in hir heed manie diuers, & I miȝte not make hir hool with no purgaciouns, ne wiþ noon anoyntingis, & wiþ þis cauterie I made hir al hool. ¶ Also þou muste make a round cauterie & touche oonly þe skyn þerwiþ, & do þerto seto. Þis cauterie is good for passiouns of þe iȝen, & for epilenciam, & for opere sijknessis of þe heed; but þis cauterie is not so good as þat oper tofore. ¶ Also þou miȝt make a cauterie in a mannes necke bytwixe þe boonys & þe skyn aboueforþ[2]; þis cauterie is good for þe spasme. ¶ Also whanne a man is woundid in þe heed, þis cauterie is good for drede of þe spasme; for herwiþ þe mater schal be consumed, þat nerues ben redi for to take.[3] ¶ Also in þe welle vnder þe eeris & bihinde þe eeris þou schalt make cauterijs for passiouns of iȝen and for akynge of þe teeþ. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is vpon a mannes browis, þou schalt do awei wiþ a cauterie þat is clepid lingual, [4] schape as it were a tunge of a brid. & þou schalt make þerwiþ cauterijs vpon his browis, but þou muste be war þat þou touche not þe natural substaunce of þe browis. & þou schalt make cauterijs þervpon with cauterium punctuale, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch þat is in þe corner of a mannes iȝe. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is in a mannes nose, it mai be remeued awei wiþ cauterium acutum ouþer punctuale, for to touche þerwiþ þe fleisch a litil & a litil til al þe superfluite be take awei. & if þis superfluite be fast þeron & be fer yn, þan þou muste vse a sutil cauterie, & putte it in þe nose-þril

The iron must not be too long on the head.

[1 lf. 224]

The round cautery is good for passiouns of þe iȝen.

A cautery applied on the neck is good for spasm.

The cauterium linguale [4 lf. 224, bk.] is used to remove a growth on the eyebrows.

A growth in the nose is removed with the Cauterium acutum.

Anatomy, the mould or root of the Nose." It was further a name for the place where these ulcers were produced, especially for a place between the sutures of the skull. Compare *Sowd. of Babyl.* 2951: [*he smote hir*] *ouer the founte throughoute the brayn.*

[2] Lat.: cutem superficialiter tangendo.

[3] Lat.: nam materia per hoc consumitur, per quam neruorum inbibitio expectatur.

The round cautery is applied beneath the chin for skin-disease.

A cautery applied on the arms is used against lethargy.

A cautery on the fingers is used for chiragra.

Cauteries are used for asthma,

empyema,

for diseases of the rigbone,

the stomach,

the liver, and the spleen,

they are best made with a Seton.

þoruȝ þe canel, þat þe hete ne mowe not harme þe substaunce of þe nose, but oonly brenne þe superfluite of þe fleisch. ¶ Also þou schalt make a round cauterie vndir a mannes chyn. & þis cauterie is good for wennys þat ben in þe skyn of his face, & for þe place,[1] 4
& for þe palet, & for sijknes in a mannes mouþ, & in þe gomys, &
in þe teeþ. ¶ Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in boþe a mannes
armys, wiþoutforþ þe arme, in þe welle þat is vpon þe grete braun a
litil [2]binepe þe schuldre. & þis cauterie is good for sijknes þat ben 8
in þe partie bihinde of a mannes brayn as for þe litarge,[3] & also it
purgiþ wel þe nerues of þe necke / Also þou miȝt make anoþer in þe
welle vndir þe grete braun, and is good for þe brayn wiþinneforþ as
for scotomia & vertigine, & for water þat falliþ adoun fro a mannes 12
heed to hise iȝen, & it is good for al passiouns of a mannes iȝen /
Also þou schalt make a cauterie cultellaria[4] bitwene a mannes
fyngris / And þese cauterijs ben gode for passiouns ciragra / Also
þou schalt make cauterijs in þe brest wiþ a round cauterie, and is 16
good for asma[5] / Also þou miȝt make a cauterie toward þe forke of
þe brest aboue for disma[6] / Also þou miȝt sumtyme make cauterijs
in þe brest, þat ben clepid cultellaria, bitwixe þe ribbis, & þese
cauterijs been good for empima,[7] *id est* apostyme wiþinne / Also þou 20
miȝt make cauterijs punctualia in þe rigboon for gret akinge þat a
man haþ in þat place / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs wiþ a round
instrument vpon þe regioun of þe stomak, for long febilnes þat a
[8]lf. 225, bk.] man haþ had in his stomak / Also þou miȝt [8]make cauterijs vnder 24
þe nauele & vppon þe lyuere & vpon þe splene, ffor colicam passi-
onem & for þe sijknes of þe lyuere & vpon þe splene & for dropesie.
And alle þese cauterijs wolen be maad best wiþ seton / Also þou
miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in þe haunchis as it is aforseid / Also þou 28

[1] *place* for *plage?* Lat.: saphati et pustulas.

[3] *litarge*, lethargy. Compare *Leechd.* I., p. 200: "*wiþ þa adle ðe man litargum hateð, þat ys on ure geþeode ofergytulnys cweden.*"

[4] Lat.: "Fiunt cauteria cutellaria superficialia inter digitum et digitum in cyragra. De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 29, Trevisa, Add. 27,944. fol. 87 *a*: "*Difficulte & hardnesse of breþinge hat asma & comeþ of double cause of drynes þat streyneþ þe lungen.*"

[5] *asma*, med. Lat. asma, ἄσθμα.

[6] *disma*, Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "propter disimiam." Dufr., "dyspnia, δύσπνοια." *Simon. Barth.*, p. 18: "Disma est species asmatis, sed disma fit ex siccitate, asma ex humiditate."

[7] *empima*, Lat. empimia. *Simon. Barth.*, p. 19: "Empima, i. sputum saniosum ex pulmonis infeccione proveniens." De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 30, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 *a*: "*empima is a passioun, whan me spetiþ quittir.*"

mi3t make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe knee, for þe akynge of þe knees & of þe ballokis & of þe maris. Also þou mi3t make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe kne, wiþoutforþ for remedie of al þe bodi, for it avoideþ
4 wel alle partijs of a mannes bodi / & I haue seen manie men þat han maad cauterijs in þat place, or his bodi were purgid, & humouris fel so myche þerto þat his leggis & his hipis to-swollen al greet. & if he hadde be purgid tofore, he schulde not haue fare
8 so. & aboue þe ancle ben maad cauterijs for sijknes of þe ballokis. & also it is good for wommen / Also bitwixe þe toos ben maad cauterijs for þe potagre[1] / Also if þou purgist a man or a womman wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, & þan makist a cauterie as it is aforseid.
12 & if þe passioun go not awei at þis oon doinge, þan þou schalt neuere þe lattere [not][2] be in dispeir of cauterijs,[3] but þou schalt bigynne to purge [4]him a3en & make him a cauterie a3en. & if it so be þat he be miche feblid herwiþ, þan þou schalt restore a3en wiþ
16 gode metis & drinkis þat engendriþ good humours. & whanne he is restorid a3en, þan þou schalt bigynne & purge him a3en, & þan make hise cauterijs a3en, & in þis maner þou schalt worche wiþ þi cauterijs. ¶ ffor manie men makiþ oon cauterie or .ij, & if þei seen
20 þat it profitiþ not, þan þei leeueþ of & worchiþ nomore. & manie men contynuede þeron til þe pacient be brou3t al doun & li3tli deed / & in þis maner ne schulde not a leche worche / ffor G. seiþ : it is a feble leche, þat can not helpe þat is able to be holpen. &
24 defaute herof is þis : þat manie lechis 3eueþ medicyns, & ne makiþ no space to bringe þe patient into good staat a3en[5] / Alle þese rulis þat G. seiþ þou schalt attende in þis maner : if þe patient be maad feble wiþ medicyns laxatiuis & wiþ cauterijs, þan þou cesse of þi
28 medicyns & 3eue him comfortatif metis & drinkis for to releue him a3en, & þan þou mi3t worche wiþ þi medicyns a3en. & þus þou mi3t do perfitly þe cure / And heron manie men erriþ þat ben holden ful kunnyng / [6]& þerfore I haue sett it in þis place þat it mowe be
32 ensaumple to þee / Also þou schalt make a cauterie vpon rotid fleisch, til þou haue take awei al þe corrupcioun þerof. & in þis caas we mowen vse hoot feruent oile for to springe vpon þe corrupcioun,

Cauteries on the knee are used for the genital organs of men and women.

The patient must be purged before being cauterized.

If the disease is not cured at once,

[4 lf. 226]

repeat the purging and cauterizing.

Many surgeons use the cauteries wrongly.

Galien. Allow the medicine time to work.

Galien.

[6 lf. 226, bk.]

Cauterize corrupt flesh with hot oil.

[1] *potagre*, Lat. podagra. *Hamp.* 2984 : "*for sleuthe als þe potagre and þe gout.*" De propr. rer., Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 96, bk. : "*Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swellinge & sore ache, and whanne hit is in þe fyngres hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra.*"

[2] *not*, omitted. Lat. : nec propter hoc desperes.

[3] See p. 284, note 7.

[5] Add. 26,106, fol. 93 : si plus dant, non interponunt spacium nutriendi.

so þat it ne touche noon hool[1] place, & þis maner is ful good to take awei corrupcioun of fleisch, & it is bettir þan medicina caustica / Wh*a*nne þou wolt worche w*ith* medicyns caustica, þan do as it schal be seid i*n* þe antidotarie of þis book / 4

Of þe cure of brennyng wiþ fier ouþ*er* w*ith* hoot watir or w*ith* oile.

¶ xix°. c° / Burns and scalds are treated with cold medicines, before blisters are formed,

A Mannes lymes be*n* brent wiþ fier, watir, ouþir wiþ oile / In þis caas þis is þe firste entencioun: or þe place bigy*n*ne to 8
bladdre,[2] þou muste haue medicyns þat ben colde / And if it so be
þat þe place be vlceratus, & þou were not at þe firste bigy*n*nyng,
or if þe bre*n*ny*ng* be so miche þat þou miȝt not defende, þat
with styptics in case of ulceration. vlcera ne come not þe*r*on, & þan þou must haue medicy*n*s þat ben 12
lasse coold, & medicyns þat be*n* clepid stiptica not fretynge / þese
[3 lf. 227] Simple medicines applied in the first case. be*n* sy*m*ple medicy*n*s [3]*in* þe firste caas / Take marbil stoon & grinde*n*
smal, & alle þe sandalis,[4] & solatru*m*, & watir of ro*sis*, & watir of
cucurbita, & wat*er* of v*ir*ga pastoris, & of alle þese þi*n*gis make 16
a þi*n*g for to leie þe*r*on / Also oile of ro*sis*, & þe ȝelke of an ey
ben good þ*er*fore / Also bole armoniac temp*er*id wiþ vinegre is
good þ*er*fore. And it muste ofte be remeued & ofte leid to aȝen,
for þe cooldues of ofte remeuyng schal defende it fro bladdri*n*g / 20
Medicines applied in the second case. Naturel medicyns þat ben gode i*n* þe secunde caas: / But vng*uen-*
*tu*m de calx maad i*n* þis maner / ℞, calcis viue bene cocte þat ben
maad of an hard stoon, and waische it wiþ coold watir til it lete al
℞ his scharpnes, & þan wiþ oile of rosis & wex make an oynemen*t* / 24
Also vng*uentu*m albu*m* Rasis þat is maad i*n* þe antidotarie is good
þ*er*fore / I nyle for þis cure sette no mo medycyns. Þoruȝ þe grace
of god almiȝty þe þridde tretis is fulfillid //

Here endiþ þe þridde book, and bigynneþ þe fourþe 28
book // Of brekyng of boonis,[5] & sumtyme of
brusyng of boonys, and a general techyng for
alle //[6]

[1] MS. *hoot*, Lat.: quod loca sana ulterius non attingat.
[2] *bladdre*, vesicari. [4] Lat. omnes sandali. [5] MS. *bookis*.
[6] Lat. heading: "Explicit tractatus tertius huis libri. Incipit quartus, qui est de algebra, et continet duas summas. Summa prima tractatus quarti septem continet capitula. Capitulum primum summæ primæ tractatus quarti, de fractura ossium sermo generalis." The translator has kept the heading of the first chapter, but left out the chapter itself. His first chapter,

A Mannes nose is sumtyme to-broken,[2] & sumtyme p*r*essid adoun. & if' he be hastili holpen his nose mai be restorid aȝen, & if' it' be longe or he haue ony help, þanne he schal be maymed for eu*er*more[3] / If' þou comest' at' þe firste bigy*n*nyng' þou schalt' do i*n* þis maner / putte yn þe fingir of' þe lifthand anoon to þe brekyng', þi leeste fyngir or what' fyngir wole best' yn, & wiþ þi riȝthond p*r*esse vpon þe brekyng', & arere vpward wiþ þi fyngir w*ithin*neforþ, & p*r*esse wiþ þi*n* hond wiþoutforþ & bringe it' as it' schulde be. Þan make a strong' tent' & so longe þat' he mowe passe aboue þe brekyng', & þan þis tent' schal be diȝt' wiþ a litil wex hoot' & a litil sotil poudre of' mastik & sand*al*, & schape þ*er*of' i*n* þe maner of' a candel, & þan putte it' i*n*to his nose, wiþoutforþ leie of' consolidatiuis þat' schule*n* be seid i*n* þe antidotarie, & abouteforþ þou schalt' leie a defensif', & þ*o*u schalt' binde his nose wiþ boondis,[4] & leie sutil ly*n*nen clooþ i*n* boþe sidis of' his nose as [5]it' is aforseid i*n* þe chapit*er* of' wou*n*dis i*n* a ma*n*nes face / If' þou miȝt' not' putte yn þi fyngir i*n* his noseþrel, þan make a tent' of' tre & hile it' wiþ ly*n*nen clooþ þat' it' be oold & neissche, & þan anointe þis tent' wiþ oile of' rosis, & putte þis i*n* his noseþrel i*n* stide of' þi fyngir, & þ*er*wiþ arere vp his nose wiþi*n*neforþ,[6] & wiþ þi*n* hond wiþoutforþ make his nose euene til þe boon be brouȝt' i*n* his p*r*opre place þat' is to-broke. ¶ Of' his dietyng', & blood-letyng', & ventusis, & clisterijs, ouþ*er* suppositorijs, do as þou seest þat' it' is to do, & as it' is aforseid.

[1 lf. 227, bk.]

¶ i°. c°/ A broken nose, unless soon re-adjusted, remains de-formed.

Restore the nose by manipulation.

Plug the nos-trils with a strong tent.

[5 lf. 228]

Take care of the general treatment.

¶ If' a manes cheke-boo*n*[7] i*n* þe liftside be to-broke, þan putte

If the cheek-bone is broken,

which has no heading, is Lanfranc's second one: Capitulum secundum summe prime de fractura ossium faciei.

[2] Compare: *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. xci., ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 443, and *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. v., Tract 3, Cap. 3, ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 365 *b*.

[3] Gul. de Sal., Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*Thow schalt wite* þat *þe boon of þe nose is oþerwhile depressyd & oþerwhile broken, & ȝif soþely it be depressyd, þat is to sey born down or broken withoute wounde, anoon in þe firste visitacion, be þe seknesse restoryd, whil it is newe, for ȝif it were hard, ouþer þer schal dwelle euermore fnattydnesse or euel schapp.*" *fnattydness*, translates med. Lat. simitas σιμότης, snubbiness. [4] MS. *broondis*.

[6] Gul. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*And ȝif þou may not do* þat *wiþ þi fynger, putte in þe hole of þe nose on þe hurt syde a softe rownd sticke maad euene & semely, & anoynted with oyle of rosis . . . and þou maist also lappe þilke sticke in a clene lynen clout & anoynte þe clout wiþ þe same oile, & þanne þe sticke schal be þe more tretable.*"

[7] *Avic.* Lib. IV., Fen. v. Tr. 3, Cap. 2, ibid.: "Si frangitur mandibula dextra, tunc intromitte indicem, et medium manus sinistre in os infirmi, et cet." Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 2. Sl. 277. fol. 34 *b*: "*ȝif soþely þe boon of þe vppere chawel or of þe neþere were maad*[a] *withoute wounde, putte þi ryȝt hond in þe mouþ of þe seeke.*"

[a] Sl. 6. fol. 115 *b*, *broken*.

re-adjust it by manipulation, and hold it in position by tying the teeth together,

yn þi strongist fyngris of þi lifthond tweyne & bringe þe boon *in*to his *pro*pre place aȝen, & *pre*sse wiþ þi riȝthond wiþoutforþ ; & if þe cheke-boon be to-broke *in* þe riȝtside, þanne putte yn .ij. fyngris of þi riȝthond, and bringe þe boon to his *pro*pre place aȝen, as it is aforseid. & wha*n*ne þe boon is brouȝt as it schulde be, þ*at* þou miȝt knowe if his teeþ sittiþ euene as þei schulde do, & þan binde hise teeþ wiþ a strong þreed wexid [1] & bounden bitwixe his teeþ, & leie

[1 lf. 228, bk.]

and by applying a bandage.

þ*er*vpon oon of þe consolidatiuis & binde hi*m* *in* þe same maner, þ*at* þe boond be maad fast bihindeforþ in his necke. & þan it schal be turned aȝ*en* to his forheed, & þou schalt binde hi*m* wiþ þi boond manyfoold, þ*at* þe boon þ*at* is to-broke mowe be holde *in* his *pro*pre place / And þe pa*tient* schal ete no metis but þingis þ*at* he may soupe / For if he chewide, it wolde make þe boon falle out of his place aȝen, & *in* .xx. daies þis boon mai be restorid aȝen //

The patient shall only take meat fit to be sipped.

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest // [2]

¶ ij°. co. The upper jaw-bone is immovable, for three reasons.

THe cheke-boon aboue meueþ not, & þ*at* is for .iij. causis : oon is þat þe cheke-boon bineþe is more liȝt & more able þ*er*fore, þe .ij. cause is þis : þe cheke-boon is niȝ noble lymes, & if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þe noble lymes miȝten be enpeirid þ*er*bi. þe .iij. cause is þis : if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þ*er*e nolde be noon strong co*n*iunccio*un* bitwene he*m* / þ*er*fore þe cheke-boon aboue is fast maad to þe boonys of þe heed, as it is aforseid *in* anothomia*m*.

[3 lf. 229]

The lower jaw-bone consists of 2 bones; joins with the upper jaw-bone by ligaments.

¶ The cheke-boon bineþe is maad of .ij. boonys ioyned [3] togid*er*e *in* þe chyn. & þis boon is m*aa*d fast w*ith* þe cheke-boon aboue wiþ ligaturis þat ben stronge & recching & wiþ lacertis, & make*th* þe cheke-boon meue wha*n*ne a man wole, for su*mm*e þ*er*of comeþ adou*n* fro þe boonys of þe heed, & ben ioyned wiþ p*ar*tijs of nerues of þe heed, & of nuche, & closiþ togidere þe cheke-boon. [Summe comeþ [4]] bineþe aforȝens þe brest, and ben medlid wiþ nerues of nuche & openeþ þe cheke-boon, & su*mm*e comeþ fro þe sidis, &

Nerves convey the motor phenomena from the brain and spine.

[2] Lanfranc divides the fourth book into two "doctrines," the one dealing with fractures, the other with dislocations. The scribe of the present translation omits this division and the first chapter of each doctrine. He also puts the chapter on dislocation of the jaw-bone, which was originally the 2nd chapter of the 2nd doctrine immediately after the chapter on fracture of the jaw-bone, still retaining the heading of the 3rd chapter of the first doctrine : "*ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest.*" The two tables of contents show the same order as the original.

[4] *Summe comeþ*, wanting. Lat. Add. 26106, fol. 96 bk. : "alii veniunt ab inferius versus pectus." The prints differ.

meueþ þe cheke-boon rou*n*d, wha*n*ne a ma*n* couwid.[1] & þis cheke-boon bineþe mai be brouȝt' of' þe ioynct' fro þe cheke-boon aboue i*n* .ij. maners: ouþ*er* it' goiþ of' þe ioy*n*ct' bihindeward, & þan þe teeþ
4 þat' ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ wiþi*n*ne þe teeþ of' þe cheke-boon aboue. & þan he may not' opene his mouþ, & it' goiþ out' of þe ioy*n*ct' forward, & þan þe teeþ þat' be*n* i*n* þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ forþ*er*e out' þan þe teeþ aboue. & he mai not close his mouþ
8 togidere[2] / These signys ben certeyn wha*n*ne þe boon is out' of' his ioynct' / It' is greet' nede for to helpe a man hastily i*n* þis caas; for if' þe [3]cheke-boon be out' of' ioincte longe, þ*er*e ben manie nerues & lacertis & arterijs & veines aboute þat' place, & for þis cause it'
12 wexiþ hard anoon. & þis place wole soone take enpostym for divers humours þat' wolen falle þ*er*to. & if' þ*er* falle an enpostym i*n* þis place, þan, for þe brayn is so niȝ, þ*er* comeþ a frenesie þ*er*of' & ofte tyme dieþ / & þ*er*fore if' he be hastili holpen, þe boon wole
16 liȝtly i*n*to þe ioinct' aȝen. & þ*er*fore þat' ioinct' haþ liȝt' meuynge / ffor eueri ioinct' þat' haþ hard meuynge, & he be out' of' þe ioinct', it' wole be hard for to bringe yn aȝen / If' it' so be þat' þe cheke-boo*n* be out' of' ioi*n*nct' hindeward, þan þou schalt' take þe boon
20 first' wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & lete a man holde his heed & drawe þe boon forþward.[4] & if' it' so be þat' his mouþ be closid togid*er*e, þan þou schalt' opene his mouþ wiþ þi*n* hond or w*ith* su*m* oþ*er* instrument', & þan take faste þe boon & drawe it' to his place aȝen. & i*n*
24 þis man*er* þou schalt' knowe wha*n*ne it' is i*n* his pr*o*pre place aȝen, if' his teeþ sitten euene, & if' he may opene his mouþ / ¶ If þou miȝt' not' bringe þe boon to his pr*o*pre place i*n* þis maner, þan þou muste take a strong' boond, & sette it' vndir his chyn, þ*er*e þou
28 [5]settist' þi fyngris, & anoþ*er* ma*n* mote drawe þe boond strongly & euene, & wiþ a wagge þou muste opene his mouþ. In þis maner

The dislocation of the lower jaw is either backwards

or forwards.

Help must come soon,

[3 lf. 229, bk.]

or the place gets indurated,

and an apostema may be formed.

If the dislocation is backwards, draw the bone forwards,

If necessary by means of a strong bandage.

[5 lf. 230]

[1] Lat.: in masticando.

[2] Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 18. Sl. 277, fol. 42 *b*: "*The tokenes of þe disloeation inward ben þat þe mouþ leueþ opene, & þat þe teþ of þe neþere ehawel goon tofore þe teþ of þe vppere ehawl. ¶ The tokenes of þe disloeaeion owtward ben þat þe mouth is sehut & in no manere may be openyd, & þe seeke may not chewe & þe teþ drawe vp toward þe palett, & þer schewiþ in þe vttere party in þe place of þe dislocaeion an opene outberynge out of mesure, & þe speehe is bynomen hym.*"

[4] Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 42 *b*: "*The dislocaeion knowe, wheþer it be to þe innere party or þe vttere, a wyse leche oweþ to putte his þumbes wiþinne þe mouþ of þe seeke, & festene hem vpon þe wange-teþ of þe neþere iowe of þe seeke, & wiþ þe oþere four fyngeres he schal take þe iowe disloeate fro þe vttere, & þat tyme he schal hane a mynystre, whieh schal holde fast þe heuyd of þe seeke.*"

þou openynge his mouþ, & he drawing wiþ þe boond as it is aforseid, al at oonys wiþouten drede þe boon wole come into his ioynct.[1]

If the dislocation is forwards, let an assistant draw the bone backwards,

¶ If it be out of þe ioinct forward, þan þou schalt sette a strong boond vpon his chin, þat it hile al þe chin, & lete a man stonde bihinde him & halde þe boond in hise houdis, & he schal sette his knees vpon his schuldris, & he schal drawe þe boon to him wel & euenly.

and open the mouth by a wedge.

& þou schalt putte a wegge in his mouþ, & whanne he drawiþ þe boon þou schalt opene his mouþ wiþ þe wegge al at oon tyme, & in þis maner þe boon schal falle into his ioinct. Whanne þe boon is ynne, þan binde it faste wiþ a ligature & with enplastre, & lete him haue souping metis, & he schal chewe no mete til þe place be al fast / ¶ If it so be þat þou were not at þe first bigynnyng, & þe place is enpostymed, & he haue þe feuere & akynge of his heed, þan schaue his heed & anoynte it wiþ oile of rosis & a litil vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & þou schalt [2]anoynte his heed with sum mollificatif, or wiþ dokis grese or wiþ hennys. & þou schalt worche as miche as þou miȝt for to acesse þe enpostym, & for to cure þe feuere, & for to comforte his heed, þat þe frenesie ne come not to him / Whanne þe feuere & þe frenesie & þe enpostym be remeued awei, þan cure him as it is aforseid //

In case of apostema use ointments

[2 lf. 230, bk.]

to remove the apostema and the fever,

and then reduce the dislocated bone.

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest //[3]

¶ iij. co.

The cure is easy if no part of the broken bone is pressed in.

THe forke of þe þrote is clepid of summen patena, & of summen cathena.[4] Sumtyme it is to-broke & nouþer part of þe boon ne is not ypressid yn, & þan þe cure þerof is liȝt ynow. But if þat oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun vndir þat oþer, þan it is ful hard for to bringe it yn aȝen. Whanne nouþer partie is pressid adoun, þan it is noon oþer nede for to haue no medicyn but stupis wet in white of eiren; & leie it vpon þe brekynge of þe boon, & binde wel þe place wiþ ligaturis; & his arme of þe same side mote be hongid to his necke, & in his arme-pitt þou schalt leie a bal of lynnen clooþ. & þou muste binde his arme þat he mowe not meue his arm [5]toward þe forke of þe breast, & in þis maner he mote

Apply bandages and tie the arm on the injured side to the neck.

[5 lf. 231]

[1] Add. 26106, fol. 97: ita quod tu aperiendo et minister trahendo vna hora locum suum intrat, quia sic sine dubio restaurabis.

[3] *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 93, ed. Adams, vol. ii. p. 447. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 3, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, p. 365 *b*.

[4] *patena*, *cathena*, names for the *furcula*, as it seems peculiar to Lanfranc. The furcula, taken to be one bone, comprises the sternal bone and the clavicles. "Catena," chain, is synonymous with "clavicula;" and patena, med. Lat. = plate, is a proper denomination of the sternal bone.

be kept' til þe boon be al hool. ¶ If' it' so be þat' oon ende of' þe boon be pressid adoun, þan a man mote drawe his oon arme, & anoþer man his oþere arme, & þou schalt' wiþ þin hondis drawe þe boon to his propre place. Þan þou muste haue a medicyne consolidatif', & wete þerinne a lynnen clooþ, & hile al þe brekyng' of' þe boon þerwiþ, & leie þervpon faldellas[1] wiþ white of' an ey, & þan binde him as it' is aforseid, and his arme to his necke, & in þis maner he schal be kept til he be hool.

If one end of the bone is pressed in, replace it, and apply a medicine.

¶ Of brekyng of rigboonys /[2]

¶ iiij. co/

RIgge boonys for her schortnes & for her strongnes ne ben not' to-broke, but' if' it' be wiþ greet' smytyng', & sumtyme þei ben brusid, & þat' makiþ greet' akynge. Also þer falliþ manie perels of' þe boonys of' þe necke if' þei ben hurt', lest' nucha be hirt' also, & þan it' is perel of' þe brayn as it' is aforseid / If' þou seest' yuel signes in þat' caas, go awei þerfro. & if' þou seest' noon yuele signys, þan anointe þe place wiþ oile of' rosis hoot' & leie þervpon wolle, and þanne [3]terbentine medlid wiþ a litil mastic, & þis medicyne þou schalt' vse til þe place be al hool /

If the rig-bone is broken, there is danger that the spine be hurt.

Flee in case of evil symptoms, else apply an ointment.

[3 lf. 231, bk.]

¶ The noumbre of' a mannes ribbis is aforeseid in þe anothamie / A mannes ribbis ben to-broke sumtyme wiþ smytyng' or wiþ fallyng' / Also þei moun be plied inward & not to-broke. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt' knowe wheþir a mannes rib be to-broke or no / Sette þi fyngris vpon þe place & grope softli & presse a litil vp & doun, & if' his rib be to-broke, þou schalt' heere hym sownie,[4] & he schal haue couȝinge & akinge in his side. ¶ It' is ful hard for to restore a rib þat' is to-broke, for sumtyme þat' oon parti plieþ inward, & þan it' is hard for to bringe him into his propre place aȝen / And summen seien þat' þe pacient' schulde ete metis to swelle him þat' engendriþ wijnd, & wole make þe rib goon into his propre place aȝen. & summen seien þat' me schulde sette a ventuse, & wiþ

One knows that a rib is broken by the sound which is heard on pressure.

Some men propose that the patient should take food which produces wind,

[1] *faldella*, med. Lat., diminutive of *falda*, thread.

[2] Lat. de fractura spondilium et costarum.

[4] Gul. de Sal. lib. III., Cap. 5. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "*ȝif it happe þe rybbis to be broken in oo place or in two þat þou schalt wite by touchynge, for þei þat of þristynge down of þe hond vpon þe place or places, þou schalt heere a sown & with þat þe seeke schal suffre penaunce or lettynge of breþ, & principally þe tyme of drawynge of wynd.*" The sound, "crepitus," produced by pressure of the hand on the injured place, as a test whether a rib is fractured, is already mentioned in *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 96, ed. Adams, vol. ii., p. 452.

others propose cupping. Both are wrong.

[1 lf. 232]

.1. .2. Bleed the patient from the Basilic vein,

readjust the broken rib,

let the patient cough.

Apply a bandage.

[4 lf. 232, bk.]

If there is strong fever, readjust the rib by operation.

þe drawing' *þe*rof' þe rib wole rise vp a3*en* *in*to his *pro*pre place / But' I suppose þis wole more make agreuau*n*ce þan helpe þe pa*tient* / ffor þe .j. wole engendre an hoot' en[1]postyme / The .ij. it' wole drawe to þe place manie humours / If' þou wolt' take þis cure, þou schalt' do *in* þis maner : / ffirst' þou schalt' lete hi*m* blood in þe side aforȝens in þe veyne *þat'* is clepid basilica, & þan *in* þe same, & þan anoynte *þin* hond wiþ terbentine. & loke if' þou miȝt' take vp þe rib *þat'* is p*r*essid adou*n*. & þin o*þer* hond þou schalt' sette vpon þe place *þat'* is not' p*r*essid adou*n*. & wiþ þin hond *þat'* is anoyntid arere vp his rib. & loke *þat'* þe .ij. endis of' þe ribbis *þat'* is to-b*r*oke come euene togidere, & þan make þe pa*tient* to cou3e, for þis þe beste maner for to bringe hi*m* yn[2] / If' þou dredist' nou3t greet' repleciou*n* of' his bodi, þou miȝt' opene a ventuse wh*an*ne þe rib is ioyned. & þan þou schalt' binde wiþ a boond, & vndir þe boond þou schalt' leie ly*n*net' or sum o*þer* neische *þing*'. & þou schalt' binde hi*m* i*n* sich a maner *þat'* þe rib *þat'* is to-broke ne mowe not' remoue ne falle adou*n* a3*en*. & þe pa*tient* schal vse liȝt' mete as pultes de caudarisio,[3] de amido, de tritico, wiþ penides, & he schal drinke swete wijn temp*er*atli, & þou muste defe*n*de [4]hi*m* fro wrapþe & fro crijnge, & fro alle *þin*gis *þat'* wolen make a man to cou3e. ¶ If' it' so be *þat'* þe akynge acc*e*se not', & þou ne miȝt' not' bri*n*ge his rib as he schulde be, & if' he haþ greet' cowȝynge & acces of' þe feuere,[5] wh*an*ne þou hast' lete hi*m* blood, þan þou muste kutte þe skyn aforȝens þe rib *þat'* is to-broke, & vnhile þe same rib of' al his fleisch, & þan wiþ instrume*n*tis & wiþ þin hond þou muste drawe vp þe rib, & bringe hi*m* *in* his place as he schulde be. & þan þou schalt' cure þe wounde as it' is aforseid / // His dietynge schal be as of' pluretici til þe feuere & al þe passiou*n*s ben goon awei //

Of brekyng of þe helpers of þe rigboon.

¶ v. c°. Fracture of the arm bone near the joint is dangerous.

A Diutorium is to-broken ful ofte ouerþwert' wiþ brek*ing*' / þe nere *þat'* it' be þe ioynct', þe more p*er*ilous it' is, & þe worse for to cure / In þis place I wole telle þee i*n* what' maner þou schalt' knowe a brekyng', & i*n* what' maner þou schalt' restore it' a3en, *þat'*

[2] Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "*make hym eft cowȝe sadly, & vpon þe place þrist down or broken, þou schalt putte a gret ventuse wiþout cuttynge.*"

[3] Sim. de Janua : "Caudarusium, Spelta, genus frumenti, quod quidam allicam dicunt, quidam Caudarusium."

[5] *acces of þe feuere*, Lat. si febris accideret.

it mowe be an ensample to þee in þe breking,[1] if a mannes arme
& his leggis & his hipe-boon ben broken / In þis maner þou schalt Symptoms:
knowe: / Lete a man holde his arme [2]wiþ .ij. hondis faste bi þe [2 lf. 233]
4 schuldre, & he mot holde him in þat maner þat he mowe nott
meue him-silf; & þou schalt stonde tofore him, & take his arme
faste bi þe elbowe, & meue his arme hidir & þidir liȝtli til þou heere The sound heard on moving the arm.
sownynge of þe boon, & whanne þou knowist þe place þat it is
8 to-broke.[3] & þis maner asaiyng is good whanne þe brekynge is so
priuy þat no partie of þe boon goiþ in no side out / Whanne þou
knowist where þe breking is, or þou bigynne ony þing for to worche First prepare all that you require:
þeron, make redi alle þi necessarijs þat ben gode for þe bindyng.
12 ¶ First þou schalt make stupis þat ben euene, & wete hem in hoot the dressing,
water in winter, & in coold water in somer, & þan wrynge out þi
stupis þerof & diȝte oile of rosis & a defensif of bole, & ij. longe the oil, the bandages,
boondis þat þei be .iiij. fyngris brood, & lynnen clooþ þat mowe go
16 aboute al his arme, & a strong corde; & þe corde wole be þe better a strong cord,
if it be playn, & not round. & þou muste diȝte smale ȝerdis of and splints.
drie tree, þat be strong & sotil. & whanne þou hast diȝt alle þese
þingis redi, þan sette þe boon in his place as liȝtli — — —[4] with Reduce the fracture,
20 þin hond wiþouten greuaunce. & þan take [5]oold soft lynnen clooþ, [5 lf. 233, bk.]
& wete it in oile of rosis, and wijnde it aboute his arme. & vpon apply soft linen,
þis leie a clooþ wiþ medicyns consolidatif, þat schal be seid in þe
antidotarie for brekynge of boonys; & þerfore þese .ij. lynnen
24 cloþis moten be large for to hile al þe brekyng / And þou muste
haue cloutis in .ij. sidis of þe place þat is to-broke, & þervpon two clouts and wadding,
þou muste leie faldellam in boþe sidis euene, & wet in gleire of
an ey. & alle þese þingis þou schalt binde wiþ þi boond, þat tie a bandage round the limb,
28 schal be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris, & long þat he mowe goon
aboute manifoold. & sewe þe foldyng of þe boond þat he mowe
not vndo / Vpon þis ligature þou schalt leie faldellam maad of
stupis, & he schal oonly be wet in water & leid vpon. & hervpon

[1] MS. has a full-stop between *breking* and *if*. Lat.: ut sit tibi exemplum in ruptura brachii, crurium et coxarum.

[3] Lat.: et cum tactu locum fracture cognoueris manifeste. Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 37: "*When þe adiutorie, or þe boon fro þe elbowe to þe schuldre is broken, it schal be knowe to þe touchynge in þis: The leche schal drawe þe hurt place wiþ boþe his hondes, & putte þat oon hond vpon þe place hurt, & þat oþer wiþinne. ¶ And haue he a mynystre, whiche schal bere vp togidere þe elbowe wiþ þe arm. And þanne þe leche, meuynge softely his handis. schal heere þe sown of þe broken boon, or he schal feele þe disseueryng of þe parties of þe broken boon.*"

[4] Some words are wanting. Lat.: quantumcumque potes leuius operando.

and splints secured by a cord, which shall be strained but moderately.

þou schalt leie þi spl*en*tis[1]; & wiþ a corde þat be brood, & not round, þei schulen be bou*n*den þ*er*vpon. & þou schalt streyne middilly,[2] & not to faste / Herof þou muste be war, þat streynyng þat is in þis place & *in* oþ*er*e placis ne schulen not be so harde þat 4 þe place bicome blak, ne þat he mowe fele his lyme / Ther be*n* su*m*-

[3 lf. 234] me*n* þat streynen so faste a manys lyme, þat þe spirit of mc[3]uynge, ne þe spirit of lijf mai not come þ*er*to. & þan þei seeþ þat þe place is to-swolle, & askiþ of þe pa*tient* wher he haue miche akynge. 8 & þei supposen to do awei þe akynge wiþ þe greet binding, & *in* þis maner þe lyme wole rotie, & *in* þis maner þe pa*tient* mai falle into a feuer & þe spasme, & manye men dieþ þeron / But þou schalt worche *in* þis maner / Wh*a*nne þou seest þis caas, vnbinde þe lyme, 12 & as miche as þou miȝt do awei þe swellyng & þe akynge. Aboue þe brekyng towardis the schuldre leie a defensif of bole // If þer come noon akynge ne swellynge, þan þou schalt lete it sitte so boounde .x. daies *in* winte*r*, & .vij. daies *in* somer / & þan vnbinde 16 it softly þat þe lyme ne meue not / & loke þat þe boon sitte wel; & þan binde it al togidere aȝen as þow didist first. Wh*a*nne þe boon is wel soudid, þa*n* þou schalt take stupis & wete he*m* in good wijn hoot,[4] & leie þ*er*vpon. ¶ Wh*a*nne it is soudid, if þer leeue 20 ony þi*n*g of hardnes i*n* þe same place, þan do it awei aftir þe teching þat þou schalt fynde *in* þe antidotarie /

A tight bandage may cause spasm, and prove fatal.

No*ta*. Keep the limb so bandaged for 10 days; then look if the bone is adjusted, and bandage it again.

[5 lf. 234, bk.] Sumtyme þe boonys of a ma*n*nys arme ben to-broke [5]boþe, & sumtyme þat oþ*er*. & wha*n*ne þei be*n* boþe broken, it is þe more 24 worse / If it so be þat þ*er* be to-broke but oon boon, þan it is no nede for to do but astellas,[6] for þe boon þat is hool wole saue þe ligature wel ynowȝ / The boonys of a ma*n*nes fyngris ben su*m*tyme to-broke, þan þou schalt sette euene þe boon, & binde hi*m* wiþ 28 astelles þat be*n* wel maad þ*er*fore. & þouȝ þe fyngir ne be but a litil lyme, ȝitt þou muste haue good ku*n*nyng & good witt for to diȝte it wel / Dietyng *in* alle brekyng of boonys schal be first sotil, & aftirward more greet, as it is aforseid // 32

Sometimes one or both the bones of the fore-arm are broken, or the bones of the fingers.

Of breki*n*g of þe boon of þe coxe.

vj°. c° / In case of fracture of the hip-bone or any bone of the leg,

WHanne þe boon of þe coxe is to-b*r*oke or ony boon of þe foot, þan þou schalt worche i*n* al maner þi*n*gis as it is aforseid *in* þe chapitre of adiutorie & of þe fyngris / But þis þou

[1] MS. *spletis*. [2] *middilly*, mediocriter.
[4] Lat.: in bono vino calido.
[6] Lat.: non est tibi necessarium astellas ponere.

muste adde more þ*er*to, þ*at*ᵗ wha*n*ne þou hastᵗ brouȝtᵗ yn þe boo*n* ofᵗ
þe legᵗ, þan þou muste make an i*n*strumentᵗ, þ*at*ᵗ is clepid albiu*m* ou*þer* coutelle; & itᵗ schal be schape i*n* þe maner ofᵗ a cros.[1] & apply a splint formed to the shape of the leg.
4 þe*ron* his legᵗ mote be settᵗ, so þ*at*ᵗ his legᵗ mowe [2]bowe to no side / [2 lf. 235]
Also itᵗ is necessarie þ*at*ᵗ þe pa*tient* ligge also stille as he mai
wiþouten remeuyngᵗ, til þe boon be fastᵗ // Butᵗ þou muste be wel Take care that the leg does not get shortened.
war herofᵗ wha*n*ne þ*at*ᵗ a ma*n*nes legᵗ is to-broke, ou*þer* his hipe,
8 þou muste be war i*n* þe soudyngᵗ, þ*at*ᵗ oon legᵗ be notᵗ schort*er* þan
þe o*þer* / Butᵗ þou schaltᵗ mesure he*m* algate bo*þ*e lich longᵗ, & i*n* þe
same mesure kepe he*m* /

Of þe cure wh*an*ne a ma*n* is smite*n* i*n* þe rigbo*n* or ribbis.

12

¶ vij. c° / Tender bones, especially those of children, become bent instead of breaking.

IT bifalliþ sumtyme þ*at*ᵗ a man is smyten or a man falliþ, & þan tendre boonys as þe cheke-boon & ribbis, & [in] children boonys ofᵗ her arme & ofᵗ her leggis, for þe tendirnes ofᵗ þes
16 lymes, þei wolen folde & notᵗ breke / In þis maner þou schaltᵗ bringe he*m* aȝen / In þis maner anoynte þi*n* hond wiþ terbentyne, & take þ*at*ᵗ boon & presse itᵗ as itᵗ is forseid i*n* þe brekyngᵗ ofᵗ a boon.[3] & ifᵗ itᵗ be a rib, þan þou schaltᵗ presse
20 hi*m* vpward, as itᵗ is foreseid. & ifᵗ itᵗ be i*n* þe arme ou*þer* þe legᵗ, þan þou muste make ligaturis þ*er*fore & i*n*strume*n*tᵗ ofᵗ tree, þ*at*ᵗ be euene, & þ*er*to his arme ou*þer* his legᵗ schal be bou*n*den & p*r*essid, for to make him euene. & or þou do þus, þou
24 schaltᵗ make a [4]vomentaciou*n* ofᵗ camomille, malue, & bismalue, [4 lf. 235, bk.]
fenigrec*i*, se*min*is lini sode*n* i*n* wate*r*; & þan anoynte hi*m* wiþ oile ofᵗ lilie, or wiþ gandris grese, or hen-grese, & þan p*r*esse his arme as itᵗ is aforseid. Also þou miȝtᵗ vse þis medicyn, þ*at*ᵗ is aproued
28 ofte tyme / leie a plate ofᵗ yuer[5] i*n* þ*at*ᵗ side þ*at*ᵗ þe boon is aplied, & or lay a plate of ivory on the limb,

Straighten them by pressure,

by bandaging the limb to a wooden splint,

[1] Lat.: in albiolo seu coutella que sit ad modum cruris formata. The translator read "crucis."

albiola, (alueolus) *um*. "ventre, panier, benne, flancs d'un navire."—Dufr.

coutella. κοτύλη, anything hollow, the cup of a joint, especially of the hip-joint. It.: cotila. Tomm.

Paul. Ægin., Book VI, Sect. 106, ed. Adams, vol. 2, p. 470, describes the way of arranging a fractured leg by means of "a canal either of wood or earthenware." Adams l. c. gives references from Hippocrates, Celsus and Galen, for the use of these machines.

[3] Lat.: Si maxilla fuerit, manum seu digitos in os pone, premens ad extra sicut diximus in fractura, manum aliam termentina uel pice illinitam suauiter ab extra preme et citius eleua.

[5] O.Fr. yvoyre.

by whose attraction it becomes straight.

þe vertu of þe yuer wole drawe þe boon as it schulde be, & bringe þe boon into his propre plite /

Of þe greuousnes of þe rigboon whanne he is out of ioyncte / 4

¶ iij°. c° / viij

Dislocacioun of þe rigboonys is a greuous sijknes. It is aforseid in anathomia how manie boonys ben in þe necke & in þe rig. & it is aforseid in what maner / The firste boon in a mannes necke

The ligaments on the neck are weak,

is bounden with manye feble ligaturis, & þe ligaturis þerof ben 8 recching[1] & feble, þat þei ne schulde lette þe meuynge of þe heed /

and the bones are easily dislocated.

Þe boonys þat ben in a mannes necke beþ more feble þan ony oþer rigboonys, & þerfore þei goiþ liȝtly out of þe ioynte, & it is ful

Dislocation of the 1st vertebra—decollation—

greet drede þerof / If þe hiȝeste boon of þe necke be oute of þe 12 ioyncte, it is clepid decollacio, & it sleeþ a man anoon; for þat oþer

[2 lf. 236] causes death by want of breath.

boon þerof pressiþ yn & stoppiþ a man[2]nes breeþ anoon, & in þis

If the 7th and 8th vertebræ are out of joint, the ways of food and breath are stopped.

maner it sleeþ a man anoon / And if þe ioyncte þat is bitwixe þe vij. boon & þe .viij. be out of ioyncte, þan it wole stoppe þe weie 16 of his mete, and it wole lette þe weie of a mannes breeþ also / And

If ony boon of þe rigboon þat is bineþe þe .viij. boon be out of ioyncte, but if he be þe raþere holpen, he schal lese his meuyng

The bone must be replaced immediately after the accident.

for euermore[3] / And þerfore it is necessarie as faste þat a mannes 20 rigboon is out of þe ioyncte, þat it be brouȝt yn aȝen anoon, &

Nota

principali þe firste boon of þe necke, for disiuncciou of þat boon wole sle a man anoon, as it is forseid / If þou be in þe place, take

Treatment: Press down the shoulders, and draw up the head.

þe patient bi þe heeris, & sette þi feet vpon his schuldris, & so þou 24 schalt drawe vpward wiþ þin hondis, & presse adoun wiþ þi feet, &

bringe þe boon into his ioyncte aȝen / Whanne þe .vij. rigboon[4] is out of his ioyncte fro þe .viij. rigboon, itt mai ful litil tyme lenger

The displacement may be inwards

abide. & if it so be þat þis boon be pressid swiþe ynward, it wole 28 sle a man hastily, & it wole ful late be curid / If it so be þat it mai be curid, þer is noon oþer cure þeron, but presse adoun his

[5 lf. 236, bk.]

schuldris [5]& drawe vp þe heed, as it is aforseid / If it so be þat

or outwards.

ony of þese boonys be out of þe ioyncte outward, þat falliþ ful 32

[1] Lat.: hec ligatura fuit magis aliis laxa.

[3] Gul. de Sal., cap. 19. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b.: "*And of þe spondiles of þe brest, for lettynge brouȝt in in þe lacertis & muscules kyndely & wilfully meuynge þe brest, þe lunge is lettid in his meuynge, & þer falliþ hasty wynd & litel, & vtterlyche deþ. Of þe dislocacion of þe oþere spondiles, þat ben 4, þer falleþ anoþor greuaunce in þe reynes & þe bladdre, & akþe in þoo membris, & peyne of pyssynge or lettynge of þe weyes of þe vryne, & aposteme in þe place, & feuere, & deþ.*"

[4] *rig.* in margin.

seelde, þa*n* sette þe boonys euene, & drawe his heed & p*r*esse adoun hise schuldris / If' it' so be þa*t*' ony rigboon bineþe þe .viij. boon of' þe necke be out' of' ioyncte, if' þe boon go ynward, it' nile take no cure til it' sle hi*m* / And if' it' ne be not' al out' of' þe ioyncte, but' it' p*r*essiþ nucha, alle þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuynge / If' it' so be þa*t*' þe boon be out' of' þe ioyncte & go outward, it' is incurable, for he schal be euermore gibbosis, i*d est* broke*n*-riggid. Þis is þe cure þe*r*of', if' it' mai be curid / Arere vp þe boon & p*r*esse it[1] als so miche as þou miȝt', wiþ þi*n* hond, ouþe*r* p*r*esse it' yn w*ith* a playn tree, & studie þou i*n* þi witt' as miche as þou miȝt' for to p*r*esse it' i*n* aȝen; & leie þe*r*vpon oon of' þe consolidatiuis, & binde it' faste / If' it' so be þa*t*' þe*r*e leeue ony hardnes afte*r* þe tyme þa*t*' þe place is soudid, þa*n* make an enplastre of' mollificatiuis þerto, þa*t*' þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe antidotarie; & anoyn*t*e hi*m* wiþ oynementis, þa*t*' þou schalt' fy*n*de [2]i*n* þe same place i*n* þe chapite*r* of' mollificati*uis* /

An inward displacement below the 8th vertebra causes either death or loss of motion.

In case of outward displacement, the patient remains hump-backed.

Try to reduce the bone by manipulation.

If some hardness is left, apply a plaster and an ointment.

[2 lf. 237]

Of þe schuldre out of his place.[3]

A Mannes schuldre mai go out' of' þe ioyncte' i*n* .iij. maners / Oon maner is þis, whanne þe heed of' þe boon of' adiutorie, þa*t*' is þe poynt' of' þe schuldre, falliþ adoun vndir þe arme-pitt'; & su*m*tyme he goiþ of' þe ioyncte' forþward, but' þa*t*' falliþ ful selden / The .iij.: he goiþ out' of' þe ioyncte' vpward; & bakward he ne mai not' out' of' þe ioyncte', for þe schuldre boon holdiþ itt' faste in.[4]

ix ¶ iiij°. c° /

The head of the humerus is dislocated, 1. downwards into the arm-pit; 2. forwards; 3. upwards.

¶ The .j. maner þou miȝt' liȝtliche knowe bi touching' & bi siȝt', & þou schalt' fele þe boon i*n* his arme-pitt', & þa*n* þe*r*e wole be a greet' pitt' aboue. ¶ If' he be out' of' the ioyncte' forþward, þa*n* his arme wole sitte bacward, & tofore þou schalt' se a greet' pitt' / ¶ If' he be out' of' þe ioyncte' vpward, þa*t*' þou schalt' knowe i*n* þis maner: his elbowe ne mai not' be drawe along' fro his body. & if' þou wolt' drawe hi*m* along', þou schalt' fynde an obstacle / The .j. maner if' it' be a child, þa*n* þou schalt' take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þi riȝthond vndir his [5]arme-pitt', & drawe his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & p*r*esse þe boon i*n*to his ioyncte' wiþ þi riȝthond; & i*n* þis maner þou schalt' bringe in þe boon of' a child wel ynow. ¶ If' it' be a miche

The signs are an outward depression, and an inability to use the arm.

Treatment: 1. Reduction is effected by extension of the arm and pressure on the shoulder.

[5 lf. 237, bk.]

[1] MS. *pressid.*

[3] Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI, Sect. 114, ed. Adams, vol. II, p. 485.

[4] Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 43 b.: "*For þe ofteste þe heued of þe adiutorie is dislocate in þe schuldre toward þe place* þat *is called titillicum to þe for-party, & to þe hynder party anentis þe spawde-boon, it is dislocate in no maner.*"

Reduction in a grown-up man is effected by means of a wooden ball.

man, lete hi*m* ligge adoun streiȝt', & take a round bal of' tree, & folde hi*m* wiþ a cloop, & leie it' vnder his arme-pitt', & binde hi*m* þ*er*e faste, & take his hond & drawe it' adounward, ouþ*er* lete anoþ*er* man drawe it' adou*n*ward, & helpe þou wiþ þi*n* hond for to bri*n*g' yn þe boon, so þ*at*' þou schalt' p*r*esse, & þe man d*ra*we al i*n* oon tyme / If' it' ne mai not' be doon in þis maner, þan ordeine a long' p*er*che, & make it' fast' i*n* .ij. wallis of' þe hous, ouþ*er* .ij. postis of' þe hous; & i*n* þe middil of' þe p*er*che make a pitt', & i*n* þe same pitt' leie þe forseid bal, & þe hiȝnes of' þis p*er*che schal be hiȝer þan a man is long', & þan sette vndir his feet' a stool. & loke þ*at*' þe same bal sitte vndir his arme, & lete a strong' man holde dou*n* his arme and his hond, & take awei þe stool vndir his feet', & in þis maner þe boon wole come i*n*to his ioyn*c*t' / ¶ If' it' be out' of' þe ioynct' forþward, þan take a strong' towail, & leie hi*m* vndir his arme, & lete þe oon ende go forþ bihinde his rigge, [1] & þ*at*' oþ*er* ende forþ bi his brest', & lete a strong' man holde þe .ij. endis of' þe towail, & þan binde his arme wiþ anoþ*er* boond aboue þe elbowe; & take it' anoþ*er* strong' man, & lete þese .ij. me*n* holde & drawe al at' oonys; þan þou schalt' w*ith* þi .ij. hondis, wh*an*ne þei drawiþ, p*r*esse þe boo*n* i*n*to his ioynct' / Wh*an*ne þe boon is i*n* his ioyn*c*t', þan þei schulen leeue her drawyng' softly. ¶ In þe same maner, wh*an*ne he is oute of' ioyncte vpward, he schal be bounde*n*, & oon man schal drawe hi*m* abacward wiþ þe towal, & þ*at*' oþ*er* man schal drawe his arme adou*n*ward, & þou schalt' helpe for to p*r*esse yn þe boon wiþ þin hondis. & wh*an*ne þe boon is i*n* his ioynct', þan wete a pece of' ly*n*nen cloop i*n* oile of' ro*sis*, & þan þ*er*vpon leie a medicyne consolidatif', & þan leie þ*er*vpon faldellas wet' i*n* gleire of' eiren, & binde hi*m* faste w*ith* boondis þ*at*' his arme ne mowe not' out' of' þe ioynct' aȝen, & so he schal be bounde*n* .x. daies. And if' þer come ony enpostym or icching', þan þou muste vnbinde hi*m* aȝen, & do awei þe icching' ouþ*er* þe enpostym, and binde it' aȝen as it' is forseid. ¶ If' it' so be þ*at*' [2] þou ne were not' at' þe firste bigy*n*nyng', þan þou muste make þe pa*tient* a baþ of' malue & bismalue, fenigrec, lynseed. & wh*an*ne he is wel baþid i*n* þis baþ, þan anoynte hi*m* wiþ an oynement' laxatif'. & i*n* þis maner he muste be baþid manie daies til þe place be wel moistid; & þan bringe þe boon i*n*to his ioynct', as it' is forseid. ¶ If' it' so be þ*at* þou come at' þe firste bigy*n*nyng', wh*an*ne a boon is out' of' þe ioynct', þan þou schalt' not' baþe þe lyme i*n* hoot' wat*er* i*n* no maner.

Another way of reduction.

2. The shoulder is drawn upwards with a towel, and the arm is drawn downwards.

[1 lf. 238]

3. Reduction is effected in a similar way.

When the bone is reduced, leave the arm bandaged through 10 days.

[2 lf. 238, bk.]

If you come some time after the accident, the patient must take a bath before reduction is tried.

¶ A ma*nn*es arme wole out' of' þe ioynct' liȝtlich at' þe elbowe,[1] & liȝtly it' wole be brouȝt' *in*to his ioynct' aȝe*n* / But' he mai be out' of' þe ioynct' *in* .ij. maners, as forþward & hindeward, & boþe haueþ
4 diu*er*s cure / In þis maner þou schalt' do wha*nn*e he is out' of' þe ioynct' forþward: sette stupis *in* þe folding' of' his arme,[2] & þan bi*n*de a boond þ*er*vpon, & lete a man drawe þ*at*' boond bakward — —,[3] & þan lete a strong' man holde adiutoriu*m*, lest' his schuldre
8 go out' of' þe ioy*n*ct'. & þan anoynte þi*n* hond wiþ oile of' rosis, & lete þe ij. men drawe al at' oon tyme, & þa*n* p*r*esse yn þe boon i*n*to his ioynct' wiþ þi .ij. [4]hondis, & þan hange an heuy peis at his hond. & if' þer leueþ ony greet' þi*n*g', lete it' be til anoþ*er* tyme.
12 & þan anoynte þi*n* hond & p*r*esse it' *in* aȝen, & þan þou schalt' binde hi*m* w*ith* boo*n*dis & faldellis, & oile of' ro*sis* & consolidatiuis, as it' is aforseid / But' of' þis caas þou muste be war: but' if' his arme be brouȝt' i*n*to þe ioi*n*ct' hastili, þ*er*e wole engendre *in* þe place
16 an hoot' enpostym, & þan aftirward it' wole be ful hard to bringe it' into his ioynct' aȝen.

Nota.

Dislocation of the elbow may be forwards or backwards.

Treatment, of a dislocation forwards,

of a dislocation backwards.

[4 lf. 239]

If the arm is not soon reduced, an apostema will be formed.

¶ Rasceta, þ*at*' is þe ioynct' of' þe hand / as it' is forseid *in* anathamia, is conteyned of' manie boonys & of' manie recchinge
20 ligaturis,[5] as it' was necessarie for þe grete meuyng' of' þe hond. þis place wole liȝtly out' of' þe ioi*n*ct', & liȝtli it' wole come yn aȝen. ¶ But' if' a ma*nn*es hond be out' of' þe ioyncte longe, þe place wole enpostym, & þan it' wole be hard for to bringe it' in aȝen. ¶ In þe
24 firste bigy*nn*nyng' take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þe boon *in*to þe ioynct' as it' is aforeseid, & binde it' *in* al maners as it' is aforseid *in* oþ*er*e ioinctis. ¶ Also if' a ma*nn*es fyngir be out' of' ioyncte, it' is but' liȝt' for to putte it' [6]in aȝen / In þe same maner þou schalt'
28 binde a mannes fyngir as it' is aforseid *in* oþ*er*e placis / Ther ben

Raceta has many bones and ligaments.

The wrist-joint is frequently dislocated.

Dislocated fingers are easily reduced.

[6 lf. 239, bk.]

[1] The Original says just the contrary: difficile dislocatur, et ita difficile restauratur. The translator further leaves out a passage similar to the following one, quoted from the Engl. translation of Gul. de Salic.: "*The dislocacioun or restorynge of þis place is ryȝt dredeful, for þe makynge of it. For whi, þer ben smale boones & harynge schapp of a rolle or polyne, to drawe with water of wellis, whiche sumtyme, ouþer wiþ difficulte, or in no manere ben restorid.*"

[2] Lat.: in curvatura vbi brachium plicari solebat.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 98: "& fac quod minister trahat stupham seu bindam ad posteriora firmiter et suaviter: et tu manum quam errexeras, plica violenter: vt oppositum tangat pluries humerum: quoniam tunc sine dubio est reducta. Si vero fuerit ad posteriora, fac quod fortis minister teneat adiutorium. et. cet."

[5] Lat.: multis ossibus composita et ligamentis pluribus tamen laxis coniuncta.

manie men þat wh*an*ne a ma*n*nis lyme is out of ioynct, þei wolen sette þe lyme i*n* hoot wat*er*, & seien þat it wole þe better come i*n*to his ioinct aȝen / But þou schalt wite þis, þat hoot watir i*n* þe firste bigy*n*nyng makiþ þe lyme recche, & feble it & drawiþ þ*er*to manye humours / & þ*er*fore þou ne schalt do i*n* þis maner, but þou schalt comforte þe lyme wiþ oile of ro*sis*, & sette hi*m* into his ioinct anoo*n*, & defende as miche as þou miȝt, þat þ*er*e come noon enpostym þ*er*to / But if it so be, þat þou ne come not at þe firste bigy*n*nyng, & þe place bicome hard, þan make hi*m* a fome*n*tacio*u*n wiþ a decocciou*n* of þi*n*gis þat makiþ moist & resolueþ as it is aforseid /

Do not put the limb in hot water at the first beginning.

Of the haunche out of his place.[1]

¶ v°. c°.

The hip-joint is subject to four dislocations, arising from internal or external causes.

[2 lf. 240]

1. Internal causes.

When too much fluid gathers in the box of the haunch, the thigh-bone is easily dislocated.

The acetabulum is more or less concave, the concavity prevents dislocation.

2. External causes.

Symptoms of dislocation inwards,

[3 lf. 240, bk.]

of dislocation forwards,

AL þe coniunccio*u*n of þe haunche is tofore seid i*n* þe chapitre of anathamia. And þis place mai go out of þe io*in*ct i*n* .iiij. maners: as ynward & outward, forþward & bacward; & sumtyme it comeþ of causis wiþi*n*neforþ, & sumtyme of causis w*ith*outforþ / [2]Of causis wiþi*n*neforþ: as humours of lo*n*ge tyme haue falle þ*er*to, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of dolour of ioinctis / Ther is i*n* þis place a greet box, & conteineþ a greet place, þat beriþ al þe bodi, & it is a place þat takith miche moisture & greet sup*er*fluite of humo*ur*is, & wh*an*ne þ*er* falliþ manie sup*er*fluitees to þat place, & þe pacient is not purgid þ*er*of, & tr*au*eiliþ, þan humours rotiþ i*n* þat place, & þe ligat*ur*is recchiþ along, & i*n* þis maner vertebru*m* goiþ out of his ioinct / And þis caas i*n* diuers men haþ diuers causis / ffor su*m*men haueþ a box i*n* her haunche swiþe holowe, & þat wole not fulliȝtliche out of þe ioinct / And su*m*me*n* ne haueþ not so holowe boxis, & þan if þe place be ful of yuele humours, þan þe boon wole liȝtliche out of þe ioincte, & it wole liȝtli into þe ioinct aȝen, & þan it wole liȝtly out aȝen. ¶ Of causis wiþoutforþ, as of wrastyng or of smityng or of su*m* o*þ*er þing þat makiþ vertebru*m* goon out of þe ioynct wiþ violence. ¶ This is þe signe wh*an*ne it is out of ioyncte ynward: wh*an*ne þou myȝt fele þe poynt of þe boon i*n* his flank, & his feet [3]& his knee turned outward, & þe paci*en*t schal not opene his leg ne his hipe // If it goiþ out of þe ioynct forþward, þan his leg wole wexe miche schorter, & he schal not bringe his hele to grou*n*de, but oonly his toos. ¶ If

[1] Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. 118, l. c., p. 498. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 1, Cap. 24.

it be out of þe ioynct bacward, þa*n* his hele wole wexe long, & his toos schorte, & he schal bringe no þi*n*g of his foot to grou[*n*]de, but his hele // and backwards.

4 Ther ben manie maners of diuers menys for to bringe boonys i*n*to her ioynct a3en, but among alle I holde þis maner þe beste for þis place: take a lo*n*g schete þa*t* be not brood, & do bitwixe þe pa*tient* leggis, & lete þa*t* oon ende go bifore his brest, & þa*t* oþ*er* 8 bihinde his rig, & make þe .ij. endis fast to a post, & þe pa*tient* schal ligge vpon a plain place, & þou schalt binde al his hipe aboue his knee, & þan þe leg softly adounward, & to alle þese boondis make faste a corde, & lete þe moost fastenyng be i*n* þe hipe aboue 12 þe knee, & þan lete oon strong man or ij. drawe þe corde euenlich & harde w*ith*oute ony pluching.[1] & þan þou schalt wiþ þi*n* hondis putte þe boon i*n*to his ioyncte. & wha*n*ne þe [2]boon is y*n*ne, þan bidde he*m* lete go þe corde softli a3en, & leie hise feet euene togidere. 16 for if hise feet wollen ligge euene togidere, it is a certein signe þa*t* þe boon is i*n* his ioynct. & if hise feet wolen not sitte euene in þe ioynct, it is a signe þa*t* þe boon is not i*n* his ioynct / wha*n*ne þe boon is i*n* his ioinct, binde faste his hipe, & lete þe pa*tient* ligge 20 stille til he be al restorid / In alle curis of dislocacioun þou hast pleiner teching.[3]

The best way of reduction. A towel put under the thigh is fixed to the wall (to effect counter-extension), whilst extension of the leg is made.

[1 lf. 241]

¶ Dislocaciou*n* of þis place þa*t* comeþ of causis wiþi*n*neforþ, it is ful hard for to bringe it i*n* a3en. & þou3 þe boo*n* be brou3t i*n* 24 a3en, wiþ a litil cause it wole goon out a3en. & þ*er*fore þ*er* is no cure þ*er*of, but avoide his bodi, & make hi*m* cauterijs as it is aforseid i*n* þe chapitre of cauterijs.

There is no radical cure for a dislocation arising from internal causes.

¶ A mannys knee is sumtyme out of ioyncte, & su*m*tyme þe 28 round boon þa*t* is þ*er*vpon goiþ out of his place / Signys wha*n*ne a ma*n*nes knee is out of ioyncte ben open ynow3. & if þe round boon be out of his place, þou mi3te li3tlich knowe it. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt bringe a ma*n*nes knee i*n*to his ioynct a3en / Lete 32 a strong man holde faste his hipe, and [4]anoþ*er* man his leg. & þou schalt wiþ þin hondis p*r*esse faste þe boon i*n*to his p*r*opre place. & if þe place be enpostymed, first þou muste do awei þe enpostym, & þan bringe þe knee into his place a3en. ¶ If þe round boon be out 36 of his place, sette þe boon i*n*to his place, & þan binde faste wiþ boondis, & þan binde his leg faste vp to his hipe bi an ho*ur*, & þa*n*

Sometimes occurs a Dislocation of the knee-joint, and a Dislocation of the Patella. Reduction is accomplished by pressing the boon into its place.

[4 lf. 241, bk.]

In the same way reduce a dislocated patella.

[1] Lat.: non ductu violenti nec tractu.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 99: In omnibus aliis curam consequentibus est in precedentibus bene doctus.

vnbinde his legᵗ fro his hipe, & þan binde faste þe round boon þatᵗ itᵗ ne moue notᵗ fro his propre place, & in þatᵗ maner lete itᵗ sitte, for itᵗ wole bicome fastᵗ anoon.

Reduction of Dislocation of the Ankle-Joint.

¶ Ifᵗ þe ioynctᵗ ofᵗ a mannes footᵗ be outᵗ ofᵗ ioyncte or his toos, 4 þou schaltᵗ do þe cure in þe same maner as itᵗ is aforseid in þe hond & in þe fyngris.[1] ¶ þoruȝ þe help ofᵗ god wiþoutᵗ which is no þingᵗ fulfillid, þe .iiij. tretis is fulfillid. ¶ Now I wole bigynne þe .v. tretis þatᵗ schal be clepid þe antidotarie ofᵗ this book. // 8

[2 lf. 242]

IN þe fifþe tretis clepid þe antidotarie ofᵗ þis book, I þinke to [2]putte medicyns boþe symple & compound / þatᵗ falliþ for cirurgie & beþ necessarie þerfore / Butᵗ I ne mai notᵗ sette alle, for

No man could enumerate all the medicines, only God knows them.

þer is no man þatᵗ can telle alle þe noumbre ofᵗ medicyns butᵗ oonli 12 god / Neþeles I wole sette medicyns in þis antidotarie þatᵗ I haue longe vsid, & I lernede hem ofᵗ wise doctouris & ofᵗ philosophoris, & alle þei ben aproued /

Here bigynneþ þe tretise of repercussiuis // 16

¶ co jo

Repercussives are used for hot apostemas, especially if they are in a noble limb.

REpercussiuis bifalliþ for hootᵗ apostymes, & principal whanne itᵗ bigynneþ in a noble lyme: as in þe herte, ouþir in þe brayn, ouþir in þe heed, ouþir in þe lyuere, þe splen & þe stomac, reynes, ballokis, & in þe bladdre // Itᵗ schal alwei be þin 20 entencioun for to putte awei greuous mater fro a noble lyme into anoþer place. ¶ Whanne þou woltᵗ worche wiþ repercussiuis, þou muste take hede to .x. condiciouns þatᵗ ben settᵗ in þe iij. tretis in þe general chapitre ofᵗ enpostyms / ¶ Repercussifᵗ is seid in .ij. maners : 24 as large & streit[3] / large is seid : as eueri medicyne maad ofᵗ coold herbis for to aquenche hootᵗ [4]causis. Streitᵗ is seid, whanne itᵗ puttᵗ awei þe mater & is notᵗ swiþe coold // Ofᵗ repercussiuis þere ben manie degrees ofᵗ cooldnes / Ther ben summe so coold, þatᵗ a man 28 mai notᵗ fele his lyme, & þan itᵗ is clepid stupefactiua[5] / & þis þou schaltᵗ vse whanne þer is þingᵗ þatᵗ greueþ more þan þe mater. ¶ Whanne þou ne dredistᵗ notᵗ hootᵗ qualite oonli, butᵗ þou dredistᵗ þe mater, þan þou schaltᵗ vse medicyns þatᵗ ben coold & drie, þatᵗ 32 þei mowe tempere þe complexioun ofᵗ þe lyme, & wiþ þe vertu ofᵗ stiptica þei wolen comforte þe lyme,[6] & þese ben propirli clepid repercussiuis / Whanne þou hastᵗ entencioun oonly for to make

Repercussives are understood in a wider or stricter sense.

[4 lf. 242, bk.]

Some are very cold, and are called Stupefactiua.

Some are less cold but dry:

Stiptica.

[1] MS. repeats this sentence. [3] *large & streit.* See p. 305, note 1.

[5] Vigon transl. *Traheron Interpr.*: "*Stupefactyve.* That, that hathe strengthe to astonie, and take awaye felynge."

[6] Lat.: et sua stipticitate uirtutem membri confortent.

coold, þan it is no force þouȝ þi medicyn be not stiptica / But wha*n*ne þou wolt make ony repe*r*cussiuis, it is necessarie þat þei be coold & drie. ¶ Medicyns þat be*n* coold & repe*r*cussiuis, su*m*me ben simple & su*m*me ben compound / Of simple medicyns, su*m*me ben of herbis, & su*m*me ben of trees, & su*m*me ben leeues, & su*m*me ben rotis, & su*m*me ben seedis, & su*m*me ben flouris, & su*m*me ben greynes[1] of minerals, & su*m*me ben watris, & su*m*me ben oilis. And su*m*me þe*r*of I wole sette i*n* þese bokis þat be*n* [2]greetli i*n* vss toward us / And þe*r*e be*n* medicyns coold & moist þat þou miȝt vse for to ate*m*pe*r*e þe complexiou*n* of lymes þat ben distemp[*er*]id i*n* hete & drienes. ¶ Malua, capillus[3] veneris, psillio*m*, portulaca, atriplex. Mercurialis,[4] Rapa, cucurbita, Melones, Citruli,[5] Seme*n* malue, se*min*is iiij^or^. frigidor*um*, Semper viua, lactuca ortulana [6] ¶ Iusquiam*us*, Mandragora, Papauere, argentu*m* viuu*m*, f. & h. *in* iiij.[7] ¶ **Oilis** coold & moist: Oleum violaciu*m*, Oleu*m* nenupharinu*m*,[8] Oleum de lilijs albis, Oleu*m* mirtinu*m*. Istis[9] medicinis potest vti qu*um* intendis infrigidare sine exp*ul*cio*ne* ut d*ictu*m est // þese medicyns þou miȝtist vse wha*n*ne þou entendist for to make coold wiþouten expulciou*n* of þe mater as it is forseid. ¶ Medicyns þat be*n* symple coold & drie, þat ben clepid verry repe*r*cussiuis ben þese / **Solatru***m*, crassula maior & minor,[10] virga pastoris / vmbilicus veneris, cicorea, Endiua, Gramen, Epatica,[11] Ipoquistidos, veruene, Semp*er* viua, Corigiola,[12] Sang*ui*naria, Edera, Acetosa, Scariola, plantago maior & minor, Nenuphar. **De g*ra*nis**

Repercussive medicines are either simple or compound.

The simple medicines.

[2 lf. 243]

Herbs.

Oilis.

Medicines that are cold and dry, or Repercussives in a strict sense.

[1] The translator misunderstood the Lat. genera mineralium.

[3] MS. *capillis.*

[4] Add. 15,236, fol. 4 *b.*: "*Linochites, mercurialis, idem. G. mercuria, A. smerewourth.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 116: "*linozostis g^e^. mercurie. a^e^. scandany.*"

[5] Phillips, "*Citrull*, a sort of Cucumber or Pumpkin of a Citron-Colour."

[6] Halle, *Table*, p. 57: "Lactuca satiua, or Hortensis, þat is gardin letuce."

[7] frigidum et humidum in quarto gradu.

[8] *nenupharinu*m, Arab. Pers. nītufar, nīnūfar (Littré). Nymphæa alba. Add. 15,236, fol. 5 *b.*: "*Nenufar .i. flos vngule, caballine aquatice A. waterlilye.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 124; *Barth. Sinon.*, p. 31.

[9] MS. *istius.*

[10] Add. 15,236, lf. 11: "*Crassula maior G. crassegeline* vel *orpine. Crassula minor .G. terce de soris .A. stonerop.*"

[11] Add. 15,236. Cf. 3 *b.*: *Epatica .G. coper .A. linerwort.*" Ibid. lf. 11: "*Epatica .G. epatik* vel *coper .A. liurewort.*"

[12] Add. 15,236, lf. 3 *b.*: *Corigiola. Centinodia. ling*ua *passerina. G. Coriogiole.*" Halle, *Table*, p. 29: "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common Knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas."

[2 lf. 243, bk.] **seminibus, fructib*us*.** Ordeu*m*, Silligo[1]; auena. [2]Spica, Lollium, ffabe, Mirtilli, Berberis, Sumac, Pira, Poma, Sorbe, mespila, Castanea, Glandes, Galle, Maiorana, Mora mat*ur*a, vua acerba, Capreoli, vitis.[3] ¶ **De floribus folijs & corticib*us*** / Balaustie cortices, 4 Cortices mali granata, Cortices arbor*um* stipticorum[4]; Rosa, Nenufar, fflos spine, ffolia piror*um*, pomor*um*, sorbor*um*, rubij, & spine. ¶ **ffolia** / Salicis, Populi, Tremuli, Papiri, Canne.[5] ¶ **De linis.** om*n*es sandali. ¶ **De mineralib*us* & lutis** / Saphir*us*, Bolus arme- 8 nicus, Marmor, Alabaustru*m*,[6] Cathinia, Litargiru*m*, munda[7] ferri, Ematistes, Corallus, antimoniu*m*. ¶ **De lutis.** Terra sigillata, Argilla, lutum[8] omne, cimolea,[9] Camfora, Cerusa. **De gummis.** Gu*m*ma p*ru*ni,[10] cerase, amigdale, Acacia, opiu*m*. **De olijs.** Oleum 12 rosa*rum*, & eueri oile þat is maad of coold þingis & drie, of flouris, leeues, & ryndis þerof / Also watir of rosis, & wat*er* þat is maad of alle þ*in*gis þat ben coold & drie, and distillid[11] / If þou be sent aft*er* i*n*to a cu*n*tre, þ*er*e be*n* noon apotecarijs, þan if þou canst 16 make þese medicyns þat ben forseid & medicyns þat schulen be seid heraftir, þan þou miȝt fulfille þi p*ur*pos[12] & do þi cure. Þou miȝt make [13]of þese þingis: oynementis, epithima, cathaplasmata, emplastra, enbrocaciou*n*s, pultes, encatismata. Of þese names manie 20 men tak*ith* oon for anoþ*er*, & þ*er*fore I wole telle þe diu*er*site of alle. ¶ **vnguentu*m*** is maad of .iiij. ʒ of oile & ʒ ß. of wex in wint*er*, & ʒ j. in somer, & ʒ j. of þ*in*gis þ*at* þin oynement schal serue þ*er*fore.[14] and oynementis schule*n* be algatis colid. ¶ **Epithima** 24 is þis, wh*an*ne þ*in*gis ben sotilli poudrid & temp*er*id wiþ wat*er* of ro*ses*, ouþ*er* wiþ vinegre, ouþ*er* iuys of ony herbe, so þ*at* it be temp*er*id i*n* þe þiknes of hony & leid vpon þe place, & hilid wiþ ly*n*nen cloop, ouþ*er* wiþ leþ*er*, þis is clepid epithimu*m*. ¶ **Cata-** 28 **plasma** is, whanne herbis ben grounde & soden ouþ*er* raw, & al þe substaunce of þe herbe þ*er*wiþ & medlid wiþ mele & grese, & it ne schal not be hard ne neische, but *in* þe meene, & it schal be leid

A physician is sometimes obliged to prepare himself his medicines.

[13 lf. 244]

vngu*entum*.

Epithima.

Cataplasma.

[1] *Silligo*, a kind of very white wheat.

[2] MS. *Spata*, *Spleta*. Lat.: Add. 26,106, fol. 109, "*spaca*"; ed. 1498, fol, 207, "*spica*." The preceding words show that *spica* is the correct reading.

[3] *Capreoli vitis*, the tendrils of vine. [4] MS. *stipticoris*.

[5] MS. *panne*. [6] med. Lat. alabaustrum.

[7] Lat.: murga uel merda. [8] MS. *litum*.

[9] *cimolea*, a kind of earth, so called after Cimolus, an island in the Cretan sea, where it is found. [10] MS. *Summa pruna*.

[11] Lat.: omnis aqua ex rebus siccis et frigidis distillata.

[12] Lat.: de quo tuum poteris propositum adimplere.

[14] et ℥ .i. pulueris rerum puluerizandarum, que ponuntur in unguento.

flasch hoot' vpon þe lyme. ¶ **Emplastru***m* is seide, wh*an*ne manie diuers þ*in*gis, as poudris and gu*m*mis & fatnessis, wex, talow, & oile be*n* soden togidere til þei bicome hard, & maad i*n* gobetis & kept'. & þan it' schal be maad abrood vpon leþir, & leid vpon þe place þ*at*' þ*o*u wolt' [1]haue it': as diaculon, apostolicon,[2] oxirocroce-u*m*,[3] & oþ*er*e manie. ¶ Pultes[4] & cathaplasma be*n* al oon, but' p*ro*-pirli pultes ben clepid, wh*an*ne þ*er* is mele, watir, & oile wiþouten herbis, & it' schal be clepid cataplasma, wh*an*ne herbis be*n* medlid þ*er*wiþ. ¶ Embroca[tio] is seid, wh*an*ne a m*an*nes lyme is putt' i*n* hoot' watir, wiþouten ony decocciou*n* of' herbis þ*er*on, & þ*at*' hoot' watir schal be cast' vpon þe lyme from an hiȝ, & so it' schal be do longe, & þis is clepid embrocare.[5] ¶ Encatisma is seid i*n* .ij. maners: sumtyme it' is seid for a clisterie, & su*m*tyme for a particuler [baþ],[6] anoon to þe nauele & non aboue þe nauel /

Emplastru*m*. Pultes. Cataplasma. Embroca. Encatisma.

¶ Medicyns þ*at*' ben compound togidere: Wh*an*ne þou entendist' for to make a lyme coold, & not' putte awei þe mater, þou schalt' take iuys of' herbis þ*at*' ben coold þre partis, olei ro*sis* oon p*ar*t', of' vinegre half' a p*ar*t', & medle he*m* togidere. If' þ*at*' þou wolt' þ*at*' it' worche more stro*n*gely, þan do þ*er*to argilla*m* rubea*m* / til it' be as þicke as it' were epithima, & leie it' to þe place. & herof' þou must' take kepe, þou schalt' vse þ*in*gis þ*at*' ben able for a m*an*nes complexioun / In þis maner if' þou leist' coold þ*in*gis to a place, [6]& ne hast' not' þi p*ur*pos þ*er*of', þan þ*o*u schalt' leeue þe coold medicyns, & make medicyns þ*at*' be*n* competent' to þe same complexiou*n* / for sum medicyne is for peter þ*at*' is not' good for poul, for þe diuersite of' complexiou*n*. & al þis techi*n*g' þou miȝt' fynde generalich i*n* þe tretis of' enpostyms. / ffor if' pet*er* be of' complexiou*n* hoot' & moist', & poulis complexiou*n* be coold & drie, oon rep*er*cussiou*n* wole not' serue he*m* boþe i*n* oon point'. & for þis cause þou muste diuerse þi medicyns; for þis is al dai p*r*eued bi exp*er*iment' as þou miȝt' se ofte tyme, þ*at*' crassula maior is a good rep*er*cussif' for coold mater,

2. Compound Medicines. Choose the medicines [6 leaf 245] according to the patient's constitution. Some medicine is good for Peter and bad for Paul. Nota.

[1 lf. 244, bk.]

[2] See p. 125, note 3.

[3] *oxirocroceum*. Lat. oxiracroceum. Matth. Sylv.: "oxirocroceum, i. emplastrum compositum ex aceto et croco."

[4] *pultes*, Lat. plur. of puls, tis. This plur. form used as sing.: Add. 10,440, fol. 23: "*be þer soþen a þinne pultes or gruel of barly.*" Compare the plur. form *pultesses*, Gasc. Steel Glas 997 (Skeat, *Et. Dict.*). For *poultice*, see Ital. pultaceo.

[5] *embroche*, Traheron Vigo Interpret.: "Embroche commeth of embrocho, whyche signifyeth to raine. And it is an embrocatio*n*, wh*en* we drop downe liquour from a hyer place, vpon some parte of the bodye, and vpon the head." See p. 339, note 1.

[6] Lat.: dicitur enim clistere, aliquando dicitur particularis balneatio.

& vmbilicus veneris is coold *in* þe same degre, & ȝitt' it' is not' so good repercussif' for þe same mater /

A medicine if there is a hot discrasia.

This is a good medicyn rep*er*cussif' þ*er*e þ*at*' þ*er* is miche discracia hoot' & litil mater / ℞, sandal*i* albi, spodij, acacie, an*a* .ʒ. ij, 4
.℞. camphore .ʒ. j., opij .ʒ. ß, distemp*er*e hem wiþ þe iuys of' a coold
℞. h*er*be, & oile of' violet', & a litil vinegre / **Item anoþ*er***. ℞, ossa sicca & *com*busta, cerusam,[1] amidu*m*, an*a* .ʒ. ij., temp*er*e hem as it' is forseid / It*em* anoþ*er* þ*at*' is comoun þ*at* is recordid *in* manie 8
.℞. placis. ℞, boli armenici .℥ j., olei ro*s*. ℥ iij., aceti .℥ j., þ*at* is þ*at*
[2 lf. 245, bk.] [2]defensif' þ*at*' is aforeseid *in* manie placis for to kepe a lyme fro corrupcio*n*. ¶ Also enplastris & epithima, þ*at*' ben forseid *in* doloribu*s* iuncturaru*m* of' hoot' cause ben good. þ*er*fore ioyne he*m* wiþ þese. 12

If after the use of repercussives, the place becomes livid, apply a cold resolving medicine.

¶ Herof' þou muste be war, þ*at*' wh*a*nne þou leist' rep*er*cussiuis to a place, þ*er*e þ*at*' þ*er* is miche mater, & if' þe place bicome ledi, þan þou schalt' contynue nomore wiþ pure coold þingis; but' do þ*er*to iuys of' coriandre grene & barli mele, for þis makiþ coold & resolueþ. 16
¶ If' þer be no ledi colour but' þe mater is greet', & nyle not' be doon awei wiþ rep*er*cussiuis, wh*a*nne þe flux of' humours is acesid, þan bigi*n*ne for to medle þ*er*wiþ resolutiuis; ȝitt' þou schalt' contynue wiþ rep*er*cussiuis þ*er*e þ*at*' þ*er* is greet' akynge / an ensaumple 20

An example how to use repercussives.

hereof' / If' þe akinge be *in* a m*a*nnes knee, þan þou schalt' first' leie medicyns vpon þe knee, & þan aftirward þou schalt' not' leie it' riȝt' vpon his knee, but' a litil aboue his knee, þ*at*' þe ende of' þe medicyn mowe touche þe firste p*ar*ti of' þe akynge. 24

Cold matter must be removed with hot and dry medicine.

¶ Coold mater as it' is aforseid, ne schal not be putt' awei wiþ rep*er*cussiuis, but' wiþ medicyns þ*at*' be*n* hoot' and [3]drie *in* temp*er*e, þ*at*' þei mowe wiþ her heete chaunge þe coold complexiou*n*, & [3 lf. 246]
wiþ her dreines comforte þe vertu of' þe lyme, & defende þ*at* þ*er* 28
come no more mater to þe lyme, & if' þe mater be litil, putte it' awei, & if' þou ne wolt' not' putte it' awei, defende þe place þ*at*' þ*er* falle nomore mater þ*er*to[4] / And alle þese be*n* hote wiþ a maner bittirnes: as absinthiu*m*, squinantu*m*, abrotanu*m*, poliu*m*, sticados, 32
centaurea maior & minor,[5] aristologia longa & ro*tunda*, mauribiu*m*,[6]

[1] MS. *ceresaris*. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cerusa. flos plumbi id. G. blonc plome A. wyt lede.*"

[4] Lat.: "materia ne ad membrum veniat prohibetur et etiam plerumque repellitur si sit pauca, sed etsi non omnino repellitur tamen locum ita deffendit, quod tanta non potest in ipso materia congregari."

[5] Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Centaurea. fol terre idem .G. centore .A. eristes laddir.*" ? In Britten and Holland's English Plant-names *Centaury* is at p. 96. *E. P. N.*, p. 37: "eorð-gealle." These names refer to *Centaurea minor*, see *Alphita*, p. 37. Centaurea maior = narca vel gentiana. *Ibid.*

[6] *mauribium*, Corp. Gl. M. 43: "*Marubium. biowryt vel hune.*" Wr.

mirta, mastix, lupini, oleum de masticis, & de absinthio / Herof' þou shalt' take kepe: manie men seien, & it' wole liȝtly be leeued of' lewid men, & þat' is yuel þing' for to leie a repercussif' to ony mater
4 for to driue it' awei, but' it' is bettir to drawe out' þe mater wiþ enplastris, & if' þer comeþ out' þerof' miche quitture, þei seien þat' a mannes bodi is wel purgid þerwiþ, & schal be longe þe holer þerfore / And if' þe mater be doon awei wiþ repercussiuis & þe enpostym
8 be defendid, þan if' þe same man be sijk aftirward, þan men wolen seie þat' it' was defaute in þe leche, for if' þe enpostym hadde be maad maturatif' [1]& þe quitture drawe out', þan þe man hadde be hool, & alle þese opiniouns ben false / And þou schalt' wite þis cer-
12 teynli: if' þou takist' kepe of' þe .x. consideraciouns þat' ben forseid in enpostyms, & principali wханne his body is maad clene wiþ laxatiuis þat' ben competent' þerfore / It' is bettir to putte awei þe mater wiþ comfortyng' of' þe lyme, þan lete þe mater conferme / for
16 if' þou kepist wel þe condiciouns þat' ben aforseid, the mater mai be putt' awei, & þe man schal not' be peirid //

Many men say, one ought not to remove bad matter by a repercussive, as suppuration purges the body;

Nota

[1 lf. 246, bk.]

but they are wrong,

for it is better to strengthen the limb by removing the matter, than to allow the matter to gather.

Of þe maner of resolutiuis.

WHanne oon strong', or[2] manye feble of' .x. causis lettiþ
20 repercussiuis, ouþir wханne þou hast' a repercussif', & þou ne miȝt' not' putte awei þe mater, þan þou muste leie þerto resolutiuis. & as it' is aforseid of' repercussiuis, in þe same maner I seie of' resolutiuis: wханne a man haþ akynge ouþir greet' swell-
24 ynge, þou schalt' leie þerto no resolutiuis, or þou haue maad him a competent' purgacioun. ¶ fforwhi, as it' is aforseid, enpostym ouþer greet' akynge comeþ of' causis wiþinneforþ, þan it' mote [4]nedis come of' repleccioun of' þe bodi. & þan if' þou leist' þerto resolutiuis, þat'
28 wolde drawe to þe place more mater / for þer is no resolutif', þat' ne it' is hoot' / & eueri þing' þat' is hoot', is attractif' / What schal we do in þis caas? ¶ ffirst' þou schalt' lete him blood, ouþir make him a medicyn laxatif', ouþir boþe two, as þou seest' þat' it' wole spede /
32 And þan þou schalt' bigynne for to resolue wiþ medicyns resolutiuis þat' been hoot' & sotil[5] // This is þe difference bitwixe resolutiuis & maturatiuis: ¶ Resolutiuis haueþ temperе hete wiþ sotilnes & open-

¶ co ijo[3] If you cannot use Repercussives, use resolvent medicines.

First give a purgaciou.

[4 lf. 247]

Every resolvent medicine is hot and "attractive," therefore use first blood-letting or purging.

Nota bene.

Wü. 136, 12 (XII. cent.), "*harhune.*" Add. 15,236, lf. 5: *Marubium prassium idem. G. marole. A. horehune. vel horehound.*"

[2] MS. *of.* [3] MS. omits.

[5] Some passages are omitted, in which Lanfranc quotes from his "Chirurgia parva."

Difference between resolving and maturing medicines.

ynge.[1] ¶ Maturatiuis haueþ te*mpe*re hete wiþ viscosite / þerfore it' falliþ ofte tyme, þat' whanne þou leist' resolutiuis vpo*n* miche mater & greet', it' makiþ þe mat*er* sotil & hoot', & þan þe kindely hete wiþi*nne* is co*m*fortid wiþ þe hete wiþoutforþ, & it' bifalliþ ofte tyme, 4 þat' medicyns resolutiuis in þis caas makiþ þe mater maturatif' / Also if' þou leist' medicyn maturatif' vpon litil mater & sotil it' hetiþ þe mater, & þe natural hete wiþi*nne* is comfortid þ*er*wiþ, & so

[2 lf. 247, bk.]

þe heete multiplieþ, & i*n* þis maner þe heete [2]mai be resolued. 8

Use the decoction, made to prepare the resolvent medicine, first as a wash.

¶ The maner of' resoluing': Make a decocciou*n* of' herbis of' whiche þow wolt' make þi medicyn, & kepe þe watir þat' þe herbis ben soden yn, & wiþ þe same watir þou schalt' waische þe lyme, til it' bicome reed, & þan leie þ*er*vpon þe medicyn resolutif'. ¶ Herof' 12 þou muste be war, þat ofte tyme a medycyn resolutif' resolueþ þe sotil mater, & þat' þat' is greet', bicomeþ hard, & þa*n* þe more þat' þou art' aboute to resolue, þe more it' wole bicome hard / þ*er*fore þou muste be bisi in þis caas & leie þ*er*to mollificatiuis, & þan þou 16 schalt' go to resolutiuis, & i*n* þis maner þou schalt' worche it' til it' be al resolued.

Simple resolvent medicines.

¶ Of' medicyns resolutiuis, su*m*me ben simple: as, camomilla, Mellilotu*m*, paritaria, malua siluestris & alia,[3] volibilis,[4] fumus terre, caulis, anetu*m*, vrtica, enula, borago, sambucus, kebu- 20 lus, valeriana, & alle herbis þat' ben hoot' i*n* temp*e*re,[5] wiþ sotilnes. ¶ De seminib*us* / Se*mi*na caulium, aneti, vrtice, malue. Se*mi*na diuretica: cantabru*m*,[6] om*n*e,[7] farina ordei, orobi, & fabe / Pinguede

[8 lf. 248]

porci & anseri, anatis, galline, aquile. ¶ De gu*m*mis / [8]Mastix, 24 olibanu*m*, opoponac, asa fetida, mirra, serapinu*m*, armonicu*m*, bdellium, galbanu*m*, & alle maner sotil gu*m*mis: lapdanu*m*, ysop*us* humida, terbentina, cera, swetynge of' bestis, & buttir.

Compound resolvent medicines.

¶ Medicyns resolutif' & *com*pou*n*d of' þe forseid, simple þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe 28

A resolving oil.

nexte chapitre here tofore / þis is an oile resoluinge / & makiþ hoot' & accessiþ akynge / ℞, flor*um* camomille recenciu*m*, fenigrec*i* se*mi*n*is* an*a* .℥ ij., leie he*m* i*n* xx .℥ j. of' oile of' oliue i*n* a glasen vessel, & lete it' stonde to þe su*m*ne .xl. daies in somer, & þan kepe it' for 32

℞

[1] Lat. cum subtilitate aperitiua.

[3] The Prints read "siue *alba*." Add. 26,106, siue *alba* corrected to *alia*. The correct reading is either *alta* or *altea*. Add. 15,236, lf. 5: "*Malua viscus. bismalua. Altea idem. G. Wymauve A. mersmauve.*" *Alphita*, p. 110: "Malva silvestris, malva viscus, altea . . . alta malva idem."

[4] MS. volibilis. *Alphita*, p. 192: "*Volubilis, corrigiola idem, arbores parvas et herbas ligat. gall.* [*corrigi*]*ole, angl. berebinde.*"

[5] Lat. temperate calida.

[6] *cantabrum*, bran. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cantabrum .i. grossum furfur tritici vel frumenti .G. la grose brene.*" [7] Lat.: omne amilum de ordeo.

þin vss. If þou haddist nede herof & if it[1] were in winter, þan take þe flouris of camomille dried & fenigrec & oile, as it is aforseid, & sette þis glasen vessel *in* a caudrou*n* ful of watir, & make fier
4 vndir, & loke þat þe wat*er* ne boile not, & so it schal stonde al a dai in hoot wat*er* / & wh*an*ne it is cold cole it, & kepe þe oile for þin vss / And *in* þis maner þou miȝt make oile of ro*sis*, if þou hast nede, & oile of absinthiu*m*, & of rue, & of oþ*er* mo þat þou hast
8 nede of // **Anoþ*er* oile** þat is resolutif / ℞, olei antiqui .lī. j., se*min*is aneti nouit*er* in vmbra siccati .℥ j., putte hi*m* *in* a viol fourti daies to þe su*n*ne, ouþ*er* sette it *in* hoot wat*er* [2]as it is aforseid. ¶ Anoþ*er* oile þat is resoluyng and makiþ hoot & accessiþ akynge,
12 & is good for to achaufe a ma*n*nys reynes & a wom*m*ans maris, & it is clepid oliu*m* de lilio compositu*m* / ℞, olij antiqui .℥. xx., flor*um* liliorum albor*um*, & kutte awei þ*er*of al þat is ȝelowe, cassilaginis,[3] costi, masticis, carpobalsami an*a* .℥ i.,[4] cinamo*n*i an*a* .℥ ß., putte alle
16 þese *in* a glasen vessel, & lete he*m* stonde *in* þe schadowe al a moneþe, & þan do awey þe lilie flouris of þe oile, & kepe þe oile for þin vss. ¶ Anoþ*er* oile þat is clepid oliu*m* mastice, & is swiþe resolutif, & is good for febilnes of þe stomac, & it is good for
20 akynge of a mannes stomac / ℞, oli*um* oliuar*um* mediocrit*er* matur*ar*um .lī. ij., masticis .℥. vj., boile he*m* togidere *in* a double vessel, til þe mastix & þe oile be dissolued, & kepe it for þin vss. ¶ This þou muste knowe, þat wh*an*ne þou wolt make þat, þat schal be
24 rep*er*cussif & coold & comfortyng for þe lyme, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is not to ripe, as for to make oliu*m* ro*sis*, oliu*m* mirtinu*m*, & oþ*er*e mo. If þou wolt make oile þat schal be resoluyng, ouþ*er* persyng, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is ripe / And *in* þis man*er*
28 þou schalt [5]knowe, whe þ*er* þe oile be ripe or no. Oile þat is not ripe, wole be grene, & þat is ripe wole be whit, & þat þat is *in* þe meene, wole be meene colour bitwixe þe two. ¶ Oynementis þat ben resolutif ben maad *in* þis man*er*: of iiij .℥ of[6] oile of camo-
32 mille ouþ*er* of su*m* oþ*er* oile & ℥ j. of wex in somer, & ℥ ß. in wint*er*, & ℥ j. of poudre of seedis of aneti, caulio*m*, flouris of camom*ille*. ¶ Ysopus humida is a good oynement resolutif, & is maad *in* þis maner: / **Take** of þe smal wolle þat is bitwixe þe
36 schepis leggis, & take þ*er*of a good quantite, & take as miche wat*er*,

Another resolving oil. ℞

[2 lf. 248, bk.]

Oil of lilies.

℞

Nota

℞

Nota

[5 lf. 249]

How to distinguish ripe and unripe olive-oil.

Ysopus humeda.

℞

[1] *if it*, above line.

[3] Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cassilago, Iusquiamus idem G. geliner A. henebel. vel heneban.*" The Lat. has *Cassio lignea*, see *Alphita*, p. 35.

[4] *carpobalsamum*, "balsames bloed." Wr. Wü., 199, 41 (X cent.).

[6] MS. *of* twice.

& lete þe wolle ligge *in* þe watir adai & anyȝt, & þan boile hem a litil wiþ lent fier, & þan cole he*m*, & wh*an*ne þei ben coold, wrynge hem þoruȝ a cloop, & do þe wat*er* þ*er*of into a leden vessel, & boile it wiþ lent fier, & algate meeue it wiþ a spature til it bicome þicke 4
as it were an oynement. ¶ Of enplastris þe beste þat is diaculon Rasis þat resolueþ scrophulas & glandulas, & makiþ carbunculis ma-
℞ maturatif & is swiþe comou*n* / ℞, olij antiqui de oliuis maturis vncias q*uin*q*ue*, litargiri .℥ j., & þ*o*u schalt poudre þe litarge *in* a mort*er* & 8
[1 lf. 249, bk.] do þ*er*to [1]þ*in* oile & medle he*m* togidere, & þan do he*m* *in* a vessel & boile he*m* togidere, & meeue he*m* algatis wiþ a spature, & do þ*er*to de muscillagine se*min*is lini, fenigreci, an*a* .℥ ij, & muscillagi*nn*e*m* malue visci .℥ j, & þan boile he*m* til þei bicome þicke, & make þ*er*of 12
gobetis & kepe he*m* to þ*in* vss, & if þou wolt worche þ*er*wiþ, take þ*er*of as miche as þou wolt, & plane it vpon leþ*er* or vpon ly*nn*en
Ioh*an*nes Mesue cloop, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ Diaculon Ioh*ann*is Mesue is better þan þis / & worchiþ more strongli. þ*at* þou schalt finde *in* paruo 16
℞ *com*pendio. ¶ Also anoþ*er* plastre þat is resolutif / ℞, maluar*um* siluestru*m*, paritarie, flouris of camomille, Melliloti ana ℳ. j., boile he*m* *in* watir til þei be wel soden, & þan stampe he*m*, & take of þe same watir .iij. p*ar*tis, & of su*m* oile þ*at* is resolutif oon 20
p*ar*ti, se*min*is caulium, aneti p*artem* ℔., furfuris, farine ordei, an*a* p*artem* j., boile hem alle togidere & make þ*er*of as it were pultes, & þan do þ*er*to of þe herbis þat ben soden as miche as of al þe remenaunt, & leie it vpon þe place þat þou wolt, su*m*del hoot as 24
[2 lf. 250] it is aforseid, & seke medici*n*s resolut*iu*is [2]þat ben *in* p*ar*uo *com*pendio, & do it to, & þan þ*o*u miȝt haue medicyns resolutiuis ynowe /

A resolving plaster.

Another resolving plaster.

Of þe tretis of þe foure maturatiuis. 28

c° iij° 3 If resolving and repercussive medicines have no effect, then bring the matter to maturation.

WHanne þou hast resolued mani daies ouþ*er* leid þ*er*to repercussiuis, & ne is nouȝt worth, saue þe mater wole bicome maturatif, þan if his bodi be avoidid as it is aforseid, þan [begynne][4] for to leie þ*er*to maturat*iu*is / Eueri medicyn þat is maturatif is 32
hoot *in* te*mpe*re wiþ a maner viscosite þat wole not suffre þe vapour to goon out, but it holdiþ hi*m* wiþi*nn*e til it be maturid; & ben þese: Malua viscus, branca vrcina, radix brionie, radix lappacii

Maturing Simples:

[3] MS. om.

[4] Lat.: "Quando pluribus resoluisti diebus aut forte repercussisti, nec valet, sed materia desiderat maturari, tunc premissis evacuationibus necessariis vel possibilibus, *incipe* maturare."

acuti,[1] baucie[2] Radix, farine frumenti, semen lini, fenigreci, ficus sicce, & alle þat' ben forseid *in* þe nexte chapitre tofore, if' *þat'* þei beþ medlid herwiþ. ¶ **This is a good maturatif' c*om*pound of'** A compound maturing medicine.
4 **manie þingis *þat'* makiþ hoot' mater maturatif'.** ℞, folior*um* ℞
malue nigre, i*d est* comou*n* malue pinguis seu ortolane, brance vrcine, radix brioni, radicis malue visci an*a*. ℭ .j., seþe he*m* alle i*n* watir & stampe he*m*, & þan do *þer*to malua visci, & þan take of' þe same
8 watir a pound [3]& freisch grese .℥ ij., & sotil mele of' whete .℥ iij., [3 lf. 250, bk.]
& sotil mele of' lynseed & of' fenigrec an*a* .℥ j. & ß., medle hem togidere & boile he*m* *per*fiȝtli, & make *þer*of' cataplasma, & þan do *þer*to of' þe foreseid herbis & rootis wel grou*n*de, & medle he*m*
12 togidere, & loke *þat'* þei be not' to þicke / for it' schal be algate þin entenciou*n*, *þat'* cataplasma, *þat'* schal be resolutif' or maturatif' or mundificatif', ne schal not' be hard; for if' it' be hard, it' wole make akynge to þe lyme, & þan it' wole anoie more þan p*r*ofite. ¶ Item, **Nota.** Caution against Fennil, if there is any danger, that the matter may get inflamed.
16 if' þou dredist' woodnes of' mater, þan þou ne schalt' do *þer*to no fenigrec; for it' is swiþe hoot', & *þer*wiþ þe mater wole be as it' were a feuere.[4] & *þer*fore I counseile þee *þat'* þou do no fenigrec þerto / If' þou dredist', *þat'* þe mat*er* is swiþe hoot' / if' *þer* be wiþ *þat'*
20 mat*er* ony gretnes or ony coold mater, þan make of' þe forseid cataplasma .ij. p*ar*tis, fermenti de frumento[5] p*ar*tem j., & medle hem togidere. & Isaac seiþ: *þat'* þis is good for mater *þat'* is medlid wiþ **Isaac.** hoot' cause & coold cause togidere. ¶ Also a good maturatif' / Take ℞
24 hony & butt*er* an*a*, & medle he*m* w*ith* mele til þei be as þicke as it' were pultes. [6]¶ Item embrocac*iou*ns *in* resoluciou*n*s & matura- [6 lf. 251]
ciou*n*, & is good for akynge of' wou*n*dis of' co*n*cussiou*n* *in* þe heed / concussiou*n* is as miche to seie as smiten wiþ a staf' / ℞, olij ℥ ij., ℞
28 cere al*be* ℥ j., cimini, rute, arthemesie an*a*. ℥ ß., absinth*i*, paritarie, brance vrcine, an*a* ℥ ij., grinde wel þe herbis & þe grese togidere *in* a morter, & þa*n* do *þer*to poudre of' comyn, & oile, & medle hem wel togidere. ¶ Also pultes *þat'* wole make an enpostym
32 maturatif': ℞, folior*um* malue, bismalue, paritorie, volubilis maioris, ℞
iusq*uia*mi an*a* ℥ ij., seþe hem in a litil watir, & þan p*r*esse hem & staumpe he*m* wel, & þan medle he*m* wiþ ℥ iij of' þe same watir *þat'* þei weren soden y*n*ne, & medle *þer*wiþ ℥ j. of' grese, *þat'* it' be cold,
36 & barli mele *þat'* suffisiþ / In þis maner þou schalt' make a coold

[1] MS. *lappa acuta.*
[2] *baucia. Alphita*, p. 21: "pastinaca, angl. widleskirwit."
[4] Lat.: et cito per illum inflammatur materia.
[5] MS. *fermento.*

℞ mater maturatif / ℞, cepe unum[1] albu*m*, it*e*m de capitib*us* allij, & sette hem vndir askis, & distemp*er*e hem wiþ þe .iij. p*ar*t of buttir, & do þ*er*to mele of fenigrek, & of lynseed, & make þ*er*of an enplast*re*. & do þ*er*to .ij. ȝelkis of eiren soden hard, & ℥ j. off malui visci p*re*parati, & ℥ ij. of fermenti. ¶ Also a maturatif of

℞ greet mater & coold & hard. ℞, bdellij, serapini an*a* ℥ j. & ß, & [2 lf. 251, bk.] dissolue he*m* *in* vineg*re* / [2]& stampe he*m* wel, & do þ*er*to .℥ j. of terbentyne, & dissolue hem to þe fier / But loke þat it ne boile not, & do þ*er*to oile of lilie .℥ ij., & make it picke wiþ sutil mele

℞ of lupinis, & of fenigrec / It*e*m ℥ ß. of olibani, & fenigrec m*aa*d to poudre sotili poudrid, & medle hem wiþ .lī. ß of hony; þis wole be a good maturatif for coold causis. ¶ Also vnguentu*m* tet*ra*farm-

Basilicum maius. acu*m*,[3] & it is clepid of Auicenne basilicon,[4] & þus manie men

Auic*en*. p*re*isiþ þis medicyn. G*a*l*en*, A*uicen*, Serapion, Ioh*ann*es Mesue, & Haly þe abbot; & it makiþ enpostyms maturatif, & it is good for

Basilicum minus. woundis, & for vlcera þat ben bicome hard / ℞, cere, resine, picis, cepi vaccini,[5] an*a*, & oli*j* q*uod* suffisiþ / Su*m*men i*n* stide of cepu*m*, þei putten buttir, & su*m*men in winter þei doon þerto oon p*ar*ti of bdelliu*m*, & su*m*me*n* take*n* oonli ceram, picem, & rasina*m* ana, &

A maturing medicine for anthrax and malignant apostemas. oliu*m*; & þis is basilicon minus. ¶ Also a good maturatif for antracem / & is good for to make a wickid enpostym maturatif, as I haue aforseid i*n* his place / ℞, ficus siccas be*ne* pingues, num*er*o

℞ .vj., vue passe[6] de corinthio .℥ j., duas spicas allij mundatas, pip*er*is g*ra*na .xij., salis nitri .ʒ .ij., stampe alle þese & do þ*er*to oold oile [7 lf. 252] ℥ ij., aceti [7]℥ j., fermenti acerimi as miche as is þe half of alle to-gidere. ¶ Also a maturatif for ant*ra*cem / but if he be swiþe hard & malicious, an enplastre m*aa*d of hony is good þ*er*fore & of oile of violet. ¶ Also for to make antracem & carbunculu*m*

℞ maturatif / ℞, fermenti acris, lactis mulieris, mellis, vitellor*um* ouor*um* an*a*, medle hem togidere. If þou wolt worche more stro*n*geli, do þerto galbanu*m* dissolued as myche as þe haluendel of oon. & if þou wolt make it more strong, for to make it maturatif, & for to make it breke, þan do þ*er*to culu*eris* doung & of he*n*nis an*a*, as miche as wole be .iiij. p*ar*t of oon, as it is aforseid / baurac,

[1] MS. *vinum*. Add. 26,106, fol. 103 *b*.: "cepe unum album."

[3] MS. *cetrafaroȝatum*.

[4] Phillips: "*Basilicon*, a Royal Ointment or Plaister, otherwise called Tetrapharmacon, because it is made up of four Ingredients, viz., Pitch, Rosin, Wax, and Oil."

[5] Lat.: sepi vaccini.

[6] *vue passe*, dried grapes, *i. e.* raisins.

vj. p*ar*t' of' oon & ß.; þese .iij. maturatiuis suffisiþ þee / ¶ Also þis is a rule þat' is ful p*r*ofitable for þee / wh*an*ne þou wolt' leie ony maturatif' to a place: first' þou schalt' make embrocam[1] to þe lyme
4 wiþ a decocciou*n* of' herbis maturat*iu*is, soden i*n* watir, & wiþ þ*at*' hoot' watir þou schalt' baþe þe lyme til þe lyme bicome reed, & þ*an* leie þ*er*on a plastre of' maturatiuis þat' ben forseid oon þ*er*of', for þou hast' sufficiently ynowe, & loke þ*at*' þe enplastre be not' to hard, [2]& [2 lf. 252, bk.]
8 as hoot' as he mai suffre it' þ*o*u schalt' leie it' þ*er*to / ¶ Thou hast' herd sufficientli of' maturatiuis, ynow it' is nede to speke of' mundificat*iu*is. For wh*an*ne an hard matir is m*aa*d maturatif', it' is nede for to leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis as it' is forseid in þe worchinge of'
12 enpostyms /

¶ Of þe tretis of mundificatiuis /

MUndificatu*m* is as miche to seie as cle*n*syng', & doiþ awei hore. & eueri þ*in*g' þ*at*' doiþ awei hore i*n* woundis & sup*er*-
16 fluite, may be seid a mundificatif' / A mundificatif' may be seid i*n* .ij. maners / As a medicyn þ*at*' is take*n* bi þe mouþ, ouþ*er* þ*at*' is putt' i*n* bineþe wiþ a clisterie, ouþ*er* wiþ a pessarie[3] for to make clene a ma*n*nes lymes wiþi*n*ne. & of' þis kinde ben sirupis maad of'
20 seedis þ*at*' makiþ clene a ma*n*nes lymes, & weies of' þe vrine / And þ*er* ben su*m*me medicyns þ*at*' makiþ clene a ma*n*nes blood as cassia fistula, manna,[4] tamarindi; & al medicyns laxatiuis mowen be clepid mu*n*dificatiuis, & herof is not' e*n*te*n*cioun in þis caas /
24 ¶ Anoþir. I wole speke of' medicyns mundificatif' in cirurgie.[5] & þ*at*' is p*r*opirli seid a medicyn, þ*at*' doiþ awei greet' sup*er*fluite ouþ*er* gret' greuance [6]of' quitture, ouþ*er* remeueþ[7] awei harde crustis [6 lf. 253]
i*n* woundis, ouþir i*n* vlceribu*s*, & makiþ clene wou*n*dis & vlcera of'
28 þ*at*' sup*er*fluite / ffor as it' is seid i*n* anoþ*er* place: In eueri wounde þ*at*' is holow, þ*at*' is as miche to seie as wh*an*ne it' haþ lost' substaunce of' fleisch þ*er*on, þan bi skille[8] þ*er* schulde be engendrid þ*er*on .ij. sup*er*fluites, þ*at*' oon schal be greet', & þ*at*' oþer schal be
32 sotil. & þese wollen lette þe souding' of' a wounde, & þei wolen

A mundificative medicine,

may either be taken inwardly or applied by a clyster or pessary.

[1] Lat.: prius locum embrocas. Matth. Sylv.: "*Embroca* id est infusio quam nos dicimus fomentum & embrocatio id est infusio sed quando ab alto infuuditur." See p. 331, note 5.

[3] Traheron, Vigo. Interpret.: "*Pessarie.* Pessus is woll tossed, and made rounde after the fassyon of a fynger wherewith medicines are receyued and conueyed into the matrice."

[4] MS. *mancı.*

[5] Lat.: Alio modo loquimur de medicina mundificatiua in cyrurgia.

[7] MS. *remeued.*

[8] Lat. necessario.

lette þat þe fleisch mai not wexe. ¶ Þan medicyn mundificatif remeueþ greet superfluite. Of driynge medicyns, we wolen speke in þe chapitre next / This maner medicyn schal go bifore regeneracioun & consolidacioun, of whiche we wolliþ speke herafter; 4 þouȝ aggregatiua or conglutinatiua come sumtyme for to soude wiþouten þat, þat þis medicyns ne goiþ not tofore, as whanne woundis ben sewid & ben maad hool wiþouten regeneracioun of quitture. Þis medicyn makiþ clene, & drieþ sumwhat, as water & hony 8 whanne vlcera virulenta beþ waischen þerwiþ, ouþir woundis in which agendriþ miche quitture; & sumtyme it is more strong, as [1 lf. 253, bk.] whanne þer beþ medlid þerwiþ poudris corosiuis þat han litil [1] vertu of corosiuis, & helpiþ for to make clene, & whanne corosiuis ben 12 seid for to take awey yuel fleisch þat ne mai not be taken awei with medicyns /

Therfore I wole sette medicyns bi rule, & first I wole speke of medicyns þat ben simple / ffor as me seiþ .x. siþis rehersid liketh a 16 man.[2] ¶ Thou schalt wite þis þat woundis þat ben freisch, þer it is no nede for to engendre quitture whanne þer is noon concussioun, neiþer of nerues, ne of boon, ne prickynge, ne þer is noon akynge þerwiþ / þan it is no nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis, but oonli 20 consolidatiuis / But whanne a wou[n]de is chaungid wiþ þe eir or enpostymed, or greet akynge, þan þou muste leie þerto maturatiuis; & whanne þe akynge & þe opere accidentis ben awei, þan þou schalt bigynne for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is aforseid in his 24 chapitre / This is a coold mundificatif for to make clene woundis

If a wound is fresh and not complicated with any contusion, apply only a consolidative medicine.

In any other case apply first a maturing and then a "mundificative" medicine.

℞ þat ben freisch in which is good quitture. ℞, mellis rosati colati .℥. iij., farine subtillissime ordei .℥ j., & do þerto a litil water, & [3 lf. 254] seþe hem softli þat þei ne brenne not, & algate þou schalt [3] meue it 28 wiþ a spature, & þan make it abrood vpon a clooþ, & leie it vpon

Nota

þe wounde / This makiþ clene & comfortiþ / If it so be þat a wounde be in nerues placis, þan it is good for to do þerto a litil terbentyn waischen, whanne it is doon adoun fro þe fier / for ter- 32 bentyn schal not boile, whanne itt schal be putt into enplastris, for it wole lese his worching in þe boilyng. ¶ **Anoþir mundificatif þat makiþ clene duram matrem whanne a man is hurt in þe**

℞ **heed, & whanne dura mater is bicome blac** / ℞, mellis rosati 36 colati ℥ j., olij ℥ ß., medle hem togidere. ¶ Anoþer mundificatif

[2] Add. 26,106, fol. 104: "et quum medicine simplices raro ponuntur ad mundificandum, ideo ponam medicamina composita per ordinem, denumerando medicinas simplices, non curando, quoniam decies repetita placebunt."

þat makiþ woundis maturatif þat ben to-swolle & ben not to brennyng hoot, but sumwhat toward cooldnes / ℞, mellis rosati colati ℞
.lī. ß., farine fenigreci .℥ ij., farine ordei .℥ j. ¶ **Anoþer mundifi-**
4 **catif for vlcera þat beþ newe in enpostyms** / Take ȝelkis of eiren ℞
rawe, & medle þerwiþ whete mele as miche as wole suffise; þis wole make clene & do awei þe akynge, & make þe place coold / ¶ **Also anoþer mundificatif þat wole make maturatif þerwiþ, & is good**
8 **wh*an*ne a man wole** [1] kutte an enpostym tofore his tyme. & it is [[1] lf. 254, bk.]
a propre medicyn for to make clene antrasem & carbunculo & alle maner pustulis þat ben venymous aftir þe tyme þat þei ben opened, & it is good for to make clene, vlcera þat ben oold / ℞ mellis albi ℞
12 boni .lī. ß., farine subtilissime tritici .℥ iij, medle hem togidere in a panne. & wh*an*ne þei ben wel medlid, þan do þerto iuys of apium .℥ vij., & þan medle hem wel togidere vpon lent fier, & boile hem til þei bicome as it were pultes. & þan do hem adoun of þe
16 fier & stire hem wel, & kepe hem for þin vss / If it so be þat þou dredist of a cancre or of a festre in vlceribus þat ben oold, & if þou wolt make a mundificatif þerfore, þan in þe stide of apium do absinthium, & it wole be good. ¶ Anoþer mundificatif in vlceribus
20 þat ben rotid, & wh*an*ne þer engendriþ þervpon greet rotyng / ℞, ℞
mellis lī .j., farine siliginis .℥ iiij., farine fenigreci, orobi, lupinorum, mirre, an*a* ℥ j., succi absinthij lī .j., medle hem alle togidere, & poudre þingis þat schulen be poudrid, & boile hem sotilli til þei be
24 perfiȝtli boilid; & wh*an*ne þou doist hem adoun of þe fier, þan do þerto of terbentyn .℥ iiij., [2] & medle hem wel togidere / Alle þese [[2] lf. 255]
mundificatiuis schulen be maad abrood vpon a cloop of lynnen, & leid vpon vlcus for to make it clene aftir þe tyme þat þei beþ
28 waische, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus / ¶ A poudre þat is mundificatif of crustis & greet fleisch þat is engendrid in oold vlceribus, & wiþoute greet violence of fretyng / ℞, succi affo- ℞
dillorum .℥ vj., calcis viue .℥ ij., auripigmenti .℥ j., medle hem
32 togidere, & sette hem in þe sunne in þe moneþe of august, & on nyȝtis do it out of þe eir, & in þis maner þou schalt do til it be drie, & make herof gobetis, & þan drie hem in þe schadowe. & þou schalt kepe hem in a vessel of tree in a place þat be not to
36 drie, ne to moist. & wh*an*ne þou hast nede þerto, grinde oon þerof, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also a good mundificatif for vlcera is vnguentum viride, þat is maad of oon part of vert de grece, & .ij. **vng^m viride**
partis of hony, medlid wel togidere. ¶ Also a good oynement for
40 to make clene, vlcera þat ben hori, & festri, & polipum, & wickid

vlcera, & is clepid vng*uentum* veneris, ou*þer* vng*uentum* ap*ostolo*-
[1 lf. 255, bk.] *rum*. & it' is good for to remeue awei fleisch i*n* vlce*r*is / [1]℞, cere
℞ albe, rasine albe, armoniaci an*a* .ʒ. xiiij., bdellij, astrologie, olibani
gu*m*mosi an*a* .ʒ. vj., galbani, mirre an*a* .ʒ. iiij., litargiri .ʒ. viij., 4
opoponac, floris eris an*a*. ʒ. iij.; þe gu*m*mys schulen be maad neische
i*n* vinegre, & dissolued wiþ fier þ*at*' be lent', & þan do þ*er*to wex
dissolued wiþ lī. ij. of' oile in somer, & iiij. i*n* wi*n*t*er*. & wh*an*ne
þei ben molten, do þ*er*to þi poudris, & make þ*er*of' an oynement'. 8
¶ Anoþ*er* oynement' clensiþ wel nerues & drawiþ out' þe quitture, &
Mundificatiuum de rasina. it' is clepid mundificat*iuum* rasina[2] / ℞, rasine, mellis, terbentyn
an*a* .lī. ß., mirre, sarcocolle, fárine fenigreci, se*min*is lini an*a* ʒ j.,
dissolue þe rosyn, hony & wex togidere, & þan do þ*er*to þi poudris, 12
& make þ*er*of' pultes. ¶ Also we moten vse medicyns þ*at*' ben
more strong', & ben clepid medicine cauteriʒ*an*tes, for to make clene
vlcera þ*at*' be*n* yuel i*n* ne*r*uo*us* place. & þe teching' herof' þou
schalt' fynde i*n* þe chapitre de medic*in*is facientib*us* op*us* caute*r*ij. 16

Of medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidat*iu*is.

Restorative Medicines

IT þinkiþ bi þe maner of' speche þ*at*' þe medicyns þ*at*' ben seid
i*n* þis chapitre ben al oon, but' þ*er* is miche difference bi-
[3 lf. 256] twixe / ffor [3]of' su*m*men alle þei ben clepid consolidat*iu*is. 20
are differently named by different authors. But' aggregatiue & consolidatiue be*n* al oo*n* / And regenera-
tiue, & incarnatiue, & facie*n*tes carnem nasci, ben oon to seie; &
þ*er* is greet' difference bitwixe he*m* þ*at*' ben forseid & þese / And
sigillatiuis, & cicatriʒatiuis, & consolidatiuis ben al oon; neþeles 24
alle þese names be*n* not' p*ro*pirli take of' alle auctouris / But' oon
he*r*of' is taken for anoþ*er* ofte tyme / But' for to seie þe soþe, a
Auic*en*. medicyn þ*at*' is clepid aggregatu*m* or conglutinatu*m*, & A. in diuers
placis tak*eth* diuersli þese names of' medicyns: & I suppose þ*at*' it' 28
were for defaute of' men þ*at*' translatid þe science / But' for to seie
þe soþe, aggregatiua or consolidatiua is a drie medicyne, & haþ
gu*m*mosite i*n* hi*m*; & wh*an*ne it' is leid to þe lyme, it' wole resolue
wiþ his drienes. It' d*r*ieþ vp superfluite of' moistnes þ*at*' is bitwixe 32
þe lippis of' a wounde, wiþ a litil ligature or sewing' it' soudiþ
Auic*en*. togidere.[4] & A. clepiþ þis i*n*carnati*ua*m, & su*m*men clepen it' con-
solidatiua*m*, & ben þese / Sang*ui*s dra*conis*, calx, thus masc*u*lin*um*

[2] Lat.: mundificatiuum de rasina.

[4] Add. 26,106, fol. 105: "superfluam siccat humiditatem que inter duo vulneris labia, per medicum ligatura sola vel sutura conducta, reperitur."

folia pirorum, pomorum, porri, lilij cortices, palme,[1] arnaglossa, caulis, folia cipressi, folia vitis [2]albe, nux recens, folia acetose, puluis molendini, ordeum vstum, flos sorbe, lac acetosum, & oþere manie þat' ben vnknowen for us / Sumtyme men maden grete woundis & leiden þervpon manie herbis, & weren hool in þe same dai; & þei camen for to take of' þe same herbis, & ne miȝten noon fynde þat' wolde do so more / **A good medicyn for þis entencioun**: ℞, frankencense partem vnam, sanguis draconis partes duas, calcis viue partes tres, & make herof' poudre; & leie ynowȝ vpon þe .ij. lippis of' þe wounde þat' is sewid togidere, as it' is aforseid in þe chapitre of' woundis. ¶ Anoþer poudre þat' is good for þis entencioun; but' in placis þat' is myche fleisch aweie, it' is nede for to leie þerto þingis to regendre fleisch, þat' we wolliþ speke þerof' soone heraftir. ℞, olibani lucidi, aloes, sanguis draconis ana, make þerof' poudre. ¶ **Anoþer comoun for to streyne blood, & for to soude woundis**: ℞, sarcocolle partes duas, sanguis draconis, balaustie ana partem vnum,[3] olibani lucidi partem ℩, & make herof' poudre.

¶ Medicyns forto regendre fleisch haueþ propriete forto congile blood, þat' comeþ to þe place wiþ tempere drienes, & makiþ þerof' [4]fleisch, & makiþ clene superfluite þat' wexiþ þeron. & þis is in diuers maner / ffor whi, if' a lyme be woundid in þat' maner þat' it' be nede for to regendre fleisch þeron, & þe place is drie, & þer is miche quitture in þe wounde, þan it' is nede þat' þou haue swiþe drijng' medicyns. ¶ If' þat' he haue litil quitture & his bodi be moist', — — alle þese techingis þou hast' had tofore.[5] ¶ Medicyns þat' ben liȝt' þat' þou schalt' vse þere, þat' þer is litil quitture yn moist' bodies: ℞, thus minutum, mastix, farina ordei, fenigreci. And þese beþ sumwhat' more drier: aristologie, yreos, & orobum, aloes, mirra, pix greca, farina fabarum; & more strong' þat' þou schalt' vse in bodies: astrologia, yreos, farina lupinorum, dragantum adustum, vitriolum adustum; for if' it' be brent' it' wole be þe lasse bityng', & his drienes ne schal not' be alaskid. ¶ For .vij. causis diuers þingis ben brent': Summe ben brent', for sum vertu in hem schulde wexe / And summe þat' þe malice þerof' schulde goon awei: as mirabolani, þat' haueþ vertu of' laxatif', & virtutem stipticam, for whanne it' is brent' his vertu laxatif' is maad lasse; & his vertu þat' is clepid stiptica, is neuer þe lasse, but' it' is þe more. In þe same

Consolidative medicines. [2 lf. 256, bk.] Simples. Compound Consolidatives. ℞ ℞ ℞ Medicines which promote the regeneration of flesh. [4 lf. 257] Simple incarnative medicines, mild medicines, ℞ strong medicines. Nota Substances are burnt for medical use for several reasons. .1.

[1] MS. *pullme.* [3] *sic.*

[5] Lat.: si vero pauca fuerit sanies, & membrum & corpus fuerint humida, medicina tunc indiges minus sicca, sicut superius habuisti.

[[1] lf. 257, bk.] man*er* [1]vitriolu*m* lesiþ his scharpnes, & his driencs is not' lost' /
.2. The .ij. is þis, þat' his greet' *s*ubstaunce mowe be maad sutil, as
.3. cancri i*d est* crabbis þat' ben brent' / The .iij. cause is þis, þat' it' mowe
gadere scharpnes, as stoonys, oistris, & schellis of' eirén, þat' be*n* 4
.4. brent' þat' me mai make lyme of' he*m* / The .iiij. is, þat' it' mowe be
aparailid for to be grou*n*de*n*, as seta sericu*m*[2] / & among' alle
medicyns þat' ben for þe herte þat' mowe be grou*n*de, ben þe beste
as gold & siluir[3] / In þis maner þou schalt' diȝte hem for to grinde / 8
Seþe he*m* i*n* sulfur i*n* leed, þat' þei mowe þe bettir be grounde /
.5. The .v. cause is þis, þat' þe wickidnes þerof' mowe be take awei:
as of' scorpiou*n*s þat' ben brent', þat' we mowe vse he*m* in medicyns,
.6. þat' ben for þe stoon. The .vj. cause is þis, þat' his ve*r*tu mowe be 12
maad þe more, as sq*u*illis wh*a*nne þei ben brent', her vertu wole be
.7. þe more / The .vij. cause is þis, þat' his ve*r*tu mowe be take fro
hi*m*: as psillio*m*, wh*a*nne it' is brent' / his ve*r*tu wole be þe lasse //
In what' maner þou schalt' go fro medicy*n* to medicy*n*, þou hast' it' 16
[[4] lf. 258] pleynerli ynowȝ i*n* þe first' tretis, [4]boþe simple medicyns & also
compound / þe whiche þou miȝt' vse as þou scest' best' to done / If'
The best incarnative medicine is thus. þou wolt' regendre fleisch in a deep put' þat' vlcus is, take poudre
of' thuris, wh*a*nne vlcus is[5] maad clene, & fille ful þe hole þe*r*of', for 20
it' wole engendre fleisch wel. ¶ In þes vertues, & it' is moost'
One uses its bark, its gum; competent' to consolidatif' medicyns.[6] & his gu*m*mosite þat' is clepid
thus masc*u*linu*m* ouþ*er* olibanu*m*, & þat' is best' for medicyns þat' is
it is further used as a powder, conglutinatif', þat' be*n* forseid i*n* þe bigy*n*nyng' of' þis chapitre. & 24
Minutu*m* thuris þe poudre of' hi*m*, wh*a*nne it' is maad smal & falliþ adou*n* of' a
sarce, is clepid minutu*m* thuris, & þat' is best' to regendre fleisch.

Three kinds of consolidating medicines. Bi þis maner distincciou*n* þou schalt' gadere þe difference of' þre
medicyns þat' ben i*n* þis chapitre, & of' su*m*men þei ben clepid alle 28
.1. Conglutinatives, [consolidatiues]. ¶ The .j. þerof' þat' is seid conglutinatif', þat'
makiþ þe lippis of' a wou*n*de soude togidere / The .ij. it' drieþ &
.2. Incarnatives, makiþ clene, & helpiþ blood for to turne i*n*to fleisch / The .iij. it'
.3. remedies producing cicatrization. drieþ wiþ ve*r*tu þat' is clepid stiptica, þat' makiþ hard fleisch to 32
arise i*n* þe stide of' sky*n*. ¶ This is a good medicyn for to reg*e*ndre
[[7] lf. 258, bk.] fleisch, þat' is clepid litargiru*m* nutritum, þat' is norischid [7]as it' is

[2] Lat.: sicut seta aut sericum.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 105, bk.: quod inter medicinas cordiales fit, quod assatur ut teri possit, et aurum & argentum, que decoquuntur cum sulphure . . .

[5] *is*, above line.

[6] Lat.; Et nota quod de thure tria sunt, sive cortex. & illud est siccius omnibus, & convenit plus in consolidatiuis medicinis facientibus pellem & cicatrizantibus, quas ita habebis.

aforseid i*n* þe chapitre de vlceribus. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat engendriþ fleisch** / Take thuris minute, masticis, fenigreci an*a*, fiat' puluis. Þis poudre regendriþ fleisch wel & drawiþ, & nyle not' suffre þat' vlcus schal stynke, but' it' makiþ for to haue a good sauour. ¶ **Also an oynement þat is good for to regendre fleisch** / ℞, litargiri nutriti ℥ .ij, puluis thuris, sarcocolle, galbani, colofonie,[1] an*a* ʒ .j, medle he*m* alle togidere, & make þ*er*of' an oynement'. ¶ **Anoþ*er* poudre,** ℞, radice*m* malui visci, þat' su*m*men clepen[2] sanaticlam,[3] & sume*n* clepiþ it' vngaria; & waische it' & drie it' i*n* a furneis in sich maner þat' þou ne bre*n*ne it' not'. & þa*n* grinde it' & make þ*er*of' poudre, & leie þ*er*of' a good quantite i*n* vlceribus þat' ben holow / for off' his owne p*r*opriete it' engendriþ fleisch, boþe bi hi*m*-silf' & also wh*a*nne it' is medlid wiþ oþere þi*n*gis / **Also** take of' þe forseid poudre ℥ .j, of' thus þat' be smal ℥ ß, vernicis,[4] aloes, sarcocolle, masticis, fenigreci an*a* ʒ .ij, medle hem wiþ þe þi*n*gis aforseid, & þou miȝt' make þ*er*of' an oynement' wiþ oile & wex; & do ℥ j. of' þe poudre i*n* ℥ .iiij. of' oile, & ℥ ß. of' wex. [5]And þis þou schalt' knowe, þat' þ*er*e þou puttist' poudris, þou schalt' putte none oynementis for to regendre fleisch / But' wh*a*nne poudre ne mai not' come þ*er*to to þe botme þerof', þan þou muste leie þ*er*on oyncmentis, for þe moisture of' þe oile makiþ þe poudre peerse to þe botme. ¶ **Also þis oynement is good, for it drawiþ out quitture** / ℞, oli*j* lī. ß, resine ℥ .j, cere ℥ .ß, minute thuris, fenigreci an*a* ℥ .ß, make he*r*of' an oynement' & cole it'. ¶ **Also anoþ*er* oynem*e*nt þat is good for þis entencioun.** ℞, consolide maioris & minoris, cinoglosse, pilocelle,[6] plantaginis maioris & minoris, an*a*. ♋ .j, vermes terrestres longos, q*ui* d*icunt*ur lumbrici, lī. ß; kutte alle þes smale,[7] & leie he*m* i*n* lī. j & ß. of' oile of' oliue, & lete he*m* ligge þ*er*e .viij. daies, & þan boile hem a litil & þan cole he*m*, & do þ*er*to schepis talow maad clene i*d est* molten & colid, picis naualis lī. ß, picis grece ℥ .iiij, armo*ni*aci, galbanu*m*, opoponaci, terbentine, masticis co*mmun*is minuti, an*a* ℥. ß. In þis man*er*

An incarnative powder and ointment.

[5 lf. 259]

[1] *colofonie*, see *Alphita*, p. 42.

[2] *clepen*, above line.

[3] *sanaticla*. See Wr. Wül., 554, 8: "Saniculum, i. sanicle, i. wudemerch." *Minsheu* quotes the following proverb: "Celuy qui sanicle a. de Mire affaire il n'a. Et qui a du bugle & du sanicle, fait au chirurgien la nique. He that hath Sanicle, respects not the Poticarie, and he that hath Sanicle and Cumfrie, makes a iest of the Surgeon."

[4] Halle, *Table*, p. 134: "Out of the Iuniper tree sweateth certeine teares, in the spring tyme chiefly and therefore called *Vernix*, quasi Vernus ros."

[6] Lat. pilosella. See Wr. Wül., p. 556, 18.

[7] MS. *þesmale*.

℞ þou schalt' make he*m*: Take armoniaci, galbanu*m*, opoponaci, &
[1 lf. 259, bk.] dissolue he*m* in vinegre, & aftirward dis'solue he*m* in caȝiola.[2] &
wh*an*ne þei ben dissolued, do þ*er*to oile, wex & pich, & þan do
þ*er*to alle þe oþ*er*e þat' ben maad to poudre, & þan cole he*m* & kepe 4
he*m* for þin vss. ¶ If' þou leist' þis oynement' i*n* þe botme of' a
wounde, it' wole drawe out' þe quitture & aswage þe akynge, & it'
The physician has to use his own discretion as to the doses. wole make clene & regendre fleisch i*n* vlcera. ¶ This þou muste
knowe, þat' þouȝ I sette p*ro*porcioun of' poudris, & oile, & wex, 8
neþeles þou schalt' p*ro*porcioun þi þi*n*gis more or lasse as þou seest'
Remedies which produce cicatrization. þat' þou hast' nede þ*er*to. ¶ If' a wounde haue miche quitture, &
be in a drie place, þan þou schalt' do þ*er*to þe more poudre, & þe
lasse oile & wex / If' it' so be þat' a wounde be in a moist' place, 12
þan þou schalt' do þ*er*to þe lasse of' þe poudre, & more of' þe oile &
of' þe wex, as it' is aforseid. ¶ Medicina consolidatiua, cicatriȝatiua,
& sigillati*u*a ben al oon; & þat' ben medicyns þat' drieþ þe moisture
of' a wounde, & makiþ a rynde aboue vpon þe fleisch, & makiþ a 16
Auice*n* strong' keueryng' for[3] to defende þe fleisch fro harm / And A. seiþ,
[4 lf. 260] þat' i*n* vlcera þat' is holow, þ*at*' þ*er*e [4]ne schal neu*er*e be no skyn
engendrid þ*er*on, for þe skyn i*n* a man is engendrid of' þe sp*er*mis
Skin which has been destroyed cannot be reproduced. of' þe fadir & of' þe modir / And alle þe p*ar*tijs of' a man þat' ben 20
engendrid oonli of' sp*er*me, & þei be kutt' awei, þei schulen neuere
wexe aȝen / And alle þese þingis i*n* a man ben engendrid oonli of'
sp*er*me, as a mannes skyn, & boonys & senewis; & þ*er*for & þer be
ony gobet' kutt' awei of' þese, þei ne mowe neuere be regendrid 24
Auice*n* aȝen, as .A. seiþ, & it' is sooþ / But' i*n* þis caas medicynes mowe
It may be replaced by a hard substance. helpe for to engendre hard fleisch aboue, & schal be in þe place of'
skyn, vpon which place nyle neuer wexe h*er*e aft*er*ward[5] / ¶ Simple
medicyns þat' ben in þis caas makyng' skyn vpon a soor þat' is 28
Simple medicines. clene / **Cortices** arboris, pini, cortices thuris, centaurea combusta,
ossa combusta, abrotanu*m* combustu*m*, balaustie, galle, cip*r*essi,
psidie, cucurma, rubea maioris combusta, lumbrici terestris adusti,
cathinia argenti & auri, alumen sissum, folia fici, stercus canis 32
comedentis ossa siccatu*m*,[6] aristologia longa & rotu*n*da *com*buste, es
[3 lf. 260, bk.] vstu*m* lauatum, & ius medicina[7] / [8]Sumtyme we medlide medicyns

[2] Matth. Sylv.: "*Cazola* est quoddam vas." See Ital. cazzuola. *Tomm. Dict.* [3] MS. *fro.*

[5] Lat.: "medicina ista namque adiuuat, vt nascatur caro calosa dura, que est loco cutis, super quam non nascitur pilus."

[6] MS. *sucatu*m.

[7] Lat.: "et omnis (abbr. *oīs*) medicina, que fit in duabus actiuis propter temperamentum."

conglutiuas wiþ a fewe corrosiuis, þat schulen be seid in þe nexte chapitre here aftir / But for to medle medicyns in þis maner, þer mote be miche kunnynge for to proporciounе hem, & summe þerof þou muste haue bi experience, & summe of þe knowing of þe mannes complexioun, boþe of his bodi & also of his lyme / Of þe forseid simple medicyns þou miȝt vse hem in powdre, & if þou wolt þou miȝt make oynementis of hem, as it is aforseid / But þe oile þat þou wolt make þese oynementis wiþ, schal algate be stipticum, as oleum rosaceum & mirtinum. ¶ A good composiciouⁿ þat þou schalt vse in somer in woundis & in vlceribus þat ben hote, & in euery place þere þe skyn is aweie in a mannes bodi, of riding, eiþir of pustulis, or of fier, or off hoot watir, & it is clepid vnguentum Rasis, þat is maad in þis maner: ℞, oliȝ ro. ℥ iiij, cere ℥ ß, in þese regiouns þat ben hoot &[1] in somer ℥ .ij, & aftir þe regioun þou schalt do þerto dyuers quantite of wex, ceruse ℥ .j, camphore ʒ .j, þe whitis of ij. eggis. Þou schalt make it in þis maner / ffirst þou schalt grinde .ij almaun[2]dis blaunchid & stampid in a morter, & þan do out þe almaundis þat ben to-broke of þe morter, & make clene þe morter; & þan leie þeron camphore, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto ceruse, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto oile, & grinde hem wel togidere wiþ þe pestel. & whanne it is almoost coold, þan do þerto .ij. whitis of eiren, & meue hem wiþ a sclise longe, for þe more þat þei ben stirid togidere þe bettir it wole be / Summen doon þerto ceruse wiþ þe forseid quantite of oile & wex, and camphore & whitis of eiren ʒ .v, litargiri ʒ .iij. & þis is a good consolidatif, but it makiþ coold. & if þou wolt do þerto litarge, do more or lasse as þou seest þat it is to done // ¶ **This is a good poudre for þis entencioun** / ℞, aloes, balaustiarum, cathinie argenti, eris vsti triti,[3] & lauati partes equales; make herof sutil poudre, & herof leie vpon þe place þere þou wolt haue þe skyn. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat is more strong þan þis** / ℞, aloes, cucurmie, vermium terestrium combustorum, balaustiarum, mirre, gallarum. ¶ **A good oynement** / ℞, fecem argenti ʒ .xxx, merdam ferri, cymolie ana ʒ .vij [4]& ß, cathinie argenti, ceruse, litargiri, plumbi vsti ana ʒ .v, argille rubie ʒ .x; medle hem alle wiþ oile of ro., & make an oynement, & it is clepid vnguentum de palma. ¶ **Also anoþer þat G. made, þat wole soude vlcera þat ben oold & yuel for to hele** / ℞, adipis porci antiqui sine sale id est freisch swynys grese molten, & colid þoruȝ a clocþ / oliȝ lī. j & ß,

Compound medicines.

An ointment to be used in hot countries and in summer.

vng^m Rasis

℞

Direction how to make it.

[2 lf. 261]

Two powders.

℞

℞

[4 lf. 261, bk.]

Consolidating ointment prescribed by *Galien.*

℞

[1] MS. om. *&*. [3] MS. *certis.*

litargiri lī. ſ, calamenti[1] ℥ .iiij; make it in þis maner: grinde
℞ litargirum & calamentum in a morter, & do þerto a litil & a litil of
oile & grese, molten togidere / ¶ Also: ℞, spatulam id est quæ fit de
palma viridi, & þe middil þerof aboue kutt smal to gobetis, & do it 4
in þi medicyn, & wiþ þe half of þe opere medicyns medle þis
medicyn; þis is good for to regendre & soude togidere. ¶ **Anoþir**
medicyn þat is good for to regendre fleisch & make clene &
soude, & is clepid medicamen Iohannis Mesue, þat is maad in 8
þis maner / ℞, pistatiue & resine,[2] panni albi vetusti ℥ .j, opopo-
nacum ℥ .ij, vini, mellis, olij ro. vel mirtini ℥ .x, litargiri, aloes,
sarcocolle, mirre, ana ℥ .ſ, make herof an oynement; þis wole
[3 lf. 262] regendre & hele woundis þat ben [3]wickid & yuel for to hele, & þis 12
medicyn is as good as þat, þat is sett in þe chapitre de vlceribus
virulentis; þis makiþ clene, & drieþ & regendriþ fleisch, þerfore
ioyne þat & þis togidere. ¶ **Also an oynement þat Maister**
℞ **william someris[4] made** / ℞, rasinam albam & liquefactam in vino 16
Ointment of resin. acerimo, & cole þe wijn & þe rosyn togidere into coold watir, &
anoynte þin hondis, & tempere it wel in þin hondis, & kepe it, &
if it be in somer do þerto half so miche of whit wex; make þis
abrood vpon a lynnen clooþ, & leie it vpon þe wounde, & þis wole 20
℞ drie wel. ¶ **Item**: ℞, olij ro. ℥ .iij, rasine ℥ .ij, cere ℥ j, nucis
cipreissi, cucurmie ana ℥ .j, make herof a gobet & kepe it; þis
Direction for the application of consolidative and regenerative medicines. is more worþ þan apostolicon Nicholai. ¶ The maner of worching
of þese medicyns, þat of summen ben clepid consolidatiuis, schal 24
be do in þis maner / The firste dai þat a wounde is maad, & þou
hast brouȝt þe lippis of þe wounde togidere with sewinge ouþir wiþ
sum oþer maner, þan leie þerto of þe firste medicyn, þat is clepid
conglutinatif, vpon þe place þat is sewid, & leie þerof ynowȝ; & 28
[3 lf. 262, bk.] þan þervpon leie a lynnen clooþ [5]wet in whitis of eiren, & þan leie
þerto defensiuis & opere necessarijs til þe lippis of þe wounde be
soudid togidere faste. ¶ The .ij. medicyn, þat is clepid regenera-
tiuum, þat schal be leid in vlceribus & in depe woundis, for to 32
regendre fleisch. ¶ At þe laste þou schalt leie consolidatiuis, or þe
fleisch wexe to hiȝe; & but if þou do þus, þou muste leie corosiuis
for to frete awei þat fleisch þat is woxe to hiȝe, & þat is double
traueile & also vnkunnyng of þe leche. ¶ Thou muste knowe wel 36

A regenerative ointment prescribed by Johannes Mesue.

[1] *calamentum*, a mistake for *calcantum*. Phillips: "Calcanth a Chymical word, being the same as Vitriol."

[2] Lat.: rasure vel pistature.

[4] I cannot find a physician of this name. Perhaps it is *Gulielmo Corvi*, author of the *Practica*, who was a friend of Lanfranc. *Hæser* I., p. 710.

where & wh*an*ne þou schalt vse þese medicyns, & i*n* þis maner þou schalt folowe þe riȝt rule of medicyns, & þan þi medicyns woliþ worche as þei schulde /

¶ Of medicyns cauteratiuis & corrosiuis /

COrosiuis & cauteriȝatiuis we vsiþ in cirurgie i*n* manie causis, & of corosiuis su*mm*e ben feble, & su*mm*e ben strong, & su*mm*e beþ more stronger / These be*n* feble, hermodactilis, aristologia, brionia, gencina,[1] vitriolu*m* adustu*m*, & þese haueþ moost vertu i*n* moist bodies. ¶ More strong be*n* þes: vitriolu*m* not combustu*m*, tapsia, pees milui,[2] [3]apiu*m* rampnum,[4] cortex viticelle[5] / And þese be*n* more strong: flos eris, viride eris, es vstu*m*, arsenicu*m*, sulphur. ¶ Also þese be*n* more strong: calx viua maad of stoonis, & of schellis of eiren & oistris, & strong lye, & arsenicu*m* sublimatu*m*, & watir maad of þese þi*n*gis; & of þese medicyns þou miȝt make medicyns boþe simple & compound, whiche þou miȝt vse wh*an*ne þou wolt take awei deed fleisch, more strong & lasse strong as þou seest þat it is nede þe*r*to. ¶ Of medici*n*s þat ben compound I wole telle þee a fewe, for of simple medicyns þou miȝt *com*pou*n*d manie. ¶ **A poudre þat wiþouten ony greuau*n*ce & liȝtli fretiþ awei deed fleisch** / ℞, viride eris, hermodactulor*um*, aristologia rotu*n*da, make þe*r*of poudre & kepe it in a drie place, & wh*an*ne þou wolt do awei deed fleisch / Take lynet eiþer ly*n*nen clooþ, & wete it w*ith* þi spotil & leie it in þe poudre, & turne it vp & dou*n*, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Thou schalt attende sup*er*fluite of fleisch[6] in .ij. maners / In oon maner sup*er*fluite of fleisch as of clene fleisch þat wexiþ tofore aboue a wou*n*de, & þis is [7]clepid sup*er*fluite of good fleisch / In an oþ*er* maner we clepiþ sup*er*fluite of fleisch þat is medlid wiþ quitture, & is liquide, & þis comeþ in defaute of þe leche, wh*an*ne he leiþ regeneratiuis to a wounde ouþir to ony þing til it be p*er*fitli clene, so þat þe newe fleisch & þe quitture wexiþ forþwiþ / In þe firste cause is noon nede of oþ*er* medicyn, but a simple corosif[8] þat fretiþ wiþouten violence awei þe fleisch þat is woxen to hiȝ aboue þe wounde. ¶ **In þe .ij.** cause it is necessarie for to haue a medicyn corosif & clensynge as it is

Simple caustics.

Mild caustics.

Strong caustics. [3 lf. 263]

Compound caustics.

℞

Innocent excrescences.

[7 lf. 263, bk.]

Malignant excrescences.

Each requires its own treatment.

[1] Lat.: gentiana. [2] MS. *vulpi*. Pes milui "crow-foot."

[4] *Alphita*, p. 11: "*Apium ranarum* siue *apium rampnum* crescit in pratis . . ." See *rampinus*. uncus.—Dufr.

[5] Wr. Wül., 138, 28: "Viticella, wiþwinde." [6] *fleisch* in margin.

[8] MS. *corosiþ*.

A corrosive powder of caustic lime and arsenic.

aforseid in þe chapitre off' mundificatiuis. ¶ **Anoþir good poudre þat' remeueþ awei superfluite of' fleisch & rotid fleisch & crustons**[1] / ℞, calcis viue ℥. ij, arsenici ℥. ij., succi affodillorum radicis ℥. vj., medle hem togidere & make þerof' gobetis & kepe hem & drie hem in schadowe & kepe hem in a drie place, for in a moist' place it' wole rotie anoon. & whanne þou hast' nede for to vse ony herof, þan make þerof' poudre & leie it' vpon þe place. ¶ Also an oynement' þat' is clepid vnguentum viride & is a liȝt' corrosif', & makiþ [2]superfluite of' rotid fleisch & is maad in þis maner. ℞, mellis partes .ij., viride eris partem vnam, & medle hem togidere.

℞

vng^m viride [2 lf. 264]

An ointment to cleanse ulcers.

¶ **Also anoþer vnguentum viride þat' makiþ clene & regendriþ good fleisch in vlceribus þat' ben olde, & fretiþ awei wickid fleisch wiþouten violence** / ℞, celidoyne radicis, alleluya,[3] folia centrum[4] galli, leuistici agrestis, scabiose, ana ℥. j., grynde wel alle þese herbis togidere wiþ .lī. j. of' schepis talowe & .lī. j. of' oile, medle hem togidere, & lete hem ligge .x. daies & rotie, & þan do hem to seþing' on þe fier til þe herbis falle to þe botme, & þan cole hem, & do þerto wex, terbentyne, ana ℥. ij., colofonie ℥. j., masticis, olibani, ana ℥. ß., viridis eris ℥. j. þat' schal be do in in þe ende of' þe boilyng', & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof' an oynement'.

℞

An ointment to be applied on fistulous and cancerous sores.

¶ **If þou wolt' make a stronger medicyn for to slee a festre & a cancre** / ℞, vitri albi combusti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris, galle, attramenti, vitriole viridis, ana ℥ ß., auripigmenti foliati ʒ. ij., make herof' poudre, & distempere hem wiþ strong' vinegre & lacte anabulle[5] til it' be as þicke as it' were hony, & sette it' to þe sunne [6 lf. 264, bk.] [6]in somer, & lete it' drie. & if' it' be in wintir þou miȝt' drie it' wiþ lent' fier, and whanne it' is drie poudre it' aȝen, & tempere wiþ þe forseid licour, & þan drie it' aȝen, & þus þou schalt' do .iij. siþis ouþir .iiij. & þan make poudre þerof' & kepe it' in a drie place.

℞

A corrosive powder.

¶ **Anoþer poudre þat' drieþ a cancre & a festre, & remeueþ superfluite of' fleisch** / ℞, radices brionie ℥. v., tapcie, laureole, esule, ana ℥. ij., ciclaminis, yreos, aristolochie, longe & rotunde, hermodactulorum, affodillorum radicis .ʒ j., & herbarum celidonie, leuistice agrestis, buglosse, summitates oliuarum, & mirte ana ℥. j., tempere þe herbis & þe rotis in vinegre bi .iiij. daies, & þan seþe hem & cole hem, & take þat' licour þat' comeþ þerof', & seþe it' & caste þeron quik lyme

[1] *crustons*, O.Fr. *crouston*.

[3] *Sin. Bart.*, p. 10: "Alleluia. i. *wodesour*."

[4] *Alphita*, p. 38: "*Centrum galli* gallitricum . . . nux muscata." Wild Sage, Cancerweed.

[5] *Matth. Sylv.*: "Anabulla est species titimalli." Compare *Alphita*, p. 9.

poudrid sotilli lī. j., & medle hem wel togidere, & at' þe laste do
*þer*to auripigmenti ℥. iij., & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof'
gobetis & kepe hem *in* a drie place, & wh*an*ne þ*o*u hast' nede *þer*to,
4 grynde oon *þer*of', & leie þe poudre *per*of' vpon þe place þat' þou
wolt' haue frete. ¶ **Anoþir poudre of' þe same kynde.** ℞, arsenici ℞
ru*bri* & ci*trini*, calcis viue, al*umini*s[1] de pluma, gallar*um* nouar*um*
an*a*, grynde he*m* w*ith* vinegre [2] & medle he*m* & drie he*m*, & kepe he*m* [2 lf. 265]
8 as it is aforseid / ¶ A strong' medicyn þat' is as strong' as oni fier, & *Nota bene.* Escharotics, medicines as strong as fire.
vnquenta ruptoria þat' mortifieþ quyk fleisch & etiþ it', & oon herof is
riȝtt' strong' & is a poudre maad bi sublimacio*un*. ℞, limature ferri, ℞
vitrioli viridis, alumen iamini, antymonij an*a* ℥., ij. salis armoniaci, A corrosive sublimate.
12 arsenici citrini, sulphuris viui[3] extincti cu*m* saliua, & temp*er*e hem
wiþ vinegre, ouþir wiþ watir, ouþir wiþ strong' lye, & þe lie wole be
þe bettir if' it' be maad wiþ bene scelis, & þan drie it' & putte it' *in*
alutel[4] & sublime it' / This is þe maner of' sublimacio*un* / loke þou *Nota* The process of sublimation.
16 haue a strong' vessel maad of glas *þat'* it' mowe dure in þe fier,
ouþir a vessel of' erþe wel glasid wiþi*n*ne, & loke *þat'* þe couercle
*per*of' & þe bodi be wel closyng', & do *per*in þi poudre, & lute it' wiþ
good lute, & sette it' in a furneis & make liȝt' fier half' adai, & þan
20 do out' thi fier, & whanne it' is coold opene it', & *þat'*, *þat'* leeueþ *in*
þe botme of' þe vessel caste it' out', & *þat'*, *þat'* cleueþ faste to þe
couercle aboue, take it' & kepe it', & if' þou wolt' worche þerwiþ þou
muste worche ful quentliche, for it' wole [5] brenne as strongli as fier, [5 lf. 265, bk.]
24 & wole make i*mpressiou*n in depnes þan fier. ☞ Þis poudre wole cor-
ru*m*pe & brenne þe place *þat'* it' is leid vpon, & þe same doiþ realgar
sublimed, & if' þow wolt' ouercome þe wickidnes of' it', make poudre
of' it' & distemp*er*e it' wiþ þe iuys of' lactuce & plaunteyn til it' be
28 *in* þickenesse of' hony, & þan drie it', & þus þou schalt' do manye
tymes / & in þis maner þou schalt' take awei greet' malice, & it' wole
worche neuer þe worse. ¶ Also an oynement' ruptorie for to breke A burning ointment made of quick-lime.
fleisch *þat'* is hool & make*th* blak & brenneþ it', & wole make it'
32 falle awei, & þan þer wole leeue *per*e vlcus. Manie men vsiþ þis in
diuers maner, for to opene an enpostym, & for to do awei super*f*luite
of' fleisch. ℞, **quik lyme** as miche as þou wolt', & resolue it' in ℞

[1] *Halle Table*, p. 9. *Alumen de pluma* = Alumen Liquidum.
[3] a caret is placed here and this added later, but does not follow on:—
fflos eris an*a* ℥ j ſs
calsis viue G ℥
argenti viu. ℥ j. [in margin.]
[4] Castelli: "*Aludel* vel *Alutel* vocatur Vitrum sublimatorium." Arab. al-outhal (*Devic. Dict.*). A vessel used in sublimation.

strong' lie þat' is aforseid, and make þerof' þe maner of' an oynement', & wh*an*ne it' is maad, al freisch leie it' þ*er*to, for þe more freisch þat' it' is þe bettir it' is / In þis maner þou schalt' make þe lie / ffille a vessel ful of' askis of' bene scelis, & þe .iij. p*ar*t' of' q*ui*k 4
[1 lf. 266] lyme, & poudre he*m* alle togidere & leie he*m* in [1]a vessel & p*r*esse he*m* þat' þei bicome fast' togid*er*e, & make a put' i*n* þe middil aboue, in þe same put' caste hoot' watir seþing', & þis vessel schal be holowe þat' þe lie mowe passe þoruȝ. & vndir þis vessel sette anoþir 8
℞ vessel for to resseyue þe lie. ¶ **Also anoþir good ruptorie** / ℞, calcis viue, p*ar*tem vnam, arsenici, p*ar*tem ß., poudre hem & medle hem wiþ sope & hony, & su*m*men doiþ þ*er*to lī .ß. of' tartre / Also mel anacardi is swiþe strong' for to make vlcera. & if' it be do to 12
A caustic ointment made of quick-lime and arsenic.
oþ*er*e medicyns it' worchiþ þe more strongli / In þis maner þou schalt' do / wh*an*ne þou ne miȝt' fynde mel anacardi, þan grinde anacardos greet' & leie he*m* i*n* vinegre adai & anyȝt', & þan boile he*m* wel, & þ*a*n p*r*esse out' þe licour þ*er*of', & þat', þ*at*' goiþ out' 16
þerof' is a medicyn þat' wole make vlcera. / Ouþir take anacardos & seþe he*m* i*n* hoot' tenaclis þat' smiþis vsen, & streyne he*m*, & þer
Ca*n*tarides. wole distille þ*er*of' hony. ¶ **Also** take þe wo*m*bis of' cantarides & grinde he*m* wiþ leueyne & leie he*m* in what' place þou wolt' & it' 20
wole make vlcera / But' herof' þou muste be war þat' i*n* what' place
[2 lf. 266, bk.] þou settist' cantarides þer [2]wole come greet' bre*n*nynge of' vrine, &
The application of cantharides excites strangury. su*m*tyme it' makiþ so greet' bre*n*nyng' þat' a mannes vrine is stoppid
dubiu*m* þerwiþ. & þe cur*e* þerof' is þis / Seþe malue, paritorie, violet', watir- 24
Treatment. cressen i*n* watir, & lete þe pa*tient* sitte þ*er*on anoon to þe nauele, & herwiþ þe akyng' schal be taken awei, & also he schal make vrine liȝtlich / & herof' þou schalt' take hede, þat' in what' place of a mannes bodi þou makist' a cauterie, anoon þ*er*aftir þou schalt' leie 28
a mitigatif' þat' schal make þe cruste falle awei þat' was brent', & þou ne schalt' in no maner take awei þe cruste wiþ violen*c*e, but' þou schalt' leie þ*er*to a mitigatif', & lete þe cruste falle awei liȝtli. ¶ Medicyns þ*at*' wole*n* make þe cruste falle awei, & do awei þe 32
aki*ng*', ben þese: ȝelkis of' eiren wiþ oile of' ro*sis*, þ*at*' is þe beste of' alle medicyns / Also, take þe leeues & grinde wiþ grese, ouþ*er* wiþ buttir & leie þ*er*vpon / Also grese ouþir buttir is good þerfore. ¶ Also pultes maad of' mele, oile & watir, ben good þer- 36
[3 lf. 267] wiþ þe cauterie of' an hoot' iren þou miȝt' [3]do awei deed fleisch, ouþir wiþ oon of' þe medicyns þat' ben forseid. ¶ Also if' þou wolt'

[3] MS. *do awei*, twice, the second one marked for erasure.

vse medicyns for to make cauterijs, þou muste take kepe of þis caas / In feble men & in a litil cause þou muste vse feble medicyns, & þou muste be war þat þou brenne no nerue ne no greet veyne ne noon arterie wiþ þi cauterie, ne wiþ þi medicyns þat makiþ cauterijs. ¶ Also in a strong man & in a boistous man, þou miȝt worche at oonys þat þou muste worche at manye tymes in a feble man / ffor in euery medicyns þat a leche doiþ he schal take kepe of the strenkþe & of þe vertu of þe pacient //

Nerves and great blood-vessels must not be cauterized.

Use caustics according to the patient's strength.

Of mollificatif medicyns or softenyng.

.1. Emollients are used if other medicines prove insufficient, to relieve tension ensuing

.2. the fracture [2 lf. 267, bk.]

.3. or dislocation of a limb,

.4. and if re-breaking becomes necessary.

WE vsiþ þese medicyns þat ben .iiij. in eueri cause.[1] Oon cause is þis, whanne þe mater þat þou wolt resolue is swiþe hard, for þan oonli wiþ resolutiuis as it is aforseid þe sotil mater wole resolue, & þat oþir part wole bicome hard, & þan þou muste make mollificatiuis. ¶ The .ij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme is to-broke ouþir out of þe ioyncte, þouȝ it be broȝt [2]yn aȝen, þe place wole be hard, & þe patient mai not meue þerwiþ, þan þou muste do[3] þerto mollificatiuis til þe lyme be bettere as it is aforseid. ¶ The .iij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme þat haþ ben out of ioynct longe tyme, þan þou muste make þingis forto make þe place moist aȝen, þat þe boon mowe come into his ioynt aȝen. ¶ The .iiij. cause is, whanne a lyme is corrupt & is yuel ioyned, & makiþ al þe lyme foul, as whanne a boon is to-broken & is not ioyned, þan þou muste breke þe boon aȝen, & bringe it into his propre place as it schulde be / In alle þese causis we mote vse medicyns þat ben mollificatiuis, as ben þese: camomille, mellilotum, fenigreci, semen lini, & almaner fatnes, & marowe, & manie gummis, & euery medicyn þat is hoot & moist wole make a lyme mollificatif / **A good composiciou*n* for þe firste cause** / Take oold oile .iiij. partis, wex partem .j., & make þerof an oynement, and anoynte þerwiþ a lyme þat þou wolt resolue þe mater þat is þeron / ffor it wole make þe mater mollificatif, & make þe poris [4]open to resoluciou*n* // **Anoþer þat is more strong** / R7, radicis malua visci ℥ .j., & kutte it to smale gobetis, & putte hem in a morter wiþ ℥ .iiij. of oile of lilie. & þou schalt sett þis vessel of glas in hoot boilyng watir, & þere it schal stonde til þe iuys of þe herbe be consumed. Wiþ þis oile þou schalt anoynte þe place, & leie þervpon lanam succidam i*d est* wolle vnwaischen. & þis

An ointment of oil and wax.

R7

[4 lf. 268]

A stronger emollient.

R7

[1] Lat.: Mollificatiuis vtimur medicinis in quatuor casibus.

[3] *do*, above line.

Directions for fomentation.

þou schalt wite, þat whanne þou wolt make þese oynementis, first
þou shalt make a fomentaciou*n* wiþ hoot watir til þe place bicome
reed. & if þe place be swithe hard, þan take a stoon þat is clepid
lapis molaris, & make hi*m* hoot i*n* þe fier, ouþir a greet gobet of 4
iren, & do it in strong vine*gre*. & þe place of a ma*n*nes lyme þat
is hard, holde ouer þe fume þat comeþ out of þe vinegre, & þan
anoynte hi*m* aftirward / þis is þe maner for to make a lyme mollifi-
.1. catif, & þer ben .iij. maners.[1] þe .j. maner is þis: þou schalt make 8
a decocciou*n* of flouris of camomille, mellilote, fenigrec, semen lini,
[2 lf. 268, bk.] & rootis of malua visci, soden i*n* wate*r*. & þou schalt [2]make a
fomentaciou*n* to þe lyme i*n* þis watir longe tyme, & frote þe lyme
℞ softli. & þan anoynte þe lyme wiþ oon of þese oynemen*t*is / ℞, 12
auxu*n*gie porci antique s*i*ne sale ℥ .iij, pinguedinis anseris, anatis &
galline an*a* ℥ .j., melte hem alle togidere & cole he*m*, & do þe*r*to
℥. j. of wex. þis wolc make mollificatif, & restore moistnes. & if
An ointment to be applied on consumptive people. þou wolt make it for to be good for drienes of a ma*n*nes brest, & 16
good for men þat ben etik, do þe*r*to ℥ .j of clene dragag*ant*i, & þan
it wole be a good oynement restoratif. ¶ **Anoþir oynemen*t*.**
℞ ℞, adipis porci antique s*i*ne sale ℥ .iiij., fecis oli*j* de semine lini,
bdellij an*a* ℥ .ij., storacis, calamite, galbani, oppopanac*is*, armo*n*iaci, 20
an*a* ℥ .j. putte þe gu*m*mys i*n* wijn for to te*mpe*re, & wha*n*ne þei
ben temp*e*rid, putte he*m* i*n* a morte*r*, & stampe hem wel, melte þe
remenau*nt*, & do hem togidere, & medle hem togide*re*. ¶ **Also an**
℞ **oynement mollificatif & comfortiþ** / ℞, auxu*n*gie porci ℥ .iij., 24
pinguedinis anseris, anatis, galline, an*a* ℥ .j. oli*s* co*mmun*is antiq*ui*
℥ .iiij. farine fenigreci, se*min*is lini, an*a* ℥ .j., bdellij, oppoponacis,
[3 lf. 269] masticis, thuris ℥ .ß., te*mpe*re þe gu*m*mis [3]i*n* wijn, & þan aftirward
medle he*m* wiþ grese, wex, & oile, & melte hem alle togidere & cole 28
hem. & of þese þingis þat schule*n* be grou*n*de make poudre þe*r*of,
& medle it þerwiþ & kepe it for þin vss. & wha*n*ne þou hast maad
a stuwe as it is aforseid ouþir a fomentaciou*n*, þan anoynte hi*m* bi þe
vng^m^ Ras*is* fier, & þis is clepid vnguentu*m* Rasis. & I it haue ofte p*re*ued euer- 32
more goddis g*rac*e goinge tofore wiþout which grace is no þing ful-
endid ne no sijknes do awei / But eue*r*i good ende & eueri good
God has helped me throughout my work, and this book has been finished in 1296. dede al it comeþ of þe mi3t of god / And þe help of god I bad in
þe firste bigy*n*nyng of þe book / ffor of goddis grace I am þat I am, 36
& goddis grace was neuere voide in me / And þe ende of þis book
was fulfillid þe noumbre of 3eeris from goddis beyng .M.CC. nona-
gesimo sexto. & god of his swete g*rac*e ne wernede me not to make

[1] Lat.: modus autem mollificandi membra in 2°, 3° & 4° casu est unus.

an ende of þis book. & ful ofte I hane bede goddis grace þ*er*to / wherfore god haþ grauntid, & god for his blessid name blesse þis book & alle werkis þat ben wrouȝt *in* his name / [1] And god for his miche g*rac*e lete he*m* wel worche þat takiþ þis werk on honde, & bringe erro*ur*is out of her herte, & bringe he*m* & us to a good ende / To þe worschip of his blessid name & profit of his seruauntis, & me to forȝeuenes of my synnes, god it graunte et imp*er*at per omnia secula seculoru*m* AmeN.

God may bless this [1 lf. 269, bk.] book and those who use it.

Explicit.

Here endiþ þe book of lankfr*a*nk.[2]

[2] In red ink, but nearly erased.

Here bigynneþ a table of þe chapitris of þe book of lankfrank // [leaf 270]

The firste book conteyneþ .xv. chapitris /

4 **The .i. c°.** is m*aa*d of alle vniu*er*sal wou*n*dis & vlc*er*s [p. 31]
The .ij. c°. is of wou*n*dis maad in þe fleisch / [p. 33]
The .iij. c°. is of woundi*s* m*aa*d in senewis / [p. 39]
The .iiij. c°. is of wou*n*dis maad in boonys / [p. 47]
8 **The .v. c°.** is of wou*n*dis m*aa*d w*ith* strokis or kutti*n*g / [p. 50]
The .vj. c°. is of wou*n*dis w*ith* posty*m*s, & yuel disc*r*a*s*ia*m* / [p. 54]
The .vij. c°. of wou*n*dis maad of arauyschyng hound, or oþir venymous beest / [p. 59]
12 **The .viij. c°.** is of curis of woundis which folowiþ brekyng of boonys / [p. 62]
The .ix. c°. is of flux of blood of woundis / [p. 64]
The .x. c°. is of dictyng of woundid men / [p. 72]
16 **The .xj. c°.** is of vlceris / [p. 77]
The .xij. c°. is of fistulis / [p. 89]
The .xiij. c°. is of cancris / [p. 92]
The .xiiij. c°. is of causis & lettyngis of sowdynge of woundis & vlceris / [p. 97]
20 **The .xv. c°.** is of spasmus aboue comynge on woundis // [p. 99]

The .ij. book conteyneþ vndir o su*m*me .x. c°.

The .i. c°. is of woundis of þe heed, & his anoth*ami*a / [p. 106]
24 **The .ij. c°.** of curis of wou*n*dis i*n* þe face & of membris þat ben [leaf 270, bk.] conteyned in he*m* / [p. 141]
The .iij. c°. is of woundis in þe necke, and of anothamia [p. 145]
The .iiij. c°. is of woundis of þe splet boonys of þe arme & of þe hondis, & anothami / [p. 155]
28 **The .v. c°.** is of woundis i*n* thorac*is* & membris conteyned i*n* hem / [p. 161]

The .vj. c°. is of curis of woundis of þe spine ouþir spondilium. [p. 166]
The .vij. c°. is of woundis of þe stomac & entrailis & wombe, & anothamia / [p. 167] 4
The .viij. c°. is of woundis of þe lyuere, splen, reynes, & þe bladdre & anothamie / [p. 171]
The .ix. c°. is of woundis of þe ȝerde and placis aboute it [p. 173]
The .x. c°. is of woundis of þe haunche & grynde & fect, & 8 anothamie / [p. 176]

The .iij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris /

The .i. c°. is of makyng of fair heer / [p. 178]
The .ij. c°. is of lesynge of heer, or calowȝnes or allopucie [p. 180] 12
The .iij. c° is of smale puschis and scalis and crustis / [p. 188]
[leaf 271] The .iiij. c°. is of clooþ and fraclis, & gowte roset & ȝolowisch / [p. 189]
The .v. c°. is of smirtyng, scabbe, & icche / [p. 191] 16
The. vj. c°. is of þe morphu & impetigine / [p. 193]
The vij. c°. is of lepre & of domys of lepre / [p. 196]
The .viij. c°. is of smelnes of membris & leene / [p. 199]

The .iij bok þe ij doctrinis, þat is of enpostyms, & conteyneþ 20 .xviij. chapitris.

The .i. c°. is of generaciou of humours and her kyndis / [p. 201]
The .ij. c°. is of enpostyms & of sermouns þerof / [p. 204]
The .iij. c°. is of enpostyms in þe heed, & of gaderynge in þe 24 hedis of children / [p. 214]
The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms of rotis of þe ceris [p. 216]
The .v. c°. is of enpostyms of þe necke, and of þe þrote / [p. 217]
The .vj. c°. is of enpostym subtitilico / [p. 222] 28
The .vij. c°. is of enpostym of þe helpers aboute þe spondilia / [p. 223]
The .viij. c°. folowiþ of þe same toforc / [p. 224]
The .ix. c°. of enpostym appering in þe mouþ of þe stomak / 32 [p. 226]
The .x. c°. is of an enpostym in i[n]guine .i.[1] grindis. [p. 226]
The .xj. c°. is of enpostyme of þe haunche & ¶ of þe core / [p. 227] 36
The .xij. c°. is of enpostym of þe ȝerde & ballok / [p. 228]
[leaf 271, bk.] The .xiij. c°. is of scrophulis & glandulis / [p. 229]

[1] = *i. e.*

The .xiiij. c°. is of' þe cure of' þe canc*re* no*n* vlc*er*at' / [p. 231]
The .xv. c°. is of' Boos / [p. 232]
The .xvj. c°. is of' akyng' of' ioynctis. [p. 233]
4 **The .xvij. c°.** is of' akynge of' haunchis / [p. 238]
The .xviij. c°. is of' dieti*ng*' of' me*n* þatt' han ache in ioynctis / [p. 240]

The .iij. boke and the .iij. doctri*n*, and co*n*teyneþ xix.
8 **chapitris //**

The .i. c°. is of' egrenes of' yȝen / [p. 240]
The .ii. c°. is of' egrenes of' eeris / [p. 254]
The .iij. is of' disese of' þe nose / [p. 258]
12 **The .iiij. c°.** is of' disese of' þe mouþ / [p. 260]
The .v. c°. is of' disese of' þe brest', and off' swellyng' and greetnes / [1]and coagulasion off' milke.[1] [p. 265]
The .vj. c°. is of' ruptorie of' þe siphac, and releuynge aȝen /
16 [p. 268]
The .vij. c°. is of' hernia of' þe ballokis / [p. 269]
The .viij. c°. is of' þe stoon in þe bladdre / [p. 273]
The .ix. c°. is of' an yuel þ*at*' is clepid he*r*mofrodito[2]
20 **The .x. c°.** is of' watri dropesies. [p. 281]
The .xj. c°. is of' canc*er* & vlcers i*n* þe ȝerde / [p. 287]
The .xij. c°. is of' emoroidis & fistula i*n* ano. [p. 289]
The xiij. c°. is of' cancrene & mormals / [p. 293]
24 **The .xiiij. c°.** is of' vngribus and stykynge in handis and feet'. [leaf 272]
¶ Elephancia / [p. 295]
The .xv. c°. is of' wertis i*n* handis & feet' / [p. 296]
The .xvj. c°. is of' blood letyng' / [p. 298]
28 **The .xvij.** is of' kutti*ng*' & bledi*ng*', & wate*r* lechis [p. 303]
The .xviij. is of' cauterie large & of' streite / [p. 305]

The .iiij. book schal be algebra, & conteyneþ ij. doctrines /

The firste doctrine of' þe .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris //

32 **The .i. c°.** is of' brekyng' of' boonis, or o. word
¶ for al / [p. 312]
The .ij. c°. is of' breki*ng*' of' þe face / [p. 314]
The .iij. c°. is of' brekyng' of' þe forkid boo*n* of' þe brest' / [p. 316]
36 **The .iiij. c°.** is of' brekyng' of' boonys off' þe spaudis // [p. 317]
The .v. c°. is of' brekynge of' þe adiutorie / [p. 318]

[1—1] added in different hand.
[2] This chapter is omitted; see note 8 on p. 281.

The vj. c°. is of brekyng of boonys þat is clepid coxe // [p. 320]
The .vii. c°. is of brusyng or brekyng of tendir boonys wiþ þe .viij. chapitre / [p. 321 & 322]

The secunde doctrine of þe fourþe book, & conteyneþ .v. chapitris //

[leaf 272, bk.] The first c°. is of failyng of place, word for al /
The .ij. c°. is of failyng of place of þe chekeboon /
Tho .iij. c°. is of lacking of place of þe spaude /[1]
The .iiij. c°. is of goyng out of þe ioynt of þe schuldre / [p. 323]
The .v. c°. is of þe coniuncioun of þe goyng out of þe haunche / [p. 326]

The antidotarie is þe .v. book, and conteyneþ seuene chapitris //

The .i. c°. is of repercussiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 328]
The .ij. c°. is of þe maner of resolutif medicins / [p. 333]
The .iij. c°. is of þe iiij. maturatiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 336]
The .iiij. c°. is of mundificatiuis & þe maner þerof // [p. 339]
The .v. c°. is of regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis // [p. 342]
The .vj. c°. is of corrosiuis & cauterisatiuis // [p. 349]
The .vij. c°. is of mollificatiuis or softenyng medicyns // [p. 353]

[1] These three chapters are left out.

MSS. and Books that Editors are wanted for.

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-editing, are :—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525.
Biblical MS., Corpus Cambr. 434 (ab. 1375).
Purvey's Ecclesie Regimen, Cot. Titus D 1.
Hampole's unprinted Works.
þe Clowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959, Bibl. Reg. 17 C 26, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.
A Lanterne of Liȝt, from Harl. MS. 2324.
Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS.
Lydgate's unprinted Works.
Boethius, A.D. 1410, &c.; Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c.
Vegetius on the Art of War. (Magd. Oxf. 30, &c.)
Early Treatises on Music: Descant, the Gamme, &c.
Skelton's englishing of Diodorus Siculus.
The Nightingale and other Poems, from MS. Cot. Calig. A 2, Addit. MS. 10,036, &c.
Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.
Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson, A. 389, Douce 232, &c.).
Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.
Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
Chronicles of the Brute.
T. Breus's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2338.
Jn. Crophill or Crephill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.
Burgh's Cato.
Memoriale Credencium, &c., Harl. 2398.
Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.
Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2330, &c.
H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 20.
Hilton's Ladder of Perfection, Cott. Faust. B 6, &c.
Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.
The Early and Later Festialls, ab. 1400 and 1440 A.D. Cotton, Claud. A 2; Univ. Coll. Oxf. 102, &c.
Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.
Jn. Hyde's MS. of Romances and Ballads, Balliol 354.
Metrical Homilies, Edinburgh MS.
Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.
Prose Life of St. Audry, A.D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 120.
English Miscellanies from MSS., Corp. Oxford.
Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.
Disce Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.
Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, &c., Univ. Coll. Oxf. 85.
Mirrour of the blessed lijf of Ihesu Crist, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 123, &c.
Pilgrimage of the Soul, A.D. 1400, prose, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 181, &c.
Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2260.
Maundevyle's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.
Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.
Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.
Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6355.
John Watton's englisht Speculum Christiani, Corpus Oxf. 155, Laud G. 12, Thoresby 530, Harl. 2250, art. 20.

EXTRA SERIES.

Erle of Tolous.
Ypotis.
Sir Eglamoure.
Emare.
Lyrical Poems, from the Harl. MS. 2253.
Le Morte Arthur, from the unique Harl. 2252.
Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS.
Miscellaneous Miracle Plays.
Sir Gowther.
Dame Siriz, &c.
Orfeo (Digby, 86).
Dialogues between the Soul and Body.
Barlaam and Josaphat.
Amis and Amiloun.
Ipomedon.
Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
The Troy-Book fragments once cald Barbour's in the Cambr. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.
Gower's Confessio Amantis.
Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans.
Carols and Songs.
Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 48.
The Siege of Rouen, from Harl. MSS. 2256, 753, Egerton 1995, Bodl. 3562, E. Museo 124, &c.
Jn. Hart's Methode to read English, 1570.
Octavian.
Ywain and Gawain.
Libeaus Desconus.
Avnturs of Arther.
Avowyng of King Arther.
Sir Perceval of Gallas.
Sir Isumbras.
Partonope of Blois, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 188, &c.
Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's, Oxf. 357.
Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2333, &c.
Horæ, Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's, Oxf. 207.
St. Brandon's Confession, Queen's, Oxf. 210.
Scotch Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's Book of Chivalry, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.
Stevyn Scrope's Doctryne and Wysedome of the Auncyent Philosophers, A.D. 1450, Harl. 2266.

The Founder and Director of the E. E. T. Soc. is Dr. F. J. Furnivall, 3, St. George's Sq., Primrose Hill, London, N.W. Its *Hon. Sec.* is W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. The Subscription to the Society is 21*s.* a year for the *Original Series*, and 21*s.* for the *Extra Series* of re-editions.

Early English Text Society.

The Subscription, which constitutes membership, is £1 1*s.* a year [and £1 1*s.* additional for the EXTRA SERIES], due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Head Office of the Union Bank of London, Princes Street, London, E.C., or by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N., and crost 'Union Bank of London.' (United-States Subscribers must pay for postage 1*s.* 4*d.* a year extra for the Original Series, and 1*s.* a year for the Extra Series.) The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1893 (*one guinea*) *are :—*

100. **Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine**, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20*s.*
101. **Cursor Mundi.** Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10*s.*

The Publications for 1894 (*one guinea*) *are :—*

102. **Lanfrank's Science of Cirurgie**, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. from the 2 MSS. by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20*s.*
103. **The Prymer, or Lay-Folk's Prayer-book**, from MS., ab. 1420, ed. A. R. Clark and Hy. Littlehales. 10*s.* [*At Press.*

The Publications for 1895 (*one guinea*) *are :—*

104. **The Exeter-Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems)**, re-edited from the unique MS., by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20*s.*
105. **The Legend of the Cross**, from a 12th century MS., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. [*At Press.*

The Publications for 1896 (*to be ready in* 1893) *will be chosen from :—*

Richard Misyn's Fire of Love, 1534, & **Mending of Life**, 1535 (from Hampole), ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. [*Text set.*
Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part II., ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [*At Press.*
Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen, Part II. [*At Press.*
An Anglo-Saxon Martyrology, edited from the 4 MSS. by Dr. G. Herzfeld. [*At Press.*
The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS., by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part II.
Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch, &c., ed. Miss Pemberton. [*At Press.*
Giraldi Cambrensis Expugnacio Hibernica, englisht, MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram, Ll.D. [*At Press.*
George Ashby's Active Policy of a Prince, A.D. 1463, ed. Miss Mary Bateson. [*At Press.*
Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq. [*Copied.*
Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last, ed. W. H. S. Utley. [*At Press.*
The Lay Folks' Catechism, by Archbp. Thoresby, ed. Canon Simmons and Rev. — Littlehales. [*Text set.*

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1893 *are :—*

LXIII. **Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi**, englisht ab. 1440, and 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram, LL.D. 15*s.*
LXIV. **Caxton's Godeffroy of Boloyne, or Siege & Conqueste of Jerusalem**, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15*s.*

The Publications for 1894 (*one guinea*) *are :*

LXV. **Sir Bevis of Hamton**, Part III., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. 15*s.*
LXVI. **Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres**, ab. 1445-50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15*s.*

The Publications for 1895 *and* 1896 (*to be ready in* 1893) *will be chosen from :—*

LXVII. **Melusine**, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. [*Text done.*
The Towneley Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by G. England, Esq. and A. W. Pollard, M.A. [*At Press.*
The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by George England, Esq. [*At Press.*
Hoccleve's Regement of Princes, 1411-12, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [*At Press.*
Lichfield Gilds, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall; Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gonner. [*Text done.*
Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [*At Press.*
The Three Kings' Sons, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. L. Kellner. [*At Press.*
Deguilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 3 prose Versions, 2 English, 1 French, ed. G. N. Currie, M.A.
Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall.
The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by George England, Esq.
Hoccleve's Minor Poems, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [*Copied.*

☞ *The Large-Paper Issue of the Extra Series is stopt, save for unfinisht Works of it.*

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.